Owner's Manual

LX600 / LX500d

Pictorial index	Search by illustration	
For safety and security	Make sure to read through them (Main topics: Child seat, theft deterrent system)	1
Vehicle status information and indicators	Reading driving-related information (Main topics: Meters, multi-information display)	2
Before driving	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving (Main topics: Keys, doors, seats, power windows)	3
Driving	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving (Main topics: Starting engine, refueling)	4
Interior features	Usage of the interior features (Main topics: Air conditioner, storage features)	5
Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures (Main topics: Interior and exterior, light bulbs)	6
When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction and emergency (Main topics: Battery discharge, flat tire)	7
Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features (Main topics: Fuel, oil, tire inflation pressure)	8
Index	Search by symptom	
	Search alphabetically	

For your information 6
Reading this manual 10
How to search 11
Pictorial index 12

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 40
For safe driving 41
Seat belts 42
SRS airbags 48
Exhaust gas precautions 59

1-2. Child safety
Riding with children 60
Child restraint systems (except for India) 60
Child restraint systems (for India) 88

1-3. Emergency assistance
eCall 104

1-4. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system 107
Alarm 108
Fingerprint Authentication System 112

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

2-1. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators 116
Gauges and meters 121
Multi-information display 124
Head-up display 130
Fuel consumption screen 134

3 Before driving

3-1. Key information
Keys 138

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Side doors 142
Back door 147
Smart entry & start system 162

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 167
Rear seats (5-passenger and 7-passenger models) 171
Rear seat (4-passenger models) 179
Head restraints 183

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 186
Inside rear view mirror 187
Digital Rear-view Mirror 188
Outside rear view mirrors 196

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows 199
Moon roof 201

3-6. Favorite settings
Driving position memory 204
Rear seat position memory (4-passenger models) 208
My Settings 209

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 213
Cargo and luggage 219
Trailer towing (with towing hitch) 221
Pintle hook 227

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch 228
Automatic transmission 233
Turn signal lever 237
Parking brake 237
Brake Hold 240

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 243
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 246
Fog light switch 250
Windshield wipers and washer 251
Rear window wiper and washer 253

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 255

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System + ... 257
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 262
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 273
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 283
Dynamic radar cruise control . 294
Cruise control 304
Stop & Start system 307
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 312
Lexus parking assist-sensor 319
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 325
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function 331
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 334
Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) 339
Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle) 342
Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) 344
Multi-terrain Monitor 346
Driving mode select switch 407
AHC (Active Height Control Suspension) 409
Four-wheel drive system 416
Crawl Control (with Turn Assist function) 419
Multi-terrain Select 423
Downhill assist control system 425
DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter) system 427
Driving assist systems 430

4-6. Driving tips

Off-road precautions 436
Winter driving tips 438
Eco-friendly driving tips 441

5 Interior features

5-1. Display

Front Multi Operation Panel .. 446

Rear Multi Operation Panel (4-passenger models) 449

5-2. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge 453

5-3. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front automatic air conditioning system 455

Rear air conditioning system ... 465

Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators 469

5-4. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 473

5-5. Using the storage features

List of storage features 478

Luggage compartment features 485

5-6. Using the other interior features

Other interior features 489

Garage door opener 505

6 Maintenance and care

6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 514

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 517

6-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 520

Scheduled maintenance 522

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 530

Hood 532

Engine compartment 533

Draining the fuel filter water (diesel engine only) 544

AdBlue™ 546

Tires 550

Tire inflation pressure 559

Wheels 560

Air conditioning filter 562

Electronic key battery 563

Checking and replacing fuses 566

Light bulbs 569

7 When trouble arises

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 574

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 574

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising 575

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 577

If you think something is wrong 580

Fuel pump shut off system (gasoline engine only) 581

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 582

If a warning message is displayed 592

If you have a flat tire 597

If the engine will not start 607

If you lose your keys 608

If the electronic key or fingerprint authentication system does not operate properly 609
If the vehicle battery is discharged 611
If your vehicle overheats 616
If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls (diesel engine only) 618
If the vehicle becomes stuck 619

8 Vehicle specifications

8-1. Specifications
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 622
Fuel information 635
8-2. Customization
Customizable features 637
8-3. Initialization
Items to initialize 654

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 656
Alphabetical Index 659

For your information

WARNING

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof (if equipped), or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Using these spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, even though these parts may be approved by certain authorities in your country. Toyota Motor Corporation therefore cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under war-

ranty.

Also, remodeling like this will have an effect on advanced safety equipment such as Lexus Safety System + and there is a danger that it will not work properly or the danger that it may work in situations where it should not be working.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Lexus Safety System +
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at your Lexus dealer.

Vehicle data recording

The vehicle is equipped with sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

- Engine speed/Electric motor speed (traction motor speed)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the driving assist systems
- Images from the cameras

Your vehicle is equipped with cameras. Contact your Lexus dealer for the location of recording cameras.

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level, options and destinations with which it is equipped.

These computers do not record conversations or sounds, and only record images outside of the vehicle in certain situations.

- Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in this computer to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is

not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

- Recorded image information can be erased by your Lexus dealer.

The image recording function can be disabled. However, if the function is disabled, data from when the system operates will not be available.

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

- Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Toyota Motor Europe NV/SA, Avenue du Bourget 60 - 1140 Brussels, Belgium
www.toyota-europe.com

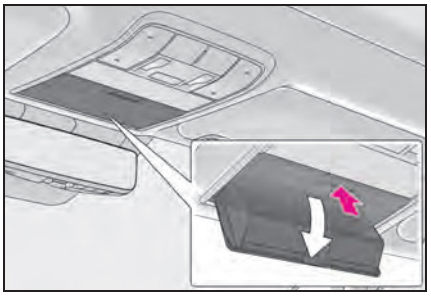
Reading this manual

Explains symbols used in this manual

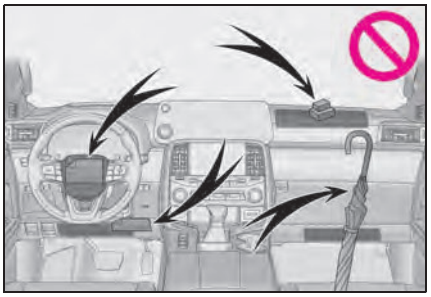
Symbols in this manual

Symbols	Meanings
	WARNING: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.
	NOTICE: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.
1 2 3...	Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

Symbols in illustrations



Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
	Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

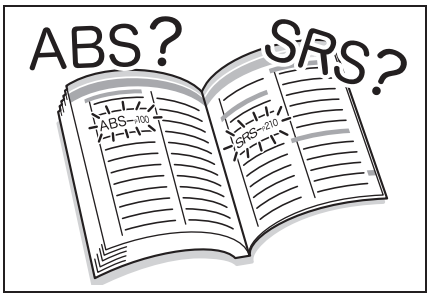


Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the component or position being explained.
	Means **Do not**, **Do not do this**, or **Do not let this happen**.

How to search

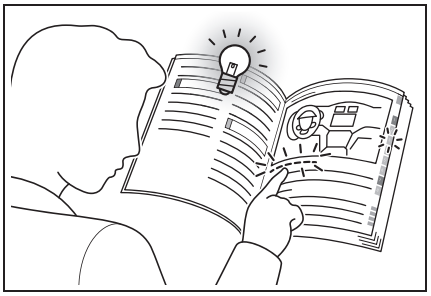
■ **Searching by name**

● Alphabetical index: →P.659



■ **Searching by installation position**

● Pictorial index: →P.12

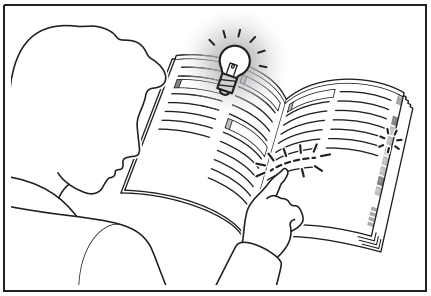


■ **Searching by symptom or sound**

● What to do if... (Troubleshooting): →P.656

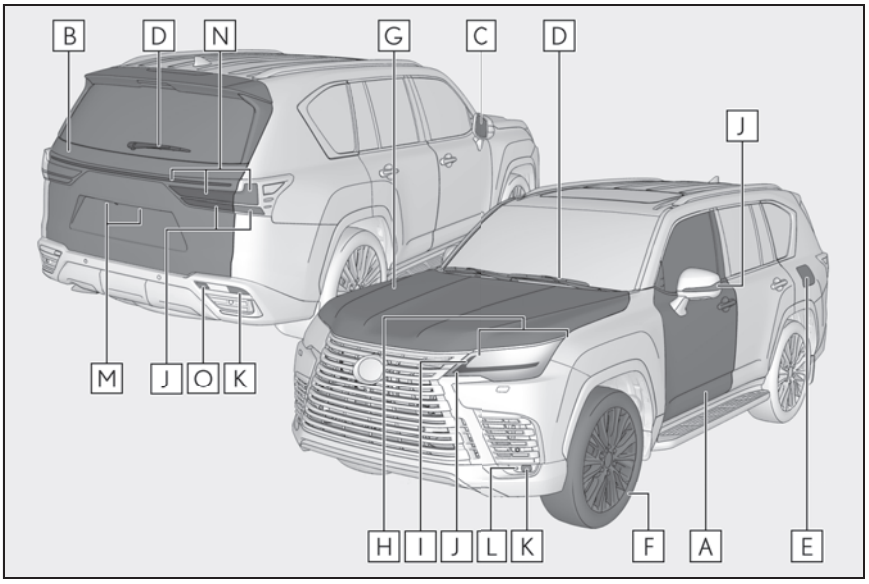
■ **Searching by title**

● Table of contents: →P.2



Pictorial index

Exterior



A Side doors **P.142**
Locking/unlocking P.142, 144
Opening/closing the side windows P.199
Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key P.609
Warning messages P.592

B Back door **P.147**
Locking/unlocking P.148
Opening/closing the back door P.149
Warning messages P.592

C Outside rear view mirrors **P.196**
Adjusting the mirror angle P.196
Folding the mirrors P.197
Driving position memory P.204
Defogging the mirrors* P.458

D Windshield wipers **P.251**

Rear window wiper **P.253**
Precautions against winter season P.438
Precautions against car wash (rain-sensing windshield wipers) P.516

E **Fuel filler door (include AdBlue™ tank cap*)** **P.255**
Refueling method P.255
Refilling AdBlue™ method* P.548
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity P.625

F **Tires** **P.550**
Tire size/inflation pressure P.633
Winter tires/tire chain P.438
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system P.550
Coping with flat tires P.597

G **Hood** **P.532**
Opening P.532
Engine oil P.626
Coping with overheat P.616
Warning messages P.592

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P.569, Watts: P.634)

H **Headlights** **P.243**

I **Front position lights/daytime running lights** **P.243**

J **Turn signal lights** **P.237**

K **Front fog lights/rear fog lights*** **P.250**

L **Cornering lights** **P.245**

M **License plate lights** **P.243**

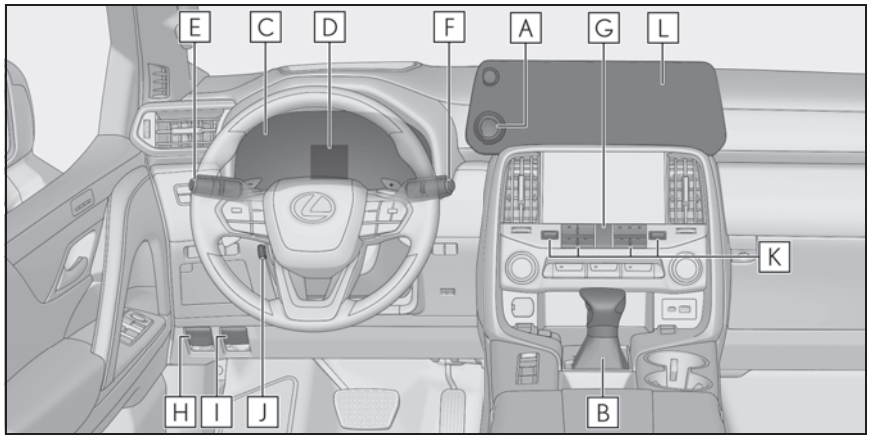
N **Tail lights** **P.243**
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal P.431

O **Back-up lights**

Shifting the shift lever to R..... P.233

*: If equipped

Instrument panel (Left-hand drive vehicles)



A Engine switch **P.228**
Starting the engine/changing the modes P.228, 231
Emergency stop of the engine P.574
When the engine will not start P.607
Warning messages P.592

B Shift lever **P.233**
Changing the shift position P.234
Precautions against towing P.577
When the shift lever does not move P.234

C Meters **P.121**
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument cluster light P.121, 123
Warning lights/indicator lights P.116
When the warning lights come on P.582

D Multi-information display **P.124**
Display P.124
When the warning messages are displayed P.592

E Turn signal lever **P.237**
Headlight switch **P.243**

Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/daytime running lights P.243
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*1 ..... P.246
Front fog lights/rear fog lights*1 ..... P.250

F **Windshield wiper and washer switch P.251**
Rear window wiper and washer switch P.253
Usage P.251, 253
Adding washer fluid P.542
Headlight cleaners P.251
Warning messages P.542

G **Emergency flasher switch P.574**

H **Fuel filler door opener P.256**

I **Hood lock release lever P.532**

J **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P.186**
Adjustment P.186
Driving position memory P.204

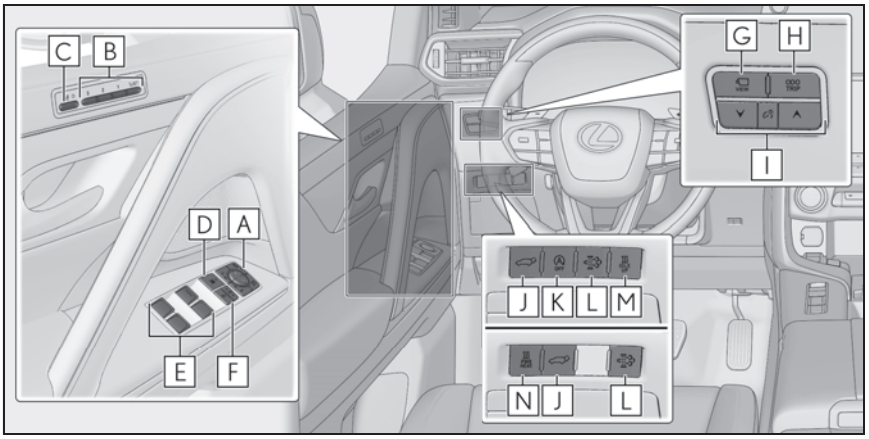
K **Air conditioning system P.455**
Usage P.455
Rear window defogger P.458

L **Audio system*2**

*1: If equipped

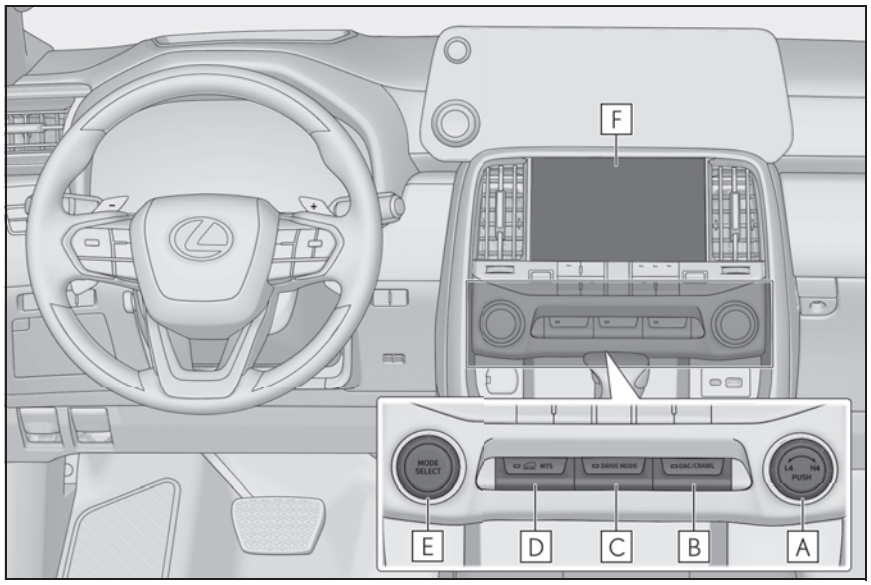
*2: Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■Switches (Left-hand drive vehicles)



A Outside rear view mirror switches P.196
B Driving position memory buttons P.204
C Mode change button* P.168
D Window lock switch P.201
E Power window switches P.199
F Door lock switches P.144
G VIEW switch P.350
H "ODO TRIP" switch P.123
I Instrument panel light control switches P.123
J Power back door switch P.149
K Stop & Start cancel switch* P.308
L DPF system switch* P.427
M Heater idle up switch* P.462
N Power heater switch* P.462

*: If equipped



A Four-wheel drive control switch.....P.416

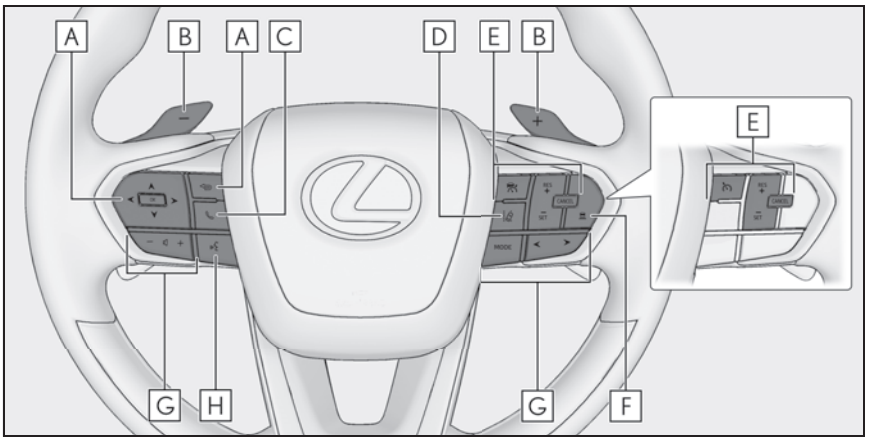
B DAC/CRAWL switch.....P.419, 425

C DRIVE MODE switch.....P.407

D MTS switch.....P.423

E MODE SELECT switch.....P.407, 419, 423, 426

F Front Multi Operation Panel.....P.446



A **Meter control switches** P.125

B **Paddle shift switches** P.235, 236

C **Telephone switch**[*1]

D **LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch**[*2] P.273

E **Cruise control switches**

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range[*2] P.283

Cruise control[*2] P.304

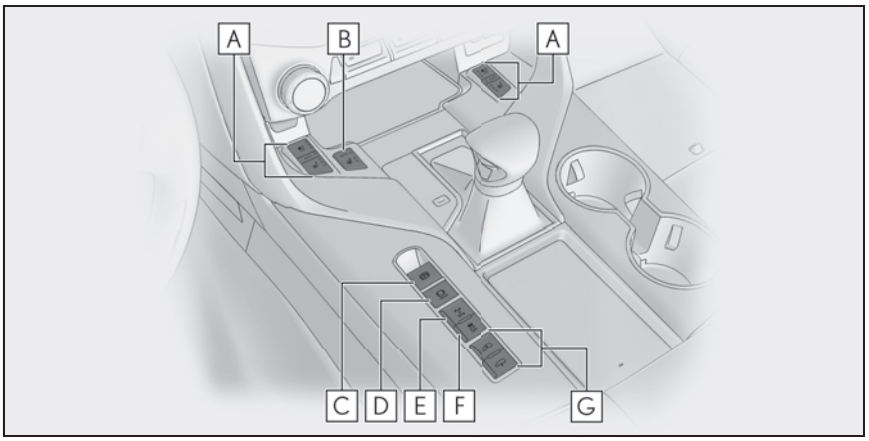
F **Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch**[*2] P.288

G **Audio remote control switches**[*1]

H **Talk switch**[*1]

*1: Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

*2: If equipped

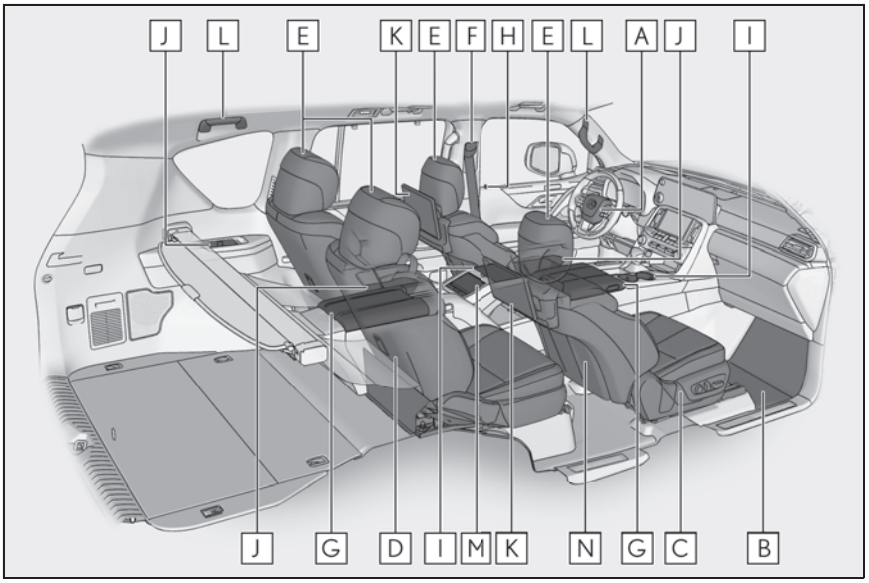


A Front seat heater switches P.469
Front seat ventilator switches* P.471
B Heated steering wheel switch* P.469
C Parking brake switch P.237
Applying/releasing P.237
Precautions against winter season P.440
Warning buzzer/message P.588, 592
D Brake hold switch P.240
E Center differential lock switch P.417
F VSC OFF switch P.432
G Height select switches P.409

*: If equipped

■Interior (Left-hand drive vehicles)

▶ 4-passenger models



A SRS airbags P.48

B Floor mats P.40

C Front seats P.167

D Rear seats P.179

E Head restraints P.183

F Seat belts P.42

G Console box*1 ..... P.480

Cool box*1 ..... P.489

H Inside lock buttons P.145

I Cup holders P.482

J Bottle holders P.482

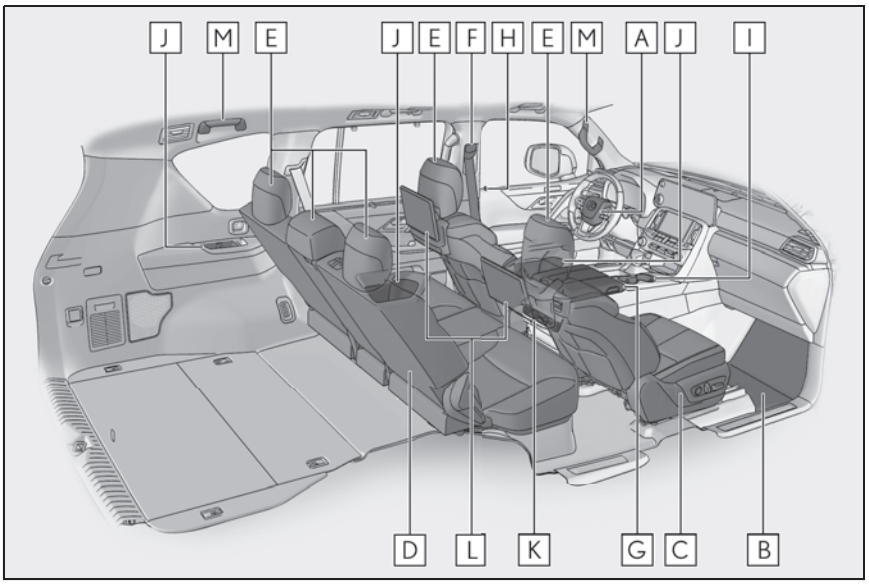
K Rear seat entertainment system*2

L Assist grips P.505
M Rear Multi Operation Panel*2 ..... P.449
N Ottoman P.180

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

▶ 5-passenger models



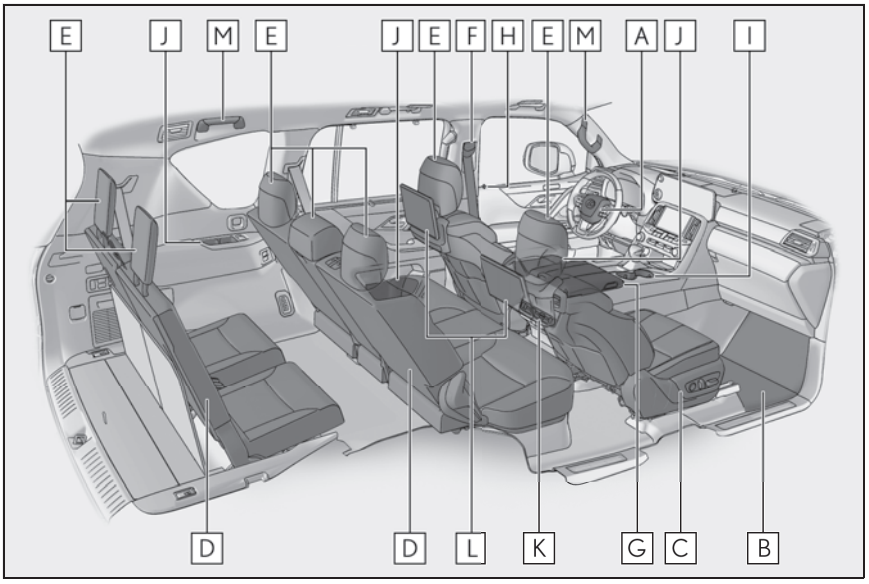
A SRS airbags P.48
B Floor mats P.40
C Front seats P.167
D Rear seats P.171
E Head restraints P.183
F Seat belts P.42
G Console box*1 ..... P.480
Cool box*1 ..... P.489

H Inside lock buttons P.145
I Cup holders P.482
J Bottle holders P.482
K Rear air conditioning system P.465
L Rear seat entertainment system*1, 2
M Assist grips P.505

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

▶ 7-passenger models



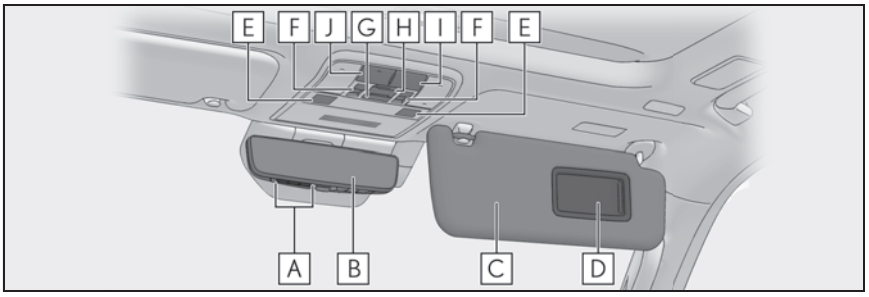
A SRS airbags P.48
B Floor mats P.40
C Front seats P.167
D Rear seats P.171
E Head restraints P.183

F Seat belts P.42
G Console box*1 ..... P.480
Cool box*1 ..... P.489
H Inside lock buttons P.145
I Cup holders P.482
J Bottle holders P.482
K Rear air conditioning system P.465
L Rear seat entertainment system*1, 2
M Assist grips P.505

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■Ceiling (Left-hand drive vehicles)



A Garage door opener buttons*1 ..... P.505

B Inside rear view mirror*1 ..... P.187

Digital Rear-view Mirror*1 ..... P.188

C Sun visors*2 ..... P.490

D Vanity mirrors P.490

E Interior lights P.475

Personal lights*3 ..... P.476

F Moon roof switches*1 ..... P.201

G Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch P.109

H "SOS" button*1 ..... P.104

Indicator lights*1 ..... P.105

I Interior light switch P.475

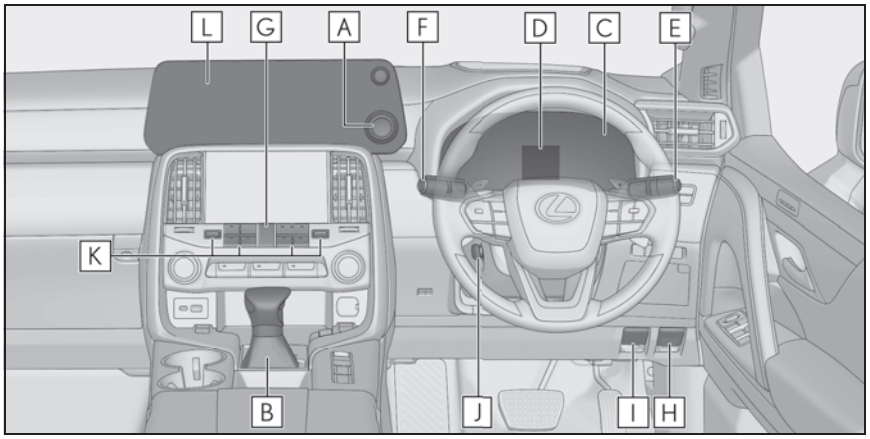
J Door-linked interior light switch P.475

*1: If equipped

*2: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR-BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.63)

*3: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

■Instrument panel (Right-hand drive vehicles)



A Engine switch **P.228**

Starting the engine/changing the modes P.228, 231

Emergency stop of the engine P.574

When the engine will not start P.607

Warning messages P.592

B Shift lever **P.233**

Changing the shift position P.234

Precautions against towing P.577

When the shift lever does not move P.234

C Meters **P.121**

Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument cluster light P.121, 123

Warning lights/indicator lights P.116

When the warning lights come on P.582

D Multi-information display **P.124**

Display P.124

When the warning messages are displayed P.592

E Turn signal lever*1 ..... **P.237**

Headlight switch*1 ..... **P.243**

Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/daytime running lights P.243
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*2 ..... P.246
Front fog lights/rear fog lights P.250

F Windshield wiper and washer switch*1 ..... P.251
Rear window wiper and washer switch*1 ..... P.253
Usage P.251, 253
Adding washer fluid P.542
Headlight cleaners P.251
Warning messages P.542

G Emergency flasher switch P.574

H Fuel filler door opener (include AdBlue™ tank cap*2) P.256

I Hood lock release lever P.532

J Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P.186
Adjustment P.186
Driving position memory P.204

K Air conditioning system P.455
Usage P.455
Rear window defogger P.458

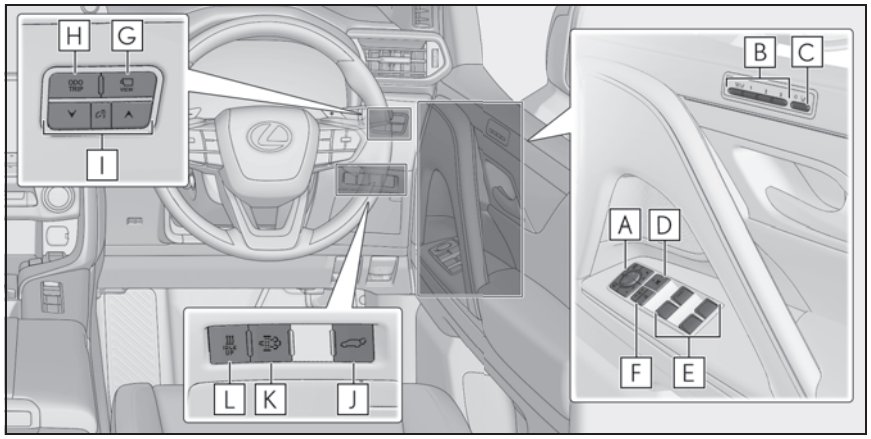
L Audio system*3

*1: They may be located on the opposite side depending on the target region.

*2: If equipped

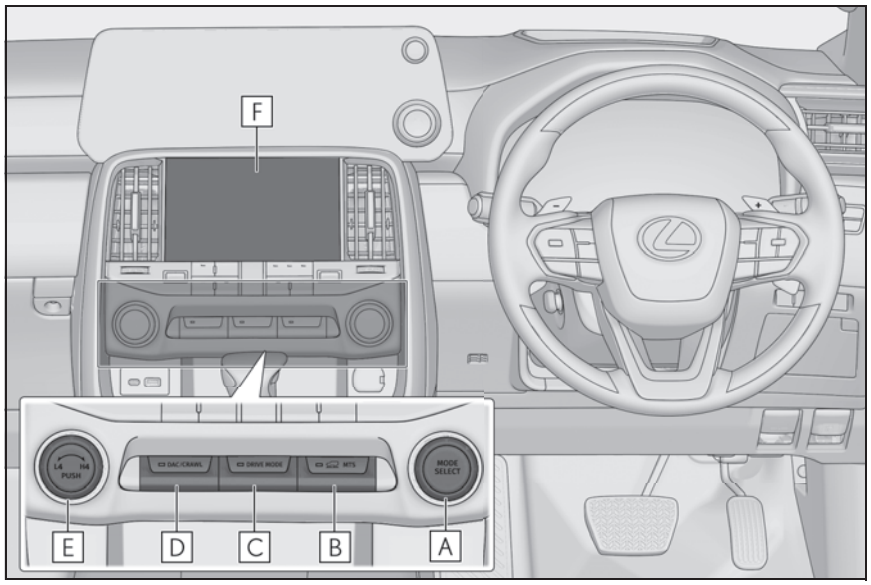
*3: Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■Switches (Right-hand drive vehicles)

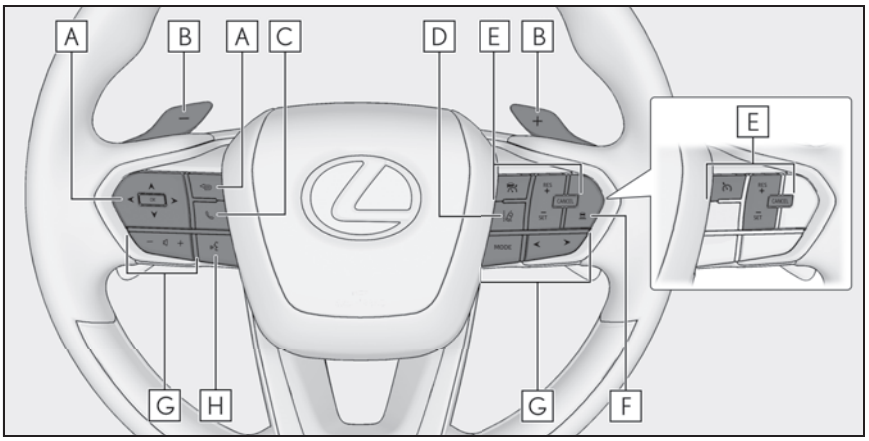


A Outside rear view mirror switches P.196
B Driving position memory buttons P.204
C Mode change button* P.168
D Window lock switch P.201
E Power window switches P.199
F Door lock switches P.144
G VIEW switch P.350
H "ODO TRIP" switch P.123
I Instrument panel light control switches P.123
J Power back door switch P.149
K DPF system switch* P.427
L Heater idle up switch* P.462

*: If equipped



A MODE SELECT switch.....P.407, 419, 423, 426
B MTS switch.....P.423
C DRIVE MODE switch.....P.407
D DAC/CRAWL switch.....P.419, 425
E Four-wheel drive control switch.....P.416
F Front Multi Operation Panel.....P.446



A **Meter control switches** P.125

B **Paddle shift switches** P.235, 236

C **Telephone switch**[*1]

D **LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch**[*2] P.273

E **Cruise control switches**

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range[*2] P.283

Dynamic radar cruise control[*2] P.294

Cruise control[*2] P.304

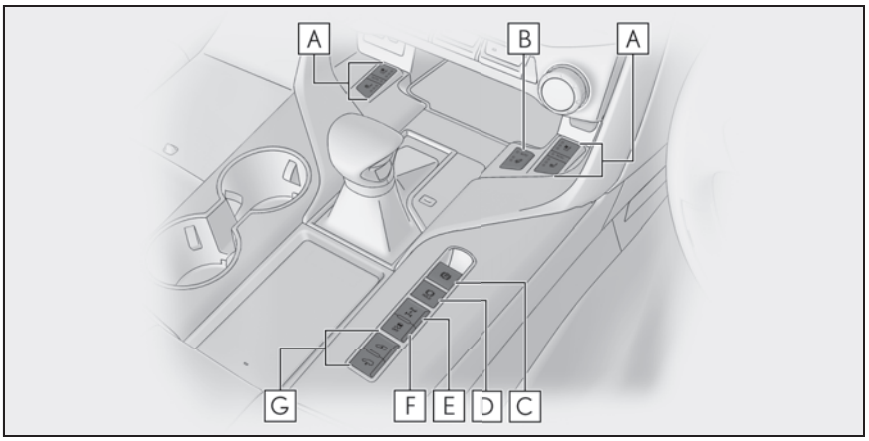
F **Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch**[*2] P.288, 298

G **Audio remote control switches**[*1]

H **Talk switch**[*1]

[*1]: Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

[*2]: If equipped



A Front seat heater switches P.469

Front seat ventilator switches* P.471

B Heated steering wheel switch* P.469

C Parking brake switch P.237

Applying/releasing P.237

Precautions against winter season P.440

Warning buzzer/message P.588, 592

D Brake hold switch P.240

E Center differential lock switch P.417

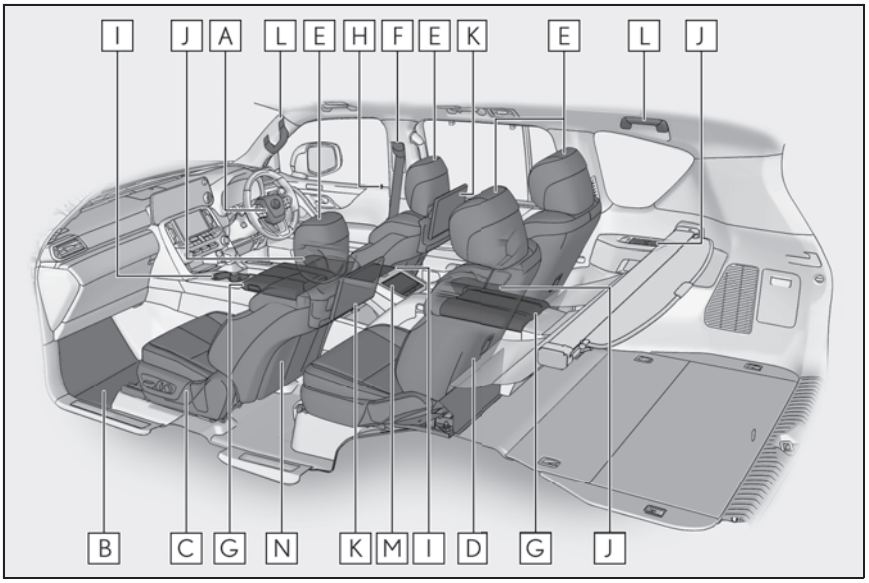
F VSC OFF switch P.432

G Height select switches P.409

*: If equipped

■Interior (Right-hand drive vehicles)

▶ 4-passenger models



A SRS airbags P.48

B Floor mats P.40

C Front seats P.167

D Rear seats P.179

E Head restraints P.183

F Seat belts P.42

G Console box*1 ..... P.480

Cool box*1 ..... P.489

H Inside lock buttons P.145

I Cup holders P.482

J Bottle holders P.482

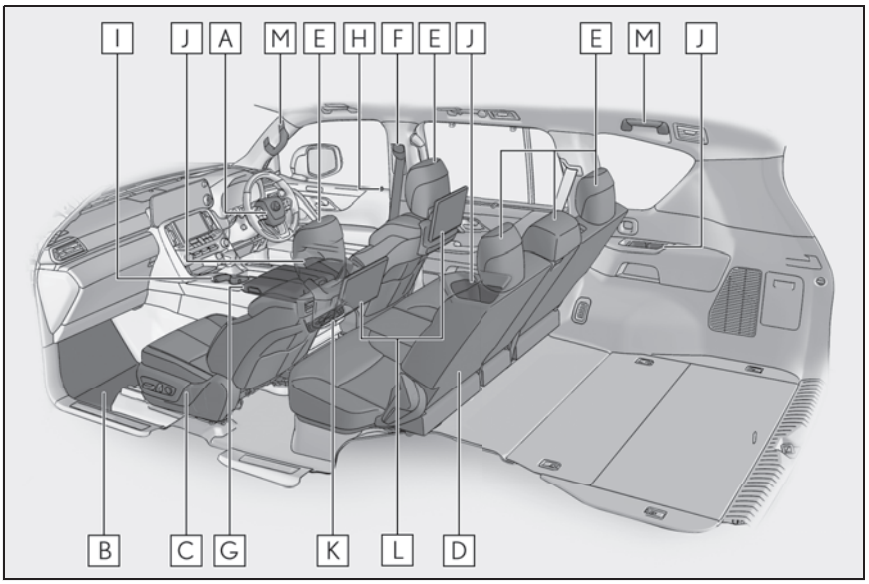
K Rear seat entertainment system*2

L Assist grips P.505
M Rear Multi Operation Panel*2 ..... P.449
N Ottoman P.180

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

▶ 5-passenger models



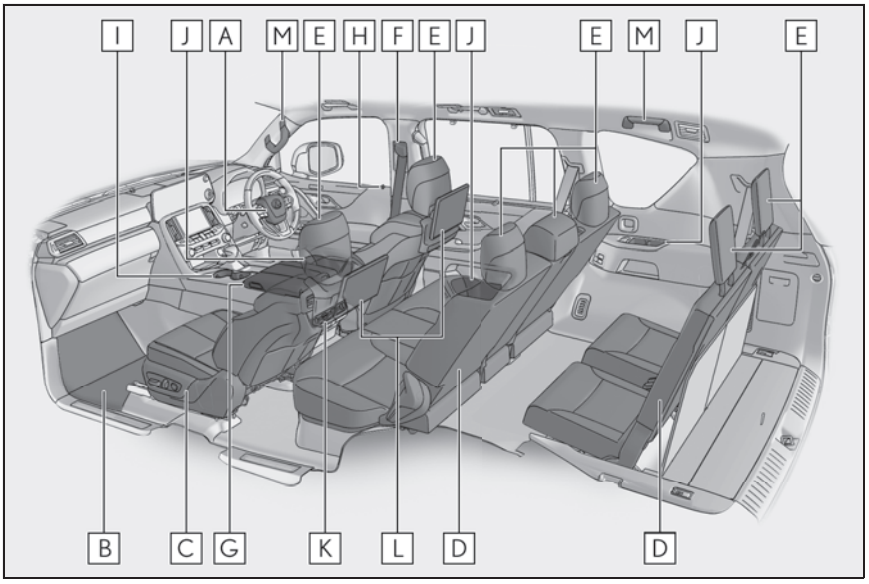
A SRS airbags P.48
B Floor mats P.40
C Front seats P.167
D Rear seats P.171
E Head restraints P.183
F Seat belts P.42
G Console box*1 ..... P.480
Cool box*1 ..... P.489

H Inside lock buttons P.145
I Cup holders P.482
J Bottle holders P.482
K Rear air conditioning system P.465
L Rear seat entertainment system*1, 2
M Assist grips P.505

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

▶ 7-passenger models



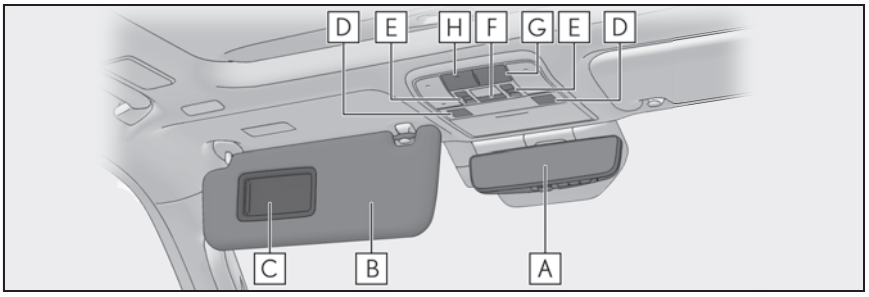
A SRS airbags P.48
B Floor mats P.40
C Front seats P.167
D Rear seats P.171
E Head restraints P.183

F Seat belts P.42
G Console box*1 ..... P.480
Cool box*1 ..... P.489
H Inside lock buttons P.145
I Cup holders P.482
J Bottle holders P.482
K Rear air conditioning system P.465
L Rear seat entertainment system*1, 2
M Assist grips P.505

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■Ceiling (Right-hand drive vehicles)



A Inside rear view mirror*1 ..... P.187

Digital Rear-view Mirror*1 ..... P.188

B Sun visors*2 ..... P.490

C Vanity mirrors P.490

D Interior lights P.475

Personal lights*3 ..... P.476

E Moon roof switches*1 ..... P.201

F Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch P.109

G Interior light switch P.475

H Door-linked interior light switch P.475

*1: If equipped

*2: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR-BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.93)

*3: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

1-1. For safe use

Before driving 40

For safe driving 41

Seat belts 42

SRS airbags 48

Exhaust gas precautions 59

1-2. Child safety

Riding with children 60

Child restraint systems (except for India) 60

Child restraint systems (for India) 88

1-3. Emergency assistance

eCall 104

1-4. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 107

Alarm 108

Fingerprint Authentication System 112

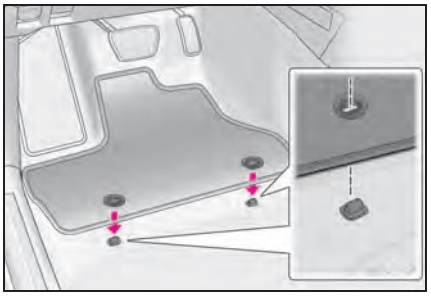
Before driving

Observe the following before starting off in the vehicle to ensure safety of driving.

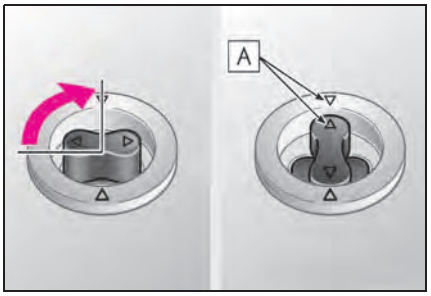
Installing floor mats

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.



Always align the △ marks A .

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

⚠ WARNING

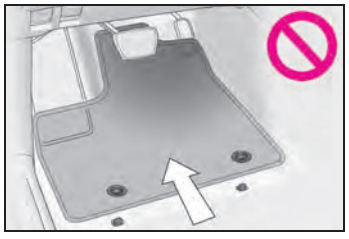
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.

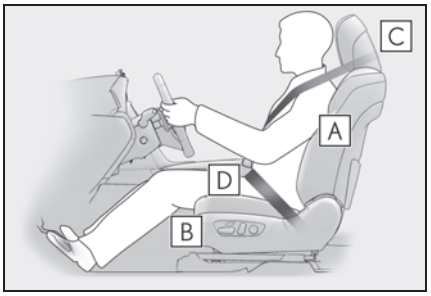


- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

For safe driving

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



A Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P.167)

B Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P.167)

C Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P.183)

D Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P.43)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P.43)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.60, 88)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside rear view mirror (if equipped), Digital Rear-view Mirror (if equipped) and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P.187, 188, 196)

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.
- Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers (→P.172, 176) when using the seat belts for the second outboard seats or third seats*.

*: If equipped

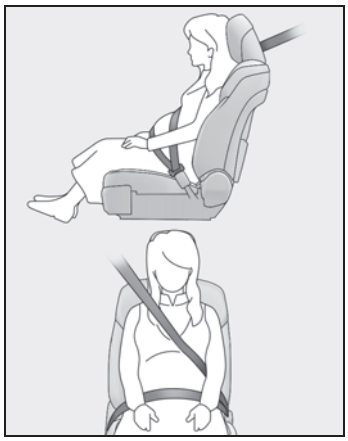
WARNING

■ Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.43)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.



■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.43)

■ When children are in the vehicle

→P.83

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belt cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

Correct use of the seat belts

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.

● Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

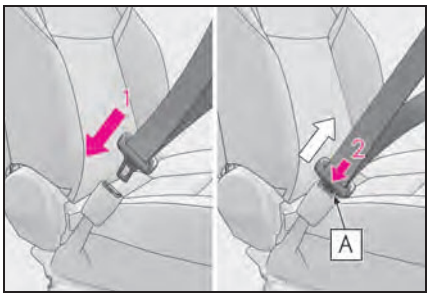
● Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.60, 88)

● When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P.42)

■ Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt



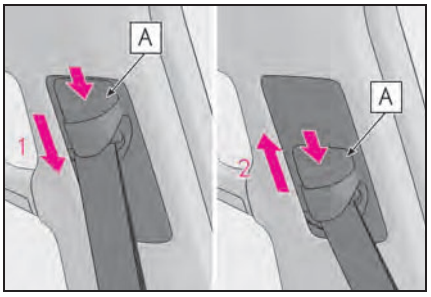
1 To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

2 To release the seat belt, press the release button A .

■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)



1 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button A .

2 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up while pressing the release button A .

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

WARNING

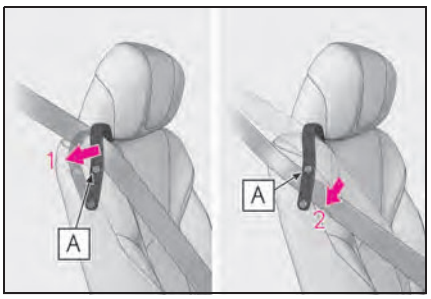
■ Adjustable shoulder anchor

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Seat belt guide (if equipped)

If the seat belt comes into contact with the neck, change the position where to pass the seat belt.

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P.43)



1 Detach the button [A].

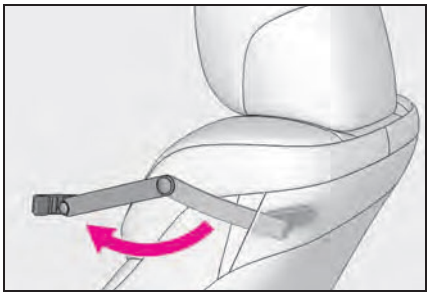
2 Change the position where to pass the seat belt.

After changing the position, attach the button [A].

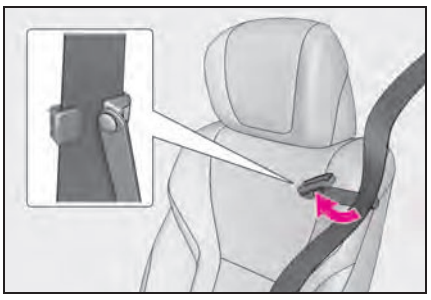
Seat belt rerouter (if equipped)

If the seat belt obstructs the view depending on the angle of the seat back, the view can be improved by using the seat belt rerouter.

1 Pull the seat belt rerouter from the seatback pocket.



2 Slide the belt past the slot of the seat belt rerouter.



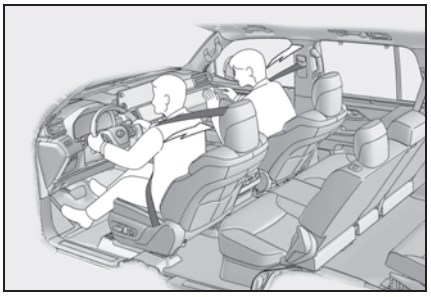
Seat belt pretensioners

Left-hand drive vehicles

▶ 5-passenger and 7-passenger models (front seats)

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision or a vehicle rollover.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact or a rear impact.

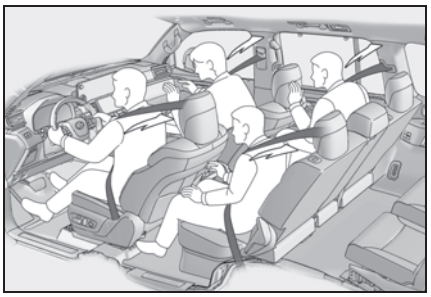


▶ 5-passenger and 7-passenger models (front and second outboard seats [if equipped])

The pretensioners help the seat belts to

quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision or a vehicle rollover.

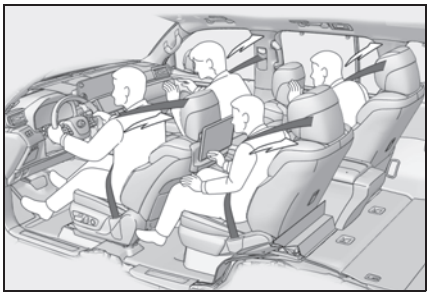
The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact or a rear impact.



▶ 4-passenger models (front and second outboard seats)

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision or a vehicle rollover.

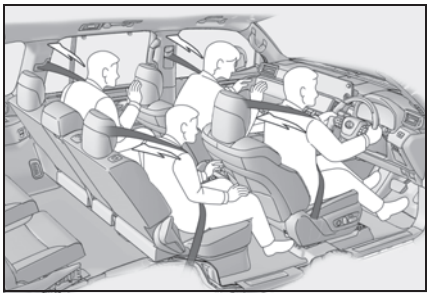
The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact or a rear impact.



■ **Right-hand drive vehicles (front and second outboard seats)**

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision or a vehicle rollover.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact or a rear impact.



■ **Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated**

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

■ **PCS-linked seat belt pretensioner control (vehicles with Lexus Safety System +)**

If the PCS (pre-collision system) determines that the possibility of a collision with a vehicle is high, the seat belt pretensioners will be prepared to operate.

WARNING

■ Seat belt pretensioners

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

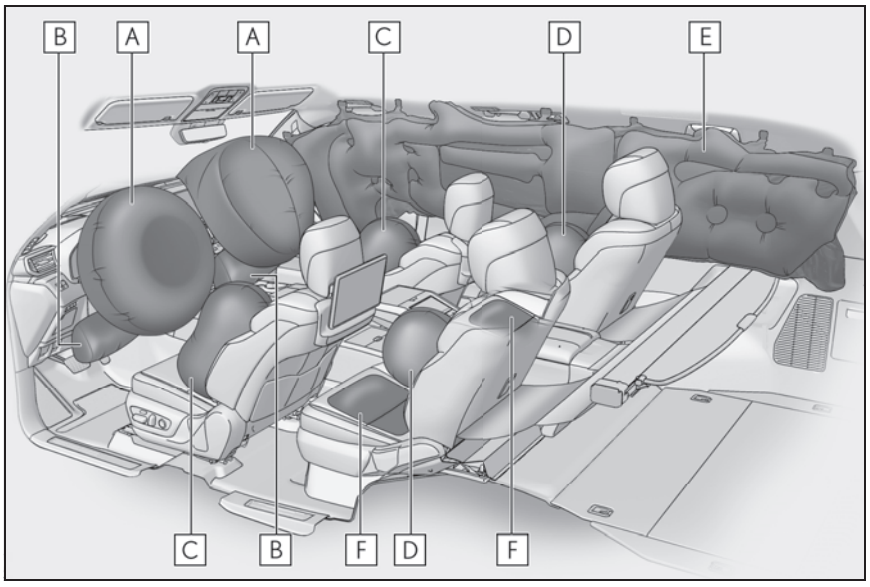
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

SRS airbag system

Location of the SRS airbags (4-passenger models)



▶ SRS front airbags

A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag

Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

B SRS knee airbags

Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

C SRS front side airbags

Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

D SRS rear side airbags

Can help protect the torso of occupants in the rear seats

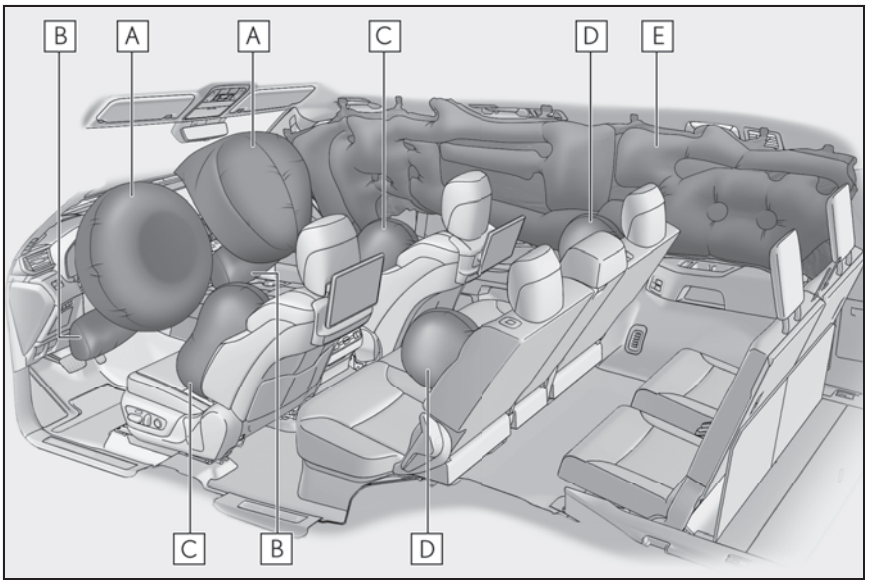
E SRS curtain shield airbags

Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

F SRS seat cushion airbags

Can help restrain the rear seat occupants

■ **Location of the SRS airbags (5-passenger and 7-passenger models)**



▶ SRS front airbags

A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag

Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

B SRS knee airbags

Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

C SRS front side airbags

Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

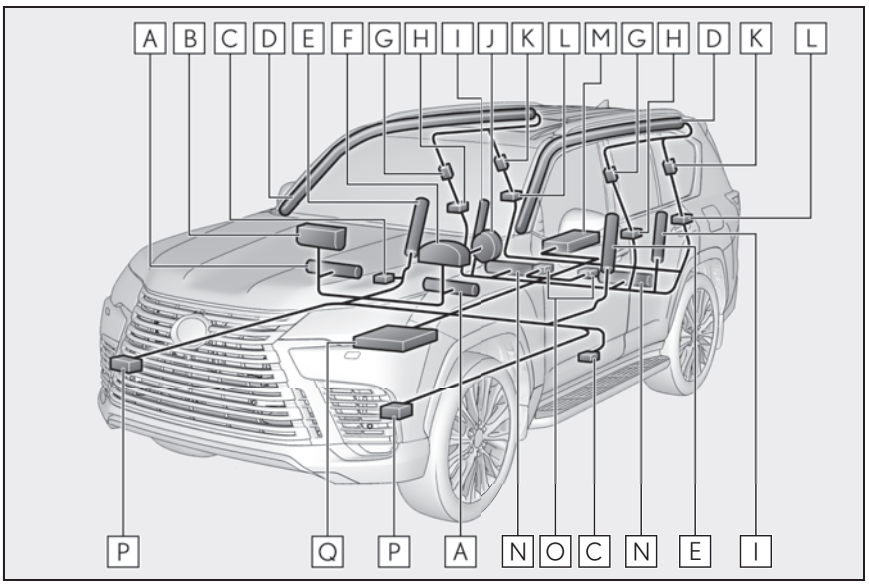
D SRS rear side airbags

Can help protect the torso of occupants in the second outer seats

E SRS curtain shield airbags

Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

■ SRS airbag system components (4-passenger models)



A Knee airbags

B Front passenger airbag

C Side impact sensors (front door)

D Curtain shield airbags

E Front side airbags

F SRS warning light and “RSCA OFF” indicator light

G Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters (front seats)

H Side impact sensors (front)

I Rear side airbags

J Driver airbag

K Seat belt pretensioners (rear seats)

L Side impact sensors (rear)

M Safing sensor (rear)

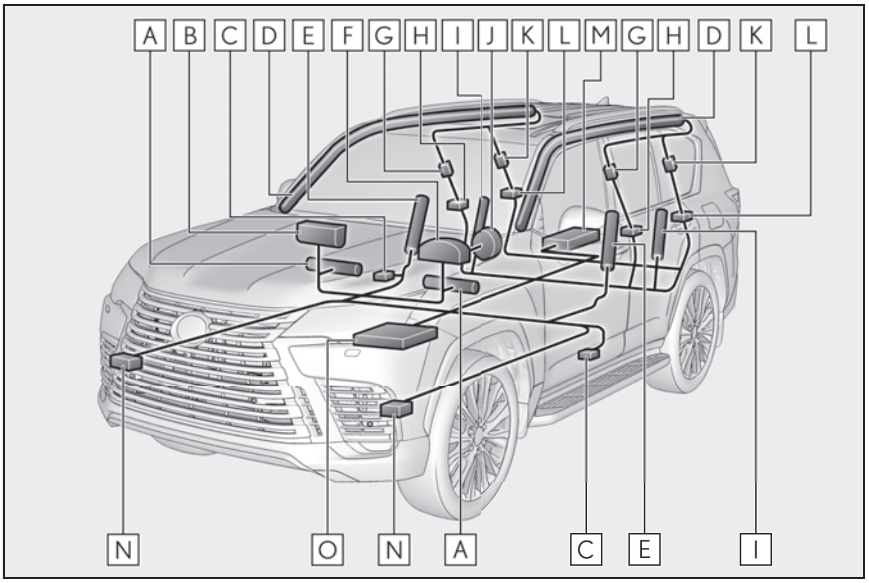
N Seat cushion airbags

O Rear seat belt buckle switches

P Front impact sensors

Q Airbag sensor assembly

■ **SRS airbag system components (5-passenger and 7-passenger models)**



A Knee airbags

B Front passenger airbag

C Side impact sensors (front door)

D Curtain shield airbags

E Front side airbags

F SRS warning light and "RSCA OFF" indicator light

G Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters (front seats)

H Side impact sensors (front)

I Rear side airbags (second outboard seats)

J Driver airbag

K Seat belt pretensioners (second outboard seats) (if equipped)

L Side impact sensors (rear)

M Safing sensor (rear)

N Front impact sensors

O Airbag sensor assembly

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- All of the doors will be unlocked. (→P.143)
- The brakes and stop lights will be controlled automatically. (→P.431)
- The interior lights will turn on automatically. (→P.475)
- The emergency flashers will turn on automatically. (→P.574)
- Fuel supply to the engine will be stopped. (gasoline engine) (→P.581)
- Vehicles with eCall: If any of the following situations occur, the system is designed to send an emergency call* to the eCall control center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P.104)
  - An SRS airbag is deployed.
  - A seat belt pretensioner is activated.
  - The vehicle is involved in a severe rear-end collision.
  - The vehicle is involved in a rollover accident while the "RSCA OFF" indicator is on.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.105)

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags/SRS seat cushion airbags (if equipped))**

- The SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

- If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
- If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle underrides, or goes under, the bed of a truck

- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners and SRS seat cushion airbags will activate.
- Vehicles with SRS seat cushion airbags: The SRS seat cushion airbags on the rear seat will not operate if the occupant is not wearing a seat belt.

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)**

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that

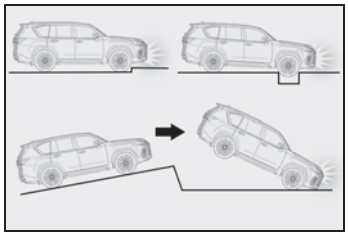
exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 -30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).

- Both SRS curtain shield airbags may deploy in the event of a severe side collision.
- Both SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of vehicle rollover.
- Both SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

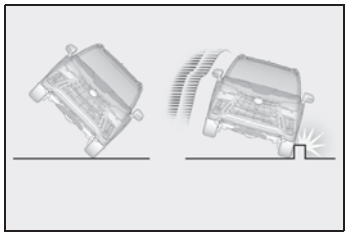
The SRS front airbags, SRS side and curtain shield airbags and SRS seat cushion airbags (if equipped) may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy under the situations shown in the illustration.

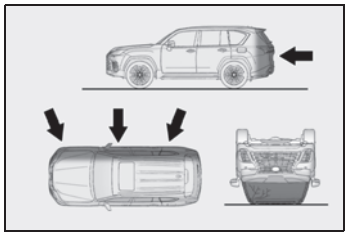
- The angle of vehicle tip-up is marginal.
- The vehicle skids and hits a curb stone.



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags/SRS seat cushion airbags (if equipped))

The SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbags may occur.

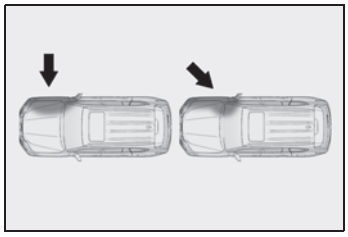
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

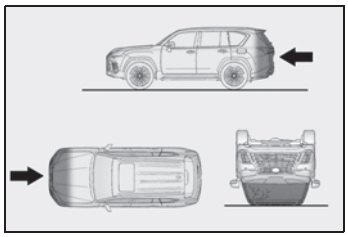
The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle



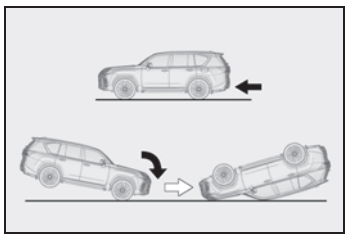
The SRS side airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



The SRS curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it pitches end over end, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

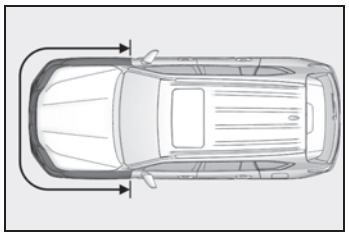
- Collision from the rear
- Pitching end over end



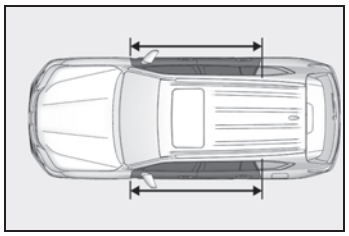
■ When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

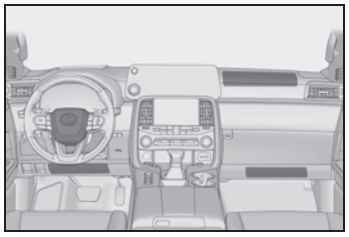
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbags (if equipped) to inflate.



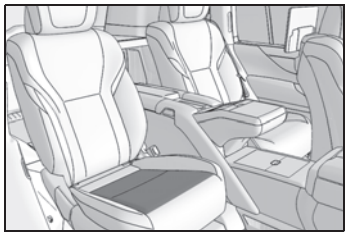
- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged, deformed or has had a hole made in it, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



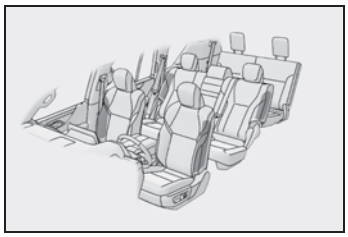
- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



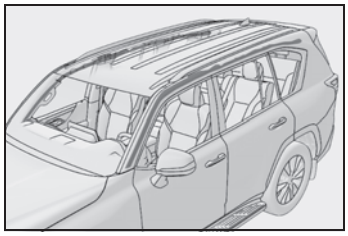
- Vehicles with SRS seat cushion airbags: The seat cushion surface is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



● The surface of the seats with the SRS side airbag is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



● The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the SRS curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

● The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.

● The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.

Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

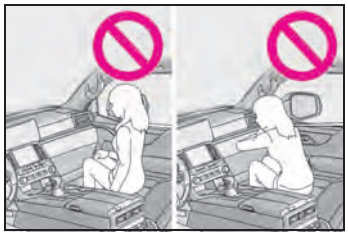
- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

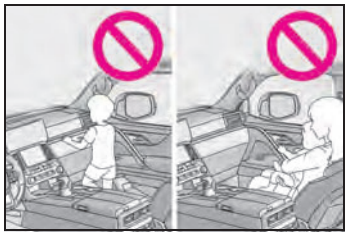
● The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.

WARNING

- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P.60, 88)
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



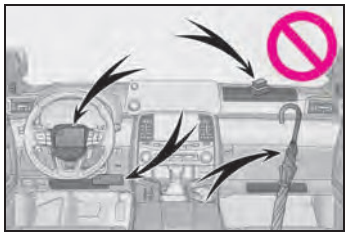
- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.



- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.

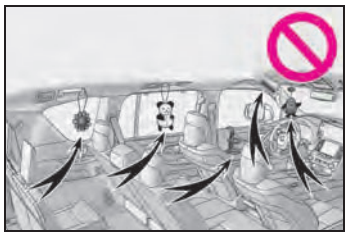
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



WARNING

- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield, side window, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbags (if equipped) inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the SRS side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbags (if equipped) from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the SRS side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbags (if equipped) to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components or the front doors. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars, roof side rails, front door panels, front door trims or front door speakers
- Modifications to the front door panel (such as making a hole in it)
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows, winches or roof luggage carrier
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as RF-transmitter and CD players

Deactivating the SRS curtain shield airbags in a vehicle roll-over

Use the meter control switches to turn on/off the function. (→P.125)

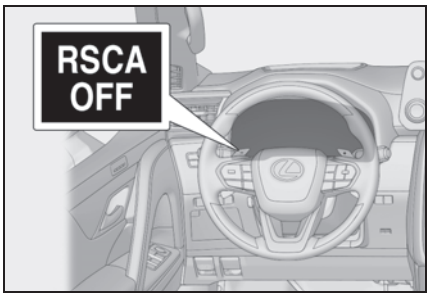
1 Press the meter control switch to select ⚙.

2 Press the meter control switch to select “Vehicle Settings”.

3 Press the meter control switch to select “RSCA” and then press OK.

When the SRS curtain shield airbags are deactivated, the “RSCA OFF” indicator turns on (only when the engine switch is in ON.)

The roll sensing function for the SRS curtain shield airbags and seat belt pretensioners will turn back on automatically each time the engine switch is turned to ON.



■ The function only should be deactivated

In a situation where inflation is not desired (such as during extreme off-road driving).

■ Operating conditions when the “RSCA OFF” indicator is on

- The SRS curtain shield airbags and seat belt pretensioners will not activate in a vehicle rollover.
- The SRS curtain shield airbags will activate in a severe side impact.
- The seat belt pretensioners will activate in a severe frontal or severe side collision.

NOTICE

■ For normal driving

Make sure the “RSCA OFF” indicator is not turned on. If it is left on, the SRS curtain shield airbags will not activate in the event of an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhaled.

WARNING

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

- Keep the back door closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the back door is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

■ Exhaust pipe

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Riding with children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle. Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally. (→P.146, 201)
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, back door, seats etc.

⚠ WARNING

■ When children are in the vehicle

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the side windows, the moon roof (if equipped) or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Child restraint systems (except for India)

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

- Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.
- The use of a Lexus genuine child restraint system is recommended, as it is safer to use in this vehicle. Lexus genuine child restraint systems are made specifically for Lexus vehicles. They can be purchased at a Lexus dealer.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.61

When using a child restraint system: P.62

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position: P.64, 69, 75

Child restraint system installation method: P.81

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.82
- Fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchor-

age: P.84
- Using a top tether anchorage: P.86

Points to remember

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for the child restraint system installation.
- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles.
  Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions. (→P.64, 69, 75)

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle (→P.64, 69, 75). Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment.

When using a child restraint system

When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat

For the safety of a child, install child restraint systems to a rear seats. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

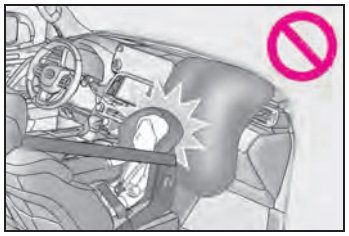
- Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.
- If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

WARNING

When using a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.

WARNING

WARNING

- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars, or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.

- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.

WARNING

- Use a child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles).

- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.
- When installing a child restraint system on the second center seat (if equipped), adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. The seatbacks must be adjusted to the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Child restraint system installed on the third seat (if equipped) should not contact the second seatbacks.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (except for ASEAN countries and Latin American and the Caribbean countries)

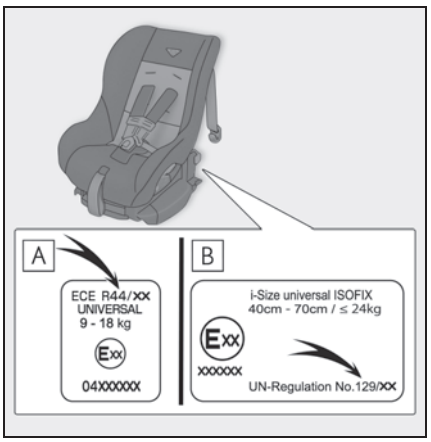
■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.65) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark

attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation number

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*3

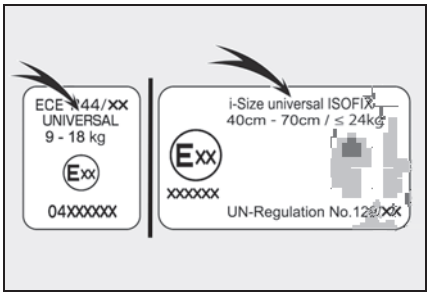
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark*3

The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"



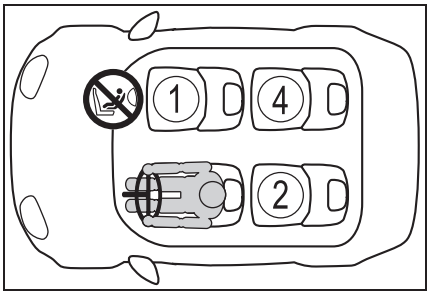
*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

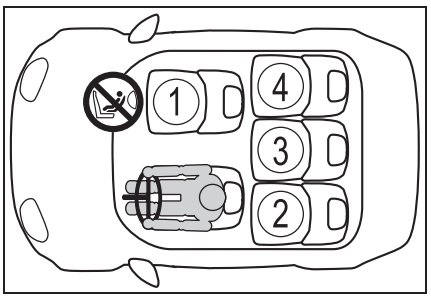
*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ **Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems:**

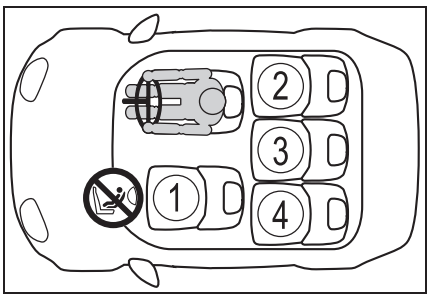
▶ Left-hand drive vehicles for 4-passenger models



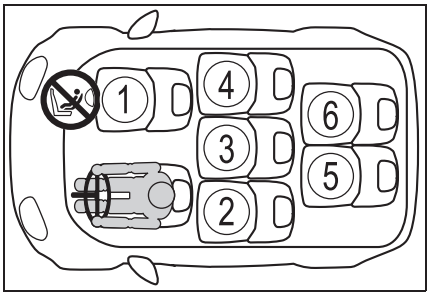
▶ Left-hand drive vehicles for 5- passenger models



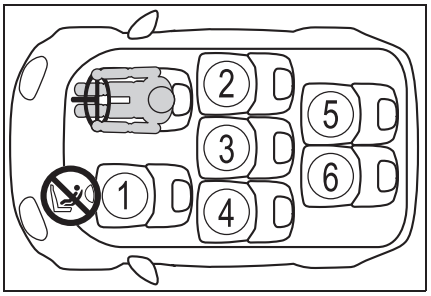
▶ Right-hand drive vehicles for 5-passenger models



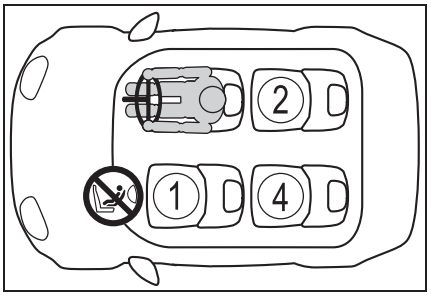
▶ Left-hand drive vehicles for 7-passenger models



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles for 7-passenger models



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles for 4-passenger models



1 *1, 2, 3	UF *4
2 *2, 3	U
3 *2, 3	U
4 *2, 3, 5	U

⑤ *2, 3	U
⑥ *2, 3	U

U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

UF Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

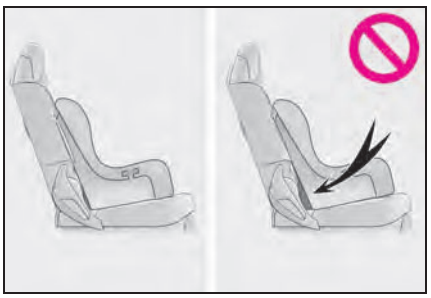
Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.

Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

*5: Adjust the seat to the lowest position. (Left-hand drive vehicles for 4-passenger models only)

Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position						
Seat position number	①	②	③	④ *1	⑤	⑥
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No	No	No

Seating position						
Seat position number	①	②	③	④*1	⑤	⑥
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3	No	R1*2, R2X*2, R2*2, R3*2	No	No
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	No
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	B2, B3	No	B2, B3	No	No

*1: Adjust the seat to the lowest position. (Left-hand drive vehicles for 4-passenger models only)

*2: Operate the front passenger's seat adjustment switch to adjust the front passenger seat to the front most position. (4-passenger models only)

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different "fixture". The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for "fixture" mentioned in the table above. For kind of "fixture" relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems

Fixture	Description
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for ASEAN countries)

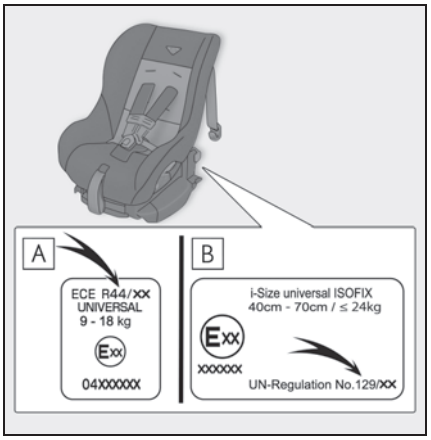
Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.71) displays the type of child restraint sys-

tems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols. Also, the recommended child restraint system that is suitable for your child can be selected.
Otherwise, check [Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table] for recommended child restraint systems. (→P.75)
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ **Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems**

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation number

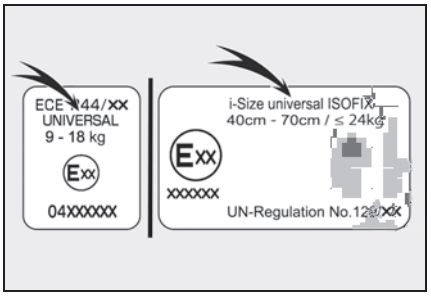
A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark[*3]
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark[*3]
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"

- “semi-universal”
- “restricted”
- “vehicle specific”



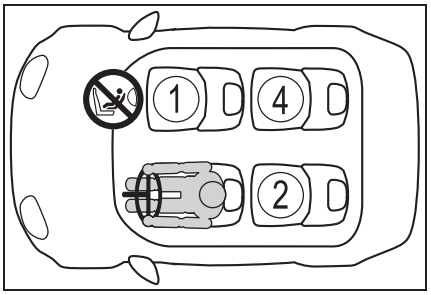
*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

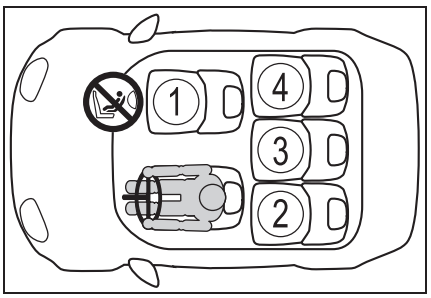
*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

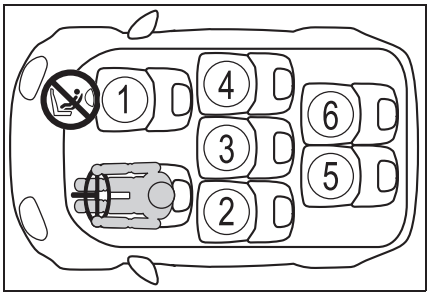
▶ Left-hand drive vehicles for 4-passenger models



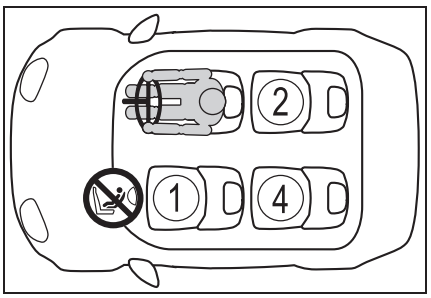
▶ Left-hand drive vehicles for 5-passenger models



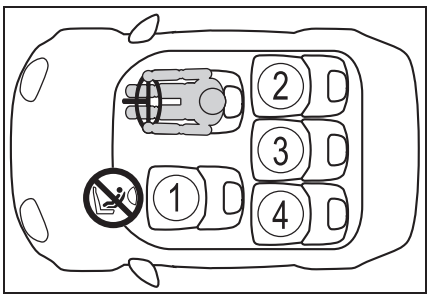
▶ Left-hand drive vehicles for 7-passenger models



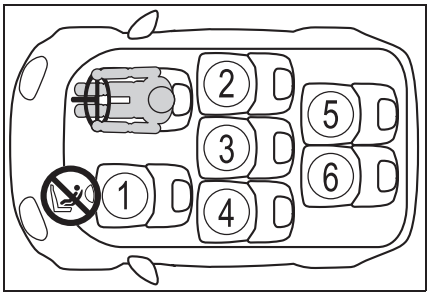
▶ Right-hand drive vehicles for 4-passenger models



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles for 5-passenger models



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles for 7-passenger models



1 *1, 2, 3	UF *4
2 *2, 3	U L
3 *2, 3	U
4 *2, 3, 5	U L
5 *2, 3	U
6 *2, 3	U

U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

UF Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

L Suitable for child restraint systems given on recommended child restraint systems and compatibility table. (→P.75)

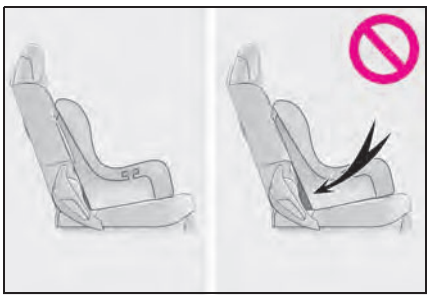
Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.

Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

*5: Adjust the seat to the lowest position. (Left-hand drive vehicles for 4-passenger models only)

■ Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position						
Seat position number	①	②	③	④*1	⑤	⑥
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3	No	R1*2, R2X*2, R2*2, R3*2	No	No
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	No
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	B2, B3	No	B2, B3	No	No

*1: Adjust the seat to the lowest position. (Left-hand drive vehicles for 4-passenger models only)

*2: Operate the front passenger's seat adjustment switch to adjust the front passenger seat to the front most position. (4-passenger models only)

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different "fixture". The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for "fixture" mentioned in the table above. For kind of "fixture" relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

■ Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table

	Recommended Child Restraint System	Seating position					
		①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥
i-Size child Restraint systems	i-Size MIDI (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the ASEAN countries.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Latin American and the Caribbean countries)

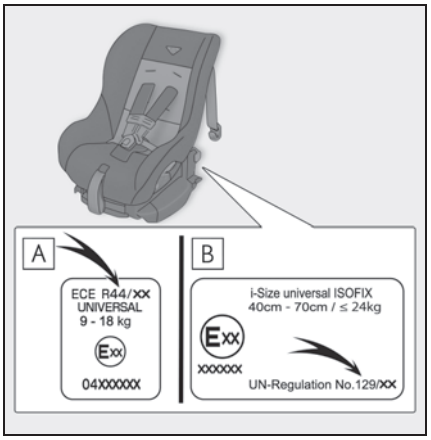
■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.77)

displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols. Also, the recommended child restraint system that is suitable for your child can be selected.
Otherwise, check [Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table] for recommended child restraint systems. (→P.80)
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ **Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems**

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation number

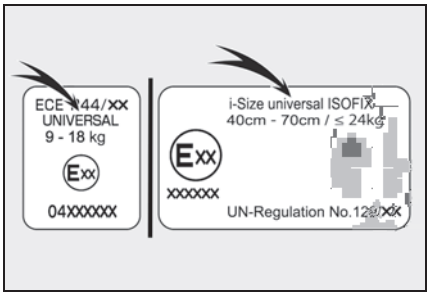
A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark[*3]
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark[*3]
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"

- “semi-universal”
- “restricted”
- “vehicle specific”



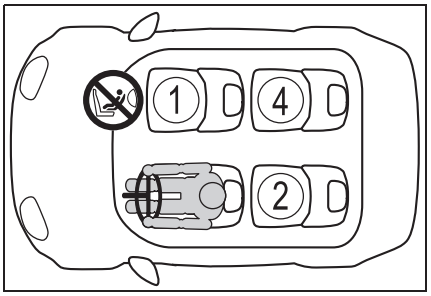
*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

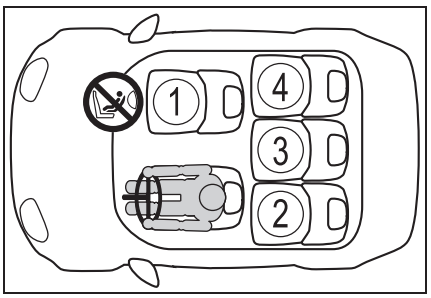
*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

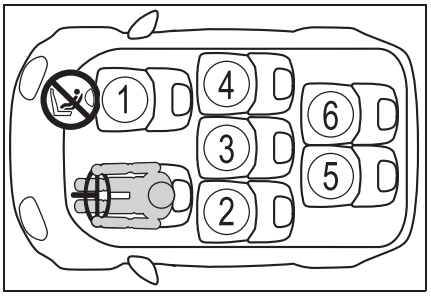
▶ 4-passenger models



▶ 5-passenger models



▶ 7-passenger models



1 *1, 2, 3	UF *4
2 *2, 3	UL
3 *2, 3	U
4 *2, 3, 5	UL

⑤ *2, 3	U
⑥ *2, 3	U

U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

UF Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

L Suitable for child restraint systems given on recommended child restraint systems and compatibility table. (→P.80)

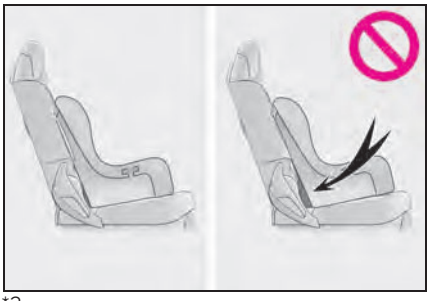
Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.

Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

*5: Adjust the seat to the lowest position. (4-passenger models only)

■ Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position						
Seat position number	①	②	③	④ *1	⑤	⑥
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No

Seating position						
Seat position number	①	②	③	④ *1	⑤	⑥
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3	No	R1*2, R2X*2, R2*2, R3*2	No	No
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	No
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	B2, B3	No	B2, B3	No	No

*1: Adjust the seat to the lowest position. (4-passenger models only)

*2: Operate the front passenger's seat adjustment switch to adjust the front passenger seat to the front most position. (4-passenger models only)

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different "fixture". The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for "fixture" mentioned in the table above. For kind of "fixture" relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems

Fixture	Description
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table

	Recommended Child Restraint System	Seating position					
		①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥
i-Size child Restraint systems	i-Size MIDI (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the Latin America and the Caribbean countries.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

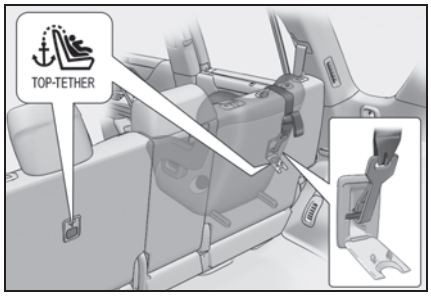
- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system installation method

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.82

Installation method		Page
ISOFIX lower anchorage attachment		P.84
Top tether anchorage attachment		P.86

Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt

■ Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

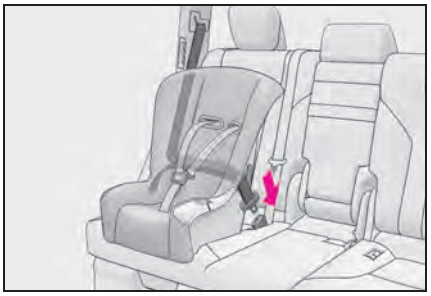
If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child restraint system. (→P.64, 69, 75)

1 If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P.62 for the front passenger seat adjustment.

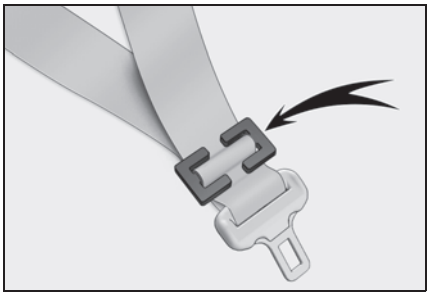
2 Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

3 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.183)

4 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



5 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



6 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.83)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer:
Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

⚠ WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.

WARNING

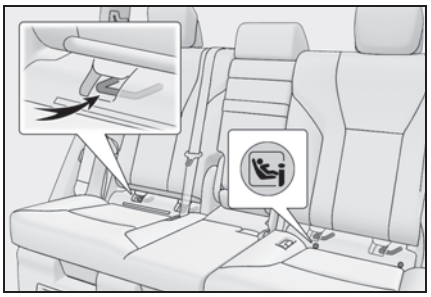
- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage

ISOFIX lower anchorages (ISOFIX child restraint system)

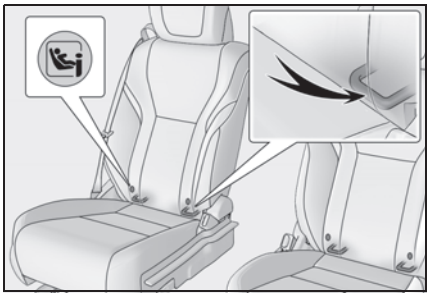
▶ 5-passenger and 7-passenger models

Lower anchorages are provided for the second outboard seats. (Marks displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)



▶ 4-passenger models

Lower anchorages are provided for the each second seats. (Marks displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)



Installation with ISOFIX lower anchorage (ISOFIX child restraint system)

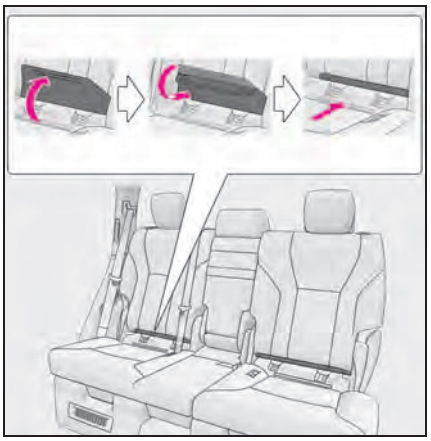
Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child restraint system. (→P.64, 69, 75)

1. Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.
2. If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.183)

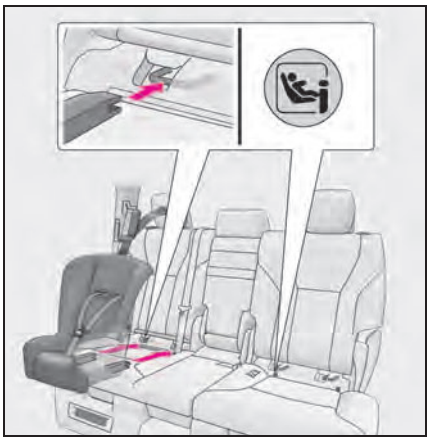
3 5-passenger and 7-passenger models: Open the cover.

Put the cover between the seat cushion and seatback.



4 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



5 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.83)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

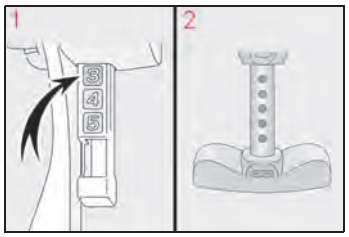
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchorages, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorages and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ When using an "i-Size MIDI" (for ASEAN countries and Latin America and the Caribbean countries)

Adjust the support leg and ISOFIX connectors as follows:

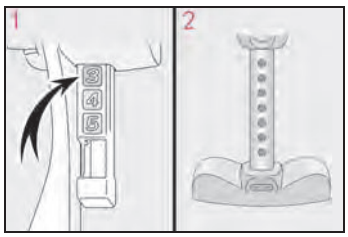
▶ 5-passenger and 7-passenger models



1 Lock the ISOFIX connectors where number 3 can be seen.

2 Lock the support leg where 5 holes can be seen.

▶ 4-passenger models



1 Lock the ISOFIX connectors where number 3 can be seen.

2 Lock the support leg where 7 holes can be seen.

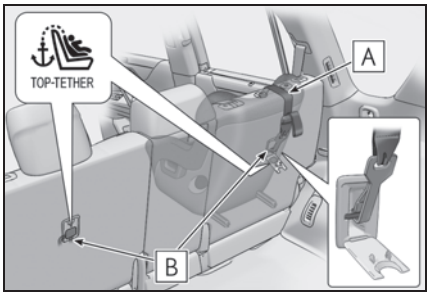
Using a top tether anchorage

■ Top tether anchorages

▶ 5-passenger and 7-passenger models

Top tether anchorages are provided for the second outboard seats.

Use top tether anchorages when fixing the top strap.



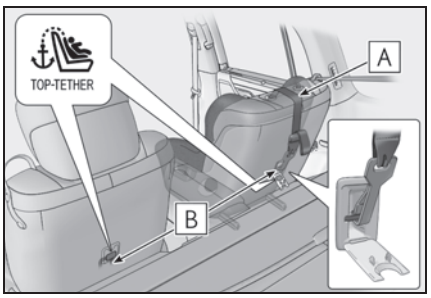
A Top strap

B Top tether anchorages

▶ 4-passenger models

Anchor brackets are provided for each second seat.

Use anchor brackets when fixing the top tether strap.



A Top strap

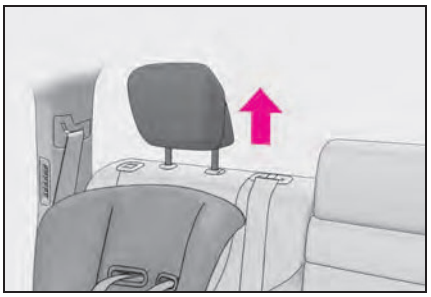
B Top tether anchorages

■ Fixing the top strap to the top tether anchorages

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Adjust the head restraint to the upmost position.

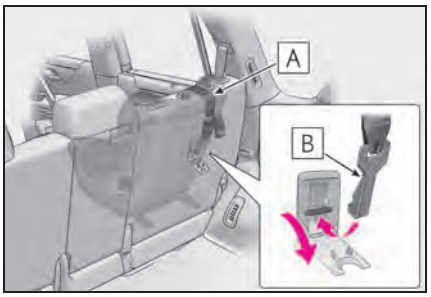
If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system or top strap installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. (→P.183)



2 Open the top tether anchorage cover, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched. (→P.83)

When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, be sure to have the top strap pass underneath the head restraint.



A Top strap

B Hook

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the top strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the top strap to anything other than the top tether anchorages.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, after the head restraint has been raised and then the top tether anchorage has been fixed, do not lower the head restraint.

NOTICE

■ Top tether anchorages

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

Child restraint systems (for India)

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.88

Child restraint system: P.89

When using a child restraint system: P.91

Child restraint system installation method

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.94
- Fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor: P.98
- Using an anchor bracket (for top strap): P.102

Points to remember

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for the child restraint system installation.
- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles.

Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions. (→P.89)

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

WARNING

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P.94, 98) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment.

Child restraint system

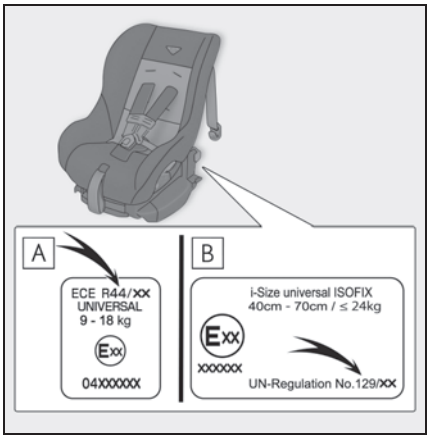
Install the available child restraint system in vehicle upon confirming the following items.

■ Standards for child restraint systems

Use a child restraint system that conforms to ECE R44[*1] or ECE R129[*1, 2].

The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.

Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation number

A ECE R44 approval mark[*3]

The weight range of the child who is applicable for an ECE R44 approval mark is indicated.

B ECE R129 approval mark[*3]

The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an ECE R129 approval mark is indicated.

[*1]: ECE R44 and ECE R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

[*2]: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

[*3]: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ **Mass group (ECE R44 only)**

This Mass group table is required when confirming the child restraint system compatibility. Confirm in accordance with the child restraint system compatibility table. (→P.94, 98)

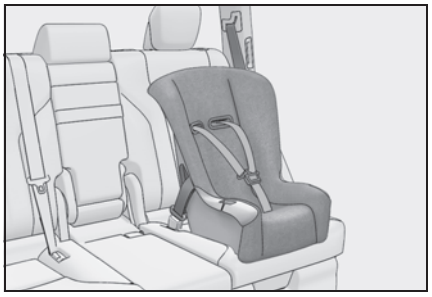
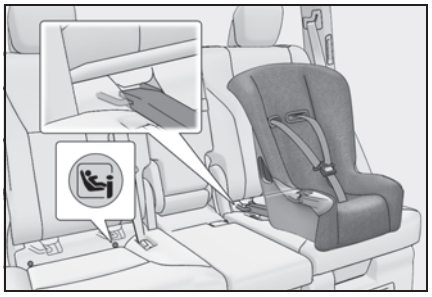
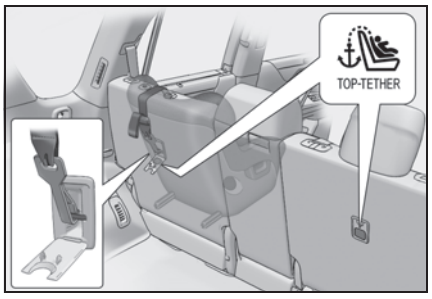
The child restraint system which conforms to the standard of ECE R44 is categorized into 5 groups according to the weight of the child.

Mass group	Child weight	Reference age*
Group 0	until 10 kg (22 lb.)	about 9 months
Group 0+	until 13 kg (28 lb.)	about 1.5 years
Group I	9 - 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)	from 9 months - about 4 years
Group II	15 - 25 kg (34 to 55 lb.)	from 3 years - about 7 years
Group III	22 - 36 kg (49 to 79 lb.)	from 6 years - about 12 years

*: The age range is a standard approximation. Choose according to the weight of the child.

■ **Types of child restraint system installation methods**

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.94
ISOFIX rigid anchor attachment		P.98
Anchor brackets (for top strap) attachment		P.102

When using a child restraint system

■ When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat

For the safety of a child, install a child restraint system to a rear seat.
When installing a child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

- Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

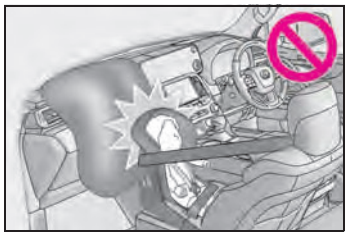
- If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

WARNING

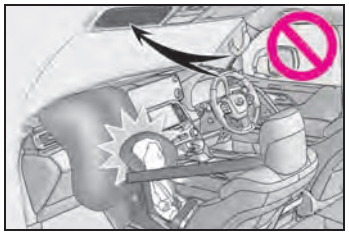
■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



WARNING

WARNING

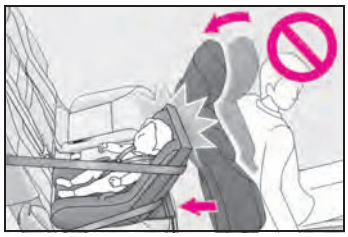
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars, or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.

- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.

WARNING

- Use a child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver' s seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the left-hand rear seat.



- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.
- When installing a child restraint system on the second center seat, adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. The seatbacks must be adjusted to the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Child restraint system installed on the third seat (if equipped) should not contact the second seatbacks.

Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt

Child restraint system compatibility for various seating positions

The child restraint system compatibility table (→P.94), with symbols, displays the types of usable child restraint systems and possible seating position installation for the child restraint system owned by the customer. Confirm also in accordance with "Confirming the possible installation seating positions and the Mass Group for the seat belt installation type child restraint systems".

Confirming the possible installation seating positions and the Mass Group for the seat belt installation type child restraint systems

1 Confirm the corresponding "Mass group" from the weight of the child (→P.90)

(Ex. 1) When the weight is 12 kg, "Mass group 0+"

(Ex. 2) When the weight is 15 kg, "Mass group I"

2 Confirm and select the appropriate possible seating position for the child restraint system and the corresponding type of system from the "Child restraint systems fastened with SEAT BELT - Compatibility table". (→P.94)

Child restraint systems fastened with SEAT BELT - Compatibility table

If your child restraint system is of "universal" category, you can install it on the positions mentioned by U or UF in the table below (UF is for forward-facing child restraint systems only). Child restraint systems category and mass group can be

found in the child restraint system manual.

If your child restraint system is not of the "universal" category (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Mass groups	Seating position			
	Front passenger seat	Second seat		Third seat (if equipped)
		Outboard*2	Center*2	Outboard*2
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)	X	U	U	U
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)	X	U	U	U
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)	Rearward-facing — X	U	U	U
	Forward-facing — UF*1, 2			
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.)	UF*1, 2	U	U	U

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

X: Not suitable seat position for children in this mass group.

U: Suitable for "universal" category child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.

*1: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

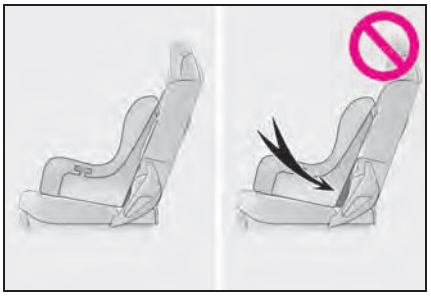
*2: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be

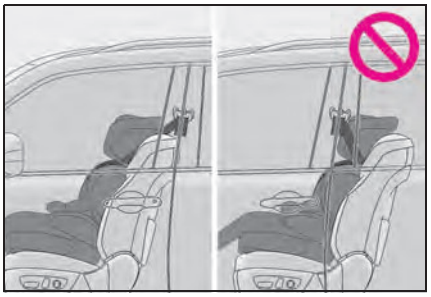
sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the INDIA.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

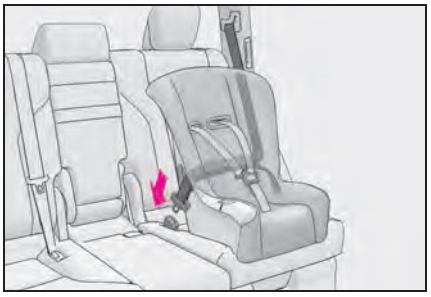
■ Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

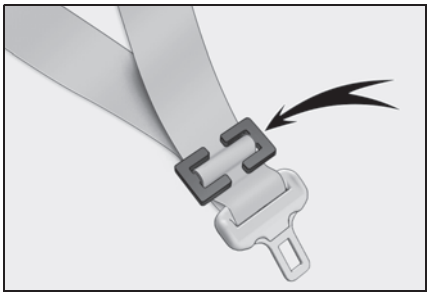
1. If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P.91 for the front passenger seat adjustment.
2. Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.
3. If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head

restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.183)

4 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.
Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



5 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



6 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.97)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion.
Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer:
Locking clip for child restraint system
(Part No. 73119-22010)

⚠ WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.

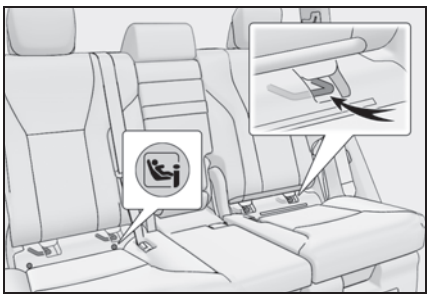
WARNING

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor

ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchors are provided for the second outboard seats. (Marks displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions

The child restraint system compatibility table (→P.98), with symbols, displays the types of usable child restraint systems and possible seating position installation for the child restraint system owned by the customer. Confirm in accordance with the listed Size class, Anchor, as well as "Confirming the Mass group and Size class for ECE R44 ISOFIX corresponding child restraint systems".

Confirming the Mass group and Size class for ECE R44 ISOFIX corresponding child restraint systems

1 Confirm the corresponding "Mass group" from the weight of the child (→P.90)

(Ex. 1) When the weight is 12 kg, "Mass group 0+"

(Ex. 2) When the weight is 15 kg, "Mass group I"

2 Confirming Size class

Select the Size class corresponding to "Mass group" confirmed in step **1** from the "Child restraint systems fastened with ISOFIX - Compatibility table" (→P.98)*.

(Ex. 1) When "Mass group 0+", the corresponding size class is "C", "D", "E".

(Ex. 2) When "Mass group I", the corresponding size class is "A", "B", "B1", "C", "D".

*: However, listings that are marked with "X" cannot be selected, despite having the corresponding size class in the suitability table of the "Seating position".

Child restraint systems fastened with ISOFIX - Compatibility table

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided in different "size class". According to this "size class", you will be allowed to use it in the vehicle seating position mentioned in the table below. To know your child restraint system "size class" and

"mass group", please refer to the child restraint system manual.

If your child restraint system has no "size class" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Size class	Description
A	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
B	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
B1	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
C	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
D	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
E	Rearward-facing infant seat
F	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
G	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

Mass groups	Size class	Seating position			
		Front seat	Second seat		Third seat (if equipped)
		Passenger seat	Outboard*	Center	Outboard
Carrycot	F	×	×	×	×
	G	×	×	×	×
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)	E	×	IL	×	×
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)	E	×	IL	×	×
	D	×	IL	×	×
	C	×	IL	×	×

Mass groups	Size class	Seating position			
		Front seat	Second seat		Third seat (if equipped)
		Passenger seat	Outboard*	Center	Outboard
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)	D	×	IL	×	×
	C	×	IL	×	×
	B	×	IUF	×	×
	B1	×	IUF	×	×
	A	×	IUF	×	×

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

X: Not suitable seat position for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or size class.

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of "universal" category approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems of the categories for "semi-universal" approved for use in this mass group.

*: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the INDIA.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.

i-Size child restraint systems fastened with ISOFIX (ECE R129) - Compatibility table

If your child restraint system is of "i-Size" category, you can install it on the positions

mentioned by i-U in the table below.

Child restraint system category can be found in the child restraint system manual.

	Seating position			
	Front Passenger seat	Second seat		Third seat (if equipped)
		Outboard*	Center	Outboard
i-Size child restraint systems	X	i-U	X	X

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

X: Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

i-U: Suitable for i-Size "universal" child restraint systems forward and rearward facing.

*: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.

Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchor (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

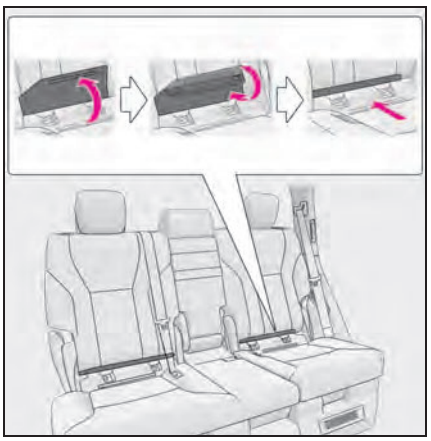
1 Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

2 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.183)

3 Open the cover.

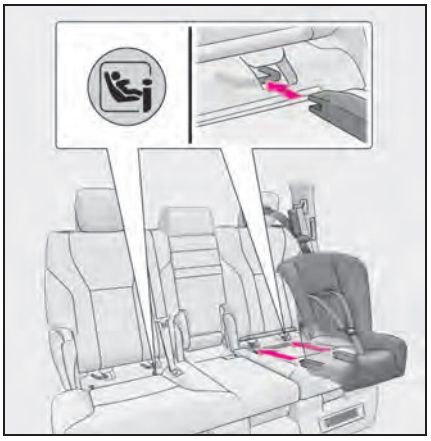
Put the cover between the seat cushion

and seatback.



4 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



5 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.97)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

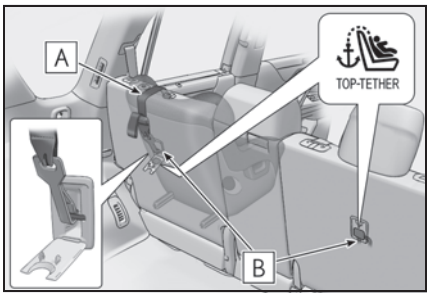
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Using an anchor bracket (for top strap)

■ Anchor brackets (for top strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for the second outboard seat.

Use anchor brackets when fixing the top strap.



A Top strap

B Anchor brackets

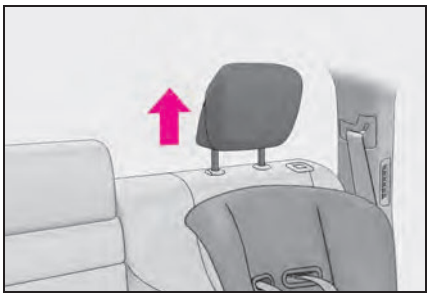
■ Fixing the top strap to the anchor bracket

Install the child restraint system in

accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

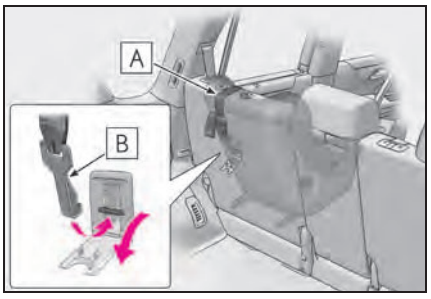
1 Adjust the head restraint to the upmost position.

If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system or top strap installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. (→P.183)



2 Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched. (→P.97)
When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, be sure to have the top strap pass underneath the head restraint.



A Top strap

B Hook

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the top strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the top strap to anything other than the anchor bracket.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, after the head restraint has been raised and then the top tether anchorage has been fixed, do not lower the head restraint.

NOTICE

■ Anchor brackets (for top strap)

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

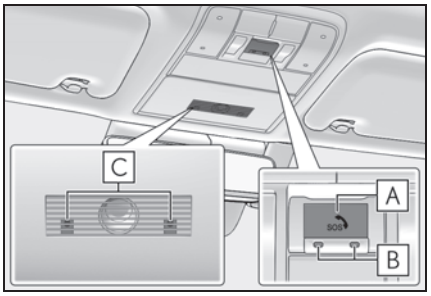
eCall*1, 2

*1: If equipped

*2: Operates within the eCall coverage.

eCall is a telematics service that uses Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) data and embedded cellular technology to enable the following emergency calls to be made: Automatic emergency calls (Automatic Collision Notification) and manual emergency calls (by pressing the "SOS" button). This service is required by United Arab Emirates Regulations.

System components



A "SOS" button*

B Indicator lights

C Microphone

*: This button is intended for communication with the eCall system operator. Other SOS buttons available in other systems of a motor vehicle do not relate to the device and are not intended for communication with the eCall system operator.

Emergency Notification Services

■ Automatic Emergency Calls

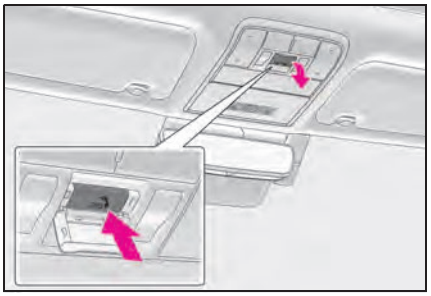
If any airbag deploys, the system is designed to automatically call the eCall control center.* The answering operator receives the vehicle's location, the time of the incident and the vehicle VIN, and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the situation. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the operator automatically treats the call as an emergency and contacts the nearest emergency services provider (999 system etc.) to describe the situation and request that assistance be sent to the location.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.105)

■ Manual Emergency Calls

In the event of an emergency, press the "SOS" button to call the eCall control center.* The answering operator will determine your vehicle's location, assess the situation, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

Make sure to open the cover before pressing the "SOS" button.



If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the operator that you are not experiencing an emergency.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.105)

Indicator lights

When the engine switch is turned to ON, the red indicator light will illuminate, and then turns off. Afterward, the green indicator light will illuminate, indicating that the DCM (Data Communication Module) service is enabled. The illumination condition of the indicator lights informs the system operation status:

- If the green indicator light illuminates, the DCM service is in active mode
- If the green indicator light flashes, an automatic or manual Emergency Call is being made
- If the red indicator light illuminates, there is a malfunction in the system
- If the indicator lights go off, the DCM service is in inactive mode
- If the red indicator light blinks for approximately 30 seconds during an Emergency Call, the call has been disconnected or the cellular network signal is weak.

The service life of the backup battery does not exceed 3 years.

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS) for DCM.

The license information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

https://opensource.lge.com/osSch/list?types=ALL&search=TL21BNU

WARNING

When the Emergency Call may not be made

- It may not be possible to make Emergency Calls in any of the following situations. In such cases, report to emergency services provider (999 system etc.) by other means such as nearby public phones.
  - Even when the vehicle is in the cellular phone service area, it may be difficult to connect to the eCall control center if the reception is poor or the line is busy. In such cases, even though the system attempts to connect to the eCall control center, you may not be able to connect to the eCall control center to make Emergency Calls and contact emergency services.
  - When the vehicle is out of the cellular phone service area, the Emergency Calls cannot be made.
  - When any related equipment (such as the "SOS" button panel, indicator lights, microphone, speaker, DCM, antenna, or any wires connecting the equipment) is malfunctioning, damaged or broken, the Emergency Call cannot be made.

WARNING

- During an Emergency Call, the system makes repeated attempts to connect to the eCall control center. However, if it cannot connect to the eCall control center due to poor radio wave reception, the system may not be able to connect to the cellular network and the call may finish without connecting. The red indicator light will blink for approximately 30 seconds to indicate this disconnection.

- If the battery's voltage decreases or there is a disconnection, the system may not be able to connect to the eCall control center.

■ When the Emergency Call system is replaced with a new one

The Emergency Call system should be registered. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ For your safety

- Please drive safely.
  The function of this system is to assist you in making the Emergency Call in case of accidents such as traffic accidents or sudden medical emergencies, and it does not protect the driver or passengers in any way. Please drive safely and fasten your seatbelts at all times for your safety.

- In case of an emergency, make lives the top priority.

- If you smell anything burning or other unusual smells, leave the vehicle and evacuate to a safe area immediately.

- If the airbags deploy when the system is operating normally, the system makes emergency call. The system also makes emergency call when the vehicle is struck from the rear or rolls over, even if the airbags do not deploy.

- For safety, do not make the Emergency Call while driving.
  Making calls during driving may cause mishandling of the steering wheel, which may lead to unexpected accidents.
  Stop the vehicle and confirm the safety of your surroundings before making the Emergency Call.

- When changing fuses, please use the specified fuses. Using other fuses may cause ignition or smoke in the circuit and lead to a fire.

- Using the system while there is smoke or an unusual smell may cause a fire. Stop using the system immediately and consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage

Do not pour any liquids onto the "SOS" button panel, etc. and do not impact it.

■ If the "SOS" button panel, speaker or microphone malfunctions during an Emergency Call or manual maintenance check

It may not be possible to make Emergency Calls, confirm the system status, or communicate with the eCall control center operator. If any of the above equipment is damaged, please consult your Lexus dealer.

Engine immobilizer system

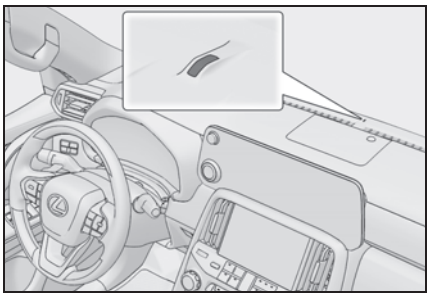
The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

Operating the system

The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating. The indicator light stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to ACC or ON to indicate that the system has been canceled.



■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (An intruder gets in the vehicle.)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination.
- The quarter windows or rear window are broken.
- The battery is disconnected.
- The battery is reconnected.

Setting/canceling/stopping the alarm system

Items to check before locking the vehicle

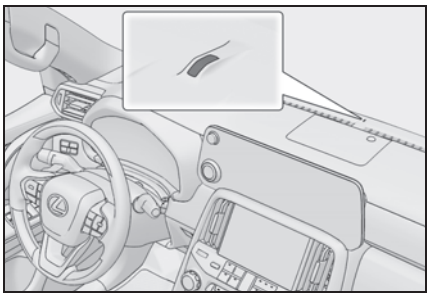
To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof (if equipped) are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Setting

Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



Canceling or stopping

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.

- Unlock the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

System maintenance

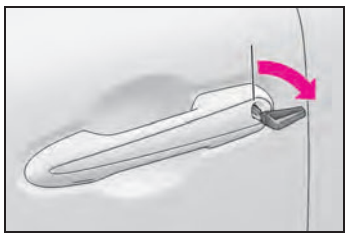
The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

Triggering of the alarm

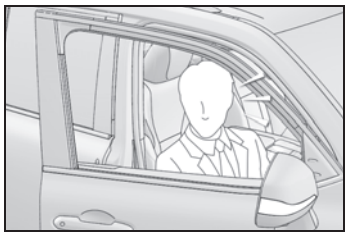
The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

- The doors are unlocked using the

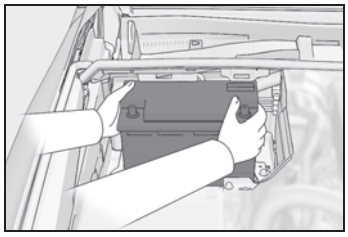
mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or hood, or unlocks the vehicle using an inside lock button.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P.611)



- The battery is disconnected when the vehicle is locked.

Alarm-operated door lock

In the following cases, depending on the situation, the door may automatically lock to prevent improper entry into the vehicle:

- When a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door and the alarm is activated.
- While the alarm is activated, a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door.
- When recharging or replacing the battery.

Customization

The alarm can be set to deactivate when the mechanical key is used to unlock. (Customizable features: →P.638)

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor detection

- The intrusion sensor detects an intruder or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

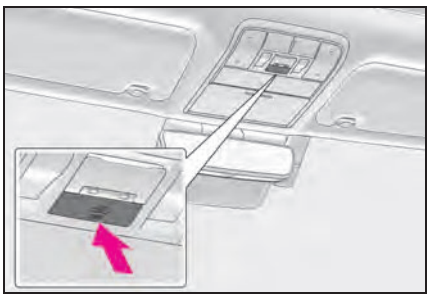
If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to disable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as they will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

1. Turn the engine switch off.
2. Press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will revert to on each time the engine switch is

turned to ON.



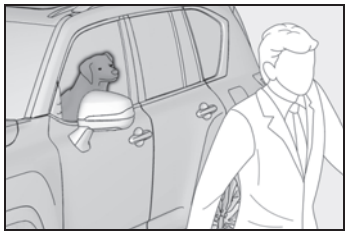
■ Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the engine switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is reactivated.

■ Intrusion sensor considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

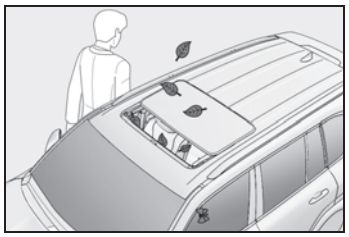
- People or pets are in the vehicle.



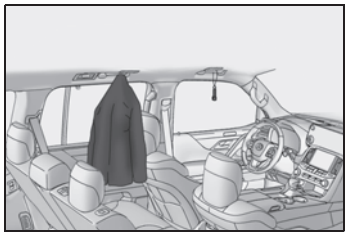
- A window or the moon roof (if equipped) is open.

In this case, the sensor may detect the following:

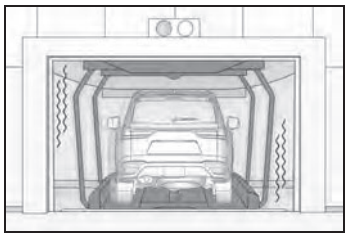
- Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
- Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
- The movement of people outside the vehicle



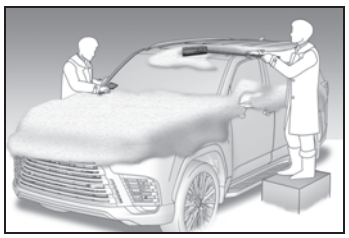
- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.



- The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.



- Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.



- The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.

- The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

■ Tilt sensor detection considerations

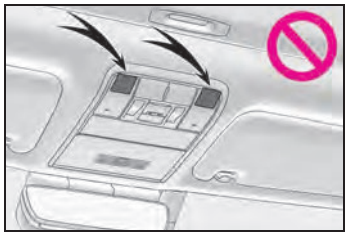
The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.
- Cargo is loaded onto or unloaded from the roof luggage carrier.

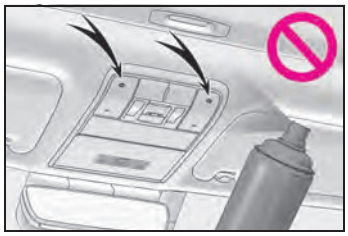
⚠ NOTICE

■ To ensure the intrusion sensor functions correctly

- To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



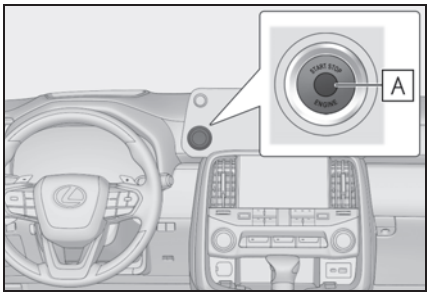
- Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.
- The intrusion sensor may be canceled when the electronic key is near the vehicle.

Fingerprint Authentication System*

*: If equipped

The fingerprint authentication system performs fingerprint authentication by authenticating the finger used to touch the fingerprint sensor on the engine switch, against fingerprint information registered to the vehicle. If authentication is not successful, it prevents the engine from starting.

For information on registering/deleting fingerprint information, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".



A Fingerprint sensor

Fingerprint authentication system

- The vehicle is delivered with no fingerprint information registered. The engine can be started as the smart entry & start system even if no information is registered.
- Successful fingerprint authentication alone is not enough to switch the engine switch mode or start the engine. The electronic key must also be held.
- Fingerprint authentication is used as an authentication device for My Settings functions. (→P.209)

Fingerprint registration

- When registering fingerprint information, repeatedly touch the fingerprint sensor seated in the posture you would use when starting the engine.
- When registering fingerprint information, you may need to touch the sensor multiple times with the finger that will be used to start the engine. Slightly change the position of your finger when touching to touch a wider area.
- When fingerprint information is registered for the first time, the fingerprint authentication system will automatically turn on. Check the Multimedia Display to see whether the fingerprint authentication system is on or off. Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".
- When touching the fingerprint sensor, ensure that your finger covers the entire surface of the sensor. Touching the sensor with your fingertip or the side of your finger may prevent authentication.
- Touch the sensor slowly. Touching too quickly or strongly, or sliding your finger along the sensor while touching may prevent normal recognition.
- When repeatedly touching the fingerprint sensor, wait approximately 1 second in between each touch. Repeatedly touching the sensor too quickly may cause authentication to fail.

Agreement on Fingerprint System

Fingerprint information is used by this system for security functions and Personal Settings functions. Fingerprint information is encrypted and stored only in the engine switch, and is used only to perform fingerprint authentication to start the engine and perform other vehicle functions (such as automatically adjusting the seat and mirror positions). Fingerprint information will not be disclosed or provided to any third parties. Users are allowed to delete their stored fingerprint information based on their intention.

Use the system after agreeing with the fol-

lowing items on how fingerprint information is handled.

- The fingerprint authentication system does not completely guarantee the authentication, verification or identification of the individual. Please be advised in advance that Lexus does not accept any liability for loss or damage resulting from the use of fingerprint authentication or from being unable to use fingerprint authentication.
- This system uses identifying fingerprint characteristics for authentication. Therefore, users with few identifying fingerprint characteristics may be unable to register fingerprint information, or may have difficulty authenticating even if fingerprint information has been successfully registered. In this situation, turn the fingerprint authentication system off.
- Fingerprint authentication system performance may vary depending on the conditions of use. The condition of the finger (if it is dirty, wet, dry, injured, etc.) may make it difficult to scan the fingerprint or reduce authentication performance.
- If fingerprint information registration or fingerprint authentication fails frequently, clean the surface of the fingerprint sensor and try registering fingerprint information again.
- Fingerprint information registered in the engine switch cannot be migrating to another device. If fingerprint information is deleted or any system part is replaced, the fingerprint information will need to be registered again.
- If a user with registered fingerprint information cannot be identified when diagnosing a fingerprint authentication system malfunction, the fingerprint information may be deleted by a Lexus dealer.
- Fingerprint information once deleted cannot be restored. The fingerprint information will need to be registered again.
- Fingerprint information will generally be deleted when replacing the engine switch. Please note that if fingerprint information cannot be deleted due to a malfunction, etc., the part containing fingerprint information may be recalled or returned to the user.
- If the part is recalled, it will be used only to analyze the malfunction.
- If it is returned to the user, the user's personal information will be stored in the engine switch. Be especially carefully managing it.
- Be sure to delete fingerprint information if the vehicle will be sold, transferred, scrapped, etc. Please be advised in advance that Lexus does not accept any liability for loss or damage resulting from a vehicle being sold, transferred, scrapped, etc. with fingerprint information stored.
- Fingerprint information is encrypted and stored only in the engine switch, and will not be disclosed or provided to any third parties.

■ Taking care of the fingerprint sensor

When cleaning the surface of the fingerprint sensor, wipe clean with a soft cloth without any cloth fibers.

■ Customization

The Multimedia Display can be used to turn the fingerprint authentication system on and off. Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

Observe the following precautions when turning the fingerprint authentication system on and off.

- Fingerprint information for at least one fingerprint must be registered.
- A user with registered fingerprint information must successfully perform fingerprint authentication and the engine switch must be turned to ON.
- Even if fingerprint authentication fails, the fingerprint authentication system can be turned on and off on the Multimedia Display, after turning the engine switch to ON by touching the electronic key to the engine switch. (→P.610)
- If the fingerprint authentication system is turned off, a message indicating that the

fingerprint authentication system is off will be displayed on the multi-information display when the engine switch is turned off. This message will be displayed for 10 days.

NOTICE

To protect the engine switch from damage, make sure to observe the following precautions.

- Do not subject the part to strong impacts. Do not remove, disassemble or modify the part. Doing so could result in a malfunction or damage.
- Do not poke or scratch the surface of the fingerprint sensor with a pen or other sharp object. Doing so could damage the surface of the fingerprint sensor.
- The part may become dirty with prolonged use. Do not use a sharp object to clean away any dirt.
- Fingerprint authentication may fail if the surface of the fingerprint sensor or the finger being used is wet or dirty.
- Do not attach stickers or apply ink to the surface of the fingerprint sensor.
- Clean the surface of the fingerprint sensor periodically. Dust, finger grease, sweat, etc. or condensation on the surface of the fingerprint sensor could cause a malfunction.
- If any substance that could cause a malfunction or damage (dust, sand, dye, ink, soap, detergent, acid or acidic food, oil, lotion, etc.) becomes attached to the fingerprint sensor, clean it off immediately.
- Avoid using detergents (such as glass cleaner, spray liquid cleaner, solvents, and ammonia) or abrasives (such as wax or sandpaper). Doing so could result in a malfunction or damage.

Vehicle status information and indicators

2

2-1. Instrument cluster

Warning lights and indicators 116

Gauges and meters 121

Multi-information display..... 124

Head-up display 130

Fuel consumption screen 134

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster and outside rear view mirrors inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

Warning lights and indicators displayed on the instrument cluster

The location of warning lights and indicators may differ depending on the intended destination of the vehicle.

The image may differ from the actual condition.

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems.

(Red)

Brake system warning light*1 (→P.582)

(Yellow)

Brake system warning light*1 (→P.582)

Charging system warning light*2 (→P.582)

Low engine oil pressure warning light*2 (→P.583)

High coolant temperature warning light*2 (→P.583)

Malfunction indicator lamp*1 (→P.583)

SRS warning light*1 (→P.583)

ABS warning light*1 (→P.584)

(Red)

Power steering system warning light*1 (→P.584)

(Yellow)

Power steering system warning light*1 (→P.584)

(Flashes or illuminates)

PCS warning light*1 (if equipped) (→P.584)

(Orange)

LTA indicator (if equipped) (→P.585)

BSM OFF indicator*1 (if equipped) (→P.585)

RCTA OFF indicator*1 (if equipped) (→P.585)

RCD OFF indicator*1 (→P.586)

Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator*3 (→P.586)

PKSB OFF indicator*1 (if equipped) (→P.586)

Inappropriate pedal operation warning light*2 (→P.587)

(Flashes)

Stop & Start cancel indicator*1 (if equipped) (→P.587)

Slip indicator light*1 (→P.587)

(Flashes)

Low speed four-wheel drive indicator (→P.588)

(Flashes)

Center differential lock indicator (→P.588)

(Flashes)

Parking brake indicator (→P.588)

(Flashes)

Brake hold operated indicator*1 (→P.588)

Low fuel level warning light (→P.589)

Low AdBlue™ level warning light (if equipped) (→P.589)

Tire pressure warning light*1 (→P.589)

Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P.589)

Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light (→P.590)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to ON to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

*3: Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator turns on when the engine switch is turned to ON while the Lexus parking assist-sensor function is on. It will turn off after a few seconds.

WARNING

■ **If a safety system warning light does not come on**

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

Turn signal indicator (→P.237)

Tail light indicator (→P.243)

Headlight high beam indicator (→P.245, 249)

Adaptive High-beam System indicator (if equipped) (→P.246)

Front fog light indicator (→P.250)

Rear fog light indicator (if equipped) (→P.250)

PCS warning light*1, 2 (if equipped) (→P.266)

(White)

LTA indicator*3 (if equipped) (→P.278)

(Green)

LTA indicator*3 (if equipped) (→P.263, 278)

(Orange)

LTA indicator*3 (if equipped) (→P.278)

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator (if equipped) (→P.283, 294)

Cruise control indicator (→P.283, 294, 304)

Cruise control "SET" indicator (→P.283, 294, 304)

BSM outside rear view mirror indicators[*1, 4] (if equipped) (→P.313)

BSM OFF indicator[*2] (if equipped) (→P.313)

RCTA OFF indicator[*1, 2] (if equipped) (→P.326)

RCD OFF indicator[*2] (→P.331)

Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator[*2, 5] (→P.320)

PKSB OFF indicator[*1, 2] (if equipped) (→P.335)

Eco Driving Indicator Light[*1] (→P.126)

Stop & Start indicator[*1] (if equipped) (→P.307)

Stop & Start cancel indicator[*1, 2] (if equipped) (→P.308)

Engine preheating indicator (diesel engine) (→P.228)

(Flashes)
Slip indicator light[*1] (→P.432)

VSC OFF indicator[*1, 2] (→P.432)

Downhill assist control system indicator[*1] (→P.425)

Turn Assist indicator (→P.419)

Crawl Control indicator[*1] (→P.419)

Crawl Control mode display (→P.419)

Easy access mode indicator[*1] (→P.411)

Low speed four-wheel drive indicator (→P.416)

Center differential lock indicator (→P.417)

Parking brake indicator (→P.237)

Brake hold standby indicator[*1] (→P.240)

Brake hold operated indicator[*1] (→P.240)

"RSCA OFF" indicator[*1] (→P.58)

Smart entry & start system indicator[*6] (→P.228)

Low outside temperature indicator[*7] (→P.122)

Eco drive mode indicator (→P.407)

Comfort mode indicator (→P.407)

SPORT S mode indicator (→P.407)

SPORT S+ mode indicator (→P.407)

Custom mode indicator (→P.407)

AUTO mode indicator (→P.423)

DIRT mode indicator (→P.423)

SAND mode indicator (→P.423)

MUD mode indicator (→P.423)

DEEP SNOW mode indicator (→P.423)

ROCK mode indicator (→P.423)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to ON to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not turn on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The light comes on when the system is turned off.

*3: Depending on the operating condition, the color and illuminating/flashing state of the light change.

*4: This light illuminates on the outside rear view mirrors.

*5: Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator turns on when the engine switch is turned to ON while the Lexus parking assist-sensor function is on. It will turn off after a few seconds.

*6: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

*7: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

■ BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) outside rear view mirror indicators (if equipped)

In order to confirm operation, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators illuminate in the following situations:

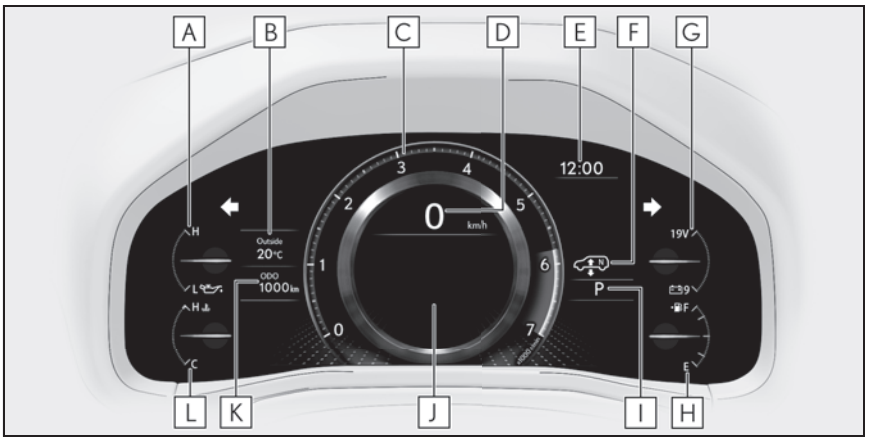
- When the engine switch is turned to ON while the BSM function is enabled on of the multi-information display.
- When the BSM function is enabled on of the multi-information display while the engine switch is in ON.

If the system is functioning correctly, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators will turn off after a few seconds.
If the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators do not illuminate or do not turn off, there may be a malfunction in the system. If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Gauges and meters

Meter display

■ Locations of gauges and meters



The location of some displayed items and the units of measure may differ depending on the intended destination of the vehicle.

A Engine oil pressure gauge

Displays the engine oil pressure

B Outside temperature (→P.122)

C Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

D Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

E Clock

The GPS clock's time is automatically adjusted by utilizing GPS time information. For details, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

F AHC display

Display the status of AHC (Active Height Control Suspension) (→P.409)

G Voltmeter

Displays the charge state

H Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

I Shift position and shift range/gear position

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range/gear position (→P.233)

J Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data (→P.124)

Displays warning messages if a malfunction occurs (→P.592)

K Odometer, trip meter and oil maintenance

Odometer:

Displays the total distance that the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter:

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently.

Oil maintenance:

Displays the distance until the next engine oil change.

L Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

■ Outside temperature display

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.
  - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- When "--" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.
- Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 60°C (140°F).
- When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

■ Liquid crystal display

→P.125

WARNING

■ The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.

NOTICE

- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone ("H"). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P.616)

Voltmeter

When the voltmeter indicates 19 V or higher, or 9 V or lower while the engine is running, there may be a battery or charging system malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

Engine oil pressure gauge

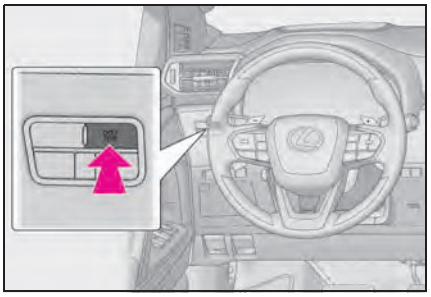
When the value of the engine oil pressure gauge drops while the engine is running, stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and check the amount of engine oil. (→P.536)

When the oil pressure drops even though the engine oil amount has not decreased, or if the oil pressure does not increase when engine oil is added, contact your Lexus dealer, as there may be a problem with the lubrication system.

Using the "ODO TRIP" switch

Switches the items of the odometer, trip meter A, trip meter B and oil maintenance by pressing the "ODO TRIP" switch.

When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the switch will reset the trip meter.



Pop-up display

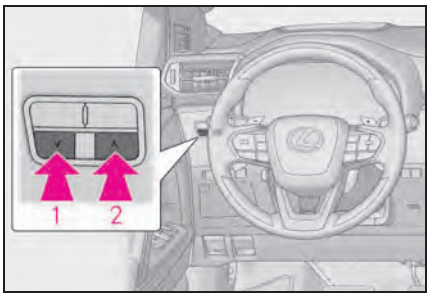
In some situations the following will be temporarily displayed:

- Stop & Start system operation time (current) (if equipped) (→P.307)
- Stop & Start system operating state (if equipped) (→P.310)
- Distance until next engine oil change

When a warning message indicating that oil maintenance should be performed soon or is required is displayed.

Changing the instrument panel light brightness

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



1 Darker
2 Brighter

■ Meter panel brightness adjustment

The meter panel brightness levels when the surroundings are bright (daytime etc.) and dark (nighttime etc.) can be adjusted individually.

Multi-information display

Display and menu icons

■ Display

By selecting menu icons on the multi-information display, a variety of driving-related information can be displayed. The multi-information display can also be used to change display settings and other vehicle settings.

Warning or suggestion/advice pop-up displays are also displayed in certain situations.

■ Menu icons

The menu icons will be displayed by pressing < or > of the meter control switch.

Driving information display (→P.125)

Navigation system-linked display (if equipped) (→P.127)

Audio system-linked display (→P.127)

Driving support system information display (→P.127)

Warning message display (→P.592)

Settings display (→P.127)

■ **Liquid crystal display**

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

WARNING

■ **Caution for use while driving**

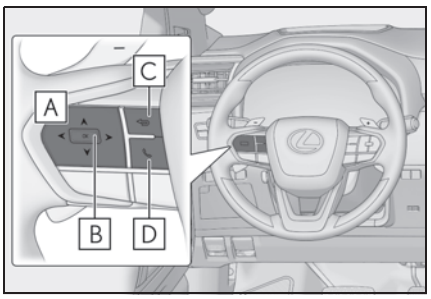
- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

■ **The information display at low temperatures**

→P.122

Changing the meter display

The multi-information display is operated using the meter control switches.



A < / >: Select menu icons
^ / v: Change displayed content, scroll up/down the screen and move the cursor up/down

B Press: Enter/Set
Press and hold: Reset

C Return to the previous screen

D Call sending/receiving and history display

Linked with the hands-free system, sending or receiving call is displayed. For details regarding the hands-free system, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

Content of driving information

■ **Display items**

Press < or > of the meter control switch and select ⓘ. Then press ^ or v to display the following items:

- Drive information 1
- Drive information 2
- Eco Driving Indicator
- Tire pressure (→P.552)
- AdBlue™ gauge (if equipped)
- Display off

■ **Drive information 1/Drive information 2**

Displays drive information such as the following:

Use the displayed values as a reference only.

- Drive information 1
  - Current fuel consumption
  - Average fuel economy (after reset)
- Drive information 2
  - Distance (driving range)

2

Vehicle status information and indicators

• Average vehicle speed (after reset)

Displayed items (listed below) can be changed on . (→P.128)

● Current fuel consumption

Bar type: Displays instantaneous current fuel consumption

● Average fuel economy

After reset: Displays average fuel consumption since the display was reset*1

After start: Displays average fuel consumption since engine start

After refuel: Displays average fuel consumption since refuel

● Average vehicle speed

After reset: Displays average vehicle speed since the display was reset*1

After start: Displays average vehicle speed since engine start

● Elapsed time

After reset: Displays elapsed time since the display was reset*1

After start: Displays elapsed time since engine start

● Distance

Driving range: Displays driving range with remaining fuel*2, 3

After start: Displays the distance driven since engine start

● Other

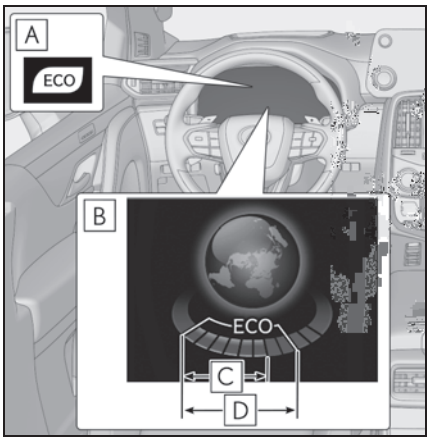
Blank: No item

*1: To reset, display the desired item and press and hold OK of the meter control switch.

*2: This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

*3: When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

■ Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Light

During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

B Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

C Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

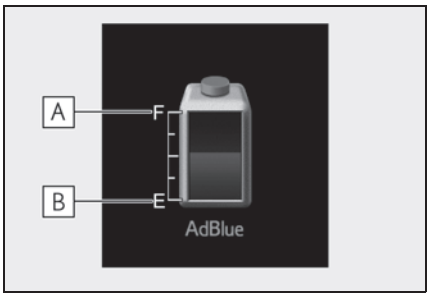
If the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, the right side of the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will illuminate.

At this time, the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

D Zone of Eco driving

AdBlue™ gauge (if equipped)

Displays the quantity of AdBlue™ remaining in the tank. (→P.546)



A Full

B Empty

Eco Driving Indicator

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift position is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch is operated.
- The driving mode is set to SPORT S mode or SPORT S+ mode.
- The driving mode is set to custom mode and the powertrain control is set to power. (→P.407)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.

- Route guidance to destination
- Compass display

Audio system-linked display

Select to enable selection of an audio source or track on the meter using the meter control switches.

Driving support system information display

Select to display the operational status of the following systems:

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped) (→P.273)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) (→P.283)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) (→P.294)
- Cruise control (if equipped) (→P.304)

Settings display

Vehicle settings and the content displayed on the screen can be changed by using the meter control switches.

Setting procedure

1 Press < or > of the meter control switches and select ⚙.

2 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches, select the item, and press OK.

3 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches, select the desired setting, and press OK.

4 After changing the settings, press of the meter control switches.

■ **Meter display settings that can be changed**

● Language

Select to change the language displayed.

● Units

Select to change the units of measure displayed.

● Speedometer display

Select to set the display of the speedometer to digital/analog/both digital and analog.

● Drive information 1/Drive information 2

Select to select up to 2 items (→P.125) that will be displayed on each Drive information screen (Drive information 1 screen and Drive information 2 screen) respectively.

● Pop-up display

Select to enable/disable pop-up displays for each relevant system.

● Eco Driving Indicator Light

Select to enable/disable the Eco Driving Indicator Light.

● Default setting

Select to reset the meter display settings to the default setting.

■ **Vehicle functions and settings that can be changed**

→P.637

■ **Suspension of the settings display**

● Some settings cannot be changed while driving. When changing settings, park the vehicle in a safe place.

● If a warning message is displayed, operation of the settings display will be suspended.

WARNING

■ **Cautions during setting up the display**

As the engine needs to be running during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ **During setting up the display**

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while setting up the display features.

Suggestion function (if equipped)

Displays suggestions to the driver in the following situations. To select a response to a displayed suggestion, use the meter control switches.

■ **Suggestion to turn on the headlights**

If the headlight switch is in other than or AUTO, and the vehicle speed is 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher for a certain amount of time when the surroundings are dark, a suggestion message will be displayed.

■ **Suggestion to turn off the headlights**

If the headlights are left on for a certain amount of time after the engine switch has been turned off, a suggestion message will be displayed.

When the headlight switch is in AUTO:

The message asking if you wish to turn the headlights off is displayed. To turn the headlights off, select "Yes".

If the driver's door is opened after the engine switch is turned off, this suggestion message will not be displayed.

■ **Suggestion to close the power windows (linked to windshield wiper operation)**

If the windshield wipers are operated with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows. To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

■ **Suggestion to close the power windows (Driving at high speeds)**

If the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows. To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

■ **Customization**

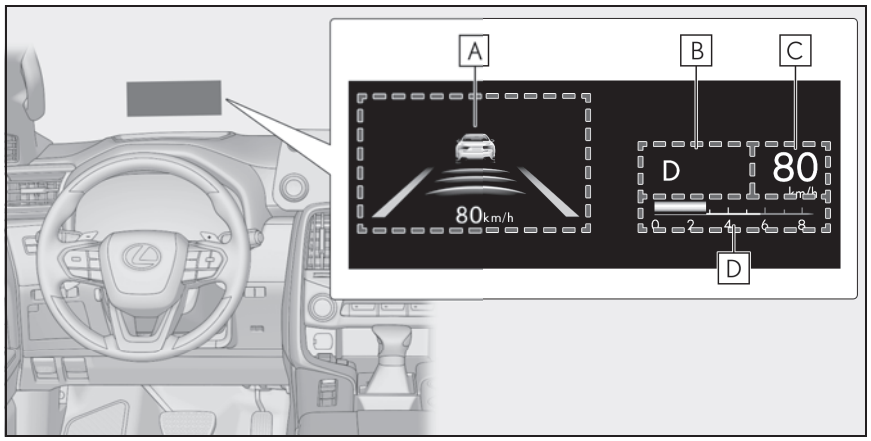
Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features:→P.637)

Head-up display*

*: If equipped

The head-up display projects a variety of driving-related information and the operating state of the driving support systems on the windshield.

System components



Illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed by the head-up display.

A Driving support system display area (→P.132)/Navigation system-linked display area (if equipped)

Displays the following items which are linked to the navigation system:
- Route guidance to destination
- Street name
- Compass (heading-up display)

B Shift position area (→P.233)

C Speedometer

D Eco Driving Indicator/Tachometer display area (→P.133)

■ Head-up display will operate when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ When using the head-up display

The head-up display may seem dark or hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses. Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.

■ Street name display (vehicles with navigation system)

Only street names which are included in the

map data will be displayed.

WARNING

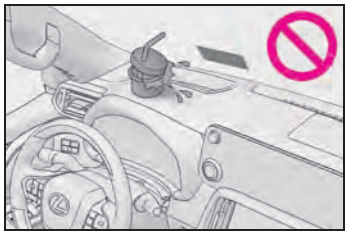
■ **When using the head-up display**

- Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not continuously look at the head-up display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ **Head-up display projector**

- Do not place any drinks near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, electrical malfunctions may result.



- Do not place anything on or put stickers onto the head-up display projector. Doing so could interrupt head-up display indications.
- Do not touch the inside of the head-up display projector or thrust sharp edges or the like into the projector. Doing so could cause mechanical malfunctions.

Using the head-up display

The following settings can be changed on ⚙ of the multi-information display. (→P.124)

- Enabling/disabling the head-up display

Select to enable/disable the head-up display.

- Brightness and vertical position of the head-up display

Select to adjust the brightness or vertical position of the head-up display.

- Tachometer Settings

Select to display the following items:

- Blank
- Eco Driving Indicator
- Tachometer

- Display content

Select to enable/disable the following items:

- Navigation display (if equipped)
- Driving Assist display*
- Compass (if equipped)
- Audio system operation status

*: Make sure to enable this display when using the driving support systems

- Display angle

Select to adjust the angle of the head-up display.

■ **Enabling/disabling of the head-up display**

If the head-up display is disabled, it will remain disabled when the engine switch is turned off then back to ON.

■ **Display brightness**

The brightness of the head-up display can be adjusted on ⚙ of the multi-information

display. Also, it is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness.

■ **Head-up display automatic position adjustment**

If the display position is recorded into memory, the head-up display will be automatically adjusted to the desired position. (→P.204)

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

The customize settings of the head-up display will be reset.

WARNING

■ **Caution for changing settings of the head-up display**

As the engine needs to be running while changing the settings of the head-up display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ **When changing the settings of the head-up display**

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while changing the settings of the head-up display.

Driving support system display area

Displays the operational status of the following systems:

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped) (→P.273)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) (→P.283)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) (→P.294)
- Cruise control (if equipped) (→P.304)

Details of content displayed on the head-up display may differ from that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanation of each system.

Pop-up display

Pop-up displays for the following systems will be displayed when necessary.

■ **Driving support systems**

Displays a warning/suggestion/advice message or the operating state of a relevant system.

- PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped) (→P.262)
- PKSB (Parking Support Brake) (if equipped) (→P.334)
- Brake Override System (→P.214)
- Drive-Start Control (DSC) (→P.219)

Details of content displayed on the head-up display may differ from that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanation of each system.

■ **/ icons**

Displays the following multi-information display linked icons:

: Master warning icon

Displayed when a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display.

: Information icon

Displayed when a suggestion / advice pop-up display is displayed on the multi-information display.

Warning message

Some warning messages are displayed when necessary, according to certain conditions.

Details of content displayed on the head-up display may differ from that displayed on the multi-information display.

Audio system operation status (if equipped)

Displayed when an audio remote control switch on the steering wheel is operated.

Hands-free system status (if equipped)

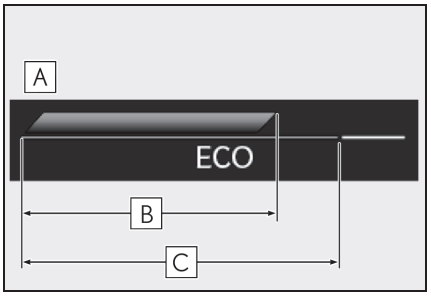
Displayed when the hands-free system is operated.

When a pop-up display is displayed

When a pop-up display is displayed, a current display may no longer be displayed. In this case, the display will return after the pop-up display disappears.

Eco Driving Indicator/Tachometer display area

Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

B Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

C Zone of Eco driving

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display (Eco Driving Indicator). For details, refer to P.126.

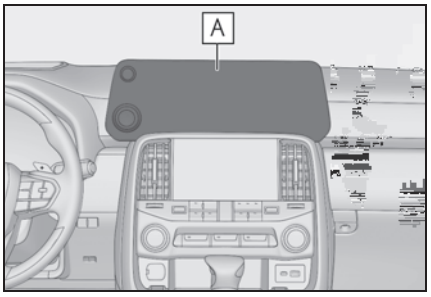
Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

Fuel consumption screen

The fuel consumption information can be displayed on the Multimedia Display.

System components



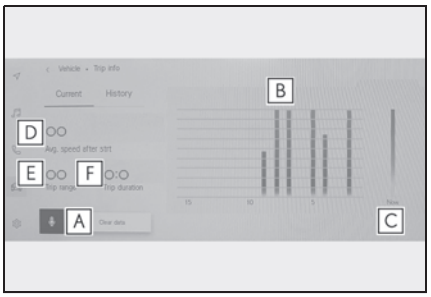
A Multimedia Display

Current screen

■ **Display procedure**

1 Select on the main menu.
2 Select “Trip information”.
3 Select “Current”.

■ **Display**



A Resetting the history data

B Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

C Current fuel consumption

D Average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

E Trip range

F Elapsed time since the engine was started.

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

History screen

■ **Display procedure**

1 Select on the main menu.
2 Select “Trip information”.
3 Select “History”.

■ **Display**

A Latest fuel consumption

B Best recorded fuel consumption

C Previous fuel consumption record

D Resetting the history data

E Updating the latest fuel consumption data

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ **Updating the history data**

Update the latest fuel consumption by selecting "Update" to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ **Resetting the data**

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting "Clear data".

■ **Trip range**

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

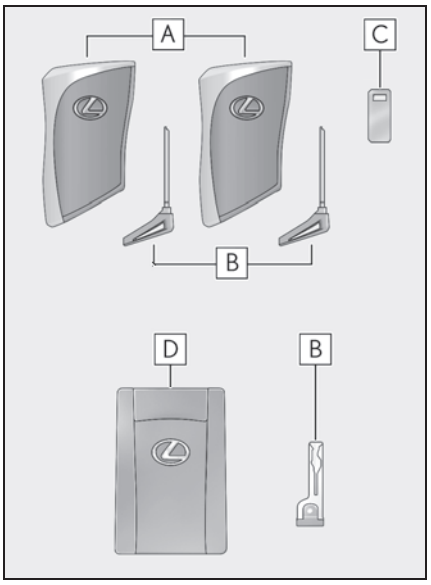
This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

3-1. Key information
Keys 138
3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Side doors 142
Back door 147
Smart entry & start system 162
3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 167
Rear seats (5-passenger and 7-passenger models) 171
Rear seat (4-passenger models) 179
Head restraints 183
3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 186
Inside rear view mirror 187
Digital Rear-view Mirror 188
Outside rear view mirrors 196
3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows 199
Moon roof 201
3-6. Favorite settings
Driving position memory 204
Rear seat position memory (4-passenger models) 208
My Settings 209

Keys

Key types

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



A Electronic keys
- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.162)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P.140)

B Mechanical keys

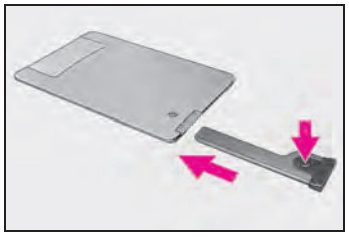
C Key number plate

D Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

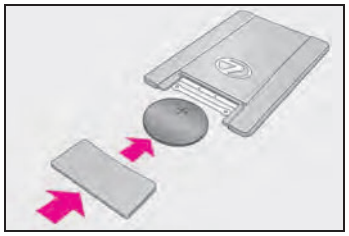
Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.162)

Card key (if equipped)

- The card key is not waterproof.
- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.
- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.



When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

Key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is from one year to one year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will

sound in the cabin when the engine stops.

- To reduce key battery depletion when the electronic key is to not be used for long periods of time, set the electronic key to the battery-saving mode. (→P.163)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary.
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- You can replace the battery by yourself (→P.563). However, as there is a danger that the electronic key may be damaged, it is recommended that replacement is carried out by your Lexus dealer.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Table lamps
  - Induction cookers
- If the electronic key is near the vehicle for longer than necessary, even if the smart entry & start system is not used, the key battery may become depleted faster than normal. When not using the smart entry & start system, it is recommended not to stay with the electronic key near the vehicle longer than necessary.

Replacing the key battery

→P.563

Confirmation of the registered key number

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask your Lexus dealer.

If "A New Key has been Registered Contact Your Dealer for Details" is shown on the multi-information display

This message will be displayed each time the driver's door is opened when the doors are unlocked from the outside for approximately 10 days after a new electronic key has been registered.

If this message is displayed but you have not had a new electronic key registered, ask your Lexus dealer to check if an unknown electronic key (other than those in your possession) has been registered.

NOTICE

To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer, etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers.
- Do not place the keys near medical electrical equipment such as low-frequency therapy equipment or microwave therapy equipment, and do not receive medical attention with the keys on your person.

NOTICE

■ **Carrying the electronic key on your person**

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ **In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems**

→P.609

■ **When an electronic key is lost**

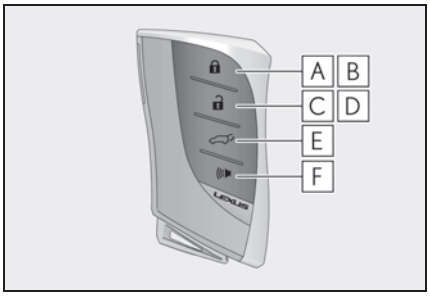
→P.608

■ **Handling the card key (if equipped)**

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water, etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

Wireless remote control

The electronic keys are equipped with the following wireless remote control:



A Locks all the doors (→P.142)

B Closes the windows and the moon roof*1, 2 (→P.142)

C Unlocks all the doors (→P.142)

D Opens the windows and the moon roof*1, 2 (→P.142)

E Opens and closes the power back door (→P.149)

F Sounds the alarm*2 (→P.141)

*1: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

*2: If equipped

■ **Panic mode (if equipped)**

When is pressed for longer than about 1 second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

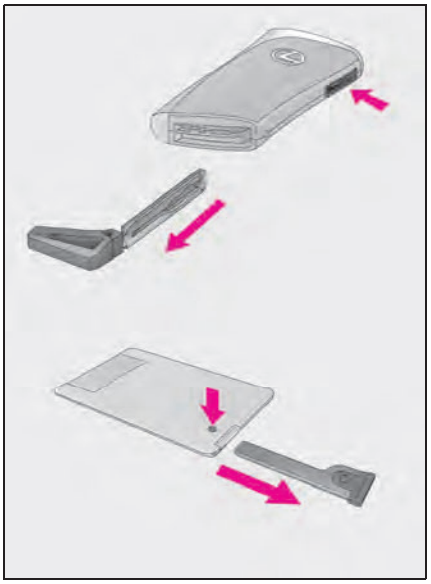
To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P.609)



■ **When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant**

Lock the glove box (→P.480) as necessary.
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

Vehicles with fingerprint authentication system: To start the engine when the fingerprint authentication system is on, touch the electronic key to the engine switch while depressing the brake pedal, and then press the engine switch. (→P.610)

■ **If you lose your mechanical keys**

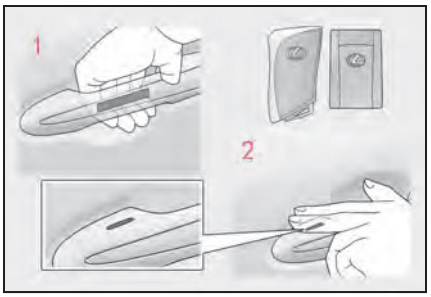
→P.608

Side doors

Unlocking and locking the doors from the outside

■ Using the entry function

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



1 Grip the driver's door handle to unlock the door. Holding the driver's door handle for approximately 2 seconds unlocks all the doors. Grip the passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors.*

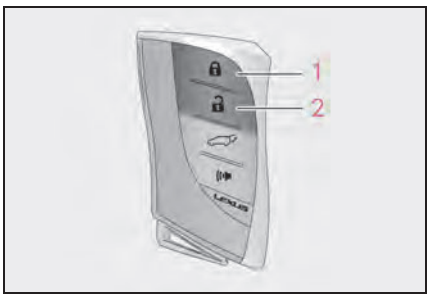
Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.
The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

*: The door unlock settings can be changed.

2 Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the upper part or lower part of the handle) to lock the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

■ Using the wireless remote control



1 Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

Press and hold to close the windows and moon roof *1, 2

2 Unlocks all the doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

Press and hold to open the windows and moon roof *1, 2

*1: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

*2: If equipped

■ Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm while changing the settings. (→P.109)

3 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , or for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When

changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 3.)

Multi-information display/Beep	Unlocking function
(Left-hand drive vehicles)	Holding the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.
(Right-hand drive vehicles) Exterior: Beeps 3 times	Holding a passenger's door handle unlocks all the doors.
Exterior: Beeps twice	Holding a door handle unlocks all the doors.

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P.108)

■ Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ Operation signals

Doors: A buzzer (if equipped) sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Windows and moon roof (if equipped): A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

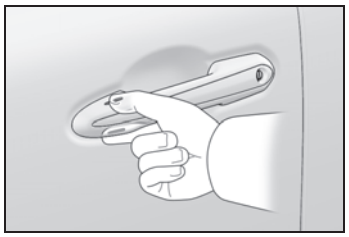
■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the upper part of the door handle

If the door will not lock even when the topside sensor area is touched, try touching both the topside and underside sensor areas at the same time.

When gloves are being worn, remove the gloves.



■ Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ Setting the alarm

Locking the doors will set the alarm system. (→P.108)

■ Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control

→P.164

■ If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly

- Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P.609)
- Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.563)

■ Rear seat reminder function

● In order to remind you not to forget luggage, etc. in the rear seat, when the engine switch is turned to OFF after any of the following conditions are met, a buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display for approximately 6 seconds.

- The engine is started within 10 minutes after opening and closing a rear door.
- A rear door has been opened and closed after the engine was started.

However, if a rear door is opened and then closed within approximately 2 seconds, the rear seat reminder function may not operate.

● The rear seat reminder function determines that luggage, etc. has been placed in a rear seat based on opening and closing of a rear door. Therefore, depending on the situation, the rear seat reminder function may not operate and you may still forget luggage, etc. in the rear seat, or it may operate unnecessarily.

● The rear seat reminder function can be enabled/disabled. (→P.641)

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.639)

⚠ WARNING

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

● Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.

● Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
Be especially careful for the driver's door and front passenger's door (for some models only), as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock button is in locked position.

● Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the second seat.

■ When opening or closing a door

Check the surroundings of the vehicle such as whether the vehicle is on an incline, whether there is enough space for a door to open and whether a strong wind is blowing. When opening or closing the door, hold the door handle tightly to prepare for any unpredictable movement.

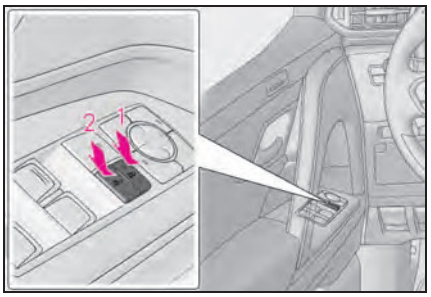
■ When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows or moon roof*

*: If equipped

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

Unlocking and locking the doors from the inside

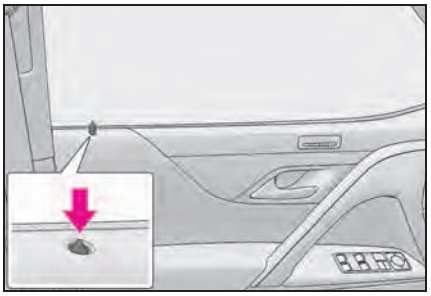
■ Using the door lock switches



1 Locks all the doors
2 Unlocks all the doors

Inside lock buttons (to lock)

Push down the inside lock button to lock the door.



Inside door handles (to unlock)

For the front doors:

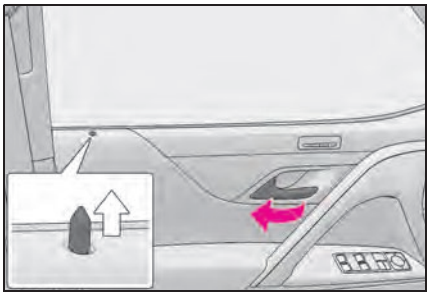
Pull the handle to unlock and open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.

For the rear doors:

Pull the handle to unlock the door. Pull the handle a second time to open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.



Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

1 Push down the inside lock button. (→P.145)

2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACC or ON, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

However, the key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Door closer (if equipped)

In the event that a door is left slightly open, the door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

- The door closer will operate regardless of the engine switch mode.
- The door closer will not function if the door has been closed while pulling the inside or outside door handle.
- The door can be opened by pulling the inside or outside door handle, even when the door closer is operating (except when the lock button is in the lock position or the child-protector lock is set).
- A motor sound may be heard for several seconds after the door closer closes the door. This does not indicate a malfunction.

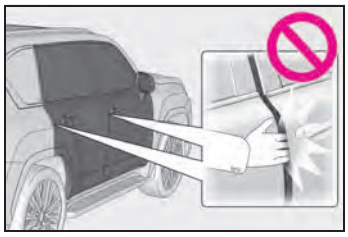
If a symbol indicating one or more doors are open is shown on the multi-information display

The hood or one or more of the doors are not fully closed. The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) are not yet fully closed. Make sure that the hood and all the doors are closed.

WARNING

■ **Door closer (if equipped)**

In the event that a door is left slightly open, the door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the door easy closer begins to operate. If the child-protector lock is set, the door closer will not stop during operation even if an attempt is made to open the door from inside the vehicle. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the door. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.



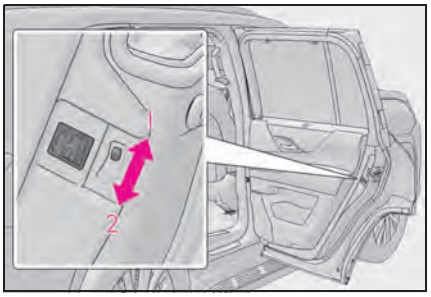
NOTICE

■ **To prevent door closer malfunction (if equipped)**

Do not frequently repeat opening and closing of doors, or apply excessive force to a door while the door closer is operating.

Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.



1 Unlock

2 Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P.639.

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12mph) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of P locks all the doors.

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to P unlocks all the doors.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All the doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within approximately 45 seconds after turning the engine switch off.

Back door

The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened/closed by the following procedures.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **Before driving**

- Make sure that the back door is fully closed.
  If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving and hit near-by objects or luggage in the luggage compartment may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could get heat exhaustion or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to operate unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

■ **Important points while driving**

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit near-by objects or luggage in the luggage compartment may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment.
  In the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

WARNING

■ Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

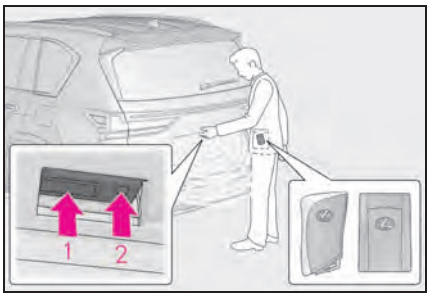
- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully, while on a steep incline. Make sure that the back door is secured before using the luggage compartment.
- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.

- Do not pull on the back door spindle (→P.159) to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door spindle. Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door spindle to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

Unlocking and locking the back door from the outside

■ Using the entry function

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



1 Unlocks all the doors

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

2 Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

■ Using the wireless remote control

→P.140

■ Operation signals

→P.143

■ Security feature

→P.143

Unlocking and locking the back door from the inside

Using the door lock switches

→P.144

Opening/closing the back door

Using the wireless remote control

Press and hold the switch.

The power back door automatically opens/closes.

Unlock the back door before operating.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing stops the operation. When the switch is pressed again during the halted operation, the back door will perform the reverse operation.

Using the power back door switch on the instrument panel

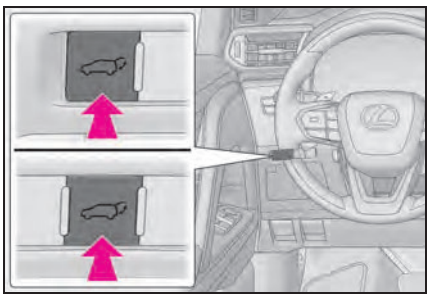
Press and hold the switch.

The power back door automatically opens/closes.

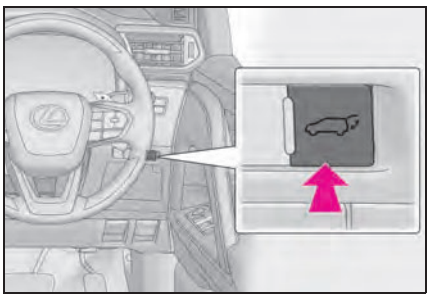
Unlock the back door before operating.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing stops the operation. When the switch is pressed and held again during the halted operation, the back door will perform the reverse operation.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



Using the switches on the back door

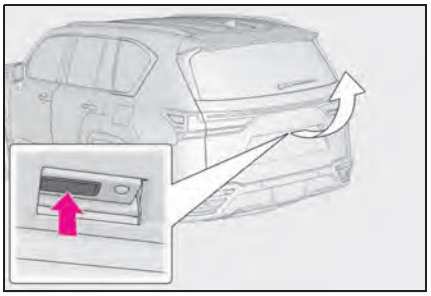
● Open

When the back door is unlocked: Press the back door opener switch.

When the back door is locked: While carrying the electronic key on your person, press and hold the back door opener switch.

The power back door automatically opens.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing stops the operation.

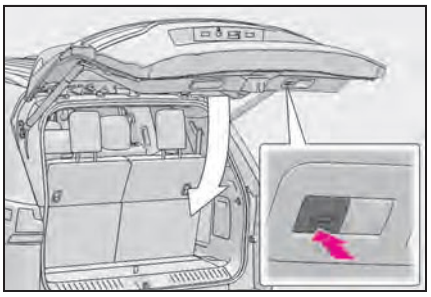


● Close

Press the switch on the lower part of the back door.

The power back door automatically closes.

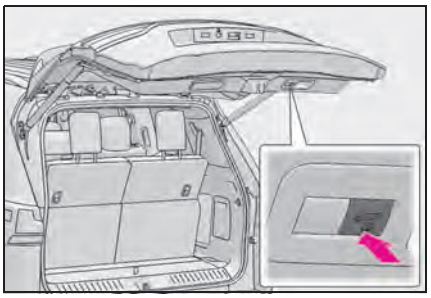
Pressing the switch while the power back door is operating will stop the operation. When the switch is pressed again during the halted operation, the back door will perform the reverse operation.



● Close the back door and lock all doors after moving away from the back door (close & lock [Walk-Away] function)

1 Close all of the doors except the back door, carrying an electronic key and press the switch on the lower part of the back door.

A different buzzer than the normal one will sound and the close & lock (Walk-Away) function will go into standby.



2 While the buzzer is sounding, move away from the back door.

When the sensor detects that you are away from the back door, the emergency flashers will flash (on some models), and the buzzer will sound. Depending on the direction of moving away from the back door, the location and how to hold the electronic key or circumstances, it may not be detected properly.

All the doors other than the back door will be locked, and after the back door is closed, the back door will also be locked. When all the doors have been closed and locked, the buzzer (if equipped) will sound and the emergency flashers will flash. (→P.143)

The standby state is canceled if you do not move away from the back door for 30 minutes. To operate the function again, perform the procedure again from the beginning.

If you approach the back door carrying the electronic key, the back door operation will stop, all the doors will be unlocked, and the buzzer (if equipped) will sound and the emergency flashers will flash. (→P.143)

If the switch is pressed after the back door operation has stopped, the close & lock (Walk-Away) function will go into standby again.

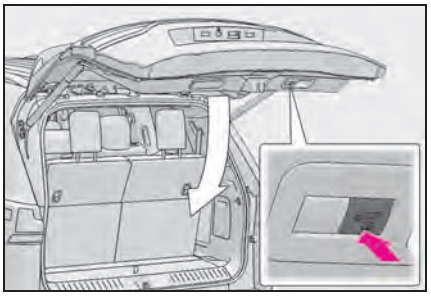
● Close the back door and lock all doors (close & lock function)*

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Close all of the doors except the back door, carrying an electronic key and press the switch on the lower part of the back door.

A different buzzer than the normal one will sound and the back door will begin closing automatically. All the doors except the back door are locked and then back door will also be locked at the same time it is closed. Operation signals will indicate that all the doors have been closed and locked. (→P.143)

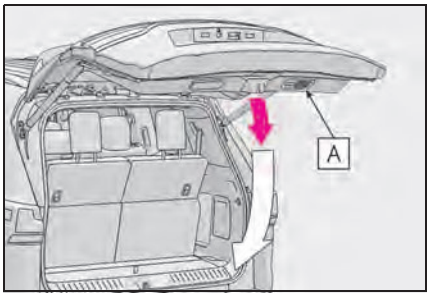
Pressing the switch while the back door is operating will stop the operation. When the switch is pressed again during the halted operation, the back door will be closed.



Using the back door handle

Lower the back door using the back door handle A .

The back door closing assist (→P.154) will be activated, and the power back door will fully close automatically.



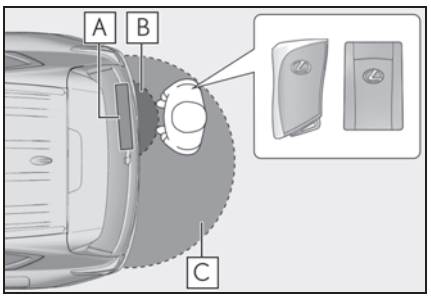
Using the kick sensor (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)

The Hands Free Power Back Door enables automatic opening and closing of the power back door by putting your foot near the right lower part of the rear bumper and moving it away from the rear bumper. When operating the Hands Free Power Back Door, make sure that all of the following conditions are met.

- The engine switch is in OFF, or ON with the shift lever in P.
- The kick sensor operation is enabled (→P.124).
- You are carrying an electronic key.

1 While carrying an electronic key, stand within the smart entry & start system operation range, approxi-

mately 30 to 50 cm (11.8 to 19.7 in.) from the rear bumper.



A Kick sensor

B Hands Free Power Back Door operation detection area

C Smart entry & start system operation detection area (→P.163)

2 Perform a kick operation by moving your foot to within approximately 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the rear bumper, and then pulling your foot back after the buzzer sounds.

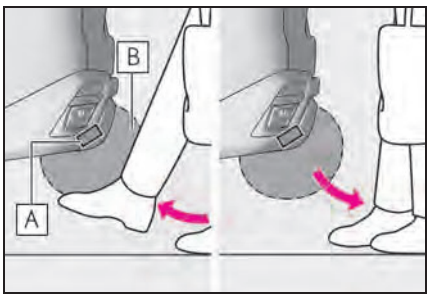
Perform the entire kick operation within 1 second.

The back door will not start operating while a foot is detected under the rear bumper.

Operate the Hands Free Power Back Door without contacting the rear bumper with your foot.

If another electronic key is in the cabin or luggage compartment, it may take slightly longer than normal for the operation to occur.

If the buzzer sounds twice, perform a kick operation again.



A Kick sensor

B Hands Free Power Back Door operation detection area

3 When the kick sensor detects that your foot is pulled back, a buzzer will sound and the back door will automatically fully open/close.

If a foot is moved under the rear bumper while the back door is opening/closing, the back door will stop moving.

If a foot is moved under the rear bumper again during the halted operation, the back door will perform the reverse operation.

■ Closing and locking the back door after moving away from the back door using the kick sensor (Hands Free close & lock [Walk-Away] function) *1, 2

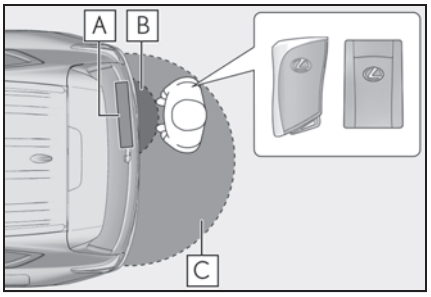
*1: If equipped

*2: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

The Hands Free Power Back Door enables automatic closing and locking of the power back door by putting your foot near the right lower part of the rear bumper, moving it away from the rear bumper, and moving away from the back door. When operating the

Hands Free Power Back Door, make sure that the engine switch is in OFF, the kick sensor operation is enabled (→P.124) and you are carrying an electronic key.

1 While carrying an electronic key, stand within the smart entry & start system operation range, approximately 30 to 50 cm (11.8 to 19.7 in.) from the rear bumper.



A Kick sensor

B Hands Free Power Back Door operation detection area

C Smart entry & start system operation detection area (→P.163)

2 Perform a kick operation by moving your foot to within approximately 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the rear bumper, and then pulling your foot back after the buzzer sounds.

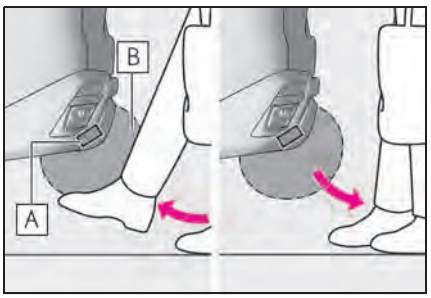
Perform the entire kick operation within 1 second.

The back door will not start operating while a foot is detected under the rear bumper.

Operate the Hands Free Power Back Door without contacting the rear bumper with your foot.

If another electronic key is in the cabin or luggage compartment, it may take slightly longer than normal for the operation to occur.

If the buzzer sounds twice, perform a kick operation again.



A Kick sensor

B Hands Free Power Back Door operation detection area

3 When the kick sensor detects that your foot is pulled back, a different buzzer than the normal one will sound and the Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function will go into standby.

4 While the buzzer is sounding, move away from the back door.

When the sensor detects that you are away from the back door, the emergency flashers will flash (on some models), and the buzzer will sound. Depending on the direction of moving away from the back door, the location and how to hold the electronic key or circumstances, it may not be detected properly.

All the doors other than the back door will be locked, and after the back door is closed, the back door will also be locked. When all the doors have been closed and locked, the buzzer (if equipped) will sound and the emergency flashers will flash. (→P.143)

The standby state is canceled if you do not move away from the back door in 30 minutes. To operate the function again, perform the procedure again from the

beginning.

If you approach the back door carrying the electronic key, the back door operation will stop, all the doors will be unlocked, and the buzzer (if equipped) will sound and the emergency flashers will flash. (→P.143)

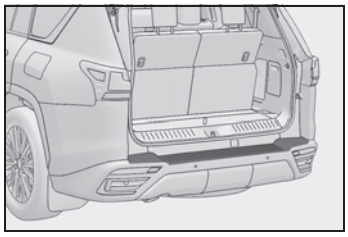
If the power back door is operated after the back door operation has stopped, the Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function will go into standby again.

■ Luggage compartment light

- The luggage compartment light turns on when the back door is opened.
- When the engine switch is turned to OFF, the light will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ Rear bumper

Applying excessive force may deform or damage the upper rear bumper.



■ Back door closer

In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

Whatever the state of the engine switch, the back door closer operates.

■ Power back door operating conditions

The power back door can automatically open and close under the following conditions:

- When the power back door system is enabled. (→P.124)
- When the back door is unlocked.

However, if the back door opener switch is pressed and held while carrying the electronic key on your person, the power back door will be operated even if the back door is locked. (→P.149)

- When the engine switch is in ON, in addition to the above for the opening operations, the back door operates for any of the following conditions:

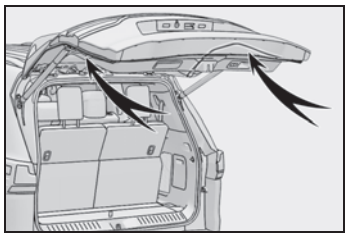
• Parking brake is engaged
• The brake pedal is depressed
• The shift lever is in P.

■ Operation of the power back door

- A buzzer sounds to indicate that the back door is opening/closing.
- When the power back door system is disabled, the power back door does not operate but it can be opened and closed by hand.
- When the power back door automatically opens, if an abnormality due to people or objects is detected, operation will stop.

■ Jam protection function

Sensors are equipped on both sides of the power back door. If anything obstructs the power back door while it is closing, the back door will automatically operate in the opposite direction or stop.



■ Fall-down protection function

While the power back door is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the power back door from suddenly shutting.

■ Back door closing assist

If the back door is lowered manually when the back door is stopped at an open position, the back door will fully close automatically.

■ Back door reserve lock function

This function is a function which reserves

locking of all doors, beforehand, when the power back door is open.

When the following procedure is performed, all the doors except the power back door are locked and then power back door will also be locked at the same time it is closed.

1 Close all doors, except the back door.
2 During the power back door closing operation, lock the doors using the smart entry & start system (→P.142) or the wireless remote control. (→P.142)

Operation signals will indicate that all the doors have been closed and locked. (→P.143)

- If the electronic key is placed inside the vehicle after starting a close operation via the door reserve lock function, the electronic key may become locked inside the vehicle.
- If the power back door does not fully close due to the operation of the jam protection function, etc., while the back door is automatically closing after a door reserve lock operation is performed, the door reserve lock function is canceled and all the doors will unlock.
- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that all the doors are closed and locked.

Close & lock (Walk-Away) function operating conditions

This function can be operated when all of the following conditions are met:

- Close & lock (Walk-Away) function is enabled.
- An electronic key is not detected within the vehicle.
- All of the doors other than the back door are closed.
- The engine switch is in OFF.
- The electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas).

Situations in which the close & lock (Walk-Away) function may not operate properly

In the following situations, the function may not operate properly:

- When the smart entry & start system does not operate properly.
- When the close & lock function does not operate properly.
- When moving away from the back door while the close & lock (Walk-Away) function is in the standby state.
- When the number of electronic keys registered in the vehicle increases.

Close & lock function* operating conditions

This function can be operated when all of the following conditions are met:

- An electronic key is not detected within the vehicle.
- All of the doors other than the power back door are closed.
- The engine switch is in OFF.

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Situations in which the close & lock function* may not operate properly

In the following situations, the close & lock function may not operate properly:

- If the switch on the lower part of the power back door is pressed by a hand which is holding an electronic key
- If the switch on the lower part of the power back door is pressed when the electronic key is in a bag, etc. that is placed on the ground
- If the switch on the lower part of the power back door is pressed with the electronic key not near the vehicle

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Kick sensor operating conditions (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)**

The Hands Free Power Back Door will open/close automatically when the following conditions are met:

- The kick sensor operation is enabled (→P.124)
- The engine switch is in OFF, or ON with the shift lever in P.
- The electronic key is within the operational range. (→P.163)
- A foot is put near the right lower part of the rear bumper and moved away from the rear bumper.
  The power back door may also be operated by putting a hand, an elbow, a knee, etc. near the right lower part of the rear bumper and moving it away from the rear bumper. Make sure to put it close enough to the right lower part of the rear bumper.

■ **Situations in which the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate properly (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)**

In the following situations, the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate properly:

- When a foot remains under the rear bumper
- If the rear bumper is strongly hit with a foot or is touched for a while

If the rear bumper has been touched for a while, wait for a short time before attempting to operate the Hands Free Power Back Door again.

- When operated while a person is too close to the rear bumper
- When an external radio wave source interferes with the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle (→P.164)
- When the vehicle is parked near an electrical noise source which affects the sensitivity of the Hands Free Power Back Door, such as a pay parking spot, gas station, electrically heated road, or fluorescent light
- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear bumper, such as when the vehicle is being washed or in heavy rain
- When mud, snow, ice, etc. is attached to the rear bumper
- When the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the rear bumper, such as plants
- When an accessory is installed to the rear bumper

If an accessory has been installed, turn the Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) operation setting off.

■ **Preventing unintentional operation of the Hands Free Power Back Door (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)**

When an electronic key is in the operation range, the Hands Free Power Back Door may operate unintentionally, so be careful in the following situations.

To prevent unintentional operation, turn the Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) operation setting off. (→P.124)

- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear bumper, such as when the vehicle is being washed or in heavy rain
- When dirt is wiped off the rear bumper
- When a small animal or small object, such as a ball, moves under the rear bumper
- When an object is moved from under the rear bumper
- If someone is swinging their legs while sitting on the rear bumper
- If the legs or another part of someone's body contacts the rear bumper while passing by the vehicle
- When the vehicle is parked near an electrical noise source which affects the sen-

sitivity of the Hands Free Power Back Door, such as a pay parking spot, gas station, electrically heated road, or fluorescent light

- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the vehicle is parked in a place where objects such as plants are near the rear bumper
- If luggage, etc. is set near the rear bumper
- If accessories or a vehicle cover is installed/removed near the rear bumper
- When the vehicle is being towed

■ Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function*1 operating conditions

This function can be operated when all of the following conditions are met:

- Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function is enabled*2.
- Hands Free Power Back Door*1 is enabled.
- An electronic key is not detected within the vehicle.
- All of the doors other than the back door are closed.
- The engine switch is in OFF.
- The electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas).

*1: If equipped

*2: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Situations in which the Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function*1, 2 may not operate properly

In the following situations, the function may not operate properly:

- When the smart entry & start system does not operate properly.
- When the close & lock function does not operate properly.
- When moving away from the back door while the Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function is in the standby state.
- When the number of electronic keys registered in the vehicle increases.
- When the Hands Free Power Back Door does not operate properly.*1

*1: If equipped

*2: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ When reconnecting the battery

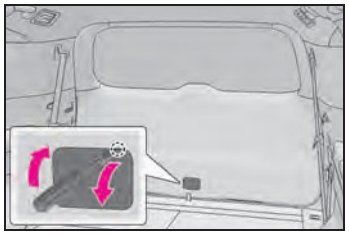
To enable the power back door to operate properly, close the back door manually.

■ If the back door opener is inoperative

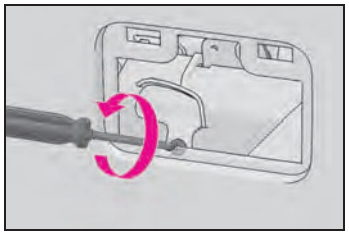
The back door can be unlocked from the inside.

1 Remove the cover.

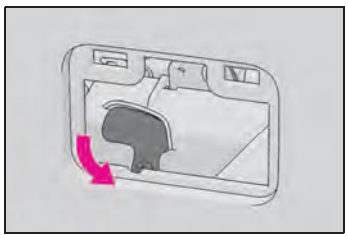
To prevent damage, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



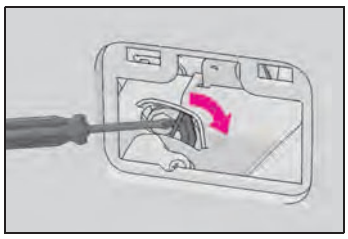
2 Loosen the screw.



3 Turn the cover.



4 Move the lever.



5 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

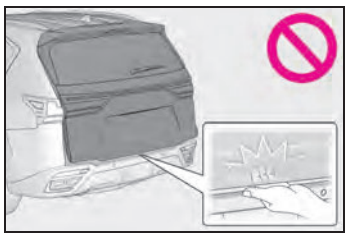
Customization

Settings (e.g. power back door opening angle) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.642)

WARNING

Back door closer

- In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the back door closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the back door, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.



- Use caution when using the back door closer as it still operates when the power back door system is canceled.

Power back door

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- If the power back door system is turned off while the back door is operating automatically, the automatic operation is stopped. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close unexpectedly.
- If the operating conditions of the power back door are no longer met, a buzzer may sound and the back door may stop opening or closing. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
- On an incline, the back door may suddenly shut after it opens. Make sure the back door is fully open and secure.
- In the following situations, the power back door may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the back door has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
  - When the back door contacts an obstacle
  - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the engine switch is turned to ON or the engine is started during automatic operation

WARNING

- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, the power back door may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the back door may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

■ Jam protection function

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

■ Hands Free Power Back Door (if equipped)

Observe the following precautions when operating the Hands Free Power Back Door.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- When putting your foot under the rear bumper and moving it from the rear bumper, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipes until they have cooled down sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes can cause burns.
- Do not leave the electronic key within the effective range (detection area) of the luggage compartment.

■ Close & lock (Walk-Away) function and Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function *1, 2

*1: If equipped

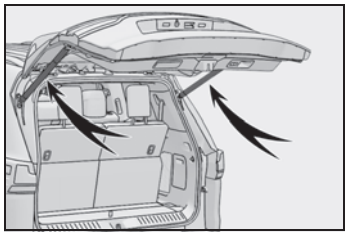
*2: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

The back door starts to close automatically when leaving the back door. Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.

NOTICE

■ Back door spindles

The back door is equipped with spindles that hold the back door in place.
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door spindle, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the spindle rod.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the spindle or apply lateral forces to it.

NOTICE

■ To prevent back door closer malfunction

Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the back door closer is operating. Applying excessive force may cause the back door closer to malfunction.

■ To prevent damage to the power back door

- Make sure that there is no ice between the back door and frame that would prevent movement of the back door. Operating the power back door when excessive load is present on the back door may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the power back door is operating.
- Take care not to damage the sensors (installed on the right and left edges of the power back door) with a knife or other sharp object. If the sensor is disconnected, the power back door will not close automatically.

■ Close & lock function*

When closing the power back door using the close & lock function, a different buzzer than the normal one will sound before the operation begins.

To check that the operation has started correctly, check that a different buzzer than the normal one has sounded.

Additionally, when the power back door is fully closed and locked, operation signals will indicate that all of the doors have been locked. (→P.143)

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the operational signals have operated and that all of the doors are locked.

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Hands Free Power Back Door precautions (if equipped)

The kick sensor is located behind the right lower part of the rear bumper. Observe the following to ensure that the Hands Free Power Back Door function operates properly:

- Keep the right lower part of the rear bumper clean at all times.
  If the right lower part of the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the kick sensor may not operate. In this situation, clean off the dirt or snow, move the vehicle from the current position and then check if the kick sensor operates.
  If it does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not apply coatings that have a rain clearing (hydrophilic) effect, or other coatings, to the right lower part of the rear bumper.
- Do not park the vehicle near objects that may move and contact the right lower part of the rear bumper, such as grass or trees.
  If the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the right lower part of the rear bumper, such as grass or trees, the kick sensor may not operate. In this situation, move the vehicle from the current position and then check if the kick sensor operates. If it does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

- Do not subject the kick sensor or its surrounding area to a strong impact. If the kick sensor or its surrounding area has been subjected to a strong impact, the kick sensor may not operate properly. If the kick sensor does not operate in the following situations, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
  - The kick sensor or its surrounding area has been subjected to a strong impact.
  - The right lower part of the rear bumper is scratched or damaged.
- Do not disassemble the rear bumper.
- Do not attach stickers to the rear bumper.
- Do not paint the rear bumper.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the power back door, disable the kick sensor. (→P.124)

Changing settings of the power back door system

The settings of the power back door system can be changed by displaying the "Vehicle Settings" - screen from of the multi-information display. (→P.124)

The changed power back door settings are not reset by turning the engine switch to OFF. In order to restore the original settings, they need to be changed back on of the multi-information display.

Adjusting the open position of the back door

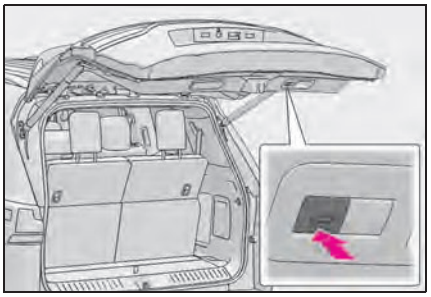
The open position of the power back door can be adjusted.

1 Stop the back door in the desirable position. (→P.149)

2 Press and hold the switch on the lower part of the back door for approximately 2 seconds.

When the settings are completed, the buzzer sounds 4 times.

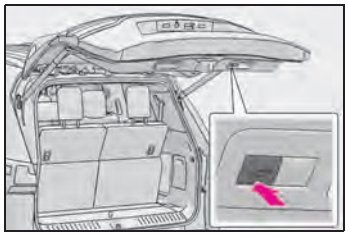
When opening the back door the next time, the back door will stop at that position.



Canceling the adjusted open position of the back door

Press and hold the switch on the lower part of the back door for approximately 7 seconds.

After the buzzer sounds 4 times, it sounds twice more. When the power back door does the opening operation the next time, the door will open to the initial settings position.



■ Customization

The opening position can be set with the Multimedia Display. (→P.637)

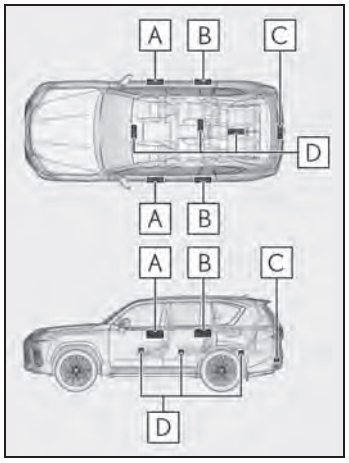
Priority for the stop position is given to the last position set by either the switch on the lower part of the back door or Multimedia Display.

Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P.142)
- Locks and unlocks the back door (→P.148)
- Starts the engine (→P.228)

■ Antenna location



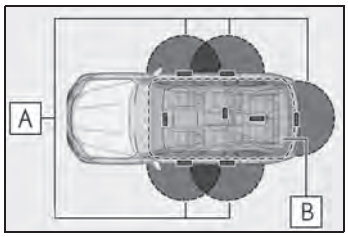
A Antennas outside the cabin (front)

B Antennas outside the cabin (rear)

C Antenna outside the luggage compartment

D Antennas inside the cabin

■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)**



A When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of the front door handles, rear door handles and back door opener switch. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

B When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ **If an alarm sounds or a warning message is displayed**

An alarm sounds and warning message displays shown on the multi-information display are used to protect against unexpected accidents or theft of the vehicle resulting from erroneous operation. When a warning message is displayed, take appropriate measures based on the displayed message.

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

● When an exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds

Situation	Correction procedure
An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.

● When an interior alarm pings continuously

Situation	Correction procedure
The engine switch was turned to ACC while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the engine switch was in ACC).	Turn the engine switch to OFF and close the driver's door.

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

● In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
- The electronic key has been left in an area of approximately 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 2 minutes or longer.
- The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.

● If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any doors except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

■ **Turning an electronic key to battery-saving mode**

● When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding .

Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.

- Electronic keys that will not be used for long periods of time can be set to the battery-saving mode in advance.

Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly.

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless key (that emits radio waves) is being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
  - Another electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices
- When the vehicle is parked in a pay parking spot where radio waves are emitted.

If the doors cannot be locked/unlocked using the smart entry & start system, lock/unlock the doors by performing any of the following:

- Bring the electronic key close to either front door handle and operate the entry function.
- Operate the wireless remote control.

If the doors cannot be locked/unlocked using the above methods, use the mechanical key. (→P.141)

If the engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system, refer to P.610.

Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage cover (if equipped) or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door

will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.

- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
- When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
  - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
  - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.163)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again, or use the lock sensor on the lower part of the door handle.
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance. (→P.640)
- Battery-saving mode can reduce the power consumption of electronic keys. (→P.163)

■ To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not operate.)

■ If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P.609)
- Starting the engine: →P.610

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.640)

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to the explanations for the following operations.

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P.142, 609)
- Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P.610
- Stopping the engine: →P.230

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should keep away from the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P.162)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- User of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

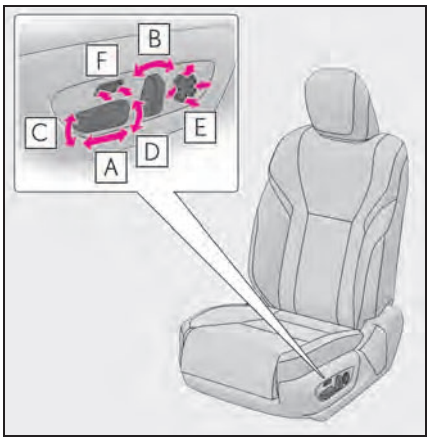
Ask your Lexus dealer for details for disabling the entry function.

Front seats

The seats can be adjusted (longitudinally, vertically, etc.). Adjust the seat to ensure the correct driving posture.

Adjustment procedure

▶ Manual head restraints type



A Seat position control switch

B Seatback angle control switch

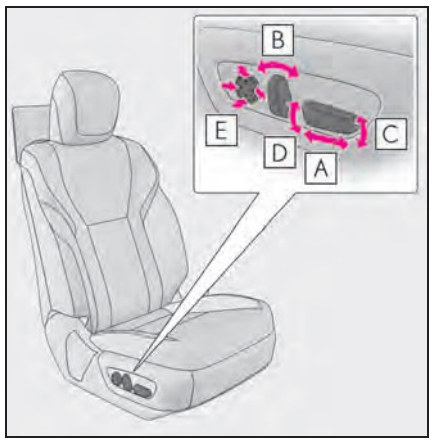
C Seat cushion (front) angle control switch

D Vertical height control switch

E Lumbar support control switch

F Seat cushion length control switch (driver's side only)

▶ Power head restraints type



A Seat position control switch

B Seatback angle control switch

C Seat cushion (front) angle control switch

D Vertical height control switch

E Head restraint control switch (→P.183)

■ **When adjusting the seat**

- Make sure that any surrounding passengers or objects are not contact the seat.
- Make sure that the head restraint does not touch the ceiling or sun visor.

■ **Power easy access system**

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.204)

■ **Jam protection function**

While the driving position is recalled or the power easy access system is operating, if an object is stuck behind the front seat, the front seat will stop and then slightly move forward. When the jam protection function operates, the seat stops at a position other than the set seat position. Check the seat position.

WARNING

■ When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
- Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat (4-passenger models)

Do not operate the front passenger's seat when a passenger is seated in it. In addition, do not let anyone sit down in the front passenger's seat while the seat is being operated or when the head restraint is being folded. The front passenger may catch their legs between the instrument panel and seat, or the head restraint may interfere with their head, resulting in injury.

■ When the front passenger's seat is folded forward (4-passenger models)

If the outside rear view mirror is difficult to see, due to the position of the front passenger's seat, move the front passenger's seat to an appropriate position.

Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat (4-passenger models)

Before operating the front passenger's seat, make sure that there is no luggage or any other objects on the seat or in the footwell that could prevent its operation.

Such items may result in excess force being applied, causing damage to the seat and/or the luggage.

Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat (4-passenger models)

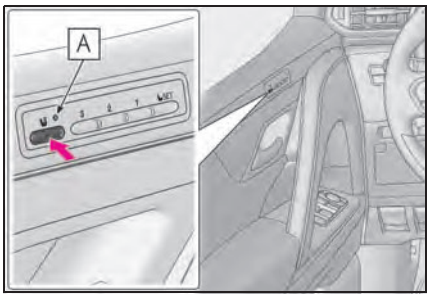
■ Using the driver's seat adjustment switches to adjust the front passenger's seat (front passenger mode)

The mode of the driver's seat adjustment switches can be changed to adjust the front passenger's seat.

1 Press the mode change button on the driver's side door.

The indicator [A] will illuminate when front

passenger mode is selected.



2 Using the seat adjustment switches on the driver's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat.

To cancel front passenger mode, press the mode change button again.

Front passenger mode will be canceled automatically if the driver's seat adjustment switches are not operated for approximately 30 seconds.

■ Using the Multimedia Display

1 Select on the Main menu.

2 Select "Seat controls".

3 Select "Arrangement".

4 Select "Passenger seat".

5 Select the button for the desired operation.

A Move the front passenger's seat forward and fold the seatback and head restraint. (extra front)

B Move the front passenger's seat rearward and the seatback and head restraint to the upright position.

To stop the front passenger's seat while it is moving, select the A or B passenger's seat operation button or press the seat switch.

C Folds the rear display

Press it again to extend them to the original position.

■ Operating the foldable head restraint using the front passenger's seat adjustment switches

When the front passenger's head restraint is folded forward and the front passenger's door is open, if the front passenger's seat adjustment switches are used to move the seat backward or recline the seatback, the head restraint will move to the upright position automatically when the switch is released.

To stop the operation of the front passenger's head restraint part-way, perform any of the following operations:

- Operate any front passenger's seat adjustment switch.
- Press the "SET" button.
- Press the "1", "2" or "3" button.
- Press the seat switch.

■ Operation of the front passenger's seat using the Multimedia Display will be canceled when

In the following situations, the front passenger's seat cannot be operated using the Multimedia Display:

- The engine switch is in ACC or OFF.
- The weight of an occupant or heavy object, etc. is detected on the front passenger's seat.

Once weight is detected on the seat, the

seat will be judged as occupied until the front passenger's door is opened then closed or the engine switch is turned off.

- The front passenger's seat belt is fastened.
- The front passenger's door is open. (The front seat will not move forward.)

Operating the front passenger's seat from the rear seat (4-passenger models)

1 Display the home screen on the Rear Multi Operation Panel (→P.449) and then select "Seat".

2 Select "Passenger".

3 Select the button for the desired operation.

When the operating conditions are not met, the buttons will be grayed out.

A Adjust the angle of the front passenger's seat seatback

The seatback will move while a button is touched and held.

B Move the front passenger's seat forward or backward

The seat will move while a button is touched and held.

C Folds the rear display

Press it again to extend them to the original position.

D Move the front passenger's seat forward and fold the seatback forward.

The head restraint will also fold forward.

To stop the front passenger seat while it is moving, touch "STOP".

E Move the front passenger's seat backward and the seatback to the upright position.

The head restraint will also move to the upright position.

■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the rear seat

- In the following situations, the front passenger's seat cannot be operated using the Rear Multi Operation Panel:
  - The engine switch is in ACC or OFF.
  - The weight of an occupant or heavy object, etc. is detected on the front passenger's seat.

Once weight is detected on the seat, the seat will be judged as occupied until the front passenger's door is opened then closed or the engine switch is turned off.

- The front passenger's seat belt is fastened.
- The front passenger's door is open. (The front seat will not move forward.)

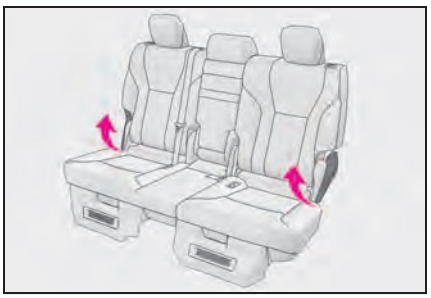
Rear seats (5-passenger and 7-passenger models)

The reclining angle can be adjusted and the seatback can be folded by operating the lever or switch.

Adjustment procedure

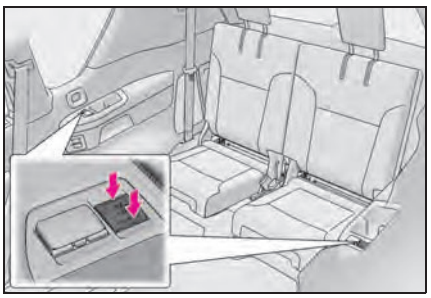
▶ Second seat

Pull the lever and adjust the seatback



▶ Third seat (if equipped)

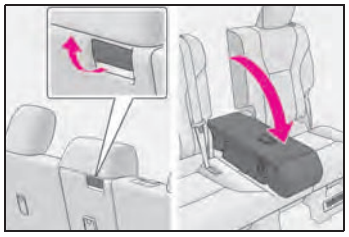
Press the switch and adjust the seatback



■ Folding down second center seatback

Pull the center seatback lock release lever behind the seatback and fold it down.

To return the center seatback to its original position, lift it up until it locks.



⚠ WARNING

■ When folding the seatbacks down

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not fold the seatbacks down while driving.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.

■ Adjusting the reclining angle

Do not fold the seatback more than required. During a collision, your body could slip beneath the seat belt resulting in extreme pressure being applied to your abdomen, or the shoulder belt could wrap around your neck, which may result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When operating the rear seat

- Be careful that your hands and legs do not get caught in moving parts or connection areas.
- Do not arrange seats while they are occupied.

When entering and exiting the third seat (if equipped)

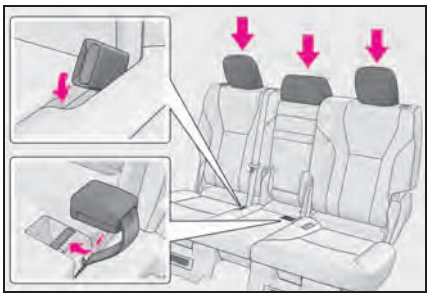
For easy access to the third seat, perform **1** in "Tumbling the second seats". (→P.172, 173)

When tumbling the second seats

■ Before tumbling the second seats

1 Stow the seat belt buckles and lower the head restraints to the lowest position.

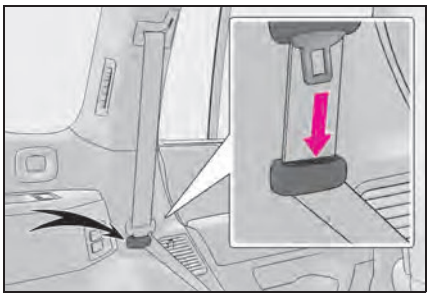
Use the band to secure the center seat buckle.



2 Pass the outer seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

This prevents the shoulder belt from being damaged.

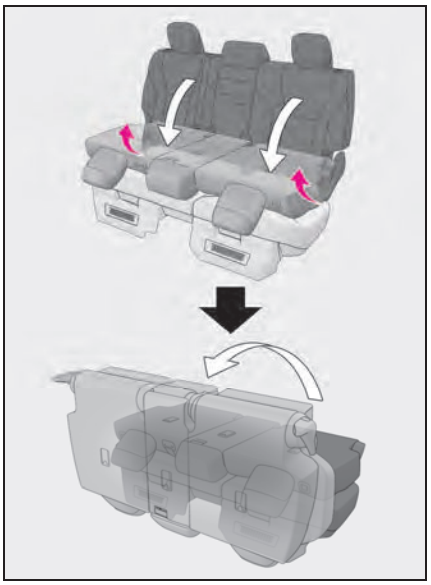
Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers before using them.



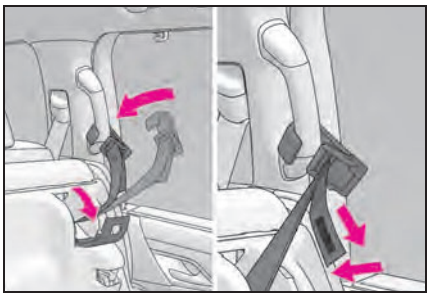
■ Tumbling the second seats (manual type)

1 Pull the lever

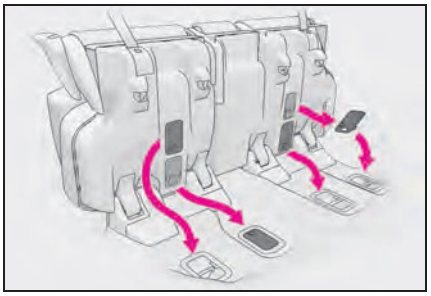
The seatback is folded forward and the seat springs up.



2 Open the cover and then attach the hook to the assist grip to prevent the seat from moving



3 Remove the seat hook covers from the back of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.



■ Tumbling the second seats (power type)

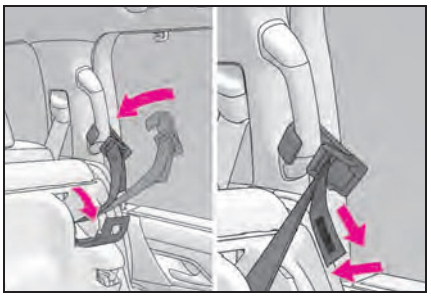
1 Press and hold the switch

The front seat will move forward and stop. When the operation has been stopped, release the switch.

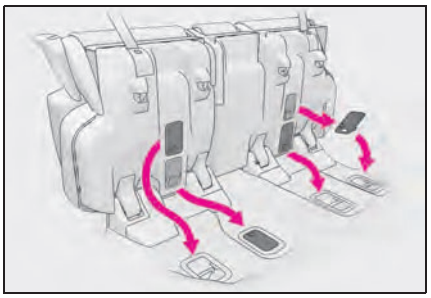
2 After the front seat has stopped, release the switch.

The seatback is folded forward and the seat springs up.

3 Open the cover and then attach the hook to the assist grip to prevent the seat from moving



4 Remove the seat hook covers from the back of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.



■ **The second seats (power type) can be operated when**

When the engine switch is OFF, or ON with the shift lever in P.

■ **When tumbling the second seat (power type)**

- In the following situations, the second seat does not tumble properly and operation stops.
  - The seatback is folded forward
  - The center seat is folded forward
  - The armrest is being used
- If an object is placed on the seat cushion, the tumbling operation may stop.

WARNING

■ **When stowing the second seat**

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check that there is no luggage and that there are no other people around the seat before stowing operation.
- Do not insert hands or feet into the moving parts of the seat.
- Do not allow children to operate the seat.

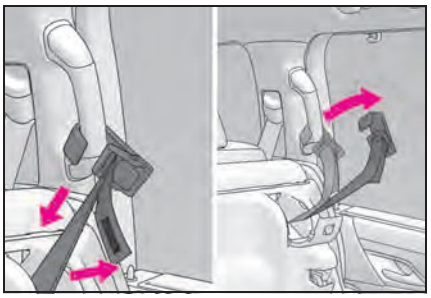
■ **When tumbling the second seat**

- Do not sit on or place anything on the seatback while driving.
- Be sure to install the seat hook covers on the seat hooks, or you may get burned when they become hot.
- Do not tumble the second seat with any electrical devices left connected to the accessory outlet or charging USB port on the rear of the console box. The second seat could strike the electrical device and damage it.
- Be sure to secure the seat using the hook after tumbling the second seat. If the seat is not secured, the seat may return while driving, resulting in serious injury.

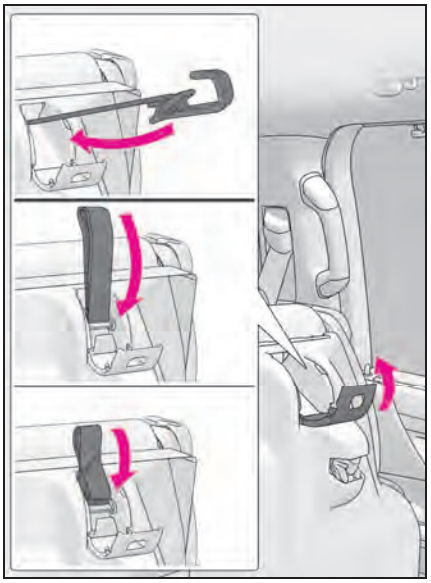
Returning the second seat to its original position

1 Detach the hook from the assist grip

If detaching from the assist grip is difficult, loosen the belt.

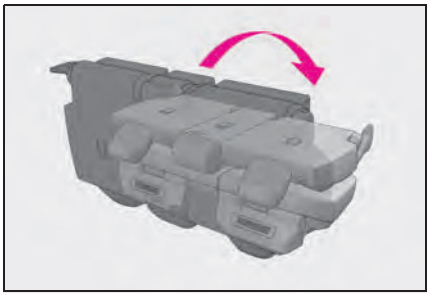


2 Stow the hook and tumble band, and then close the cover



3 Return the seat to its original position.

Push the seat until it is locked.

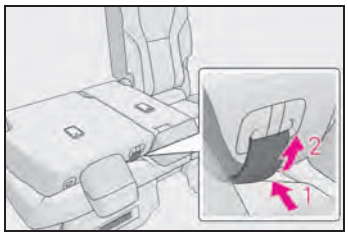


4 Lift the seatback.

Lift it until it is locked.

Power type: return the front seat to the original position. When a front seat is close to a second seat, the operation of the front seat may be restricted.

■ If you cannot raise the seatback



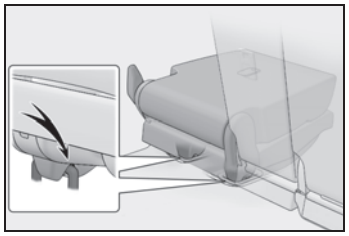
1 Pushing on the lower front edge of the seatback to slacken the seat belt.

2 Let the seat belt retract a little.

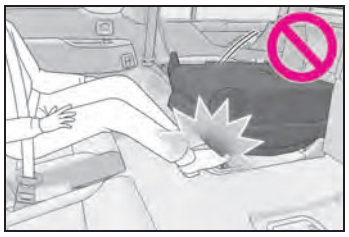
WARNING

■ When returning the seat to its original position

- Make sure the seat legs are securely latched to the floor when putting back the seats.



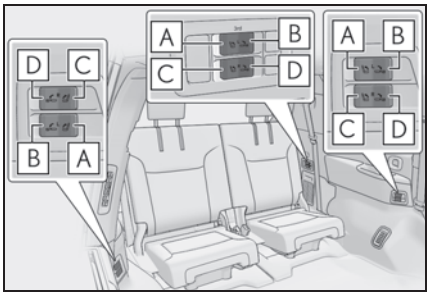
- When returning the second seat to the original position, be careful not to get your hand or foot of the third seat passengers caught between the second seat and the floor.



■ After returning the seat to its original position

- After returning the seat to its original position, gently shake it to the front and rear and check that it is secure
- Do not pinch the seat belt
- Make sure that the seat belt is removed from the hanger as before

Third power seat control switches (if equipped)



A Left seat return switch

B Left seat stow switch

C Right seat return switch

D Right seat stow switch

Operation can also performed using both the seat and back door switches.

The third power seats can be operated when

When the engine switch is OFF, or ON with the shift lever in P

Switch operation

- Do not release the switch while the third seat is operating. Releasing the switch will cause the seat to stop operating and will sound a (continuous) buzzer. Press the switch again to stop the buzzer.
- If the third seat is close to the second seat or other surrounding parts, third seat movement may be restricted.

If the warning buzzer sounds continuously

If a system malfunction occurs, the warning buzzer may continue to sound while the engine switch is on. In this case, perform the following.

1 Press and hold the return switch on the back door

2 Press the stow switch on the seat 5 times within 10 seconds, and check that the buzzer sounds 3 times (do not release the return switch on the back door until the buzzer sounds 3 times)

3 Press and hold the return switch on the seat or back door

After the seat is stowed, the warning buzzer will stop.

If the malfunction does not disappear even after performing this procedure above, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

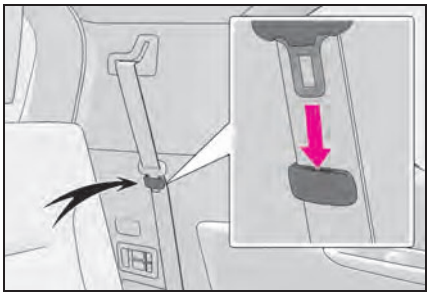
When stowing the third seat (if equipped)

Before stowing the third seats

1 Pass the seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

This prevents the shoulder belt from being damaged.

Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers before using them.



2 Adjust the seatback of the second seat so that it does not interfere with the third seat. (→P.171)

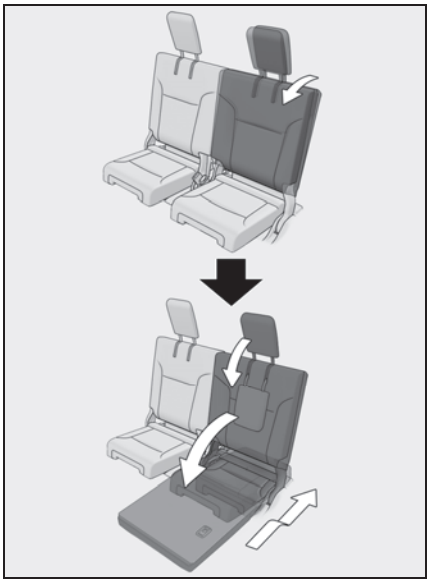
Stowing the third seat

Press and hold the stow switch to stow the third seat

After the buzzer sounds twice, the seatback will be folded down and the head restraint and seat cushion will be automati-

cally stowed in the floor.

When the seat has been stowed, the buzzer will sound twice and operation will be automatically stopped. When the operation has been stopped, release the switch.



WARNING

■ When stowing the third seats

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check that there is no luggage and that there are no other people around the seat before stowing operation.
- Do not insert hands or feet into the moving parts of the seat.
- Do not allow children to operate the seat.
- Do not use the seat if only the seat cushion has been stowed.

NOTICE

■ When stowing the third seats

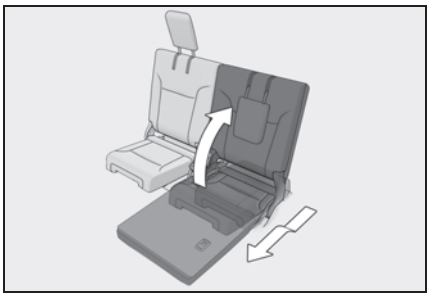
If there is the luggage cover attached to the vehicle, remove the luggage cover. (→P.487) The third seat could strike the luggage cover and damage it.

Returning the third seat (if equipped) to its original position

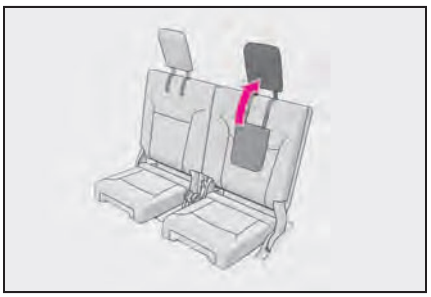
1 Push and hold the return switch to return the third seats.

After the buzzer sounds twice, the seatback and seat cushion will be started to move. Make sure not to release the switch before the operation has completed.

When the seat has been returned, the buzzer will sound twice and operation will be automatically stopped. When the operation has been stopped, release the switch.



2 Lift the head restraint

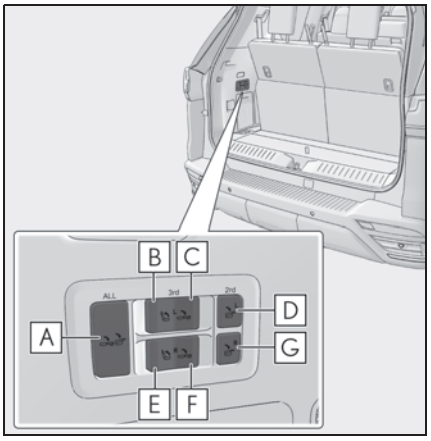


WARNING

■ **After returning the seat to its original position**

- Do not pinch the seat belt
- Make sure that the seat belt is removed from the hanger as before
- Lift the head restraint to its original position

Luggage compartment control switches (if equipped)



A Auto arrangement switch

B Third seat return switch (left side)

C Third seat stow switch (left side)

D Second seat switch (left side)

E Third seat return switch (right side)

F Third seat stow switch (right side)

G Second seat switch (right side)

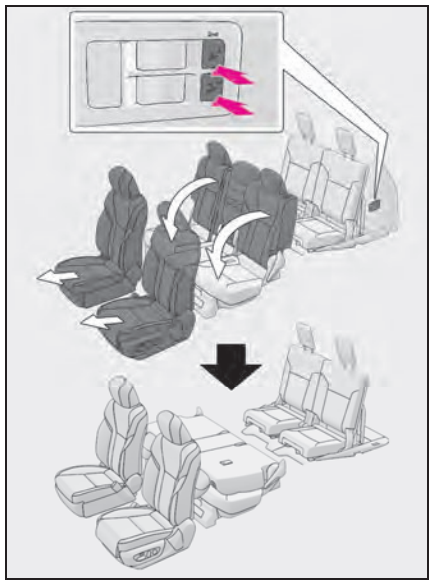
The switches equipped differ depending on the model or options.

■ **Operating the second seat**

Press and hold the second seat switch

The seatback is folded forward.

When returning the second seat to the original position: →P.174



■ **Operating the third seat**

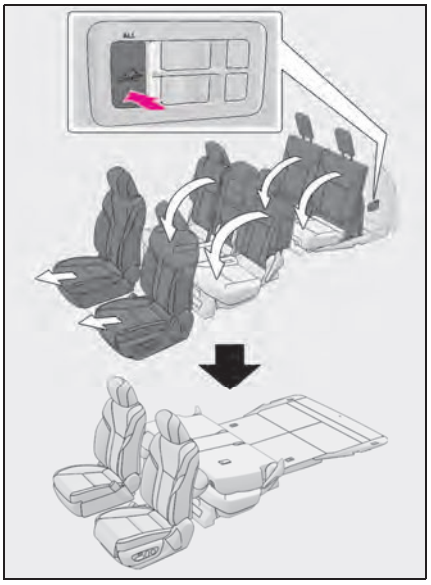
→P.176

■ **Stowing the second and third seat**

Press and hold the auto arrangement switch

Stowing the second and third seat.

When returning the seat to the original position: →P.174, 177



■ The third power seats can be operated when

→P.176

■ Switch operation

→P.176

■ If the warning buzzer sounds continuously

→P.176

Rear seat (4-passenger models)

WARNING

■ When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- When adjusting the rear seat with an ottoman, make sure there is sufficient space so that a foot does not get caught between the ottoman and front passenger seat.

■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

■ Using the ottoman

- Do not sit on the ottoman.

If someone sits on the ottoman, the seat belt cannot be fitted properly, and they may be thrown from the seat, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

- When getting in or out of the vehicle, retract the ottoman. If the ottoman is not retracted, it may cause a fall, resulting in injury.
- Do not operate the ottoman when the vehicle is moving.

WARNING

- Do not allow anyone to put their hands or feet under the rear seat when stowing the ottoman.

NOTICE

■ To prevent an ottoman malfunction

- Do not place any objects in the rear seat footwell that could prevent the operation of the ottoman.
- Do not place heavy luggage on the ottoman.
- Do not place any objects under the ottoman while it is raised for use. These objects may interfere with the ottoman being folded, causing damage to the ottoman or the objects themselves.

■ To prevent a rear display malfunction (rear seat with ottoman)

Do not attempt to move the rear display by hand, as doing so may damage the rear display.

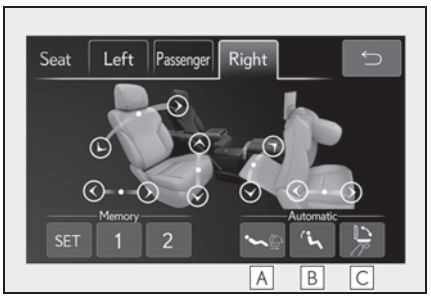
Adjustment procedure

■ Automatic operation

The seat can be moved to preset positions.

1. Display the home screen on the Rear Multi Operation Panel (→P.449) and then select "Seat".
2. Select "Left" or "Right".
3. Select the desired preset button.

When the operating conditions are not met, the preset buttons will be grayed out.



A Fold forward the seatback of the seat with ottoman, and then fold the seatback of the rear seat (relax mode)

The seat with ottoman moves forward, and the head restraint also folds forward.

To stop the front passenger seat while it is moving, touch "STOP".

B Moves the rear seat to the upright position (Business Mode)

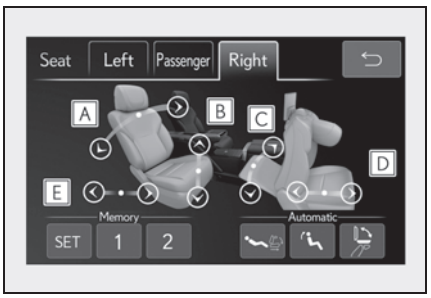
C Folds the rear display (rear seat with ottoman)

Press it again to extend them to the original position.

■ Manual operation

1. Display the home screen on the Rear Multi Operation Panel (→P.449) and then select "Seat".
2. Select "Left" or "Right".

3 Select the button for the desired adjustment.



A Seatback angle adjustment

B Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment

C Ottoman angle adjustment (if equipped)

D Seat position adjustment (front passenger's seat)

E Seat position adjustment (rear seat) (if equipped)

The part will move while a button is touched.

■ **Operating conditions of Business Mode**

When the rear seat belt is fastened, Business Mode cannot be selected.

■ **The rear seat with an ottoman cannot be moved to Relaxation Mode when**

In the following situations, Relaxation Mode cannot be selected:

- The engine switch is in ACC or OFF.
- The weight of an occupant or heavy object, etc. is detected on the front passenger's seat.

Once weight is detected on the seat, the seat will be judged as occupied until the front passenger's door is opened then closed or the engine switch is turned off.

- The front passenger's seat belt is fastened.
- The front passenger's door is open.

■ **Pre-collision seatbacks for the passenger seats**

→P.264

Returning the rear seat from the front seats

1 Select on the Main menu.

2 Select "Seat controls".

3 Select "Arrangement".

4 Select "Rear seat".

5 Select "Return".

The rear seat will move to the upright position.

■ **Operation of the rear seats from the front seats**

In the following situations, the rear seats cannot be operated from the front seats.

- When the weight of an occupant, heavy object, etc. is detected on a rear seat

Once weight is detected on the seat, the seat will be judged as occupied until a rear door is opened then closed or the engine switch is turned off and the doors are locked.

- When the rear seat belt is fastened.

WARNING

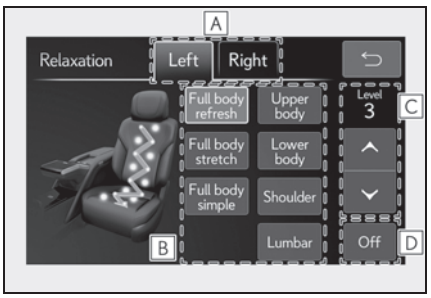
■ **When returning the rear seats to the neutral position**

To avoid injuring the rear passengers, wait until they have gotten out of the vehicle before operating the switch.

Rear seat relaxation system

The rear seat relaxation system utilizes pneumatic chambers, and applies pressure to the occupant's body at different modes and intensities.

To display the rear seat relaxation system screen, display the home screen on the Rear Multi Operation Panel (→P.449) and then select "Relaxation".



A Touch to select the desired rear seat.

B Touch to select the desired mode.

When a button is touched, operation will begin.

C Touch to adjust the intensity.

The intensity can be adjusted in 5 steps.

D Touch to stop the operation.

If a seat is not occupied, do not operate the rear seat relaxation system for that seat.

■ **Relaxation system**

● Operating conditions
- The engine switch is in ON.
- The temperature in the cabin is not extremely high.
- The weight of an occupant is detected on the rear seat or the rear seat belt is fastened.

Once weight is detected on the seat, the seat will be judged as occupied until a rear door is opened then closed or the engine switch is turned off and the doors are locked.

● Automatic stop function
- The operation will be canceled automatically after approximately 15 minutes.

WARNING

■ **Using the relaxation system**

● Those who are pregnant, have recently given birth, or suffer from ailments requiring rest (heart disease etc.) should consult a doctor before use.

● Do not allow children to use the relaxation function.

● Do not use immediately after consuming a meal or alcohol, or for an extended period of time.

● If you feel sick while using the relaxation function, immediately discontinue use.

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

WARNING

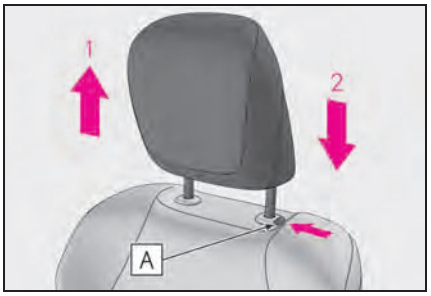
■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- Manual head restraints: After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.
- Vehicles with third seat: When sitting on the third seat, make sure that the head restraint is not folded.

Vertical adjustment

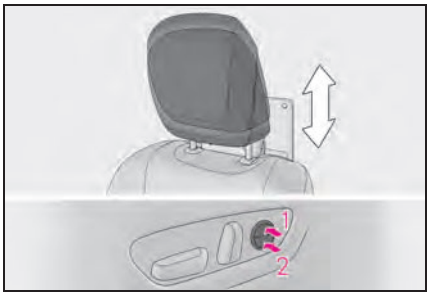
■ Front seats (manual head restraints) and outer second seats



1 Up
2 Down

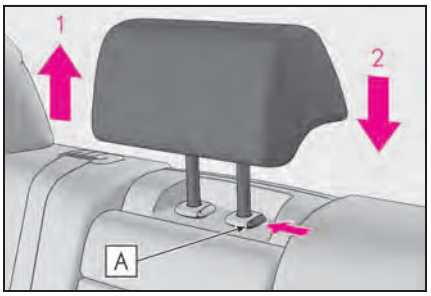
Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button A.

■ Front seats (power head restraints)



1 Up
2 Down

■ Second center seat (if equipped)

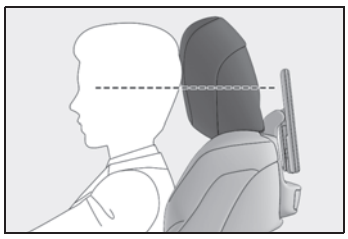


1 Up
2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button A.

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints (front and second seats)

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

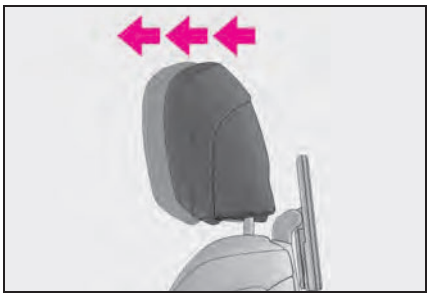


Horizontal adjustment (if equipped)

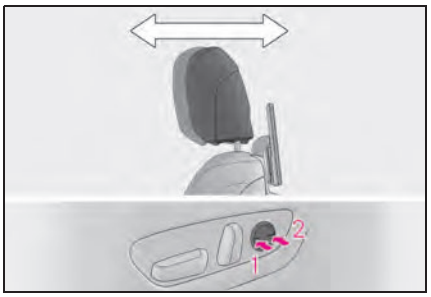
▶ Manual head restraints

The position of the head restraint can be adjusted forward in 4 stages.

If the head restraint is pulled forward from the foremost position, it will return to the rearmost position.



▶ Power head restraints



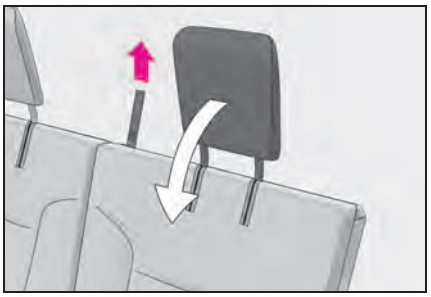
1 Forward
2 Backward

Folding the head restraint (third seats) (if equipped)

Folding the head restraint

Fold the head restraint while pulling the strap.

To return the head restraint, pull it up.

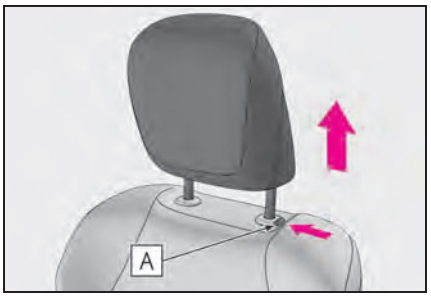


Removing the head restraints

■ **Front seats (manual head restraints) and outer second seats**

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button A .

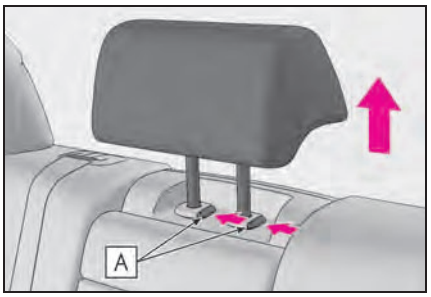
If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat height or angle. (→P.167, 171, 180)



■ **Second center seat (if equipped)**

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button A .

If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat angle. (→P.171)



■ **Front seats (power head restraints) and third seats (if equipped)**

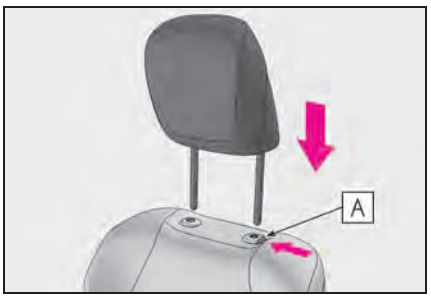
The head restraint cannot be removed.

Installing the head restraints

■ **Front seats (manual head restraints) and outer second seats**

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

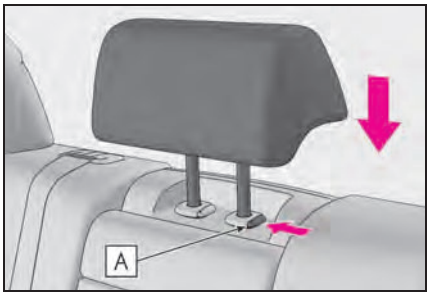
Press and hold the lock release button **A** when lowering the head restraint.



■ **Second center seat (if equipped)**

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

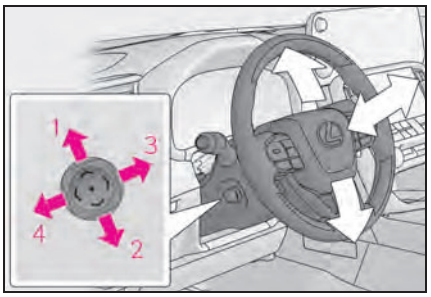
Press and hold the lock release button **A** when lowering the head restraint.



Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:



1 Up
2 Down
3 Toward the driver
4 Away from the driver

Steering wheel can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACC or ON*.

*: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of engine switch mode.

Power easy access system

The steering wheel and driver's seat move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.204)

Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P.205)

WARNING

Caution while driving

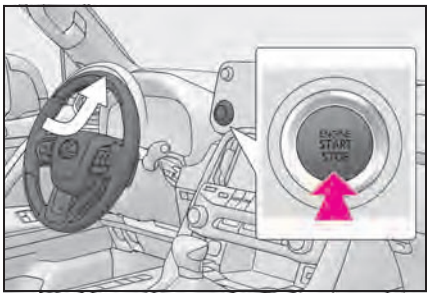
Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Auto tilt away

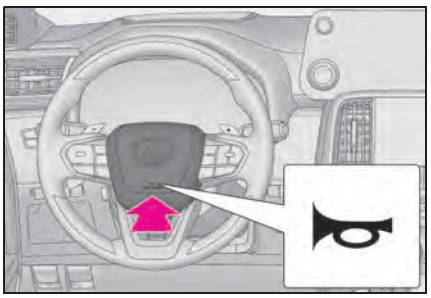
When the engine switch is turned off, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Turning the engine switch to ACC or ON will return the steering wheel to the original position.



Sounding the horn

To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



Inside rear view mirror*

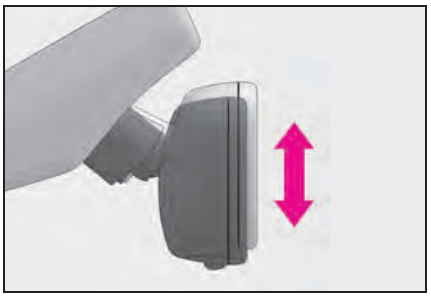
*: If equipped

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.



WARNING

■ Caution while driving

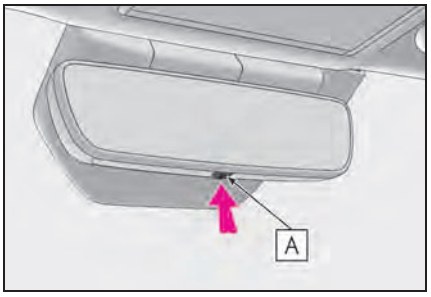
Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Anti-glare function

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

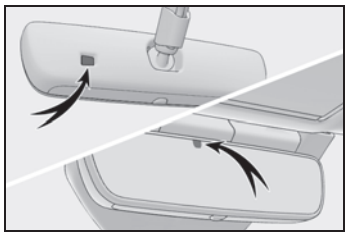
Changing automatic anti-glare function mode ON/OFF

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator A illuminates. The function will be set to ON mode each time the engine switch is turned to ON. Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator A also turns off.)



■ To prevent sensor error

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



Digital Rear-view Mirror*

*: If equipped

The Digital Rear-view Mirror is a system that uses the camera on the rear of the vehicle and displays its image on the display of the Digital Rear-view Mirror.

The Digital Rear-view Mirror can be changed between optical mirror mode and digital mirror mode by operating the lever.

The Digital Rear-view Mirror allows the driver to see the rear view despite obstructions, such as the head restraints or luggage, ensuring rear visibility. Also, the rear seats are not displayed and privacy of the passengers is enhanced.

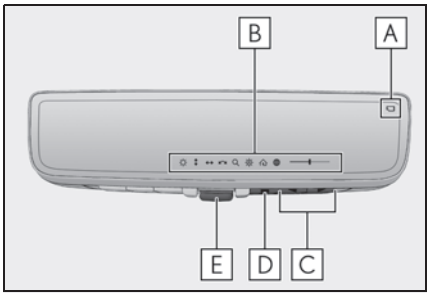
⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Before using the Digital Rear-view Mirror

- Make sure to adjust the mirror before driving. (→P.189)
  - Change to optical mirror mode and adjust the position of the Digital Rear-view Mirror so that the area behind your vehicle can be viewed properly.
  - Change to digital mirror mode and adjust the display settings.
- As the range of the image displayed by the Digital Rear-view Mirror is different from that of the optical mirror, make sure to check this difference before driving.

System components



A Camera indicator

Indicates that the camera is operating normally.

B Icon display area

Displays icons, adjusting gauge, etc. (→P.190)

C Select/adjust button

Press to change the setting of the item you want to adjust.

D Menu button

Press to display the icon display area and select the item you want to adjust.

E Lever

Operate to change between digital mirror mode and optical mirror mode.

Changing modes

Operate the lever to change between digital mirror mode and optical mirror mode.

1 Digital mirror mode

Displays an image of the area behind the vehicle.

will illuminate in this mode.

2 Optical mirror mode

Turns off the display of the Digital Rear-view Mirror allows it to be used as an optical mirror.

Digital mirror mode operating condition

The engine switch is turned to ON.

When the engine switch is changed from ON to OFF or ACC, the image will disappear after several seconds.

When using the Digital Rear-view Mirror in digital mirror mode

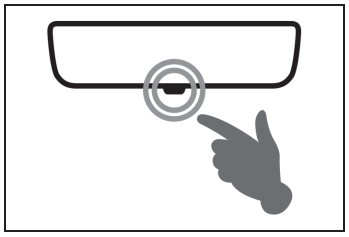
- If it is difficult to see the displayed image due to light reflected off the Digital Rear-view Mirror, the camera being dirty or covered with water droplets, dust, etc., or if lights of a vehicle behind your vehicle or the displayed image are bothering you, change to optical mirror mode.
- When the back door is open, the Digital Rear-view Mirror image may not display properly. Before driving, make sure the back door is closed.
- If the display is difficult to see due to reflected light, close the sunshades for the moon roof (if equipped).
- Any of the following conditions may occur when driving in the dark, such as at night. None of them indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Colors of objects in the displayed image may differ from their actual color.
  - Depending on the height of the lights of the vehicle behind, the area around the vehicle may appear white and blurry.
  - Automatic image adjustment for brighter surrounding image may cause flickering.

If it is difficult to see the displayed image or flickering bothers you, change to optical mirror mode.

- The Digital Rear-view Mirror may become hot while it is in digital mirror mode. This is not a malfunction.
- Depending on your physical condition or age, it may take longer than usual to focus on the displayed image. In this case, change to optical mirror mode.
- Do not let passengers stare at the displayed image when the vehicle is being driven, as doing so may cause motion sickness.

When the system malfunctions

If the symbol shown in the illustration is displayed when using the Digital Rear-view Mirror in digital mirror mode, the system may be malfunctioning. The symbol will disappear in a few seconds. Operate the lever, change to optical mirror mode and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



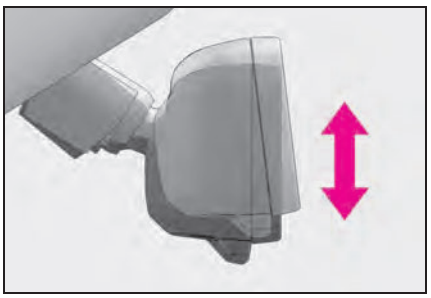
Adjusting the mirror

Adjusting the mirror height

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Change to optical mirror mode, adjusting the height of the rear view

mirror by moving it up and down.



■ Display settings (digital mirror mode)

Settings of the display in the digital mirror mode, on/off operation of the automatic anti-glare function, etc. can be changed.

1 Press the menu button.

The icons will be displayed.

2 Press the menu button repeatedly and select the item you want to adjust.

3 Press or to change the setting.

The icons will disappear if a button is not operated for approximately 5 seconds or more.

Icons	Settings
	Select to adjust the brightness of the display.
	Select to adjust the area displayed up/down.
	Select to adjust the area displayed to the left/right.
	Select to adjust the angle of the displayed image.
	Select to zoom in/out the displayed image.
	Select to enable/disable the automatic anti-glare function.* Responding to the brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically adjusted. The automatic anti-glare function is enabled each time the engine switch is changed to ON.
	Vehicles with garage door opener: Select to display HomeLink® Training Tutorial to assist customers to train their garage door opener system. (→P.505)
	Vehicles with garage door opener: Select to change the language of the Homelink® Training Tutorial.

*: This is a function for the optical mirror mode, however, the setting can also be changed while using the digital mirror mode.

■ Enabling/disabling the automatic anti-glare function (optical mirror mode)

The automatic anti-glare function in the

optical mirror mode can be enabled/disabled. The setting can be changed in both the digital mirror mode and the optical mirror mode.

▶ When using the digital mirror mode

→P.190

▶ When using the optical mirror mode

1 Press the menu button.

The icons will be displayed.

2 Press or to enable (ON)/disable (OFF) the automatic anti-glare function.

The icons will disappear if a button is not operated for approximately 5 seconds or more.

■ Adjusting the display (digital mirror mode)

- The icons will disappear if a button is not operated for approximately 5 seconds or more.
- If the displayed image is adjusted, it may appear distorted. This is not a malfunction.
- If the brightness of the Digital Rear-view Mirror is set too high, it may cause eye strain. Adjust the Digital Rear-view Mirror to an appropriate brightness. If your eyes become tired, change to optical mirror mode.
- The brightness of the Digital Rear-view Mirror will change automatically according to the brightness of the area in front of your vehicle.

■ To prevent the light sensors from malfunctioning

To prevent the light sensors from malfunctioning, do not touch or cover them.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ While driving

- Do not adjust the position of the Digital Rear-view Mirror or adjust the display settings while driving.
  Stop the vehicle and operate the Digital Rear-view Mirror control switches. Failure to do so may cause a steering wheel operation error, resulting in an unexpected accident.
- Always pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
  The size of the vehicles and other objects may look different when in digital mirror mode and optical mirror mode.
  When backing up, make sure to directly check the safety of the area around your vehicle, especially behind the vehicle.
  Additionally, if a vehicle approaches from the rear in the dark, such as at night, the surrounding area may appear dim.

WARNING

■ To prevent causes of fire

If the driver continues using the Digital Rear-view Mirror while smoke or odor comes from the mirror, it may result in fire. Stop using the system immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.

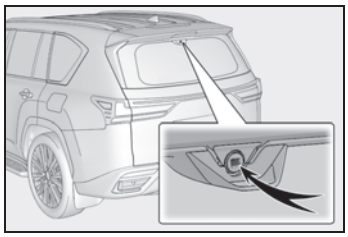
Cleaning the Digital Rear-view Mirror

■ Cleaning the mirror surface

If the mirror surface is dirty, the image on the display may be difficult to see. Clean the mirror surface gently using a soft dry cloth.

■ The camera

The camera for the Digital Rear-view Mirror is located as shown.



NOTICE

■ To prevent the camera from malfunctioning

- Observe the following precautions, otherwise the Digital Rear-view Mirror may not operate properly.
  - Do not strike or hit the camera or subject it to a strong impact, as the camera installation position and angle may be changed.
  - Do not remove, disassemble or modify the camera.
  - Do not allow an organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coating to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
  - When applying colored film (including transparent film) to the rear window glass, do not apply it to the area in front of the camera.
    If film is applied to the area in front of the camera, the image from the camera may not display properly.
- Do not subject the camera to a strong impact as this could cause a malfunction.
  If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

If you notice any symptoms

If you notice any of the following symptoms, refer to the following table for the likely cause and the solution.

If the symptom is not resolved by the solution, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is difficult to see.	The mirror surface is dirty.	Clean the mirror surface gently, using a soft dry cloth.
	Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the Digital Rear-view Mirror.	Change to optical mirror mode. (If the light is coming through the moon roof [if equipped], close the sunshade.)
	• The vehicle is in a dark area. • The vehicle is near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present. • The temperature around the camera is extremely high/low. • The ambient temperature is extremely low. • It is raining or humid. • Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens. • The vehicle is under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights, etc. • Exhaust gas is obstructing the camera.	Change to optical mirror mode. (Change back to digital mirror mode when the conditions have improved.)
	Foreign matters such as water droplets or dust is on the camera lens.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is difficult to see.	The luggage in the luggage compartment is reflected off the rear window glass and obstructing the camera.	• Change to optical mirror mode. • Move the luggage to a position where it does not obstruct the camera or cover it with a black cloth to reduce the amount it is reflected off the rear window glass.
	The rear window glass is fogged up.	Change to optical mirror mode. After defogging the rear window using the rear window defogger (→P.458), use the digital mirror mode again.
	The outside of the rear window glass is dirty.	Use the rear window wiper to remove dirt.
	The inside of the rear window glass is dirty.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The image is out of alignment.	The back door is not fully closed.	Fully close the back door.
	The camera or its surrounding area has received a strong impact.	Change to optical mirror mode and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The display is dim and is displayed.	The system may be malfunctioning.	Change to optical mirror mode and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
goes off.		

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
⚠ is displayed.	The Digital Rear-view Mirror is extremely hot. (The display will gradually become more dim. If the temperature continues to increase, the Digital Rear-view Mirror will turn off.)	Reducing the cabin temperature is recommended to reduce the temperature of the mirror. (⚠ will disappear when the mirror becomes cool.) If ⚠ does not disappear even though the mirror is cool, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The lever cannot be operated properly.	The lever may be malfunctioning.	Change to optical mirror mode and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer. (To change to optical mirror mode, press and hold the menu button for approximately 10 seconds.)

Outside rear view mirrors

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

■ Defogging the mirrors (if equipped)

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P.458)

■ Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to auto mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P.187, 190)

WARNING

■ Important points while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating (if equipped)

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

NOTICE

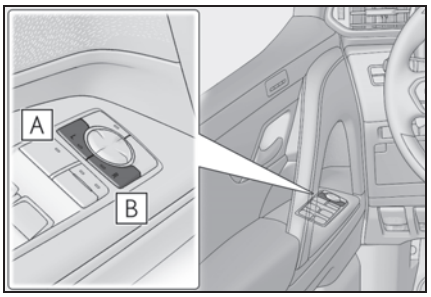
■ If ice should jam the mirror

Do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.

Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

The indicator comes on.

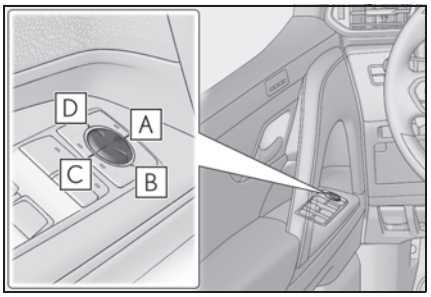


A Left

B Right

Pressing the same switch again will put the switch in neutral.

2 To adjust the mirror, operate the switch.



A Up

B Right

C Down

D Left

■ Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

■ Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle

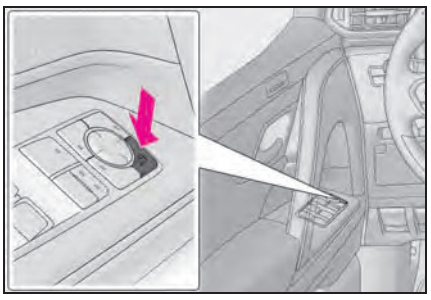
A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P.205)

Folding and extending the mirrors

■ Using the switch

Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to extend them to the original position.



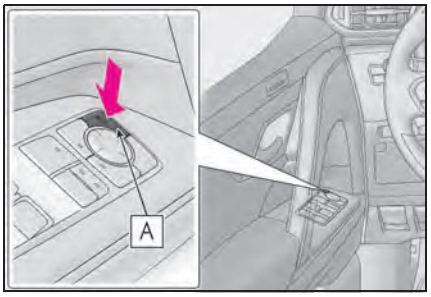
■ Setting automatic mode

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Press the "AUTO" switch to set automatic mode.

The indicator A will come on.

Pressing the switch once more will return to manual mode.



■ Using automatic mode in cold weather

When automatic mode is used in cold weather, the door mirror could freeze up and automatic stowing and return may not be possible. In this event, remove any ice and snow from the door mirror, then either operate the mirror using manual mode or move the mirror by hand.

■ Customization

The automatic mirror folding and extending operation can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.644)

WARNING

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

Linked mirror function when reversing

When either "L" or "R" of the mirror select switch is selected, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground.

To disable this function, select neither "L" nor "R".

■ Adjusting the mirror angle when the vehicle is reversing

With the shift lever in R, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position. The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.

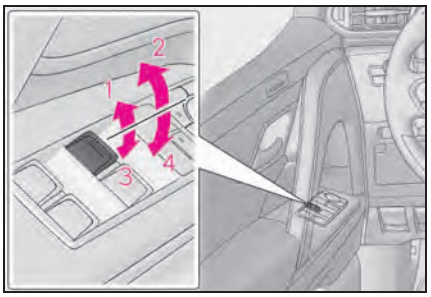
When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

Power windows

Opening and closing the power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches.

Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:



1 Closing

2 One-touch closing*

3 Opening

4 One-touch opening*

*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

■ The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ Operating the power windows after turning the engine off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ Operating the power windows using the voice control system*

*: If equipped

The power windows can be opened and closed using the voice control system. (It can be performed only when the window lock switch is not pressed.)

For details regarding the voice control system, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes jammed between the window and the window frame while the window is closing, window movement is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ Catch protection function

If an object becomes caught between the door and window while the window is opening, window movement is stopped.

■ When the window cannot be opened or closed

When the jam protection function or catch protection function operates unusually and the side window cannot be opened and closed, perform the following operations with the power window switch of that door.

- Stop the vehicle. With the engine switch in ON, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function or catch protection function activating, continuously operate the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction or one-touch opening direction so that the side window can be opened and closed.
- If the side window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.

1. Turn the engine switch to ON.
2. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction and completely close the side window.
3. Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pulling the switch in the one-touch closing direction, and hold it there for approximately 6 seconds or more.
4. Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the side window is completely opened, continue holding the

switch for an additional 1 second or more.

5 Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pushing the switch in the one-touch opening direction, and hold it there for approximately 4 seconds or more.

6 Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction again. After the side window is completely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.
If the window reverses and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.609)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.142)
- If the power windows are closed using the door lock linked window operation when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered.

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Power window open reminder function

A message is shown on the multi-information display when the engine switch is turned to OFF and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.644)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

Closing the windows

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P.201)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also, do not let a child operate window by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed just before the window is fully closed. Be careful not to get any part of your body jammed in the window.

WARNING

■ **Catch protection function**

- Never use any part of your body or clothing to intentionally activate the catch protection function.
- The catch protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Be careful not to get any part of your body or clothing caught in the window.

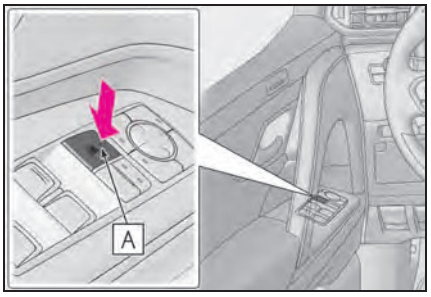
Preventing accidental operation (window lock switch)

This function can be used to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

Press the switch.

The indicator A will come on and the passenger windows will be locked.

The passenger windows can still be opened and closed using the driver's switch even if the lock switch is on.



■ **The window lock switch can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the battery.

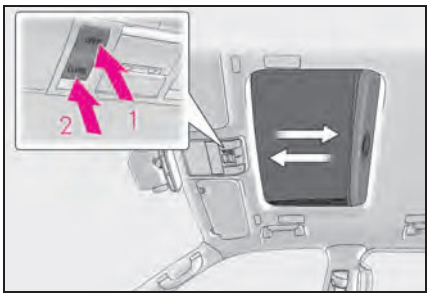
Moon roof*

*: If equipped

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Operating the moon roof

■ Opening and closing



1 Opens the moon roof*

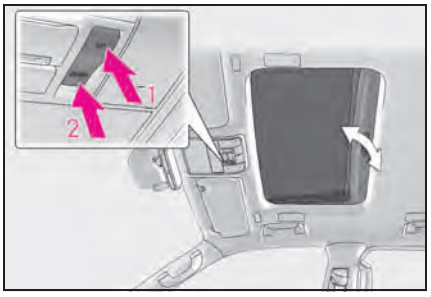
The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise.

Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

2 Closes the moon roof*

*: Lightly press either end of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ Tilting up and down



1 Tilts the moon roof up*

2 Tilts the moon roof down*

*: Lightly press either end of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the engine off**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ **Operating the moon roof using the voice control system***

*: If equipped

The moon roof can be opened and closed using the voice control system.

For details regarding the voice control system, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.609)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.142)
- If the moon roof is closed using the door lock linked window operation when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered.

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **When the moon roof does not close normally**

Perform the following procedure:

- If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1 The moon roof will close, re-open and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

- If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "UP" switch*1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again.*1

The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second.
Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the

switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Moon roof open reminder function

A message is shown on the multi-information display when the engine switch is turned to OFF and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.644)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

Opening the moon roof

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or head outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

Opening and closing the moon roof

- The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof.
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the moon roof, operate the moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate moon roof by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the moon roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof is fully closed.

Driving position memory

This feature automatically adjusts the positions of the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display (if equipped) to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

When My Settings is turned on:

Up to 3 different driving positions can be recorded for each the driver and guest that have been registered for My Settings.

When electronic key assignment is registered for My Settings, the driving position for each driver can be recalled (memory recall function).

When My Settings is turned off:

Up to 3 different driving positions can be recorded.

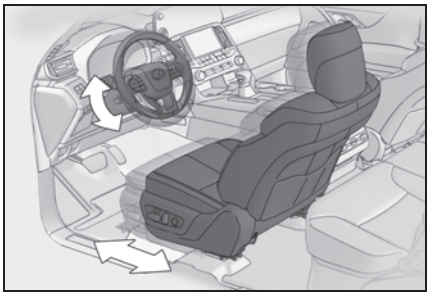
Each electronic key can be registered to recall your preferred driving position (memory recall function).

For details about My Settings, refer to P.209.

Enabling easier driver entry and exit (power easy access system)

When all of the following have been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to a position that allows driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned to OFF.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.



When any of the following has been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically return to their original positions.

- The engine switch has been turned to ACC or ON.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

Operation of the power easy access system

When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rearmost position, etc.

Customization

The seat movement amount settings of the power easy access system can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.643)

WARNING

■ **While the power easy access system is operating and the steering wheel and seat is moving**

Be careful not to get body parts or luggage caught. Failure to do so may cause an injury or damage to the luggage.

Recording a driving position into memory button

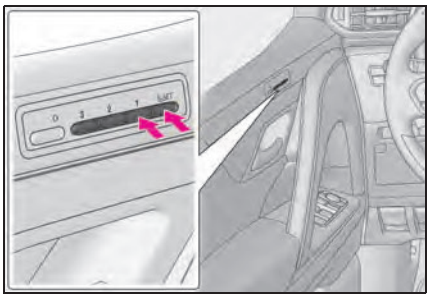
1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to ON.

3 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display (if equipped) to the desired positions.

4 While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.



■ **Seat positions that can be memorized (→P.167)**

The adjusted positions other than the position adjusted by lumbar support switch can be recorded.

■ **In order to correctly use the driving position memory function**

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

WARNING

■ **Seat adjustment caution**

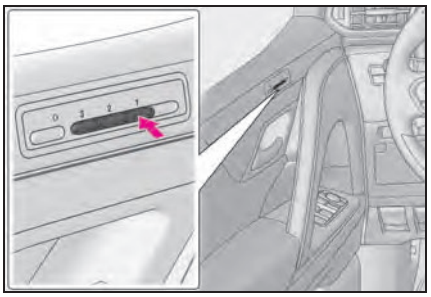
Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Recalling a driving position

1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to ON.

3 Press one of the buttons for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



■ **To stop the position recall operation part-way through**

Perform any of the following:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).

■ **Operating the driving position memory using the voice control system***

*: If equipped

The following operation can be performed using the voice control system.

- Recording a driving position
- Recalling a driving position (it can be performed only when the shift lever is in P)

For details regarding the voice control system, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch off**

Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.

■ **When recalling the driving position**

Take care when recalling the driving position so that the head restraint does not touch the ceiling.

■ **When the recorded seat position cannot be recalled**

The seat position may not be recalled in some situations when the seat position is recorded in a certain range. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

Recalling a driving position automatically when getting in the vehicle (memory recall function)

■ **When My Settings is turned on (an individual is identified with an electronic key):**

The driving positions can be automatically recalled for each registered driver by registering electronic key assignments in My Settings.

- Driving position registration procedure

When the shift lever is shifted to P after driving the vehicle, the current driving position will be recorded.

- Driving position recall procedure

1 Carry only the key that has been assigned and registered in My Settings, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position other than the steering wheel and head-up display (if equipped) will move to the recorded position. However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the driving position will not move.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACC or ON.

The seat, steering wheel and head-up display (if equipped) (only when the engine switch is in ON) will move to the recorded position.

- Memory recall function cancelation procedure

Initialize the driver registered settings in My Settings.

For information on initializing driver registered settings, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **When My Settings is turned on (to identify an individual with fingerprint information) (vehicles with fingerprint authentication system):**

The driving position can automatically be recalled for each registered driver by registering fingerprint information on the fingerprint authentication sys-

tem.

● Driving position registration procedure

When the shift lever is shifted to P after driving the vehicle, the current driving position will be recorded.

● Driving position recall procedure

Turn the engine switch to ACC or ON.

After fingerprint authentication was successful, the seat, steering wheel and head-up display (if equipped) (only when the engine switch is turned on) move to the registered driving position.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the driving position will not move.

● Memory recall function cancelation procedure

Delete fingerprint information on the fingerprint authentication.

For information on deleting fingerprint information, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **When My Settings is turned off:**

Each electronic key can be registered to automatically recall your preferred driving position.

● Driving position registration procedure

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carry only the key you want to register, and then close the driver's door.
If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be recorded properly.

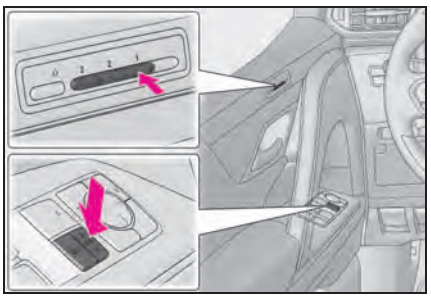
1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to ON.

3 Recall the driving position that you want to record.

4 While pressing the recalled button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.

If the button could not be registered, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.



● Driving position recall procedure

1 Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position other than the steering wheel and head-up display (if equipped) will move to the recorded position. However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the driving position will not move.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACC or ON, or fasten a seat belt.

The seat, steering wheel and head-up display (if equipped) (only when the engine switch is in ON) will move to the recorded position.

● Memory recall function cancelation procedure

Carry only the key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door.
If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

1 Turn the engine switch to ON.

2 While pressing the "SET" button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds twice.

If the button could not be canceled, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.

■ **Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function**

If a door other than the driver's door is unlocked with the smart entry & start system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.643)

Rear seat position memory (4-passenger models)

The rear seat position can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button.

Recording a position into memory

1 Turn the engine switch to ON.

2 Display the home screen on the Rear Multi Operation Panel (→P.449) and then select "Seat".

3 Select "Left" or "Right".

4 Adjust the rear seat to the desired position and then select "SET".

5 Select "1" or "2".

If the preset is being used, the previously recorded seat position will be overwritten.

■ **In order to correctly use the position memory function**

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Seat adjustment caution**

Take care during seat adjustment so that the rear passengers do not strike the front seats.

Recalling the memorized position

1 Turn the engine switch to ON.

2 Display the home screen on the Rear Multi Operation Panel (→P.449) and then select "Seat".

3 Select "Left" or "Right".

4 Press and hold "1" or "2".

When the seat has moved to the registered position, operation will stop.

When the operating conditions are not met, the buttons will be grayed out.

My Settings

Drivers are identified using devices such as electronic keys to store the driving position and vehicle settings for each. Then the information can be recalled the next time the vehicle is driven.

Authentication devices can be assigned in advance to drivers so that they can drive using their preferred settings.

Settings for 3 drivers can be stored in My Settings.

For information on authentication devices registration/deletion, changing the driver's name, initializing driver registered settings, manually switching drivers and deleting drivers registration refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

Types of assigned authentication devices

An individual can be identified using the following authentication devices.

- Electronic key

An individual is identified when the smart entry & start system detects their electronic key. (→P.162)

- Fingerprint authentication system (if equipped)

An individual is identified when they touch the fingerprint sensor on the engine switch. If their fingerprint has been registered in

the system, they are authenticated by fingerprint. (→P.112, 228)

An individual identified using fingerprint authentication is prioritized even when an individual is identified with an electronic key.

● Bluetooth® device

An individual is identified when a Bluetooth® device is connected to the multimedia system. For information on how to connect Bluetooth® devices, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

When an individual is identified with an electronic key or fingerprint authentication (if equipped), identifying using a Bluetooth® device is not performed.

Recalled functions

When an individual is identified from an authentication device, settings for the following functions are recalled.

● Driving position (memory recall function)

After an individual is identified, the driving position that was set when driving was last completed is recalled when either of the following operations is performed.

- An individual is identified when electronic key: The door is unlocked and opened using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.
- An individual is identified when a fingerprint authentication system (if equipped): The engine switch is turned to ACC or ON.

Refer to P.206 for information on driving position registration and recall.

● Meter displays, head-up display (if equipped) information* and multimedia information*

When an individual is identified, the display settings used when the engine switch was last turned off are recalled.

● Multi-terrain Monitor*

When an individual is identified, the display settings used when the engine switch was last turned off are recalled. (→P.355)

● Vehicle settings that can be set using the multimedia system*

When an individual is identified, the vehicle settings used when the engine switch was last turned off are recalled.

*: Some settings are excluded

4-1. **Before driving**

Driving the vehicle 213
Cargo and luggage 219
Trailer towing (with towing hitch) 221
Pintle hook 227

4-2. **Driving procedures**

Engine (ignition) switch 228
Automatic transmission 233
Turn signal lever 237
Parking brake 237
Brake Hold 240

4-3. **Operating the lights and wipers**

Headlight switch 243
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 246
Fog light switch 250
Windshield wipers and washer 251
Rear window wiper and washer 253

4-4. **Refueling**

Opening the fuel tank cap 255

4-5. **Using the driving support systems**

Lexus Safety System + ... 257
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 262
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 273
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 283
Dynamic radar cruise control 294
Cruise control 304
Stop & Start system 307
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 312
Lexus parking assist-sensor .. 319
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 325
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function 331
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 334
Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) 339
Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle) 342
Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) 344
Multi-terrain Monitor 346
Driving mode select switch .. 407
AHC (Active Height Control Suspension) 409
Four-wheel drive system 416
Crawl Control (with Turn Assist function) 419
Multi-terrain Select 423
Downhill assist control system 425

DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter) system 427
Driving assist systems..... 430

4-6. **Driving tips**

Off-road precautions 436
Winter driving tips 438
Eco-friendly driving tips 441

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Driving procedure

■ **Starting the engine**

→P.228

■ **Driving**

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P.234)

2 If the parking brake is in manual mode, release the parking brake. (→P.237)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ **Stopping**

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake. (→P.237)

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P.234)

■ **Parking the vehicle**

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 Set the parking brake (→P.237), and shift the shift lever to P (→P.234).

3 Press the engine switch to stop the engine.

4 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

■ **Starting off on a steep uphill**

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P.234)

2 Pull the parking brake switch to set the parking brake manually. (→P.237)

3 Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

4 Press the parking brake switch and parking brake is released manually.

■ **When starting off on a uphill**

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P.431)

■ **Driving in the rain**

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ **Engine speed while driving**

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill

or downhill

- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is depressed

Restraining the engine output (Brake Override System)

- When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.
- A warning message is displayed on the multi-information display while the system is operating. (→P.587)

Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (200 miles):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 800 km (500 miles) (with towing hitch):
  Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 1000 km (600 miles):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

When driving in an extremely cold environment

In an extremely cold environment, idle the engine for more than 30 seconds after starting the engine. Do not race the engine while idling.

Idling time before stopping the engine

To prevent damage to the turbocharger, allow the engine to idle immediately after high-speed driving or driving up a hill.

Vehicles with Stop & Start system: To allow the engine to idle when the vehicle is stopped, disable the Stop & Start cancel switch. (→P.124)

(With the Stop & Start system enabled, the engine will be stopped by the Stop & Start system when the vehicle is stopped.)

▶ Gasoline engine

Driving condition	Idling time
Normal city driving	Not necessary
High-speed driving (constant speed of approx. 100 km/h [62 mph])	Not necessary
Steep hill driving or continuous driving at 100 km/h (62 mph) or more (race track driving etc.)	Approximately 1 minute

▶ Diesel engine

Driving condition		Idling time
Normal city driving		Not necessary
High-speed driving	Constant speed of approx. 80 km/h (50 mph)	Approximately 20 seconds
	Constant speed of approx. 100 km/h (62 mph)	Approximately 1 minute
Steep hill driving or continuous driving at 100 km/h (62 mph) or more (race track driving etc.)		Approximately 2 minutes

Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P.625)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control. However, power assist for these systems may be lost making it difficult to steer or brake before stopping the vehicle depending on the remaining charge in the battery or usage conditions. In this situation, you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  In the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P.574
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P.233)
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving. Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

WARNING

■ When shifting the shift lever

- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. Shifting the shift lever to a gear other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

■ If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.
Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.
It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.

WARNING

- Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.

- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.

- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.

- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.

- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
  If the vehicle is parked with the shift lever in P but the parking brake is not set, the vehicle may start to move, possibly leading to an accident.

- If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely.

The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the shift lever is in P. You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode. (→P.416)

- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.

- If the brake booster device does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

WARNING

- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase.
  Have your brakes fixed immediately.

■ If the vehicle becomes stuck

Do not spin the wheels excessively when any of the tires is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain the engine output.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.
- Diesel engine only: Make sure to idle the engine immediately after high-speed driving or hill climbing. Stop the engine only after the turbocharger has cooled down. Failure to do so may cause damage to the turbocharger.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P.597)

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain, etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transfer, differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

NOTICE

■ When parking the vehicle

Always set the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

Sudden start restraint control (Drive-Start Control [DSC])

When the following unusual operation is performed with the accelerator pedal depressed, the engine output may be restrained.

- When the shift lever is shifted to R*.
- When the shift lever is shifted from P or R to forward drive shift position such as D*.

When the system operates, a message appears on the multi-information display. Read the message and follow the instruction.

*: Depending on the situation, the shift position may not be changed.

■ Drive-Start Control (DSC)

- When the Active TRC is turned off (→P.432), sudden start restraint control also does not operate. If your vehicle has trouble escaping from the mud or fresh snow due to sudden start restraint control operation, deactivate Active TRC (→P.432) so that the vehicle may become able to escape from the mud or fresh snow.

Also, sudden start restraint control will not operate in the following conditions:

- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in "L4" position.
- When the center differential is locked
- When Multi-terrain Select is selected

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

WARNING

■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack anything in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.
- When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be placed directly behind the front seats.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer death or serious bodily injury, in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.

• At the feet of the driver

WARNING

- On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
- On the luggage cover (if equipped)
- On the instrument panel
- On the dashboard
- On the auxiliary box or tray that has no lid

● Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ Load and distribution

● Do not overload your vehicle.

● Do not apply loads unevenly.

Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

■ When loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier

Observe the following precautions:

● Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.

● If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P.622)

● Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.

● Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of gravity of the vehicle higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.

● If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.

● Do not exceed 75 kg (165 lb.) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

NOTICE

■ When loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof (if equipped).

Trailer towing (with towing hitch)

The strain of towing a trailer will have a negative impact on the running performance, handling, fuel consumption and endurance of your vehicle. Use the vehicle features in the correct manner and operate the vehicle with care for safer driving and optimal comfort. Damage and/or malfunctions that occur as a result of towing performed for commercial purposes are not covered by the Lexus warranty.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information about additional requirements such as towing kits, etc.

■ When connecting and disconnecting a trailer

Stop your vehicle and a trailer in line and perform the following:

● Connecting a trailer

1 Put the AHC in L mode.
2 Turn off the engine switch or the AHC.
3 Connect a trailer.
4 Turn on the engine switch or the AHC.
5 Select N mode with the height select switch.

When a vehicle loaded with four occupants tows a trailer of about 1800 kg (4000 lb.) with more than about 180 kg (400 lb.) tongue load, N mode may not be selected. However, there is no problem to continue normal driving. Drive with sufficient care because of large load.

● Disconnecting a trailer

1 Put the AHC in L mode. (Make sure the vehicle height is in L mode by pressing the height select switch .)
2 Turn off the engine switch or the AHC.
3 Set the supporting leg of a trailer on the ground and raise the hitch by 100 mm (4 in.).
4 Turn on the engine switch or the AHC.
5 Wait for about 20 seconds until the rear vehicle height is lowered by the automatic leveling function.
6 Make sure the hitch is disconnected. If not, raise the hitch higher and repeat steps 2 through 5.
7 Move the vehicle forward in L mode where the hitch does not touch anything in N mode.
8 Put the AHC in N mode.

■ Tire information

● Increase the tire inflation pressure to 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) greater than the recommended value when towing. (→P.633)

● Increase the air pressure of the trailer tires in accordance with the total trailer weight and according to the values recommended by the manufacturer of your trailer.

■ Trailer lights

Check that the turn signal lights and stoplights are operating correctly every time you hitch up the trailer. Directly wiring up to your vehicle may damage the electrical system and stop the lights from functioning correctly.

■ Safety checks before towing

● Check that the maximum load limit for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball is not exceeded. Bear in mind that the coupling weight of the trailer will add to the load exerted on the vehicle. Also make sure that the total load exerted on the vehicle is within the range of the weight limits. (→P.223)

● Ensure that the trailer load is secure.

● Supplementary outside rear view mir-

rors should be added to the vehicle if the traffic behind cannot be clearly seen with standard mirrors. Adjust the extending arms of these mirrors on both sides of the vehicle so that they always provide maximum visibility of the road behind.

- The trailer ball is set up at the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.

■ When towing a trailer

Disable the following systems, as the systems may not operate properly.

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)* (→P.273)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range* (→P.283)
- Dynamic radar cruise control* (→P.294)
- Cruise control* (→P.304)
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)* (→P.312)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.319)
- RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function* (→P.325)
- RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function (→P.331)
- PKSB (Parking Support Brake)* (→P.334)

*: If equipped

■ Maintenance

- Maintenance must be performed more frequently when using the vehicle for towing due to the greater weight burden placed on the vehicle compared to normal driving.
- Retighten all bolts securing the hitching ball and bracket after towing for approximately 1000 km (600 miles).

WARNING

Follow all the instructions described in this section.
Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Trailer towing precautions

When towing, make sure that none of the weight limits are exceeded. (→P.223)

■ To avoid accident or injury

- The gross combined weight (sum of your vehicle weight plus its load and the total trailer weight) must not exceed 6750 kg (14881 lb.).
- Set the vehicle height to L mode and turn off the AHC when you connect a trailer, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident. (→P.409)
- Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped), dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) or cruise control (if equipped) when trailer towing.

■ Vehicle speed in towing

Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.

■ Before descending hills or long declines

Reduce speed and downshift. However, never downshift suddenly while descending steep or long downhill grades.

■ Operation of the brake pedal

Do not hold the brake pedal depressed often or for long periods of time.
Doing so may result in the brake overheating or reduce braking effects.

Weight limits

Check the allowable towing capacity, GVM (Gross Vehicle Mass), MPAC (Maximum Permissible Axle Capacity), and permissible drawbar load before towing. (→P.622)

Towing hitch/bracket

Lexus recommends the use of the Lexus hitch/bracket for your vehicle. Other products of a suitable nature and comparable quality may also be used.

When using the Lexus hitch/bracket, use the reinforcement patch. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

For vehicles where the towing device blocks any of the lights or license plate, the following shall be observed:

- Do not use towing devices that cannot be easily removed or repositioned.
- Towing devices must be removed or repositioned when not in use.

Connecting trailer lights

Use the wire harness stored in the rear end.

Please consult your dealer when installing trailer lights, as incorrect installation may cause damage to the vehicle's lights. Please take care to comply with your state's laws when installing trailer lights.

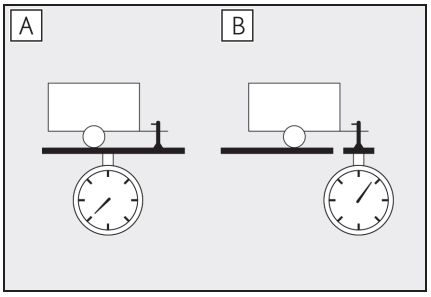
NOTICE

■ Do not directly splice trailer lights

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Important points regarding trailer loads

■ Total trailer weight and permissible drawbar load



A Total trailer weight

Weight of the trailer itself plus the trailer load should be within the maximum towing capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous. (→P.622)

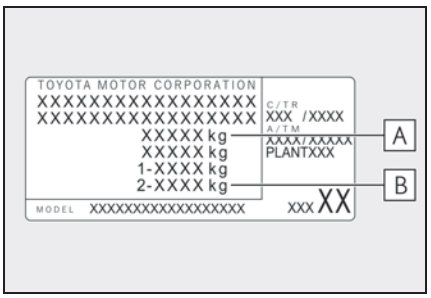
When towing a trailer, use a friction coupler or friction stabilizer (sway control device).

When the total trailer weight is over 2000 kg (4409 lb.), a friction stabilizer (sway control device) is required.

B Permissible drawbar load

Allocate the trailer load so that the drawbar load is greater than 25 kg (55.1 lb.) or 4% of the towing capacity. Do not let the drawbar load exceed the indicated weight. (→P.622)

■ Information tag (manufacturer's label)



A Gross vehicle mass

The combined weight of the driver, passengers, towing hitch, total curb mass and drawbar load should not exceed the gross vehicle mass by more than 100 kg (220.5 lb.). Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

B Maximum permissible rear axle capacity

The weight borne by the rear axle should not exceed the maximum permissible axle capacity by 15% or more. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.
The values for towing capacity were derived from testing conducted at sea level. Take note that engine output and towing capacity will be reduced at high altitudes.

WARNING

■ When the gross vehicle mass limit or maximum permissible axle capacity is exceeded

Do not exceed the established speed limit for towing a trailer in built-up areas or 100 km/h (62 mph), whichever is lower.

Failing to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

NOTICE

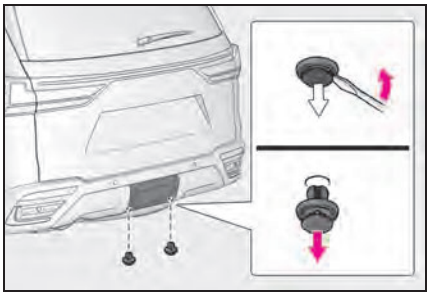
■ When the rear bumper strengthening material is aluminum

Ensure the steel bracket part does not come directly in contact with that area.

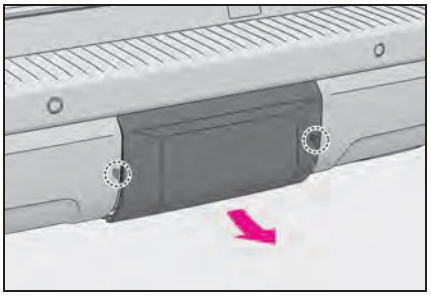
When steel and aluminum come into contact, there is a reaction similar to corrosion, which will weaken the section concerned and may result in damage. Apply a rust inhibitor to parts that will come in contact when attaching a steel bracket.

Removing hitch cover

1 Remove the clips.



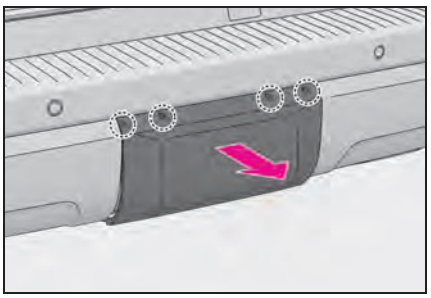
2 Pull the lower edge of the hitch cover toward you and remove the 2 craws.



3 Pull the hitch cover toward you and remove it.

When reattaching the cover, reverse the

steps listed.



Guidance

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

Checking connections between trailer and lights

Stop the vehicle and check the operation of the connection between the trailer and lights after driving for a brief period as well as before starting off.

Practicing driving with a coupled trailer

- Get the feel for turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer coupled by practicing in an area with no or light traffic.
- When reversing with a coupled trailer, hold the section of the steering wheel nearest to you and rotate clockwise to turn the trailer left or counterclockwise to turn it right. Always rotate a little at a time to prevent steering error. Have someone guide you when reversing to lessen the risk of an accident.

Increasing vehicle-to-vehicle distance

At a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph), the distance to the vehicle running ahead of you should be equivalent to or greater than the combined length of your vehicle and trailer. Avoid sudden braking that may cause skidding. Otherwise, the vehicle may spin out of control. This is especially true when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

Sudden acceleration/steering input/cornering

Executing sharp turns when towing may result in the trailer colliding with your vehicle. Decelerate well in advance when approaching turns and take them slowly and carefully to avoid sudden braking.

Important points regarding turning

The wheels of the trailer will travel closer to the inside of the curve than the wheels of the vehicle. To make allowance for this, take the turns wider than you would normally do.

Important points regarding stability

Vehicle movement resulting from uneven road surfaces and strong crosswinds will affect handling. The vehicle may also be rocked by passing buses or large trucks. Frequently check behind when moving alongside such vehicles. As soon as such vehicle movement occurs, immediately start to decelerate smoothly by slowly applying the brakes. Always steer the vehi-

cle straight ahead while braking.

Passing other vehicles

Consider the total combined length of your vehicle and trailer and ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is sufficient before executing lane changes.

Transmission information

To maintain engine braking efficiency, when using engine braking, do not use the transmission in D.

If in the M mode, the transmission shift range position must be in 7 or lower. (→P.236)

If the engine overheats

Towing a loaded trailer up a long, steep incline in temperatures exceeding 30°C (85°F) may result in the engine overheating. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates that the engine is overheating, turn the air conditioning off immediately, leave the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place. (→P.616)

When parking the vehicle

Always place wheel chocks under the wheels of both the vehicle and trailer. Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

Break-in schedule

Lexus recommends that vehicles fitted with new power train components should not be used for towing trailers for the first 800 km (500 miles).

If trailer sway occurs

One or more factors (crosswinds, passing vehicles, rough roads, etc.) can adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing instability.

● If trailer swaying occurs:
- Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead.
  Do not try to control trailer swaying by turning the steering wheel.
- Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed.
  Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize (if enabled, Trailer Sway Control can also help to stabilize the vehicle and trailer.).

● After the trailer swaying has stopped:
- Stop in a safe place. Get all occupants out of the vehicle.
- Check the tires of the vehicle and the trailer.
- Check the load in the trailer.

Make sure the load has not shifted.
Make sure the tongue weight is appropriate, if possible.
- Check the load in the vehicle.

Make sure the vehicle is not overloaded after occupants get in.

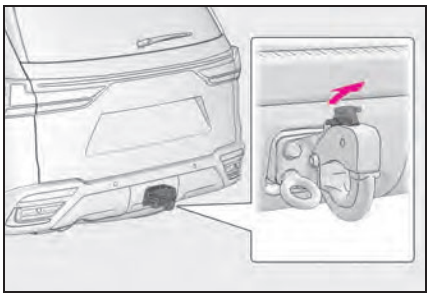
If you cannot find any problems, the speed at which trailer swaying occurred is beyond the limit of your particular vehicle-trailer combination. Drive at a lower speed to prevent instability. Remember that swaying of the towing vehicle-trailer increases as speed increases.

Pintle hook*

*: If equipped

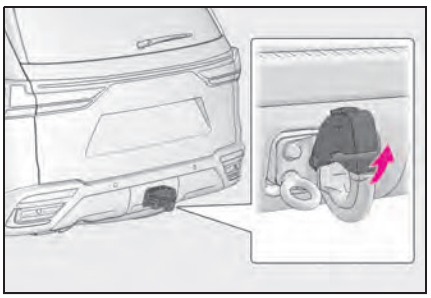
The pintle hook can be used for towing.

1 Pull the pintle hook lock lever up.



2 Lift the upper half of the hook up.

After attaching the trailer, let the upper half of the pintle hook lower to its original position, and lower the pintle hook lock lever.



When towing

- As a double safety measure, attach the vehicle being towed to the eyelet bolt with a cable or rope.
- Attach the vehicle being pulled to the pintle hook so that the pulling force is horizontal.
- Because of the installations of the pintle hook and steps, the vehicle's departure angle is reduced. Be careful not to interfere with road surface while driving through rough terrain.

Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

1 Pull the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.237)

The parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.

4 Vehicles with fingerprint authentication system and fingerprint authentication system is on: Authenticate by touching the fingerprint sensor on the engine switch using your finger (fingerprint information must have already been registered). (→P.112)

The buzzer will sound (a short beeping sound) if fingerprint authentication is successful.

Fingerprint authentication may fail if you move too quickly or if you slide your finger while pressing.

5 Press the engine switch quickly but fully.

When the vehicle has a fingerprint authentication system and the fingerprint authentication system is on, the buzzer will sound (a short beeping sound) after fingerprint authentication is successful. Press the engine switch within approximately 5 seconds of this happening. If this is not done quickly enough, fingerprint authentication will need to be performed again.

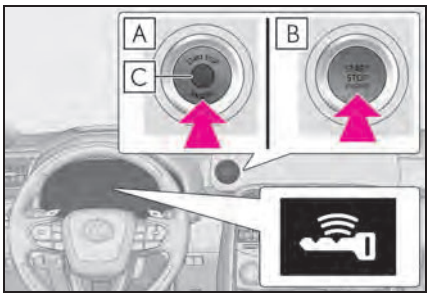
When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

Diesel engine only: (engine preheating indicator) turns on. The engine will start after the indicator light goes out.

The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



A Vehicles with fingerprint authentication system

B Vehicles without fingerprint authentication system

C Fingerprint sensor

■ **Engine switch illumination**

According to the situation, the engine switch illumination operates as follows.

- When driver's door or front passenger's door is opened, the engine switch illumination illuminates.
- When depressing the brake pedal with carrying the electronic key on your per-

son, the engine switch illumination illuminates brighter.

- When the engine switch is in ACC or ON, the engine switch illumination illuminates.
- When the engine switch mode is changed from ACC or ON to OFF, the engine switch illumination illuminates for a certain amount of time. Afterwards, the engine switch illumination turns off.

■ **If the engine does not start**

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P.107) Contact your Lexus dealer.
- If a message related to start-up is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- If the door is unlocked with the mechanical key, the engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.610 to start the engine. However, if the electronic key is carried inside the vehicle and the doors are locked (→P.144), the engine can be started.

■ **If the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.611 to restart the engine.

■ **Fingerprint authentication**

- Fingerprint authentication certification may take some time depending on the amount of registered fingerprint information.
- When touching the fingerprint sensor, ensure that your finger covers the entire surface of the sensor. Touching the sensor with your fingertip or the side of your finger may prevent authentication.
- Touch the sensor slowly. Touching too quickly or strongly, or sliding your finger along the sensor while touching may prevent normal recognition.
- If it is difficult to press the engine switch (for example, if the nail on your finger is too long), first perform fingerprint authentication. Once that has succeeded, release your finger and then press the engine switch with another finger.
- If fingerprint authentication fails, a message "Push Sensor with Already Registered Finger Again Slowly" will be displayed on the multi-information display.
- If fingerprint authentication fails 3 times in a row, a message "Press brake pedal and touch engine switch with key" will be displayed on the multi-information display.
- If it is unknown which user registered their fingerprint information, or if fingerprint authentication is not successful, hold the electronic key close to the engine switch while depressing the brake pedal, and then press the engine switch. (→P.610)

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P.138

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

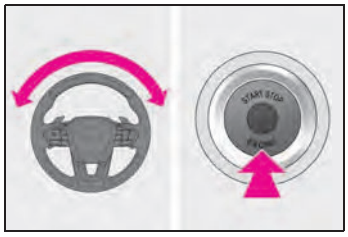
→P.164

■ **Note for the entry function**

→P.164

■ **Steering lock function**

- After turning the engine switch to OFF and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the engine switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.
- When the steering lock cannot be released, "Push Engine Switch While Turning Steering Wheel in Either Direction" will be displayed on the multi-information display.
  Check that the shift lever is set in P.
  Press the engine switch shortly and firmly while turning the steering wheel left and right.



- To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, operation of the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from running the engine. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ If there is a malfunction in the smart entry & start system

If "Smart Entry & Start System malfunction See owner's manual" is displayed on the multi-information display, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Electronic key battery

→P.563

■ Operation of the engine switch

- If the switch is not pressed shortly and firmly, the engine switch mode may not change or the engine may not start.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch to OFF, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch to OFF, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ Customization

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to P.610.

WARNING

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution while driving

If engine failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When starting the engine

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Stopping the engine

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P.237)

Check the parking brake indicator is illuminated.

3. Shift the shift lever to P. (→P.234)

4 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

The engine will stop, and the meter display will be extinguished.

Release the shift lever when pressing the engine switch.

5 Release the brake pedal and check that "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is not shown on the multi-information display.

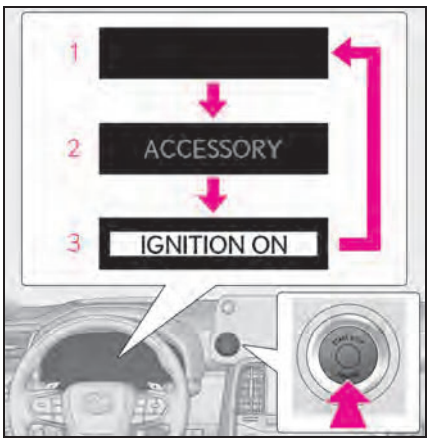
WARNING

■ Stopping the engine in an emergency

- If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P.574)
  However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control. However, power assist for these systems may be lost making it difficult to steer or brake before stopping the vehicle depending on the remaining charge in the battery or usage conditions. In this situation, you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- If the engine switch is operated while the vehicle is running, a warning message will be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer sounds.
- When restarting the engine after an emergency shutdown, shift the shift lever to N and press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 OFF*

The emergency flashers can be used.

The multi-information display will not be displayed.

2 ACC

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.
"ACCESSORY" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

3 ON

All electrical components can be used.
"IGNITION ON" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the engine switch will remain ON, will not turn to OFF.

■ Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACC or ON (the engine is not running) for more than 20 minutes with the shift lever in P, the engine switch will automatically turn to OFF.

However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine switch in ACC or ON for long periods of time when the

engine is not running.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACC or ON for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is displayed on the multi-information display, the engine switch is not in OFF. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch to OFF.

When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the engine switch will not be turned to OFF. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch to OFF:

1. Check that the parking brake is set.
2. Shift the shift lever to P.
3. Check that "IGNITION ON" is displayed on the multi-information display and press the engine switch shortly and firmly.
4. Check that "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" on the multi-information display is off.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the engine switch will not be turned to OFF but instead remain ON. If the vehicle is left in ON, battery discharge may occur.

Automatic transmission

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and functions

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral (Condition in which the power is not transmitted)
D	Normal driving*1
M	M mode driving*2 (→P.236)

*1: Shifting to the D position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving conditions. Setting the shift lever to the D position is recommended for normal driving.

*2: Selecting gear steps using the M position achieves suitable engine braking forces by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches.

■ Driving on a downhill

On declines, there may be case where the vehicle shifts down automatically to obtain engine braking. As a result of the downshifting, the engine speed may increase.

■ To protect the automatic transmission

- If the tires spin continually when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow, or if the accelerator pedal is depressed and released repeatedly while driving, the automatic transmission temperature may become too high and the automatic transmission may be damaged.
  To avoid damaging the automatic transmission, the system may temporarily lock the gear.
  If the automatic transmission temperature falls, the gear locking is canceled and the automatic transmission is returned to the normal operation.
- If the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high, "Transmission Oil Temp. High Stop in a safe place and See owner's manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, shift the shift lever to P and wait until the warning message goes off. If the warning message goes off, you may start the vehicle again. If the warning message do not go off, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ When driving with dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range, dynamic radar cruise control or cruise control activated

Even when switching the driving mode to SPORT S mode or SPORT S+ mode while driving in D position (→P.407) with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range, dynamic radar cruise control or cruise control will not be canceled.

■ Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)

→P.219

■ AI-SHIFT

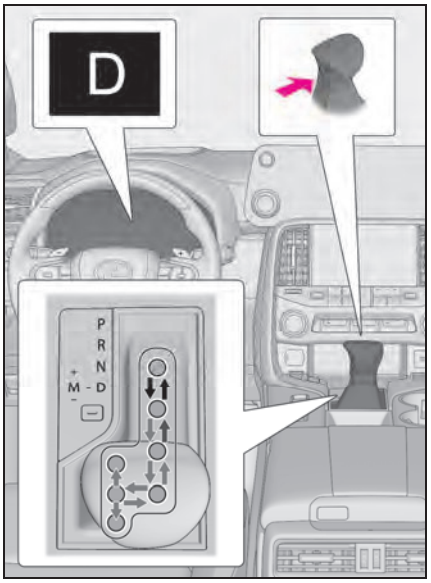
The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)

WARNING

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Do not accelerate or shift gears suddenly.
Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

Shifting the shift lever



While the engine switch is in ON and the brake pedal depressed*, shift the shift lever while pushing the shift release button on the shift knob.

Shift the shift lever while pushing the shift release button on the shift knob.

Shift the shift lever normally.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

*: For the vehicle to be able to be shifted from P, the brake pedal must be depressed before the shift release button is pushed. If the shift release button is pushed first, the shift lock will not be released.

■ Shift lock system

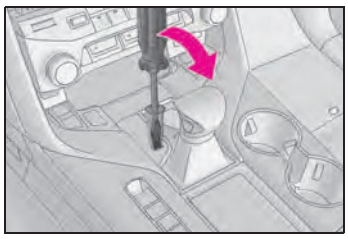
The shift lock system is a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever in starting.
The shift lever can be shifted from P only when the engine switch is in ON, the brake pedal is depressed and the shift release button is pushed.

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

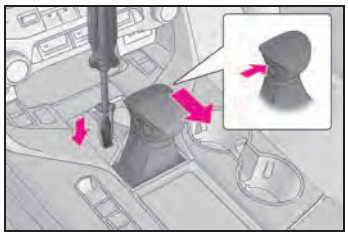
First, check whether the brake pedal is being depressed.
If the shift lever cannot be shifted even though the brake pedal is depressed and the shift release button is pushed, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

Releasing the shift lock:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the engine switch off.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.
   To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



5 Press and hold the shift lock override button and then push the button on the shift knob.
The shift lever can be shifted while both buttons are pressed.



WARNING

■ To prevent an accident when releasing the shift lock

Before pressing the shift lock override button, make sure to set the parking brake and depress the brake pedal.
If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed instead of the brake pedal when the shift lock override button is pressed and the shift lever is shifted out of P, the vehicle may suddenly start, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

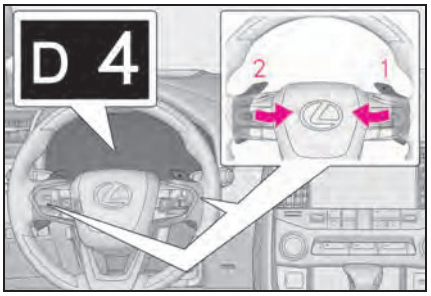
Selecting the driving mode

→P.407

Selecting gear steps in the D position

To drive using temporary gear step selection, operate the "-" or "+" paddle shift switch when driving with the shift lever in D.

Changing the gear step allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

The selected gear step, from D1 to D10, will be displayed in the meter.

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

■ Gear step functions

- 10 levels of accelerating force and engine braking can be selected.
- A lower gear step will provide greater accelerating force and engine braking force than a higher gear step, and the engine revolutions will also increase.

■ Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is shifted to a position other than D

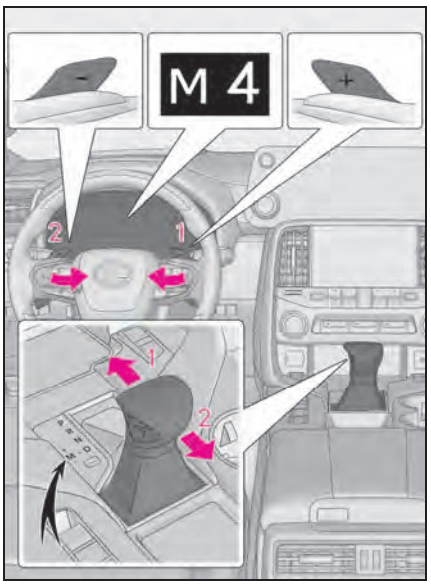
● When the "+" paddle shift switch is pressed and held

■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Selecting gears in M mode

To enter M mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gears can be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. The selected gear, from M1 to M10, will be fixed and displayed on the meter.

When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated.

However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When it is necessary to protect the engine or automatic transmission when the engine coolant temperature is low, the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high or low, or other reasons.

Also, the gear will not shift when the vehicle speed is low, even if an upshift operation is performed.

■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

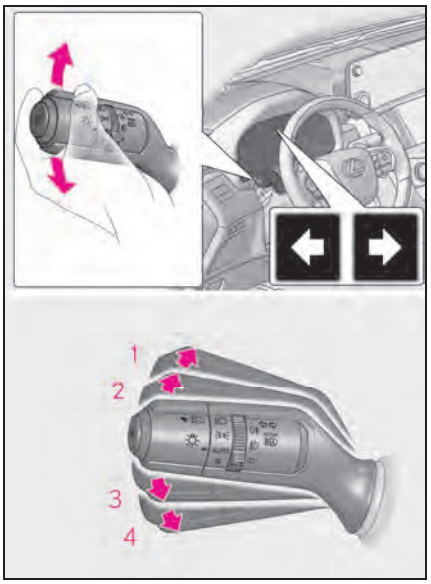
■ **If the "M" indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to M**

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions

The turn signal lever can be used to show the following intentions of the driver:



1 Right turn

2 Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

3 Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

4 Left turn

■ Turn signals can be operated when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ If the indicator flashes faster than usual

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

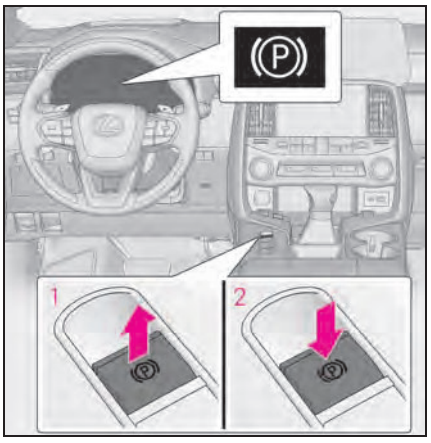
Parking brake

The parking brake can be set or released automatically or manually. In automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released automatically according to shift lever operation. Also, even in automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released manually.

Operating instructions

■ Using the manual mode

The parking brake can be set and released manually.



1 Pull the switch to set the parking brake.

The parking brake indicator light will turn on.

Pull and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

2 Push the switch to release the parking brake.

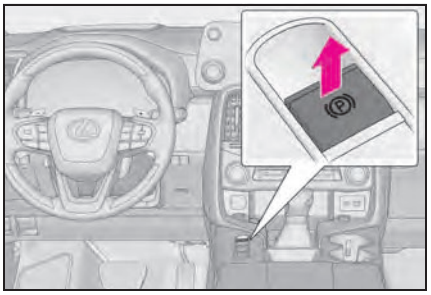
- Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal. When using this function, slowly depress the accelerator pedal.
- Parking brake automatic release function (→P.238)

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light turns off.

If the parking brake indicator light flashes, operate the switch again. (→P.588)

■ Turning the automatic mode on

While the vehicle is stopped, pull and hold the parking brake switch until a buzzer sounds and "EPB Shift Interlock Function Activated" is displayed on the multi-information display.



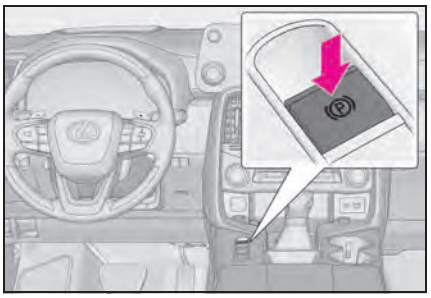
When the automatic mode is turned on, the parking brake operates as follows.

- When the shift lever is shifted from P, the parking brake will be released, and the parking brake indicator light will turn off.
- When the shift lever is shifted to P, the parking brake will be set, and the parking brake indicator light will turn on.

Operate the shift lever with the vehicle stopped and the brake pedal depressed.

■ Turning the automatic mode off

While the vehicle is stopped and depressing the brake pedal, press and hold the parking brake switch until a buzzer sounds and "EPB Shift Interlock Function Deactivated" is displayed on the multi-information display.



■ Parking brake operation

- When the engine switch is not in ON, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the engine switch is not in ON, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.

■ Parking brake automatic release function

The parking brake will be released automatically when the accelerator pedal is slowly depressed under the following conditions:

- The driver's door is closed
- The driver is wearing the seat belt
- The shift lever is in a forward or reverse position.
- The malfunction indicator lamp or brake system warning light is not illuminated

If the automatic release function does not operate, release the parking brake manually.

■ **Parking brake automatic lock function**

The parking brake will be set automatically under the following conditions:

- The driver does not operate the brake pedal
- The driver's door is not closed
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt
- The shift lever position is not in P or N
- The malfunction indicator lamp or brake system warning light is not illuminated

■ **If "Parking Brake Temporarily Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display**

If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

■ **If "EPB Activation Stopped Incompletely" or "Parking Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display**

Operate the parking brake switch. If the message does not disappear after operating the switch several times, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Parking brake operation sound**

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Parking brake indicator light**

- Depending on the engine switch mode, the parking brake indicator light will turn on and stay on as described below:
  ON: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
  Not in ON: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.
- When the engine switch is turned to OFF with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **When the parking brake switch malfunctions**

Automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) will be turned on automatically.

■ **Parking the vehicle**

→P.213

■ **Parking brake engaged warning buzzer**

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged. "Parking Brake ON" is displayed on the multi-information display (with the vehicle reaching a speed of 5 km/h [3 mph]).

■ **If the brake system warning light comes on**

→P.582

■ **Usage in winter time**

→P.440

WARNING

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Do not leave a child in the vehicle alone. The parking brake may be released unintentionally by a child and there is the danger of the vehicle moving that may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Parking brake switch**

Do not set any objects near the parking brake switch. Objects may interfere with the switch and may lead the parking brake to unexpectedly operate.

NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Before you leave the vehicle, shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ **When the system malfunctions**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

NOTICE

■ When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

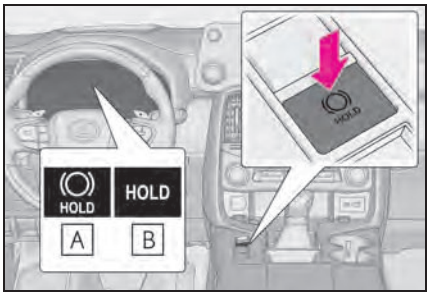
Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift lever is in D, M or N with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever in D or M to allow smooth start off.

Enabling the system

Turns the brake hold system on

The brake hold standby indicator (green) A comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator (yellow) B comes on.



■ Brake hold system operating conditions

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.
- The parking brake is engaged.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold standby indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected

while the system is holding the brake, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

■ **Brake hold function**

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the button again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. A warning buzzer will sound and the multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes**

Perform any of the following operations to release the parking brake:

- Depress the accelerator pedal. (The parking brake will not be released automatically if the seat belt is not fastened.)
- Operate the parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P.237)

■ **When an inspection at your Lexus dealer is necessary**

When the brake hold standby indicator (green) does not illuminate even when the brake hold switch is pressed with the brake hold system operating conditions met, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ **If "Brake Hold Malfunction Press Brake to Deactivate Visit Your Dealer" or "Brake Hold Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **When another control activates with the brake hold system**

A message is displayed on the multi-information display in any of the following cases.

- "Brake Hold Unavailable See the Owner's Manual"
  - When the brake hold switch is pressed while the downhill assist control system is activated.
  - When the brake hold switch is pressed while the four-wheel drive control switch is turned to L4 mode.
- "Brake Hold Unavailable Press Brake to Deactive"
  - When the DAC/CRAWL switch is operated while the brake hold system is activated.
  - When the four-wheel drive control switch is turned to L4 mode while the brake hold system is activated.

The brake hold system and downhill assist control system or transfer L4 mode cannot be activated at the same time.

Please press the brake hold switch with the brake pedal depressed to turn off the brake hold system.

■ **If the brake hold operated indicator flashes**

→P.588

WARNING

■ When the vehicle is on a steep incline

Take care when using the brake hold system on a steep incline, exercise caution. The brake hold function may not hold brakes in such situations.

Also, the system may not activate depending on the angle of the slope.

■ When stopped on a slippery road

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

NOTICE

■ When parking the vehicle

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the engine switch off while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the engine switch, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.

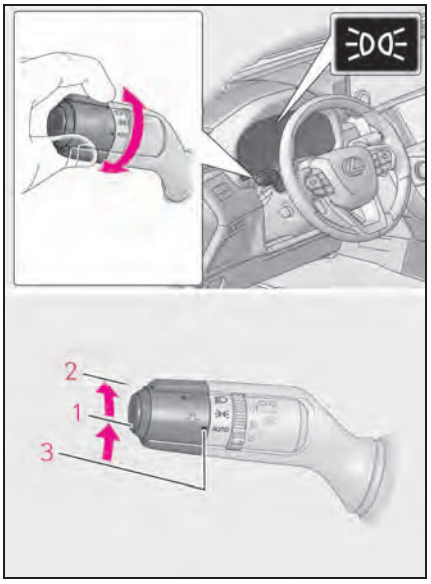
Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Turning on the headlights

Operating the switch turns on the lights as follows:

▶ Type A

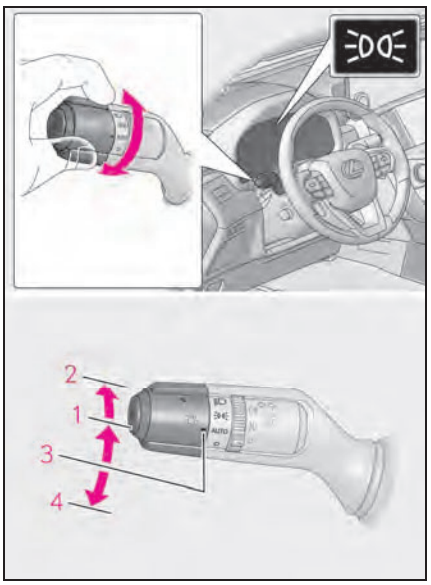


1 The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

2 The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.243) and all lights listed above turn on and off automatically.

▶ Type B



1 The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

2 The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.243) and all lights listed above turn on and off automatically.

4 O The daytime running lights turn off. (→P.243)

On some models: The daytime running lights turn on. (→P.243)

■ AUTO mode can be used when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ Daytime running light system

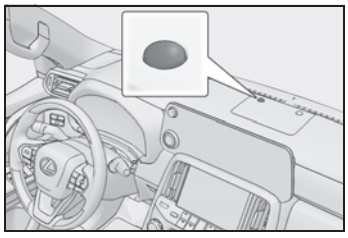
To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime

4 Driving

running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch in the O (on some models) or AUTO position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ **Headlight control sensor**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield. Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



■ **Automatic light off system**

▶ Type A

The lights turn off after the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to ON, or turn the light switch to O or AUTO position once and then back to ≡D◐≡ or ≡◐ position.

▶ Type B

- When the light switch is in ≡D◐≡ or ≡◐ position: The headlights and front fog lights turn off after the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF.
- When the light switch is in AUTO position: The headlights and all lights turn off after the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to ON, or turn the light switch to O or AUTO position once and then back to ≡D◐≡ or ≡◐ position.

▶ Type C

- When the headlights come on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after the driver's door is opened and closed if the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF. (The lights turn off immediately if 🔒 on the key is pressed after all the doors are locked.)
- When only the tail lights come on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to ON, or turn the light switch off once and then back to ≡D◐≡ or ≡◐.

■ **Light reminder buzzer**

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **Battery-saving function**

In order to prevent the battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the headlights and/or tail lights are on when the engine switch is turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes. When the engine switch is turned to ON, the battery- saving function will be disabled.

When any of the following are performed, the battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the battery-saving function has been reactivated:

- When the headlight switch is operated
- When a door is opened or closed

■ Welcome lighting

The front position lights automatically turn on when the surroundings are dark and the doors are unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control if the light switch is in the AUTO position.

■ Stop lights

Depending on whether the tail lights are illuminated or not, illuminating state of the stop lights differs.

■ Customization

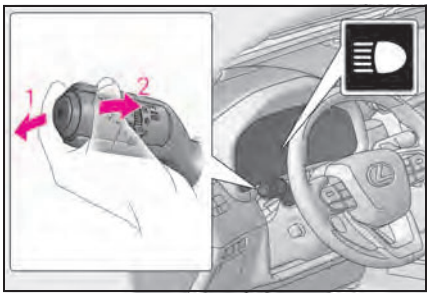
Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.645)

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

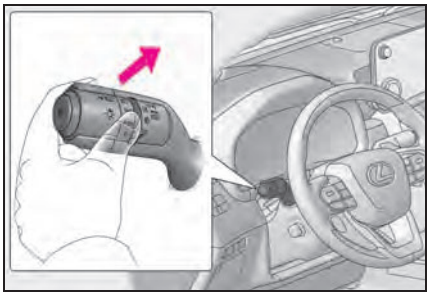
You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Extended Headlight Lighting (if equipped)

This system allows the headlights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the engine switch is turned to OFF.

Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch is in the AUTO position after turning the engine switch to OFF.

Pull the lever toward you and release it again to turn off the lights.



Cornering lights

When any of the following conditions is met, while the headlights (low beam) are on, the cornering lights will additionally turn on and light up the direc-

tion of movement for the vehicle. This is to ensure excellent visibility when either driving at intersections or parking at night.

- The steering wheel is operated
- The turn signal lever is operated
- The shift lever is in R (both left and right side cornering lights)

■ Cornering light control

- The lights illuminate when the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or less. However, the lights turn off when the vehicle speed increases to approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more.
- After the lights remain illuminated for 30 minutes, they automatically turn off.

AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*

*: If equipped

The Adaptive High-beam System uses a front camera located behind the upper portion of the windshield to assess the brightness of the lights of vehicles ahead, streetlights, etc., and automatically controls the headlight light distribution as necessary.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Limitations of the Adaptive High-beam System**

Do not overly rely on the Adaptive High-beam System. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beams on or off manually if necessary.

■ **To prevent incorrect operation of the Adaptive High-beam System**

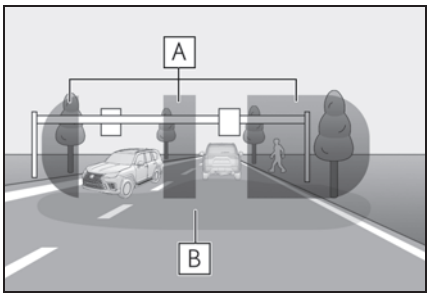
Do not overload the vehicle.

System functions

- Adjusts the brightness and illuminated area of the high beams according to the vehicle speed.
- Adjusts the intensity of the high beams, while driving on a curve, so that the area in the direction that the vehicle is turning will be illuminated more brightly than other areas.
- Operates the shaded high beams so that the area around vehicles ahead is partially not illuminated while all other areas continue to be illumi-

nated with the high beams.

The shaded high beams help optimize forward visibility while reducing the dazzling effect on the drivers of vehicles ahead.



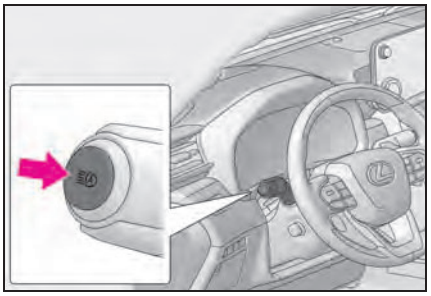
A Illuminated area of the high beams

B Illuminated area of the low beams

- Adjusts the distance that the low beams are projected according to the distance to a preceding vehicle.

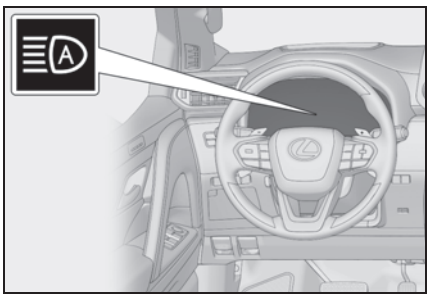
Activating the Adaptive High-beam System

1 Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.



2 Turn the headlight switch to the AUTO or position.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator will come on when the system is operating.



Conditions in which the light distribution control of the headlights changes automatically

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beams will be turned on automatically and the system will operate:
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or more.*
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.

*: When the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more, the area in the direction that the vehicle is turning will be illuminated more brightly than other areas while driving on a curve.

- When all of the following conditions are met, the shaded high beams will turn on and the distance that the low beams are projected will be adjusted automatically, depending on the location of vehicles ahead:
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or more.
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
  - There are vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- If any of the following conditions is met, the high beams or shaded high beams will be changed to the low beams automatically:
  - The vehicle speed is below approximately 12 km/h (7 mph).
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
  - There are many vehicles ahead.
  - Vehicles ahead are moving quickly and the high beams may blind the drivers of

the other vehicles.

■ **Front camera detection information**

● The high beams may not be automatically changed to the shaded high beams in the following situations:
- When vehicles ahead suddenly appear from a curve
- When the vehicle is cut in front of by another vehicle
- When vehicles ahead are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- When vehicles ahead appear from the faraway lane on wide road
- When vehicles ahead have no lights

● The high beams may be changed to the shaded high beams if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without its headlights turned on is detected.

● House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs and other reflective objects may cause the high beams to change to the shaded high beams, cause the high beams not to change to the shaded high beams, or change the area that is not illuminated.

● The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn the high beam on or off, or the speed by which the areas not illuminated change:
- The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
- The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
- When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
- When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
- The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
- The number of passengers and amount of luggage

● The light distribution control of the headlights may change unexpectedly.

● Bicycles or similar objects may not be detected.

● In the following situations the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness level. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to flash or dazzle pedestrians or vehicles ahead. In such a case, it is necessary to manually switch between the high and low beams.
- When driving in inclement weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
- When the windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
- When the windshield is cracked or damaged
- When the front camera is deformed or dirty
- When the temperature of the front camera is extremely high
- When the surrounding brightness level is equal to that of headlights, tail lights or fog lights
- When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a preceding vehicle
- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness
- When frequently and repeatedly driving on ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel roads, etc.)
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
- When there is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or mirror
- When the back of a preceding vehicle is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck
- When the vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty, or are not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is listing or tilting due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
- When the headlights are changed between the high beams and low beams repeatedly in an abnormal manner
- When the driver believes that the high beams may be flashing or dazzling pedestrians or other drivers
- When the vehicle is used in an area in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle was designed, for example using

a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic area, or vice versa

■ **If "Headlight System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.646)

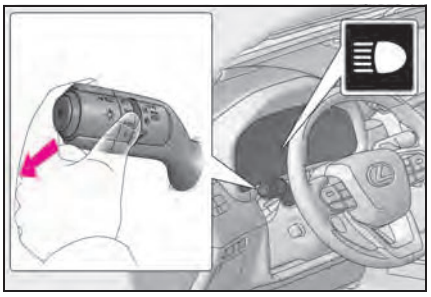
Turning the high beams on/off manually

■ Switching to the high beams

Push the lever away from you.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator will turn off and the headlight high beam indicator will turn on.

Pull the lever to its original position to activate the Adaptive High-beam System again.

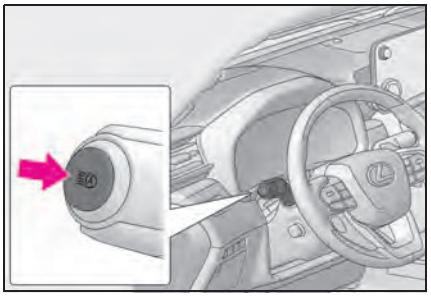


■ Switching to the low beams

Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator will turn off.

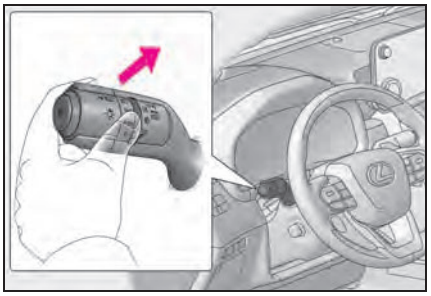
Press the switch to activate the Adaptive High-beam System again.



■ Temporarily switching to the low beams

Pull the lever toward you and then return it to its original position.

The high beams are on while the lever is pulled toward you, however, after the lever is returned to its original position, the low beams remain on for a certain amount of time. Afterwards, the Adaptive High-beam System will be activated again.



■ **Temporarily switching to the low beams**

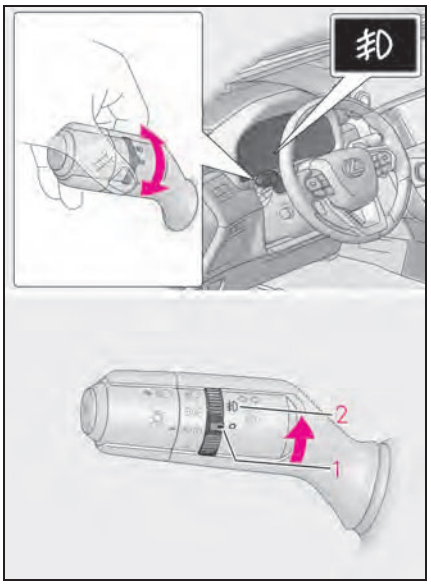
It is recommended to switch to the low beams when the high beam may cause problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

Fog light switch

The fog lights offer improved visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

Operating procedure

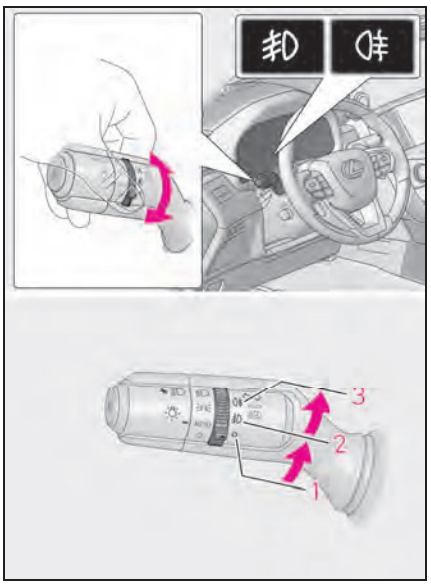
■ Front fog light switch



1 ○ Off

2 Front fog lights on

■ Front and rear fog light switch



1 ○ Off

2 Front fog lights on

3 Front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog lights off.

■ **Fog lights can be used when**

▶ Vehicles with front fog lights

The front position lights are turned on.

▶ Vehicles with a front and rear fog lights

Front fog lights: The front position lights are turned on.

Rear fog lights: The front fog lights are turned on.

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the lever can switch between automatic operation and manual operation, or can use the washer.

NOTICE

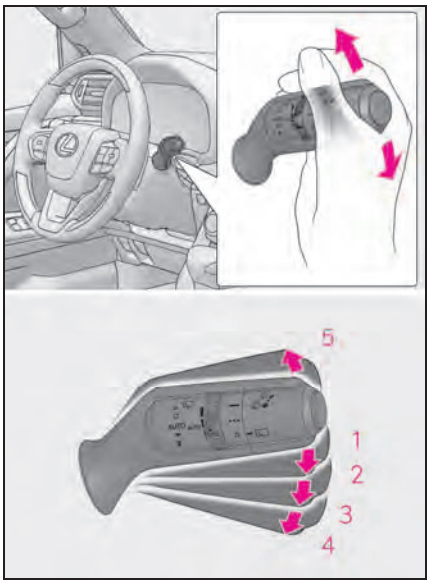
■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

Operating the wiper lever

Operating the lever operates the wipers or washer as follows:

When AUTO is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



1 ○ Off

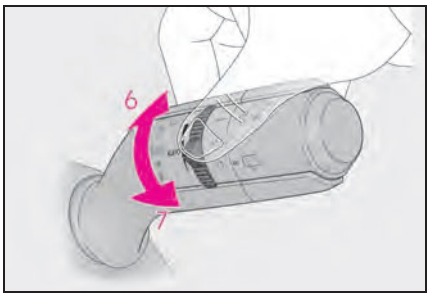
2 AUTO Rain-sensing operation

3 ▼ Low speed operation

4 ▼▼ High speed operation

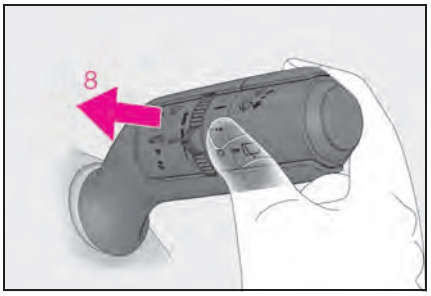
5 ▲ Temporary operation

When AUTO is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted by turning the switch ring.



6 Increases the sensitivity

7 Decreases the sensitivity



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

When the engine switch is in ON and the

headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The engine switch is in ON.

Operating the windshield wipers and washer using the voice control system*

*: If equipped

The following operation can be performed using the voice control system.

- Operating the windshield wipers only once
- Operating the windshield washer (it can be performed only when the vehicle is stopped)

For details regarding the voice control system, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

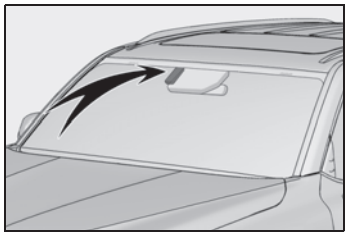
Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation

With low speed windshield wiper operation selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest level, the mode will not switch.)

Raindrop sensor

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper switch is turned to the AUTO position while the engine switch is in ON, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- When the sensor sensitivity ring is turned toward high while in AUTO mode, the wipers will operate once to indicate that the sensor sensitivity is enhanced.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 80°C (176°F) or higher, or -30°C (22°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO.

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

WARNING

Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else does not become caught in the windshield wipers.

WARNING

■ **Caution regarding the use of washer fluid**

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle**

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer.

Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the wiper on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Rear window wiper and washer

The rear window wiper and washer can be used by operating the lever.

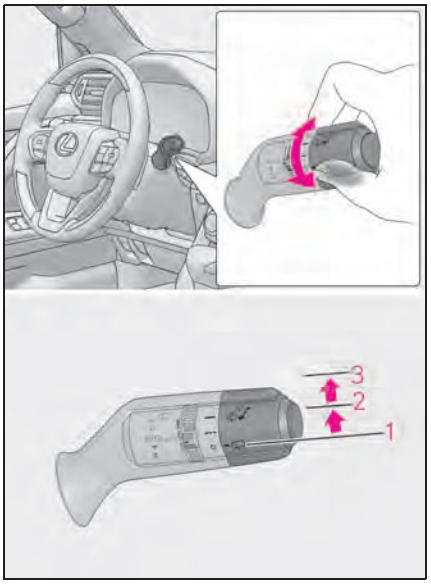
NOTICE

■ **When the rear window is dry**

Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

Operating the wiper lever

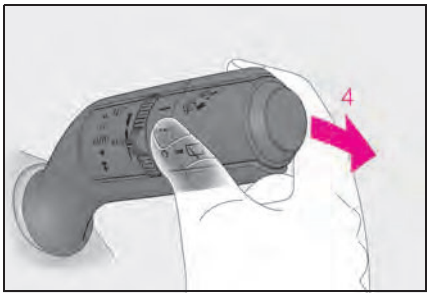
Operating the switch operates the rear window wiper as follows:



1 ○ Off

2 --- Intermittent operation

3 — Normal operation



4 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pushing the lever operates the wiper and washer.

Vehicles with camera cleaning washer:
The washer will automatically operate and clean the camera for the Multi-terrain Monitor (→P.396).

■ **The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **Operating the rear window wiper and washer using the voice control system***

*: If equipped

The following operation can be performed using the voice control system.

- Operating the rear window wiper only once
- Operating the rear window washer (it can be performed only when the vehicle is stopped)

For details regarding the voice control system, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **If no washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked if there is washer fluid in the washer fluid reservoir.

■ **Dripping prevention wiper sweep**

When the washer is operated, the wipers will operate once more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

■ **Back door opening linked rear window wiper stop function**

When the rear window wiper is operating, if the back door is opened while the vehicle is stopped, operation of the rear window wiper will be stopped to prevent anyone near the vehicle from being sprayed by water from the wiper. When the back door is closed, wiper operation will resume.

■ **Reverse-linked rear window wiper function**

When the shift lever is shifted to R when the front wipers are operating, the rear window wiper will operate once.

■ **Customization**

Settings can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.645)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the wiper on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

- Turn the engine switch off and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

■ Fuel types

→P.635

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

⚠ WARNING

■ When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

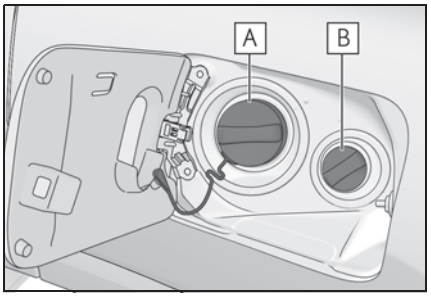
- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

NOTICE

■ Refueling

- Do not spill fuel during refueling. Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.
- Vehicles with DPF system: Use the specified fuel. If fuel other than the specified fuel is used, white smoke may be continuously emitted from the exhaust pipe during regenerating the filter. (→P.427)

Location of the fuel tank cap

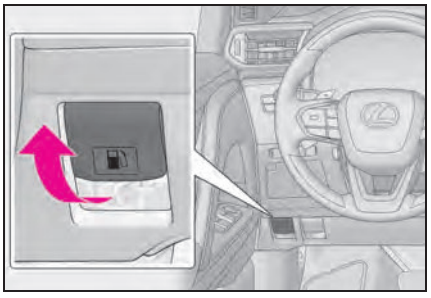


A Fuel tank cap

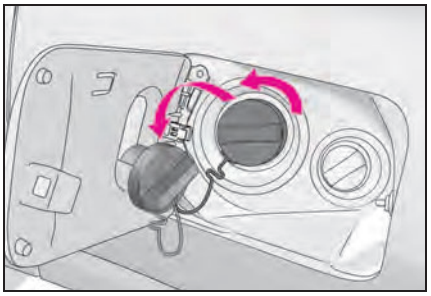
B AdBlue™ tank cap (if equipped) (→P.546)

Opening the fuel tank cap

1 Pull the lever.

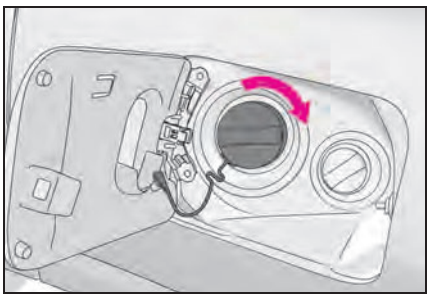


2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open it and put it into the holder on the fuel filler door.



Closing the fuel tank cap

After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



WARNING

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Lexus Safety System +*

*: If equipped

The Lexus Safety System + consists of the following drive assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience:

Driving assist system

- **PCS (Pre-Collision System)**

→P.262

- **LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)**

→P.273

- **AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)**

→P.246

- **Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)**

→P.283

- **Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)**

→P.294

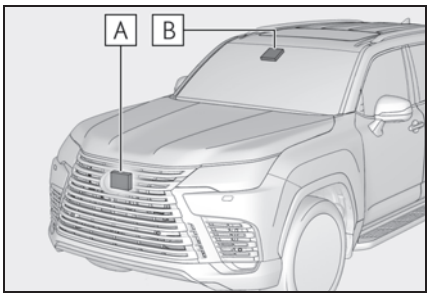
WARNING

■ Lexus Safety System +

The Lexus Safety System + is designed to operate under the assumption that the driver will drive safely, and is designed to help reduce the impact to the occupants and the vehicle in the case of a collision or assist the driver in normal driving conditions.
As there is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

Sensors

Two types of sensors, located behind the front grille and windshield, detect information necessary to operate the drive assist systems.



A Radar sensor

B Front camera

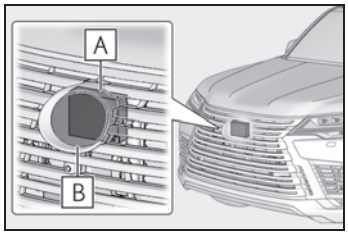
WARNING

■ To avoid malfunction of the radar sensor

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, the radar sensor may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

WARNING

- Keep the radar sensor and the radar sensor cover clean at all times.



A Radar sensor

B Radar sensor cover

If the front of the radar sensor or the front or back of the radar sensor cover is dirty or covered with water droplets, snow, etc., clean it.

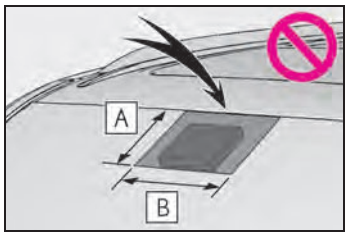
Clean the radar sensor and radar sensor cover with a soft cloth to avoid damaging them.

- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers) or other items to the radar sensor, radar sensor cover or surrounding area.
- Do not subject the radar sensor or its surrounding area to a strong impact. If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper has been subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the radar sensor.
- Do not modify or paint the radar sensor or radar sensor cover.
- In the following cases, the radar sensor must be recalibrated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
  - When the radar sensor or front grille are removed and installed, or replaced
  - When the front bumper is replaced

To avoid malfunction of the front camera

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, the front camera may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  - If the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc., clean the windshield.
  - If a glass coating agent is applied to the windshield, it will still be necessary to use the windshield wipers to remove water droplets, etc. from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera.
  - If the inner side of the windshield where the front camera is installed is dirty, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not attach objects, such as stickers, transparent stickers, etc., to the outer side of the windshield in front of the front camera (shaded area in the illustration).



A From the top of the windshield to approximately 1 cm (0.4 in.) below the bottom of the front camera

B Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm [4.0 in.] to the right and left from the center of the front camera)

WARNING

- If the part of the windshield in front of the front camera is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation or ice. (→P.458)
- If water droplets cannot be properly removed from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera by the windshield wipers, replace the wiper insert or wiper blade.
- Do not attach window tint to the windshield.
- Replace the windshield if it is damaged or cracked.
  After replacing the windshield, the front camera must be recalibrated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- Do not allow liquids to contact the front camera.
- Do not allow bright lights to shine into the front camera.
- Do not dirty or damage the front camera.
  When cleaning the inside of the windshield, do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens of the front camera. Also, do not touch the lens.
  If the lens is dirty or damaged, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not subject the front camera to a strong impact.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the front camera or remove it.
- Do not disassemble the front camera.
- Do not modify any components of the vehicle around the front camera (inside rear view mirror, etc.) or ceiling.
- Do not attach any accessories to the hood, front grille or front bumper that may obstruct the front camera. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- If a surfboard or other long object is to be mounted on the roof, make sure that it will not obstruct the front camera.
- Do not modify the headlights or other lights.

■ **If a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display**

A system may be temporarily unavailable or there may be a malfunction in the system.

● In the following situations, perform the actions specified in the table. When the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

Situation	Actions
When the area around a camera is covered with dirt, moisture (fogged up, covered with condensation, ice, etc.), or other foreign matter	Using the wiper and A/C function, remove the dirt and other attached matter. (→P.458)
When the temperature around the front camera is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment	If the front camera is hot, such as after the vehicle had been parked in the sun, use the air conditioning system to decrease the temperature around the front camera. If a sunshade was used when the vehicle was parked, depending on its type, the sunlight reflected from the surface of the sunshade may cause the temperature of the front camera to become excessively high.
	If the front camera is cold, such after the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment, use the air conditioning system to increase the temperature around the front camera.
The area in front of the front camera is obstructed, such as when the hood is open or a sticker is attached to the part of the windshield in front of the front camera.	Close the hood, remove the sticker, etc. to clear the obstruction.
When "Pre-Collision System Radar In Self Calibration Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is displayed.	Check whether there is attached materials on the radar sensor and radar sensor cover, and if there is, remove it.

● In the following situations, if the situation has changed (or the vehicle has been driven for some time) and the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

- When the temperature around the radar sensor is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment
- When the front camera cannot detect objects in front of the vehicle, such as when driving

in the dark, snow, or fog, or when bright lights are shining into the front camera

- Depending on the conditions in the vicinity of the vehicle, the radar may judge the surrounding environment can not be properly recognized. In that case, "Pre-Collision System Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is displayed.

PCS (Pre-Collision System)*

*: If equipped

The pre-collision system uses a radar sensor and front camera to detect objects (→P.262) in front of the vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with an object is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure is increased to help the driver avoid the collision. If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with an object is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

The pre-collision system can be disabled/enabled and the warning timing can be changed. (→P.266)

Detectable objects and function availability

The system can detect the following (The detectable objects differs depending on the function.):

Regions	Detectable objects	Function availability	Countries/areas
A	• Vehicles • Bicyclists • Pedestrians	The pre-collision warning, pre-collision brake assist, pre-collision braking, emergency steering assist, intersection right/left turn assistance and suspension control function are available	Brunei, GCC countries*, South Africa
B		The pre-collision warning, pre-collision brake assist, pre-collision braking and suspension control function are available	Malaysia, Argentina, Guatemala, Costa Rica, Chile, Panama, Paraguay, Peru, Bolivia, Honduras, Dominica
C	Vehicles		Indonesia, Cambodia, Philippines, Viet Nam, Jordan, Lebanon

*: Saudi Arabia, Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

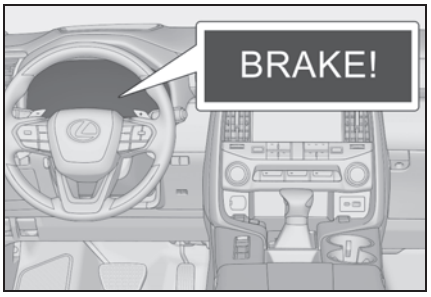
The countries and areas for each region listed in the table are current as of December 2021. However, depending on when the vehicle was sold, the coun-

tries and areas of each region may be different. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

System functions

■ Pre-collision warning

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



■ Pre-collision brake assist

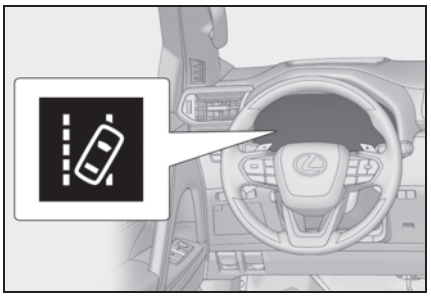
When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

■ Pre-collision braking

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the impact of the collision.

■ Emergency steering assist (for region A)

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high and that there is sufficient space for the vehicle to be steered into within its lane, and the driver has begun evasive maneuver or steering, emergency steering assist will assist the steering movements to help enhance the vehicle stability and for lane departure prevention. During operation, the indicator will illuminate in green.

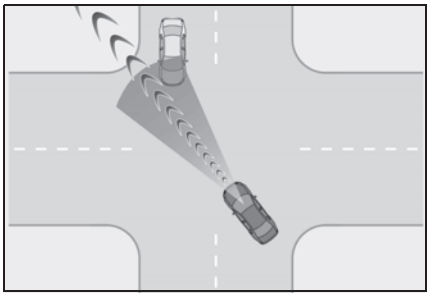


■ Intersection right/left turn assistance (for region A)

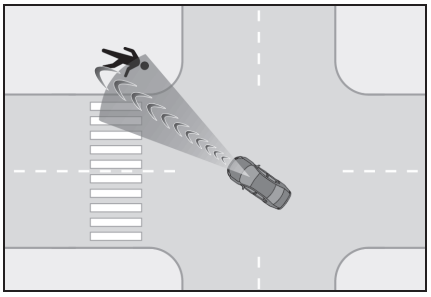
If the system determines that there is a high possibility of a collision in the following situations, it will assist with Pre-collision warning and, if necessary Pre-collision braking.

Depending on the configuration of the intersection, it may not be possible to support.

- When you turn right/left at an intersection and cross the path of an oncoming vehicle



● When you turn right/left, pedestrian is detected in the forward direction and estimated to enter your vehicle's path (bicyclists are not detected.)



■ Pre-collision seatbacks (rear seats of 4-passenger models)

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, it may move the seatbacks of the front passenger's seat and power rear seats to the upright position automatically, if reclined.

If a seat is being adjusted, it may not be moved by the pre-collision seat function.

■ Suspension control

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the AVS (→P.431) will control the damping force of the shock absorbers to help maintain an appropriate vehicle posture.

⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

● The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings. Do not use the pre-collision system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen collision damage or injury in every situation. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

● Although this system is designed to help avoid a collision or help reduce the impact of the collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions, therefore the system may not always be able to achieve the same level of performance.
Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.

- Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision: →P.269
- Conditions under which the system may not operate properly: →P.271

● Do not attempt to test the operation of the pre-collision system yourself. Depending on the objects used for testing (dummies, cardboard objects imitating detectable objects, etc.), the system may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident.

■ Pre-collision braking

● When the pre-collision braking function is operating, a large amount of braking force will be applied.

WARNING

- If the vehicle is stopped by the operation of the pre-collision braking function, the pre-collision braking function operation will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds. Depress the brake pedal as necessary.
- The pre-collision braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-collision braking function from operating.
- In some situations, while the pre-collision braking function is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly or the steering wheel is turned and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- If the brake pedal is being depressed, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly delay the operation timing of the pre-collision braking function.

■ Emergency steering assist (for region A)

- As emergency steering assist operation will be canceled when the system determines that lane departure prevention function has been completed.
- Emergency steering assist may not operate or may be cancel in the following cases as the system may determine the driver is taking actions.

• If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly, the steering wheel is being operated sharply, the brake pedal is being depressed or the turn signal lever is being operated. In this case, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and the emergency steering assist may not operate.

• In some situations, while the emergency steering assist is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly, the steering wheel is operated sharply or the brake pedal is being depressed and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.

• When the emergency steering assist is operating, if the steering wheel is held firmly or is operated in the opposite direction to that which the system is generating torque, the function may be canceled.

■ When to disable the pre-collision system

In the following situations, disable the system, as it may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- When the vehicle is being towed
- When your vehicle is towing another vehicle
- When transporting the vehicle via truck, boat, train or similar means of transportation
- When the vehicle is raised on a lift with the engine running and the tires are allowed to rotate freely
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer

WARNING

- When a strong impact is applied to the front bumper or front grille, due to an accident or other reasons
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When the tires are not properly inflated
- When the tires are very worn
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed
- When tire chains are installed
- When a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit is used
- If equipment (snow plow, etc.) that may obstruct the radar sensor or front camera is temporarily installed to the vehicle

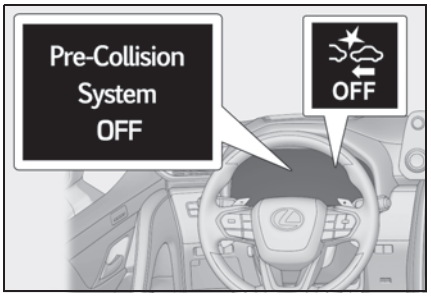
Changing settings of the pre-collision system

Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system

The pre-collision system can be enabled/disabled on (→P.124) of the multi-information display.

The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch is turned to ON.

If the system is disabled, the PCS warning light will turn on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.



Changing the pre-collision warning timing

The pre-collision warning timing can be changed on (→P.124) of the multi-information display.

The warning timing setting is retained when the engine switch is turned to OFF. However, if the pre-collision system is disabled and re-enabled, the operation timing will return to the default setting (middle).

For region A: If the pre-collision warning timing is changed, emergency steering assist timing will also be changed accordingly.

If late is selected, emergency steering assist would not operate in case of an emergency.

1 Early

2 Middle

3 Late

This is the default setting.

■ **Operational conditions for each pre-collision function**

The pre-collision system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a detected object is high.

The system may not operate in the following situations:

- If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- If the shift lever is in R
- When the VSC OFF indicator is illuminated (only the pre-collision warning function will be operational)

The operation speeds and operation cancellation for each function is listed below.

● Pre-collision warning

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
For region A and B: Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 20 to 180 km/h (13 to 110 mph)
For region A and B: Bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

While the pre-collision warning function is operating, if the steering wheel is operated heavily or suddenly, the pre-collision warning may be cancelled.

● Pre-collision brake assist

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles	Approx. 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approx. 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)
For region A and B: Bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)	Approx. 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)

● Pre-collision braking

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
For region A and B: Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 20 to 180 km/h (13 to 110 mph)
For region A and B: Bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

If either of the following occur while the pre-collision braking function is operating, it will be canceled:

- The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.

● Emergency steering assist (for region A)

When the turn signal lights are flashing, emergency steering assist will not operate in case of an emergency.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles, bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)	Approx. 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)

If any of the following occur while the emergency steering assist function is operating, it will be canceled:

- The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.
- The brake pedal is depressed.

● Intersection right/left turn assistance (pre-collision warning) (for region A)

When the turn signal lights are not flashing, support for turning left or right at an intersection which targets oncoming vehicles does not work.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Oncoming vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)	Approx. 30 to 55 km/h (20 to 35 mph)	Approx. 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)
Pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)	—	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)

● Intersection right/left turn assistance (pre-collision braking) (for region A)

When the turn signal lights are not flashing, support for turning left or right at an intersection which targets oncoming vehicles does not work.

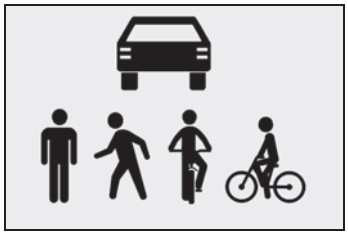
Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Oncoming vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 15 to 25 km/h (10 to 15 mph)	Approx. 30 to 45 km/h (20 to 28 mph)	Approx. 45 to 70 km/h (28 to 43 mph)
Pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)	—	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)

■ **Object detection function**

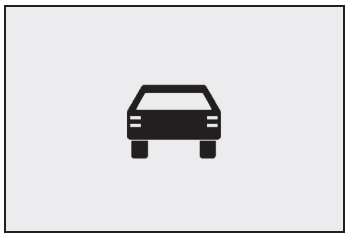
The system detects objects based on their size, profile, motion, etc. However, an object may not be detected depending on the surrounding brightness and the motion, posture, and angle of the detected object, preventing the system from operating properly. (→P.271)

The illustration shows an image of detectable objects.

▶ Region A and B



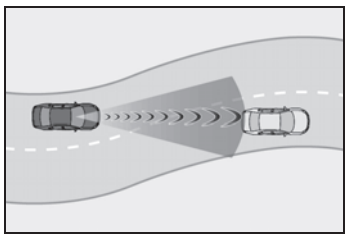
▶ Region C



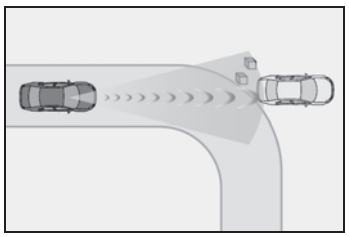
■ **Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

● In some situations such as the following, the system may determine that there is a possibility of a frontal collision and operate.

- When passing a detectable object, etc.
- When changing lanes while overtaking a detectable object, etc.
- When approaching a detectable object in an adjacent lane or on the roadside, such as when changing the course of travel or driving on a winding road

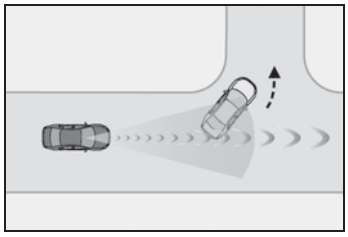


- When rapidly closing on a detectable object, etc.
- When approaching objects on the roadside, such as detectable objects, guardrails, utility poles, trees, or walls
- When there is a detectable object or other object by the roadside at the entrance of a curve

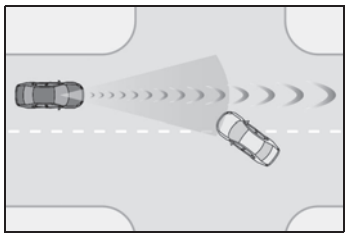


- When there are patterns or paint in front of your vehicle that may be mistaken for a

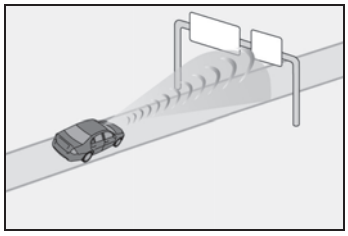
detectable object
- When the front of your vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc.
- When overtaking a detectable object that is changing lanes or making a right/left turn



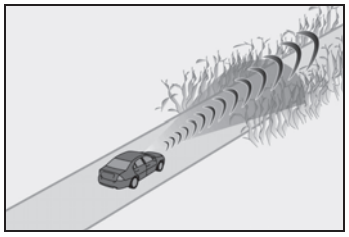
- When passing a detectable object in an oncoming lane that is stopped to make a right/left turn



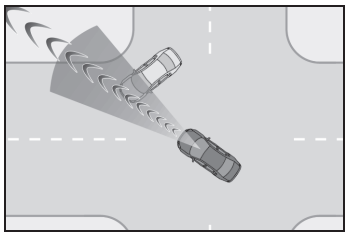
- When a detectable object approaches very close and then stops before entering the path of your vehicle
- If the front of your vehicle is raised or lowered, such as when on an uneven or undulating road surface
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on an iron bridge
- When there is a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.), steps, or a protrusion in front of your vehicle
- When passing under an object (road sign, billboard, etc.)



- When approaching an electric toll gate barrier, parking area barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes
- When using an automatic car wash
- When driving through or under objects that may contact your vehicle, such as thick grass, tree branches, or a banner



- When driving through steam or smoke
- When driving near an object that reflects radio waves, such as a large truck or guardrail
- When driving near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, radar equipped vehicles, etc., or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present
- When there are many things which can reflect the radio waves of the radar in the vicinity (tunnels, truss bridges, gravel roads, snow covered road that have tracks, etc.)
- For region A: While making a right/left turn, when an oncoming vehicle or a crossing pedestrian has already exited the path of your vehicle
- For region A: While making a right/left turn, closely in front of an oncoming vehicle or a crossing pedestrian.
- For region A: While making a right/left turn, when an oncoming vehicle or a crossing pedestrian stops before entering the path of your vehicle
- For region A: While making a right/left turn, when an oncoming vehicle turns right/left in front of your vehicle

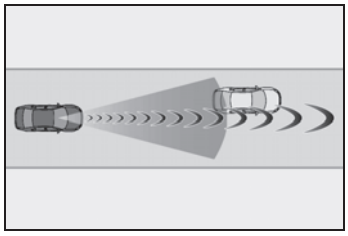


- For region A: While steering into the direction of oncoming traffic

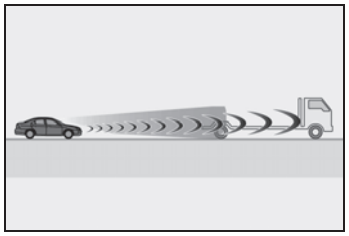
Situations in which the system may not operate properly

In some situations such as the following, an object may not be detected by the radar sensor and front camera, preventing the system from operating properly:

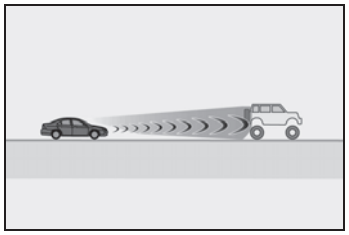
- When a detectable object is approaching your vehicle
- When your vehicle or a detectable object is wobbling
- If a detectable object makes an abrupt maneuver (such as sudden swerving, acceleration or deceleration)
- When your vehicle approaches a detectable object rapidly
- When a detectable object is not directly in front of your vehicle



- When a detectable object is near a wall, fence, guardrail, manhole cover, vehicle, steel plate on the road, etc.
- When a detectable object is under a structure
- When part of a detectable object is hidden by an object, such as large baggage, an umbrella, or guardrail
- When there are many things which can reflect the radio waves of the radar in the vicinity (tunnels, truss bridges, gravel roads, snow covered road that have tracks, etc.)
- When there is an effect on the radio waves to the radar that is installed on another vehicle
- When multiple detectable objects are close together
- If the sun or other light is shining directly on a detectable object
- When a detectable object is a shade of white and looks extremely bright
- When a detectable object appears to be nearly the same color or brightness as its surroundings
- If a detectable object cuts or suddenly emerges in front of your vehicle
- When the front of your vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc.
- When a very bright light ahead, such as the sun or the headlights of oncoming traffic, shines directly into the front camera
- When approaching the side or front of a vehicle ahead
- If a vehicle ahead is a motorcycle or bicycle (for region C)
- If a vehicle ahead is narrow, such as a personal mobility vehicle
- If a preceding vehicle has a small rear end, such as an unloaded truck
- If a preceding vehicle has a low rear end, such as a low bed trailer

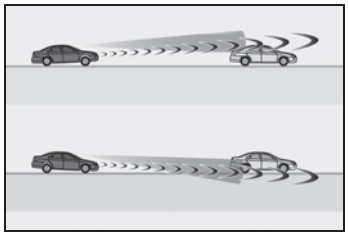


- If a vehicle ahead has extremely high ground clearance

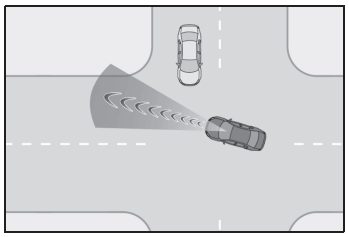


- If a vehicle ahead is carrying a load which protrudes past its rear bumper
- If a vehicle ahead is irregularly shaped, such as a tractor or side car
- For region A and B: If a vehicle ahead is a child sized bicycle, a bicycle that is carrying a large load, a bicycle ridden by more than one person, or a uniquely shaped bicycle (bicycle with a child seat, tandem bicycle, etc.)
- For region A and B: If a pedestrian/or the

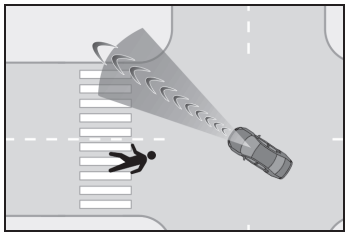
riding height of a bicyclist ahead is shorter than approximately 1 m (3.2 ft.) or taller than approximately 2 m (6.5 ft.)
- For region A and B: If a pedestrian/bicyclist is wearing oversized clothing (a rain coat, long skirt, etc.), making their silhouette obscure
- For region A and B: If a pedestrian is bending forward or squatting or bicyclist is bending forward
- For region A and B: If a pedestrian/bicyclist is moving fast
- For region A and B: If a pedestrian is pushing a stroller, wheelchair, bicycle or other vehicle
- When driving in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or a sandstorm
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When the surrounding area is dim, such as at dawn or dusk, or while at night or in a tunnel, making a detectable object appear to be nearly the same color as its surroundings
- When driving in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a tunnel
- After the engine has started the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- While making a left/right turn and for a few seconds after making a left/right turn
- While driving on a curve and for a few seconds after driving on a curve
- If your vehicle is skidding
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered



- If the wheels are misaligned
- If a wiper blade is blocking the front camera
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds
- When driving on a hill
- If the radar sensor or front camera is misaligned
- For region A: When driving in a traffic lane separated by more than one lane where oncoming vehicles are driving while making a right/left turn
- For region A: When largely out of place with the opposite facing targeted oncoming vehicle during a right/left turn



- For region A: While making a right/left turn, when a pedestrian approaches from behind or side of your vehicle



● For region A: In addition to the above, in some situations, such as the following, the emergency steering assist may not operate.
- For region A: When the white (yellow) lane lines are difficult to see, such as when they are faint, diverging/merging, or a shadow is cast upon them
- For region A: When the lane is wider or narrower than normal
- For region A: When there is a light and dark pattern on the road surface, such as due to road repairs
- For region A: When the target is too close
- For region A: When there is insufficient safe or unobstructed space for the vehicle to be steered into
- For region A: If oncoming vehicle is present
- For region A: If VSC function is operating

● In some situations such as the following,

sufficient braking force or steering force (for region A) may not be obtained, preventing the system from performing properly:

- If the braking functions cannot operate to their full extent, such as when the brake parts are extremely cold, extremely hot, or wet
- If the vehicle is not properly maintained (brakes or tires are excessively worn, improper tire inflation pressure, etc.)
- When the vehicle is being driven on a gravel road or other slippery surface
- When the road surface has deep wheel tracks
- When driving on a hill road
- When driving on a road that has inclines to the left or right

■ If VSC is disabled

● If VSC is disabled (→P.432), the pre-collision brake assist and pre-collision braking functions are also disabled.

● The PCS warning light will turn on and "VSC Turned Off Pre-Collision Brake System Unavailable" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

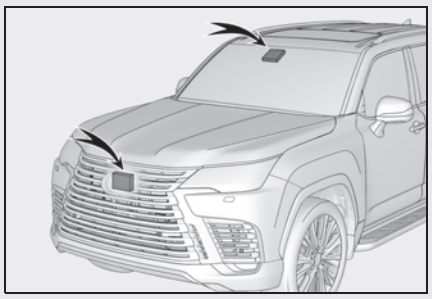
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)*

*: If equipped

While driving on a road with clear white (yellow) lane lines, the LTA system warns the driver if the vehicle may deviate from the current lane or course*, and also can slightly operate the steering wheel to help avoid deviation from the lane or course*. Also, while the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P.283) or dynamic radar cruise control (→P.294) is operating, this system will operate the steering wheel to maintain the vehicle's lane position.

The LTA system recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course* using the front camera. Additionally, it detects preceding vehicles using the front camera and radar.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



WARNING

■ Before using LTA system

- Do not rely solely upon the LTA system. The LTA system does not automatically drive the vehicle or reduce the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operating the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, the driver must take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time.
- Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Situations unsuitable for LTA system

In the following situations, use the LTA switch to turn the system off. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- Vehicle is driven in a temporary lane or restricted lane due to construction work.
- Vehicle is driven in a construction zone.
- A spare tire, tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

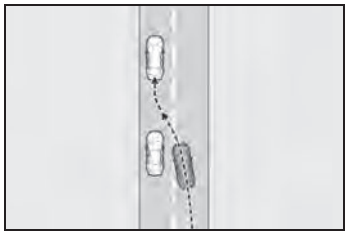
■ Preventing LTA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake

- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc. on the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Conditions in which functions may not operate properly

In the following situations, the functions may not operate properly and the vehicle may depart from its lane. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle without relying solely on the functions.

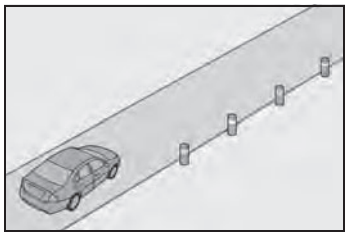
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.278) and the preceding vehicle changes lanes. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and also change lanes.)



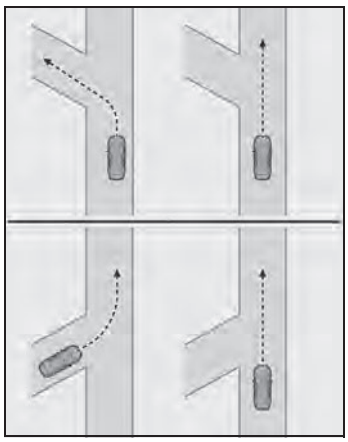
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.278) and the preceding vehicle is swaying. (Your vehicle may sway accordingly and depart from the lane.)

WARNING

- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.278) and the preceding vehicle departs from its lane. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and depart from the lane.)
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.278) and the preceding vehicle is being driven extremely close to the left/right lane line. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and depart from the lane.)
- Vehicle is being driven around a sharp curve.
- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, reflective poles, etc.).



- Vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.



- Repair marks of asphalt, white (yellow) lines, etc. are present due to road repair.

- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.
- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, "Raised pavement marker" or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- If the edge of the road is not clear or straight.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.

WARNING

- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- When driving in a tunnel or at night with the headlights off or when a headlight is dim due to its lens being dirty or it being misaligned.
- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle is affected by wind from a vehicle driven in a nearby lane.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed.
- Snow tires, etc. are equipped.
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds.

Functions included in LTA system

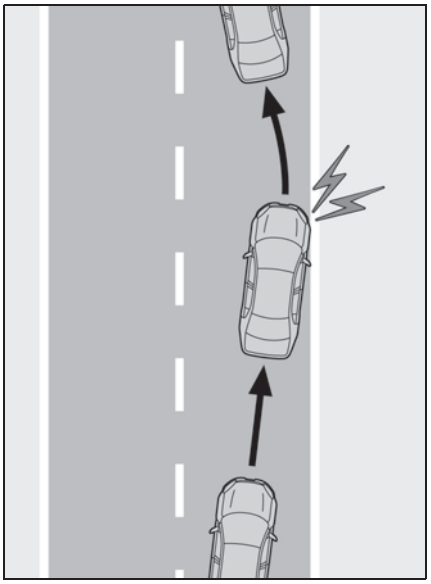
Lane departure alert function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course*, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and either a warning buzzer will sound or the steering wheel will vibrate to alert the driver.

When the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates, check the area around your vehicle and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.

Vehicle with BSM: When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane and that the possibility of a collision with an overtaking vehicle in the adjacent lane is high, the lane departure alert will operate even if the turn signals are operating.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

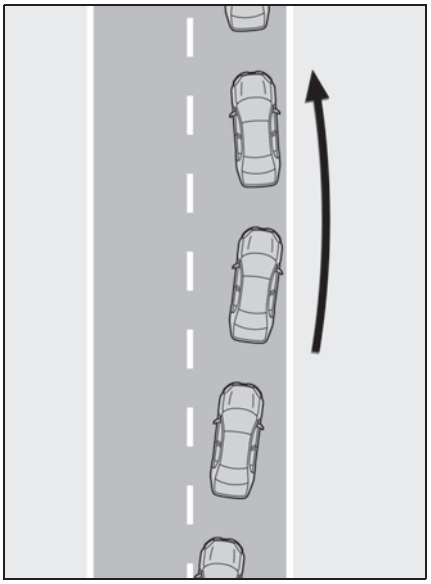


■ Steering assist function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course*, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

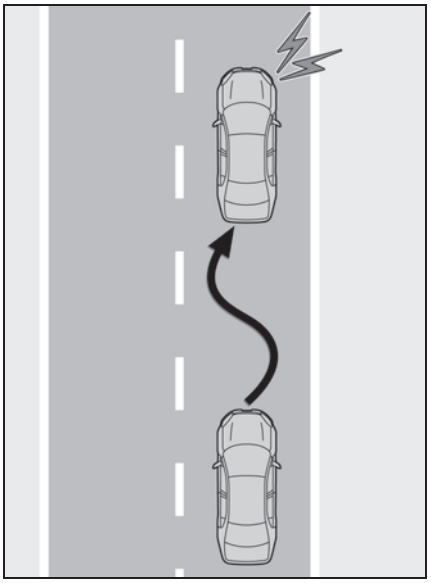
Vehicle with BSM: When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane and that the possibility of a collision with an overtaking vehicle in the adjacent lane is high, the steering assist function will operate even if the turn signals are operating.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



■ Vehicle sway warning function

When the vehicle is swaying within a lane, the warning buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.

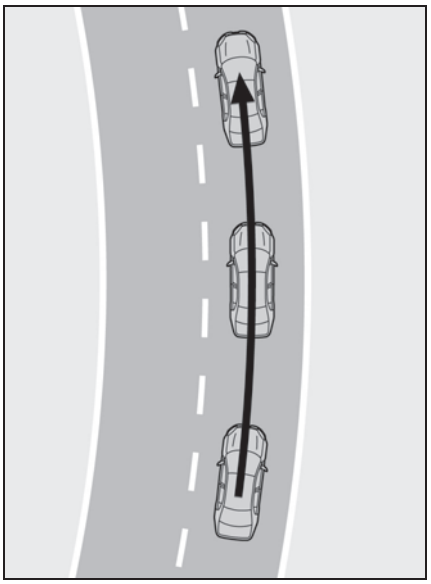


Lane centering function

This function is linked with dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range or dynamic radar cruise control and provides the required assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its current lane.

When dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range or dynamic radar cruise control is not operating, the lane centering function does not operate.

In situations where the white (yellow) lane lines are difficult to see or are not visible, such as when in a traffic jam, this function will operate to help follow a preceding vehicle by monitoring the position of the preceding vehicle.



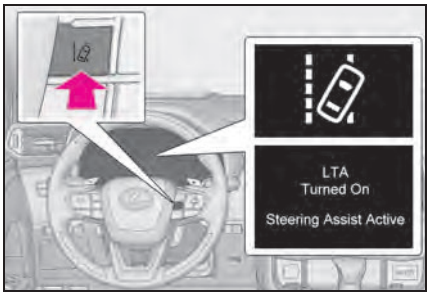
LTA system setting

Turning the lane centering function ON/OFF

Press the LTA switch.

The lane centering function will change between ON/OFF each time the switch is pressed.

The current setting will be displayed on the multi-information display.



Turning the LTA system OFF

Press and hold the LTA switch

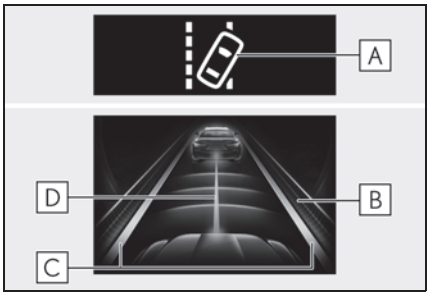
The LTA indicator light turns off when the LTA is turned OFF.

Press the switch again to turn the system on.

The LTA is turned ON each time the engine switch is turned to ON.

However, the lane centering function keeps either the ON/OFF state prior to the engine switch being turned OFF.

Indications on multi-information display



A LTA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white: LTA system is operating.

Illuminated in green: Steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Flashing in orange: Lane departure alert function is operating.

B Operation display of steering wheel operation support

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving support system information display.

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Both outer sides of the lane are displayed: Indicates that steering wheel assist of the lane centering function is operating.

One outer side of the lane is displayed: Indicates that steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

Both outer sides of the lane are flashing: Alerts the driver that their input is necessary to stay in the center of the lane (lane centering function).

C Lane departure alert function display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving support system information display.

▶ Inside of displayed lines is white

Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines or a course*. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes orange.

▶ Inside of displayed lines is black

Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or a course* or is temporarily canceled.

D Follow-up cruising display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving support system information display.

Indicates that steering assist of the lane centering function is operating by monitoring the position of a preceding vehicle.

When the follow-up cruising display is displayed, if the preceding vehicle moves, your vehicle may move in the same way. Always pay careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel

as necessary to correct the path of the vehicle and ensure safety.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ Operation conditions of each function

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LTA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.*1
- System recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course*2. (When a white [yellow] line or course*2 is recognized on only one side, the system will operate only for the recognized side.)
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated. (Vehicle with BSM: Except when another vehicle is in the lane on the side where the turn signal was operated)
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.282)

*1: The function operates even if the vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) when the lane centering function is operating.

*2: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

● Steering assist function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- Multi Terrain ABS, VSC, Active TRC and PCS are not operating.
- Active TRC or VSC is not turned off.

● Vehicle sway warning function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Sway Warning" in of the multi-information display is set to "ON". (→P.124)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.282)

● Lane centering function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LTA is turned on.
- Setting for "Lane Center" in of the multi-information display is set to "ON". (→P.124)
- This function recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or the position of a preceding vehicle (except when the preceding vehicle is small, such as a motorcycle).
- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range or dynamic radar cruise control is operating in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 to 4 m (10 to 13 ft.).
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.282)
- Vehicle does not accelerate or decelerate by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- Multi Terrain ABS, VSC, Active TRC and PCS are not operating.
- Active TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.281)
- The vehicle is being driven in the center of a lane.
- Steering assist function is not operating.

■ **Temporary cancelation of functions**

- When operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P.280)
- If the operation conditions (→P.280) are no longer met while the lane centering function is operating, the steering wheel may vibrate and the buzzer may sound to indicate that the function has been temporarily canceled. However, if the "Alert" customization setting is set to , the system will notify the driver by vibrating the steering wheel instead of sounding the buzzer.

■ **Steering assist function/lane centering function**

- Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the driver may not feel the function is operating or the function may not operate at all.
- The steering control of the function is overridden by the driver's steering wheel operation.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the steering assist function.

■ **Lane departure alert function**

- The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc. Also, it may be difficult to feel steering wheel vibrations due to the road conditions, etc.
- If the edge of the course* is not clear or straight, the lane departure alert function may not operate.
- Vehicle with BSM: It may not be possible for the system to determine if there is a danger of a collision with a vehicle in an adjacent lane.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the lane departure alert function.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ **Hands off steering wheel warning**

In the following situations, a warning message urging the driver to hold the steering wheel and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display to warn the driver. The warning stops when the system determines that the driver holds the steering wheel. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.

- When the system determines the driver is not holding the steering wheel while the lane centering function is operating

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, the driver is warned and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount.

The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

- When the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from the lane while driving around a curve while the lane centering function is operating.

Depending on the vehicle condition and road conditions, the warning may not operate. Also, if the system determines that the vehicle is driving around a curve, warnings will occur earlier than during straight-lane driving.

- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steer-

ing wheel while the steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel and the steering wheel assist is operating, the buzzer sounds and the driver is warned. Each time the buzzer sounds, the continuing time of the buzzer becomes longer.

The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

■ **Vehicle sway warning function**

When the system determines that the vehicle is swaying while the vehicle sway warning function is operating, a buzzer sounds and a warning message urging the driver to rest and the symbol shown in the illustration are simultaneously displayed on the multi-information display.

Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

■ **Warning message**

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the LTA indicator illuminates in orange, follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedure. Also, if a different warning message is displayed, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

● "LTA Malfunction Visit Your Dealer"

The system may not be operating properly. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● "LTA Unavailable"

The system is temporarily canceled due to a malfunction in a sensor other than the front camera. Turn the LTA system off, wait for a little while, and then turn the LTA system back on.

● "LTA Unavailable at Current Speed"

The function cannot be used as the vehicle speed exceeds the LTA operation range. Drive slower.

■ **Customization**

Function settings can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.647)

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*

*: If equipped

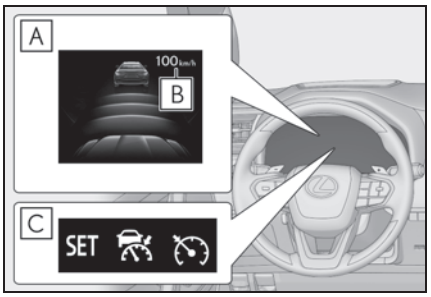
In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates, decelerates and stops to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.285)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.290)

System Components

Meter display

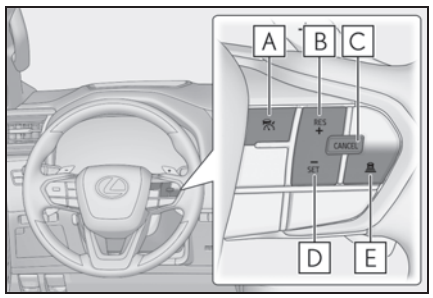


A Multi-information display

B Set speed

C Indicators

Operation switches



A Cruise control main switch

B "+RES" switch

C Cancel switch

D "-SET" switch

E Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch

WARNING

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.
- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.

Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.

- When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.292
- Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.293

WARNING

- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying solely on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range setting to off, using the cruise control main switch when not in use.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system. Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions.

It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range does not include functions which will prevent or avoid collisions with vehicles ahead of your vehicle. Therefore, if there is ever any possibility of danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow

WARNING

- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients

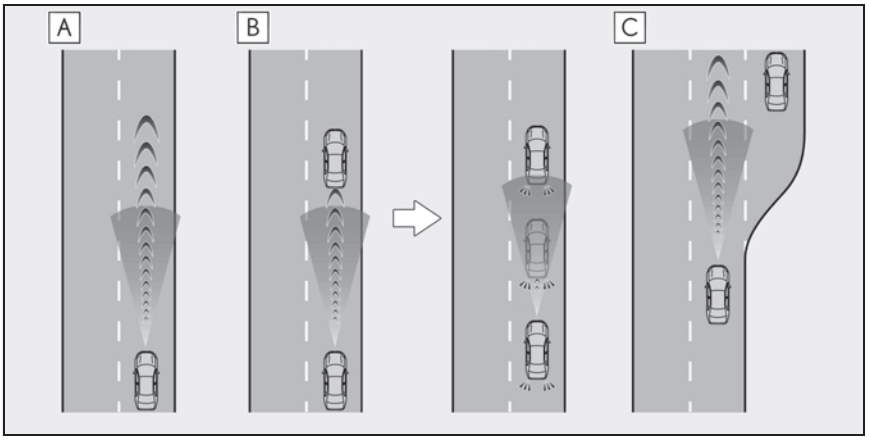
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.

- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

When driving on downhill slopes, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance may become shorter.



A Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising
When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

When the vehicle ahead of you stops, your vehicle will also stop (vehicle is stopped by system control). After the vehicle ahead starts off, pressing the "+RES" switch or depressing the accelerator pedal (start-off operation) will resume follow-up cruising. If the start-off operation is not performed, system control continues to keep your vehicle stopped.

When the turn signal lever is operated and your vehicle moves to an overtaking lane while driving at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the vehicle will accelerate to help to overtake a passing vehicle.

The system's identification of what is an overtaking lane may be determined solely based on the location of the steering wheel in the vehicle (left side driver position versus right side driver position.) If the vehicle is driven to a region where the overtaking lane is on a different side from where the vehicle is normally driven, the vehicle may accelerate when the turn signal lever is operated in the opposite direction to the overtaking lane (e.g., if the driver normally operates the vehicle in a region where the overtaking lane is to the right but then drives to a region where the overtaking lane is to the left, the vehicle may accelerate when the right turn signal is activated).

C Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the cruise control main switch to activate the cruise control.

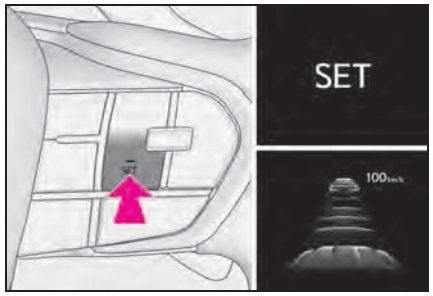
Dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. Press the switch again to deactivate the cruise control.

If the cruise control main switch is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.290)

2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

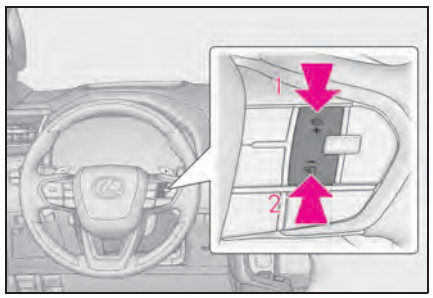
The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

● Adjusting the set speed by the switch

To change the set speed, press the "+RES" or "-SET" switch until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed (Except when the vehicle has been stopped by system control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Press the switch.

Large adjustment: Press and hold the switch to change the speed, and release

when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the switch is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.290), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the switch is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

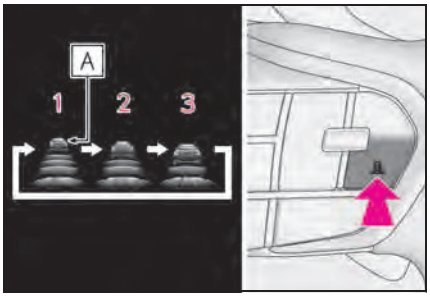
- Increasing the set speed by the accelerator pedal

1 Accelerate with accelerator pedal operation to the desired vehicle speed

2 Press the "-SET" switch

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark A will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

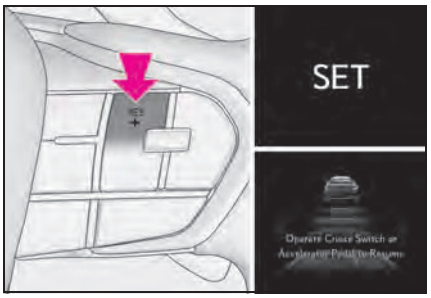
Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed. When the vehicle is stopped by system control, the vehicle stops at a certain vehicle-to-vehicle distance depending on the situation.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

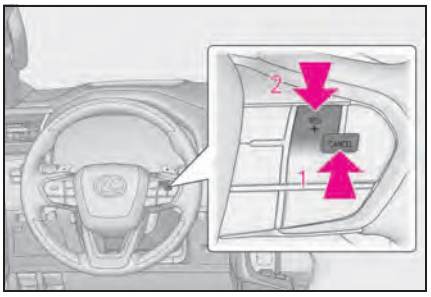
Resuming follow-up cruising when the vehicle has been stopped by system control (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

After the vehicle ahead of you starts off, press the "+RES" switch.

Your vehicle will also resume follow-up cruising if the accelerator pedal is depressed after the vehicle ahead of you starts off.



Canceling and resuming the speed control



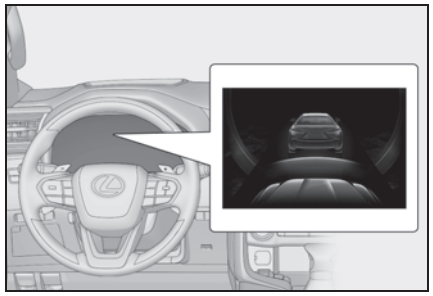
1 Pressing the cancel switch cancels the speed control.

The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed. (When the vehicle has been stopped by system control, depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the setting.)

2 Pressing the "+RES" switch resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control

speed was set

- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Curve speed reduction function

While driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, this function will reduce the vehicle speed, if it is determined to be necessary.

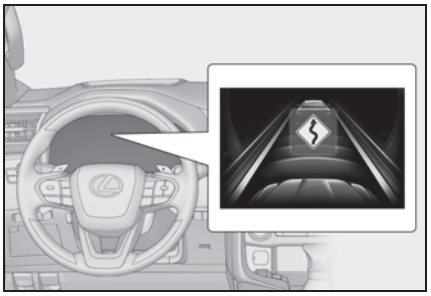
Function operation

When the steering wheel begins to be turned, the vehicle speed will begin being reduced. When the steering wheel is returned to the center position, the vehicle speed reduction will end.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle speed will then return to the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode set speed.

In situations where vehicle-to-vehicle distance control needs to operate, such as when a preceding vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, the curve speed reduction function will be canceled.

Operation display



Displayed when the vehicle speed is being reduced.

When the vehicle speed reduction ends, the display will disappear.

Changing the settings of the curve speed reduction function

The curve speed reduction function can be enabled/disabled and the vehicle speed reduction strength can be adjusted on (→P.124) of the multi-information display.

The setting will change each time the OK meter control switch is pressed.

Selecting constant speed control mode

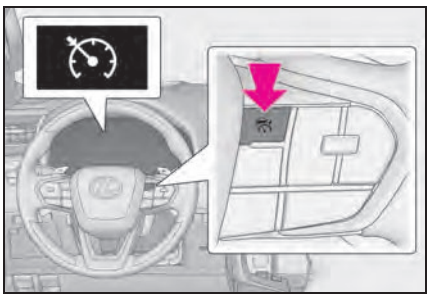
When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar, etc.

1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the cruise control main switch for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the switch is pressed, the dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the switch

with the cruise control off.



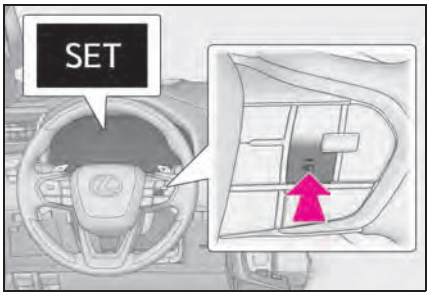
2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.287

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P.289



■ Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- The desired set speed can be set when the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more.
  (However, when the vehicle speed is set while driving at below approximately 30 km/h [20 mph], the set speed will be set to approximately 30 km/h [20 mph].)

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ When the vehicle stops while follow-up cruising

- Pressing the "+RES" switch while the vehicle ahead stops will resume follow-up cruising if the vehicle ahead starts off within approximately 3 seconds after the switch is pressed.
- If the vehicle ahead starts off within 3 seconds after your vehicle stops, follow-up cruising will be resumed.

■ Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- VSC is activated.
- Active TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or Active TRC system is turned off.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support system operates.
  (For example: Pre-Collision System, Drive-Start Control)
- The center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is on.
- The parking brake is operated.
- The vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline.
- The following are detected when the vehicle has been stopped by system control:

- The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The vehicle has been stopped for about 3 minutes

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode**

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- Active TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or Active TRC system is turned off.
- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support system operates.
  (For example: Pre-Collision System, Drive-Start Control)
- The center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is on.
- The parking brake is operated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate**

In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate:

- When the vehicle is being driven around a gentle curve
- When the accelerator pedal is being depressed
- When the vehicle is being driven around an extremely short curve

■ **Brake operation**

A brake operation sound may be heard and the brake pedal response may change, but these are not malfunctions.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

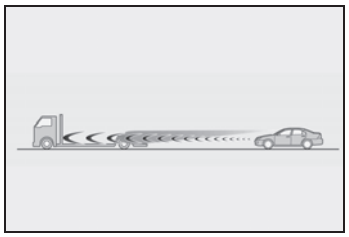
Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P.260, 592)

■ **When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.

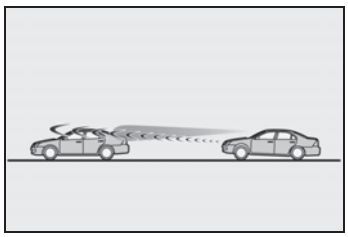
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.289) may not be activated.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)

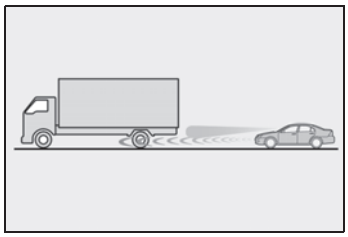


- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage

compartment, etc.)



● Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance

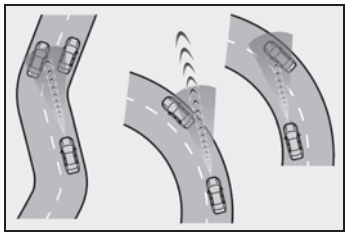


■ **Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly**

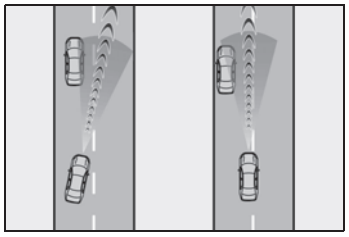
In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

● When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



● When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



● When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

● When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge

● While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

■ **Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate properly**

In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate properly:

● When the vehicle is being driven around a curve on an incline/decline

● When the course of the vehicle differs from the shape of the curve

● When the vehicle speed is excessively high when entering a curve

● When the steering wheel is suddenly operated

Dynamic radar cruise control*

*: If equipped

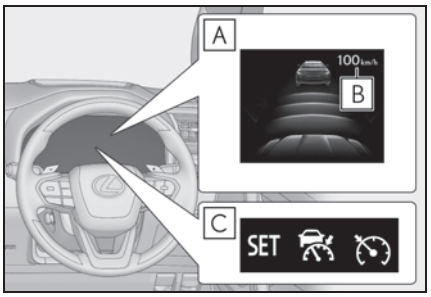
In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates and decelerates to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.296)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.300)

System Components

Meter display

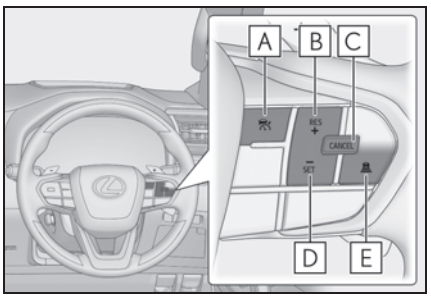


A Multi-information display

B Set speed

C Indicators

Operation switches



A Cruise control main switch

B "+RES" switch

C Cancel switch

D "-SET" switch

E Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch

WARNING

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.
- The dynamic radar cruise control provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.

Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.

- When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.302
- Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.303

WARNING

- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying solely on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control setting to off, using the cruise control main switch when not in use.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system. Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions.

It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle

The dynamic radar cruise control does not include functions which will prevent or avoid collisions with vehicles ahead of your vehicle. Therefore, if there is ever any possibility of danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients

Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.

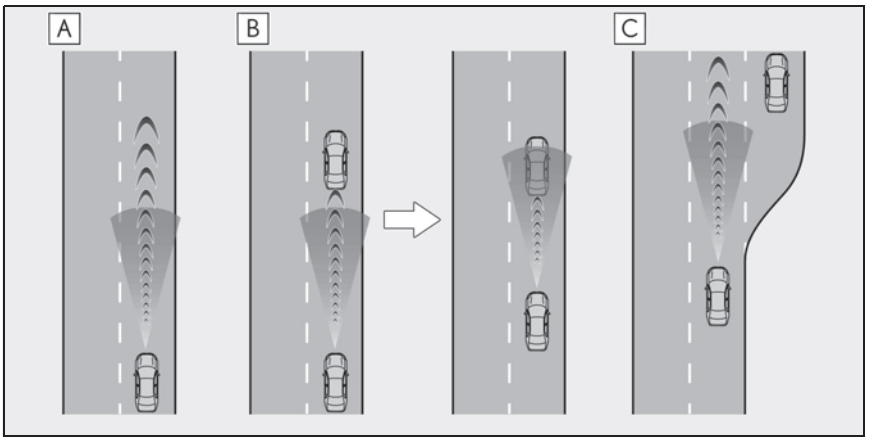
WARNING

- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

When driving on downhill slopes, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance may become shorter.



A Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising
When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

When the turn signal lever is operated and your vehicle moves to an overtaking lane while driving at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the vehicle will accelerate to help to overtake a passing vehicle.

The system's identification of what is an overtaking lane may be determined solely based on the location of the steering wheel in the vehicle (left side driver position versus right side driver position.) If the vehicle is driven to a region where the overtaking lane is on a different side from where the vehicle is normally driven, the vehicle may accelerate when the turn signal lever is operated in the opposite direction to the overtaking lane (e.g., if the driver normally operates the vehicle in a region where the overtaking lane is to the right but then drives to a region where the overtaking lane is to the left, the vehicle may accelerate when the right turn signal is activated).

C Example of acceleration
When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

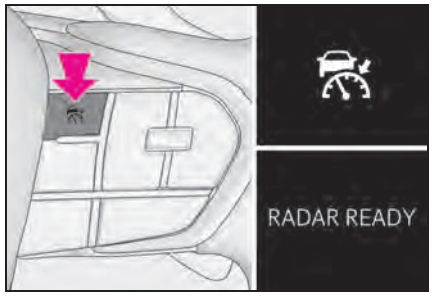
The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the cruise control main switch to activate the cruise control.

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. Press the switch again to deactivate the cruise control.

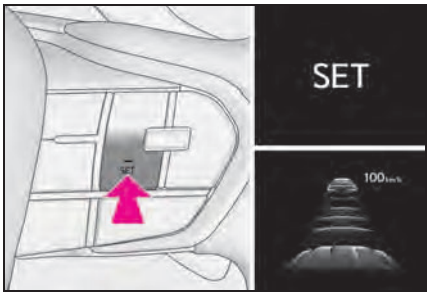
If the cruise control main switch is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.300)



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

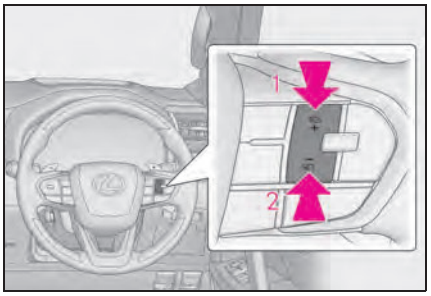
The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

- Adjusting the set speed by the switch

To change the set speed, press the "+RES" or "-SET" switch until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Press the switch.

Large adjustment: Press and hold the switch to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the switch is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.300), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the switch is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

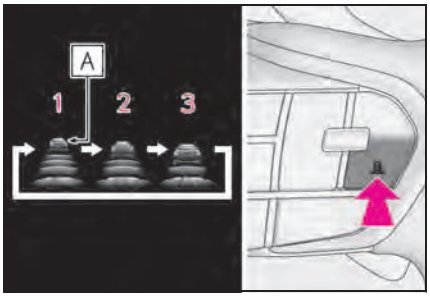
- Increasing the set speed by the accelerator pedal

1 Accelerate with accelerator pedal operation to the desired vehicle speed

2 Press the "-SET" switch

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

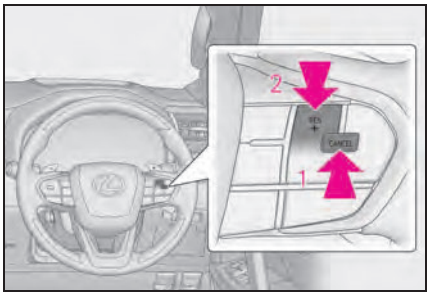
If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark A will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

Canceling and resuming the speed control



1 Pressing the cancel switch cancels the speed control.

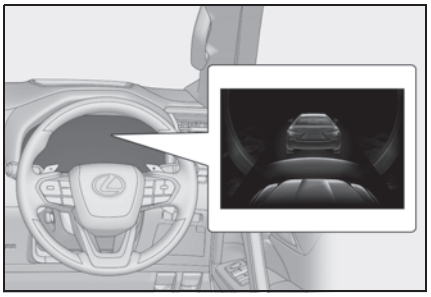
The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

2 Pressing the "+RES" switch resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

However, cruise control does not resume when the vehicle speed is approximately 25 km/h (16 mph) or less.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



■ **Warnings may not occur when**

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Curve speed reduction function

While driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, this function will reduce the vehicle speed, if it is determined to be necessary.

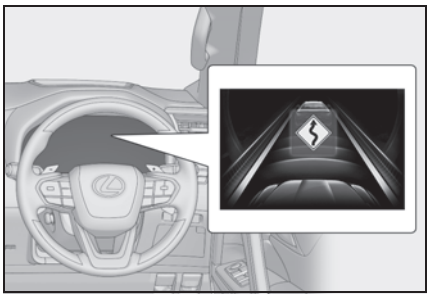
■ **Function operation**

When the steering wheel begins to be turned, the vehicle speed will begin being reduced. When the steering wheel is returned to the center position, the vehicle speed reduction will end.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle speed will then return to the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode set speed.

In situations where vehicle-to-vehicle distance control needs to operate, such as when a preceding vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, the curve speed reduction function will be canceled.

■ **Operation display**



Displayed when the vehicle speed is being reduced.

When the vehicle speed reduction ends, the display will disappear.

■ **Changing the settings of the curve speed reduction function**

The curve speed reduction function can be enabled/disabled and the vehicle speed reduction strength can be adjusted on (→P.124) of the multi-information display.

The setting will change each time the OK meter control switch is pressed.

Selecting constant speed control mode

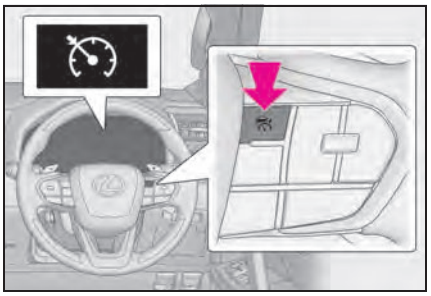
When constant speed control mode is

selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar, etc.

1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the cruise control main switch for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the switch is pressed, the dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the switch with the cruise control off.



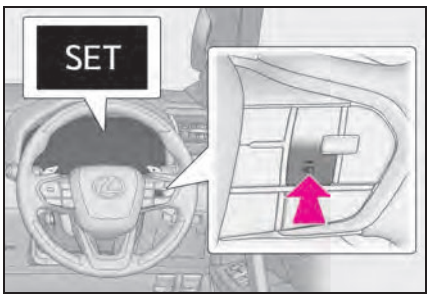
2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.298

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P.299



Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- Depending on the control mode, this item can be set at the following speeds.
  - Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode: Approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more
  - Constant speed control mode: Approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more

Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25km/h (16 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- Active TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or Active TRC system is turned off.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- When the brake control or output

restriction control of a driving support system operates.
(For example: Pre-Collision System, Drive-Start Control)

- The center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is on.
- The parking brake is operated.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode**

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- Active TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or Active TRC system is turned off.
- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support system operates.
(For example: Pre-Collision System, Drive-Start Control)
- The center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is on.
- The parking brake is operated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate**

In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate:

- When the vehicle is being driven around a gentle curve
- When the accelerator pedal is being depressed
- When the vehicle is being driven around an extremely short curve

■ **Brake operation**

A brake operation sound may be heard and the brake pedal response may change, but these are not malfunctions.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control**

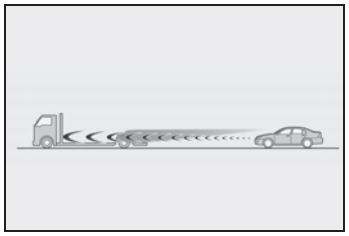
Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P.260, 592)

■ **When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.

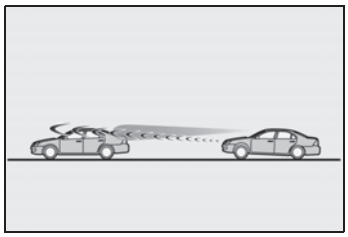
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.299) may not be activated.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)

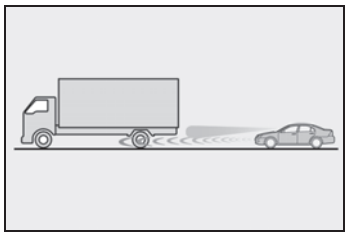


- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards

(caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance

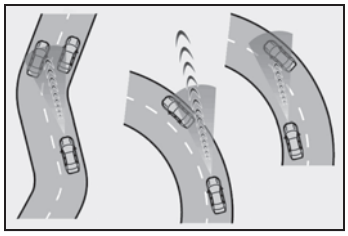


■ **Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly**

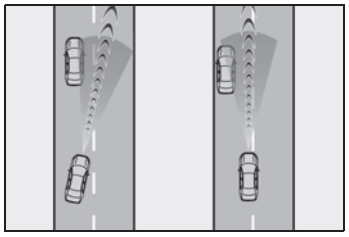
In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

■ **Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate properly**

In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate properly:

- When the vehicle is being driven around a curve on an incline/decline
- When the course of the vehicle differs from the shape of the curve
- When the vehicle speed is excessively high when entering a curve
- When the steering wheel is suddenly operated

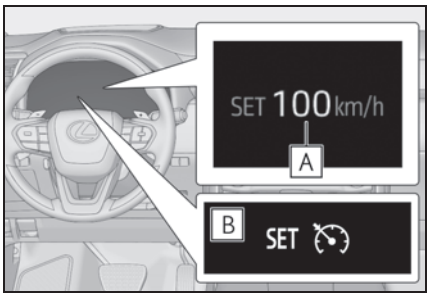
Cruise control*

*: If equipped

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

System Components

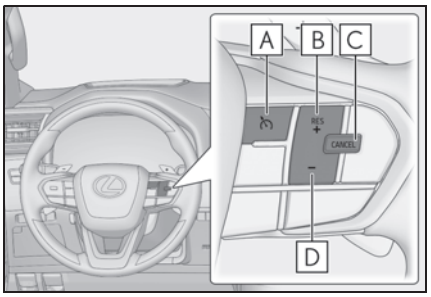
Meter display



A Set speed

B Indicators

Operation switches



A Cruise control main switch

B "+RES" switch

C Cancel switch

D "-SET" switch

WARNING

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the cruise control main switch when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

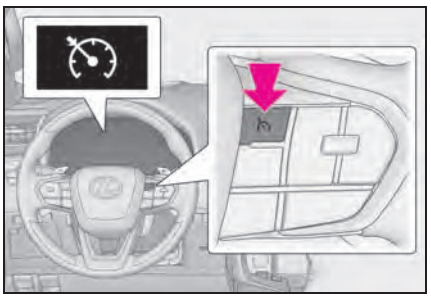
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

Setting the vehicle speed

1 Press the cruise control main switch to activate the cruise control.

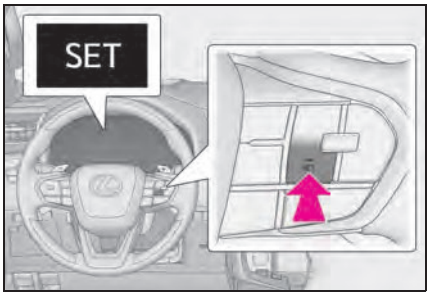
Cruise control indicator will be displayed.
Press the switch again to deactivate the

cruise control.



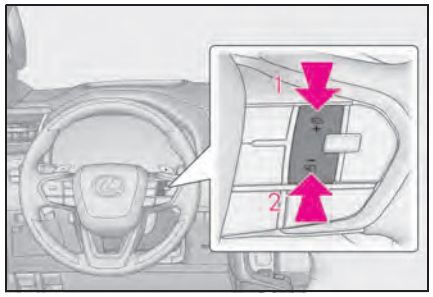
2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.
The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the "+RES" or "-SET" switch until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Press the switch.

Large adjustment: Press and hold the switch to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

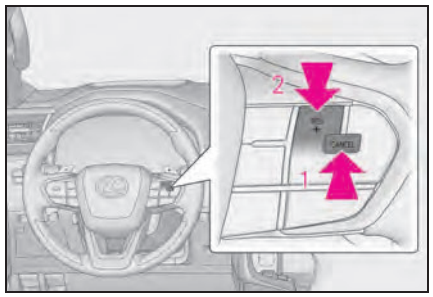
Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the switch is released.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pressing the cancel switch cancels the constant speed control.

The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

2 Pressing the "+RES" switch resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the "-SET" switch to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cancelation of cruise control**

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- Active TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or Active TRC system is turned off.
- The parking brake is operated.
- The center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is on.

■ **If the warning message for the cruise control is shown on the multi-information display**

Press the cruise control main switch once to deactivate the system, and then press the switch again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Stop & Start system*

*: If equipped

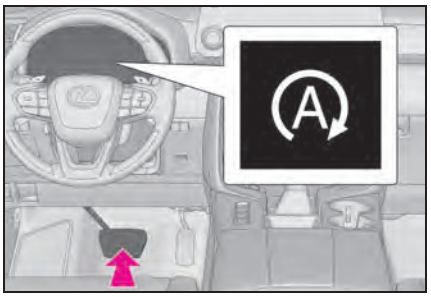
The Stop & Start system stops and starts the engine according to brake pedal or shift lever operation when the vehicle is stopped, such as at a stoplight, intersection, etc., in order to improve fuel economy and reduce noise pollution caused by the engine idling.

Stop & Start system operation

Stopping the engine

While driving with the D shift position selected, depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle. The engine will stop automatically.

When the engine stops, the Stop & Start indicator will illuminate.



Restarting the engine

Release the brake pedal. The engine will start automatically.

When the engine starts, the Stop & Start indicator will turn off.

When the brake hold system is operating

- When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, if the brake pedal is released the engine will remain stopped.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will restart.
- While the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, if the engine is restarted, the brake hold system will continue to apply the brakes, unless the operation conditions of the brake hold system are no longer met. (→P.240)

When the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating

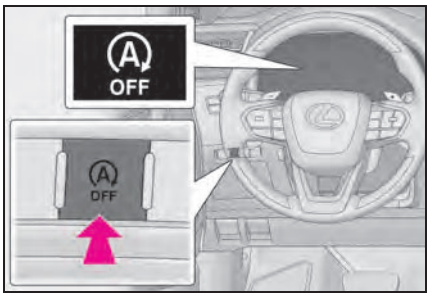
- When the vehicle is stopped by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range, the engine will stop automatically even though the brake pedal is not depressed.
- When the preceding vehicle starts off, the engine will restart automatically.
- If the engine is restarted by the Stop & Start system while the vehicle is stopped by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range, the vehicle will remain stopped.

Disabling the Stop & Start system

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the Stop & Start system.

The Stop & Start cancel indicator will illuminate.

Pressing the switch again will enable the Stop & Start system and the Stop & Start cancel indicator will turn off.



Automatic enabling of the Stop & Start system

If the Stop & Start system is disabled using the Stop & Start cancel switch, it will be automatically re-enabled once the engine switch is turned off and then the engine is started.

Hill-start assist control

When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system when the vehicle is on an incline, when the brake pedal is released, brake force is temporarily maintained to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards before the engine is restarted and drive force is generated. When drive force is generated, the maintained brake force is automatically canceled.

- This function operates on flat surfaces as well as steep inclines.
- Sound may be generated from the brake system, but this does not indicate a malfunction.
- Brake pedal response may change and vibration may occur, but this does not indicate a malfunction.

Points for use

- If the engine switch is pressed when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P.228)
- When the engine is being restarted by the Stop & Start system, the power outlets may be temporarily unusable, but this does not indicate a malfunction.
- Installation and removal of electrical components and wireless devices may affect the Stop & Start system. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- When stopping the vehicle for a longer period of time, turn the engine switch off to stop the engine completely.
- When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the steering wheel feel heavy.
- While driving in L4 mode, it is recommended that the Stop & Start system be canceled because the system may not operate properly.

Operating conditions

- The Stop & Start system is operational when all of the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle has been driven a certain amount of time.
  - The brake pedal is being depressed firmly.

(Except when the vehicle is stopped by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range when in vehicle-to-vehicle dis-

tance control mode)

- The D shift position is selected.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door is closed.
- The selected driving mode is normal mode, Eco drive mode or comfort mode (if equipped).
- The center differential is not locked.
- The Multi-terrain Select is not operated.
- Heater idle up switch is off. (if equipped)
- The windshield defogger is off.
- The accelerator pedal is not being depressed.
- The engine is adequately warmed up.
- The outside temperature is -5°C (23°F) or higher.
- The hood is closed. (→P.309)

● In the following situations the engine may not be stopped by the Stop & Start system. This is not a malfunction of the Stop & Start system.

- When the air conditioning system is being used.
- When the battery is undergoing a periodic recharge.
- When the battery is not sufficiently charged, such as if the vehicle has been parked for a long time and the battery charge has decreased, the electric load is large, the battery fluid temperature is excessively low or the battery has deteriorated.
- When the elapsed time since the engine was restarted is short.
- When the vehicle is stopped frequently, such as when in a traffic jam.
- When the engine coolant temperature or transmission fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
- When the steering wheel is being operated.
- When the vehicle is being driven in a high altitude area.
- When the battery fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
- For a while after the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected.

● When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will be restarted automatically if any of the following conditions are met:

(To enable the engine to be stopped by the Stop & Start system again, drive the vehicle.)

- The air conditioning system is turned on.
- The windshield defogger is turned on.
- The shift lever is shifted from D or P.
- The shift lever is shifted from P. (When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system when the shift lever is in P.)
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The driving mode is changed from normal mode, Eco drive mode or comfort mode (if equipped) to another mode. (diesel engine only)
- The center differential is locked.
- The Multi-terrain Select is operated.
- Heater idle up switch is turned on. (if equipped)
- The Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The vehicle starts to roll on an incline.

● When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine may restart automatically in the following situations: (To enable the engine to be stopped by the Stop & Start system again, drive the vehicle.)

- When the air conditioning system is being used.
- When a switch of the air conditioning system is operated (windshield defogger switch, etc.).
- If the battery charge becomes low.

■ **When the hood is opened**

● If the hood is opened while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will stall and will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P.228)

● If the hood is closed after the engine is started with the hood open, the Stop & Start system will not operate. Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait 30 seconds or more, and then start the

engine.

■ **Air conditioning system operation while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system**

When the air conditioning is in automatic mode and the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the fan may operate at a low speed in order to prevent the temperature in the cabin from increasing or decreasing or may be stopped.

To prioritize air conditioning system performance when the vehicle is stopped, disable the Stop & Start system by pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch.

● If the windshield is fogged up

Turn the windshield defogger on. (→P.458)

If the windshield fogs up frequently, press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the Stop & Start system.

● If an odor is emitted from the air conditioning system

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

■ **Changing the idling stop time with the air conditioning system on**

The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the air conditioning system is on can be changed in of the multi-information display (→P.124). (The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the air conditioning system is off cannot be changed.)

■ **Displaying the Stop & Start system status**

→P.123

■ **Multi-information display messages**

If the following situations, and a message may be displayed on the multi-information display.

● When the engine cannot be stopped by the Stop & Start system

"Press Brake More to Activate"

• The brake pedal is not sufficiently depressed.

→If the brake pedal is depressed further, the system will operate.

"Non-dedicated Battery"

• A battery not designed for use with a Stop & Start system may have been installed.

→Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

"Battery Charging"

• The battery charge may be low.

→Stopping of the engine is temporarily prohibited to prioritize charging of the battery. After the engine runs for a certain amount of time, the system will be enabled.

• A refresh charge may be occurring

→After a refresh charge for up to an hour completes, the system can be operated.

• If displayed continuously for a long time (more than an hour)

→The battery may be deteriorated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

"Stop & Start System Unavailable"

• The Stop & Start system is temporarily disabled.

→Allow the engine to run for some time.

• The engine may have been started with the hood open.

→Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait for 30 seconds or more, and then start the engine.

"For Climate Control"

• The air conditioning system is being used when the ambient temperature is high or low.

→If the difference between the set temperature and cabin temperature becomes

small, the system will be enabled.

- The windshield defogger is on.
- Heater idle up switch has been turned on. (if equipped)

● When the engine automatically restarts while stopped by the Stop & Start system

"For Climate Control"

- The air conditioning system has been turned on or is being used.
- The windshield defogger has been turned on.

"Battery Charging"

- The battery charge may be low.

→The system will be enabled after the engine runs to sufficiently charge the battery.

■ **When the buzzer sounds**

If the driver's door is opened when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system and the shift lever is in D, a buzzer will sound and the Stop & Start system indicator will flash. To stop the buzzer, close the driver's door.

■ **The Stop & Start system protection function**

● When the volume of the audio system is excessively high, sound output from the audio system may suddenly be cut off in order to reduce battery consumption. To prevent the audio system from being cut off, keep the volume of audio system at a moderate level. If the audio system has been cut off, turn the engine switch off, wait for 3 seconds or more and then turn it to ACC or ON to re-enable the audio system.

● The audio system may not be activated if the battery terminals are disconnected and then reconnected. If this occurs, turn the engine switch off and then repeat the following operation twice to activate the audio system normally.

- Turn the engine switch to ON and then to off.

■ **Replacing the battery**

→P.614

■ **If the Stop & Start cancel indicator flashes continuously**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If "Stop & Start System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ **When the Stop & Start system is operating**

Make sure to disable the Stop & Start system while the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area.

If not disabled, the engine may be automatically restarted unexpectedly, causing exhaust gases to collect and enter the vehicle, possibly resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

● Do not leave the vehicle while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on). An accident may occur due to the automatic engine start function.

● Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake when necessary while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on).

NOTICE

■ **To ensure the system operates correctly**

If any of the following situations occur, the Stop & Start system may not operate correctly. Have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● While the driver's seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light flashes.

NOTICE

- Even though the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light does not illuminate.
- Even though the driver's door is closed, the open door warning light is illuminated or the interior light is illuminated when the interior light switch is in the door position.
- Even though the driver's door is open, the open door warning light does not illuminate or the interior light does not illuminate when the interior light switch is in the door position.

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*

*: If equipped

The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that uses rear side radar sensors installed on the inner side of the rear bumper to assist the driver in avoiding collisions by confirming safety when changing lanes and, on some models, determining the possibility of collision with a door when the door is opened while the vehicle is stopped.

WARNING

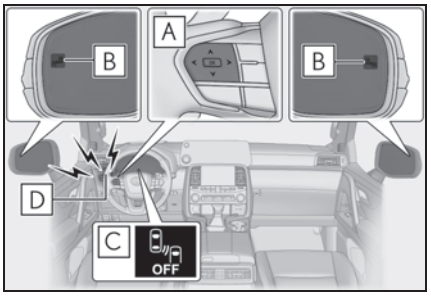
■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.
- The Blind Spot Monitor is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or is approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot. Do not overly rely on the Blind Spot Monitor. As the function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, over reliance could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
  As the system may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

WARNING

- The stopped vehicle alert function is a supplemental system that alerts occupants to approaching vehicles or bicycles while the vehicle is stopped. As safety cannot be judged using this system alone, over reliance could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
  As the system may not function effectively under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary (if equipped).

System components



A Meter control switches

Turning the Blind Spot Monitor on/off.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

While driving:

When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator flashes.

While stopped:

When a vehicle or bicycle is detected that may collide with an open door (except the back door), the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If a door is opened on the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator flashes.

C BSM OFF indicator

Illuminates when the Blind Spot Monitor is disabled.

D BSM buzzer (if equipped)

The buzzer will sound if the door on the illuminated side is opened while the vehicle is stopped and the outside rear view mirror indicator illuminates.

■ Outside rear view mirror indicators visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ Hearing the buzzer (if equipped)

The buzzer may be difficult to hear over loud noises, such as if the audio system volume is high.

■ When "Blind Spot Monitor Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display

Ice, snow, mud, etc., may be attached to the rear bumper around the sensors. (→P.314) The system should return to normal operation after removing the ice, snow, mud, etc., from the rear bumper. Additionally, the sensors may not operate normally when driving in extremely hot or cold environments.

■ When "Blind Spot Monitor Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is shown on the multi-information display

There may be a sensor malfunction or misaligned. Have the vehicle inspected at a Lexus dealer.

■ Customization

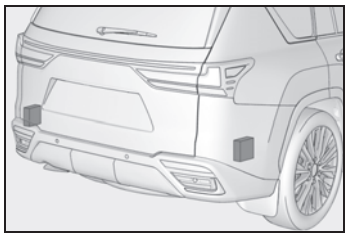
Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.647)

WARNING

■ **To ensure the system can operate properly**

Blind Spot Monitor sensors are installed inside the left and right sides of the rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can function correctly.

- Keep the sensors and the surrounding areas on the rear bumper clean at all times.
  If a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the Blind Spot Monitor may not operate and a warning message (→P.313) will be displayed. In this situation, clear off the dirt or snow and drive the vehicle with the operation conditions of the BSM function (→P.317) satisfied for approximately 10 minutes. If the warning message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers), aluminum tape, etc. to a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- Do not subject a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper to a strong impact.
  If a sensor is moved even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles may not be detected correctly.
  In the following situations, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
  - A sensor or its surrounding area is subject to a strong impact.
  - If the surrounding area of a sensor is scratched or dented, or part of them has become disconnected.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- If a sensor or the rear bumper needs to be removed/installed or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not paint the rear bumper any color other than an official Lexus color.

Turning the Blind Spot Monitor on/off

Use the meter control switches to turn on/off the function. (→P.125)

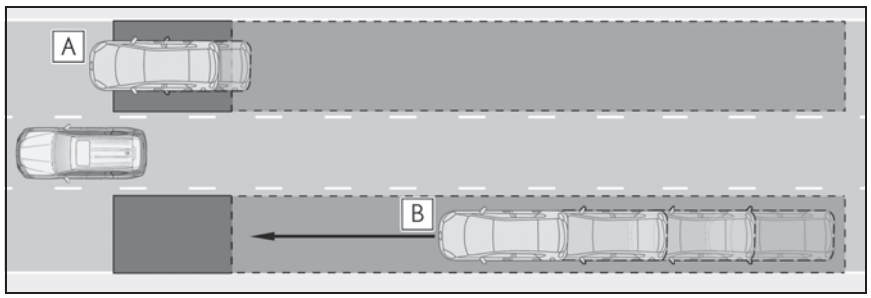
1. Press the meter control switch to select .
2. Press the meter control switch to select and then press OK.

When the BSM function is disabled, the BSM OFF indicator illuminates. (Each time the engine switch is turned to OFF then changed to ON, the Blind Spot Monitor will be enabled automatically.)

Blind Spot Monitor operation

■ Vehicles that can be detected by the Blind Spot Monitor (while driving)

The Blind Spot Monitor uses rear side radar sensors to detect the following vehicles traveling in adjacent lanes and advises the driver of the presence of such vehicles via the indicators on the outside rear view mirrors.

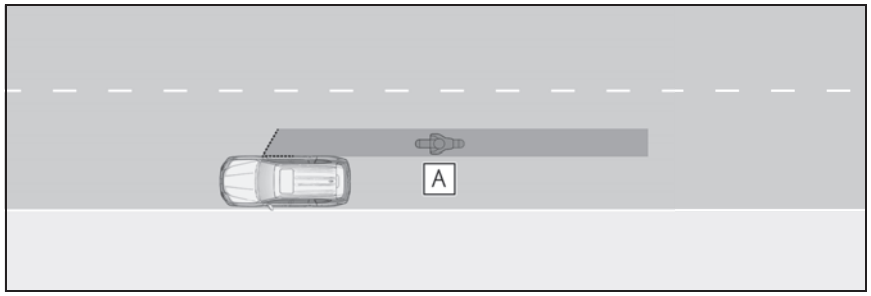


A Vehicles that are traveling in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

B Vehicles that are approaching rapidly from behind in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

■ A vehicle or bicycle that can be detected by the Blind Spot Monitor (while stopped) (if equipped)

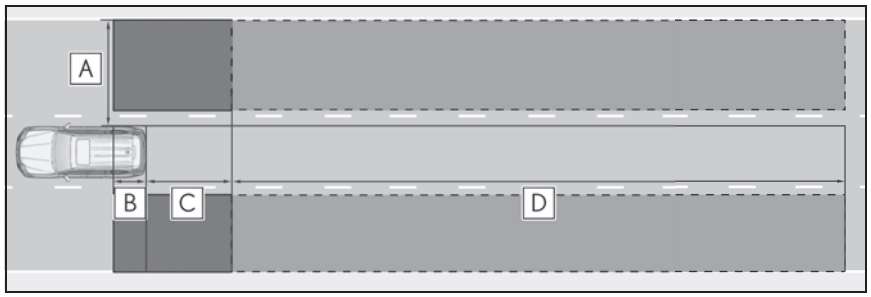
The Blind Spot Monitor uses rear side radar sensors to detect the following vehicles or bicycles traveling to the rear of the vehicle and advises the occupant of the presence of such vehicles or bicycles via the indicators on the outside rear view mirrors and the buzzer.



A Vehicles or bicycles judged to have a high possibility of a collision with a door if the door is opened (except the back door)

■ **The Blind Spot Monitor detection areas (while driving)**

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The range of each detection area is:

A Approximately 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) to 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from either side of the vehicle*1

B Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper

C Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper

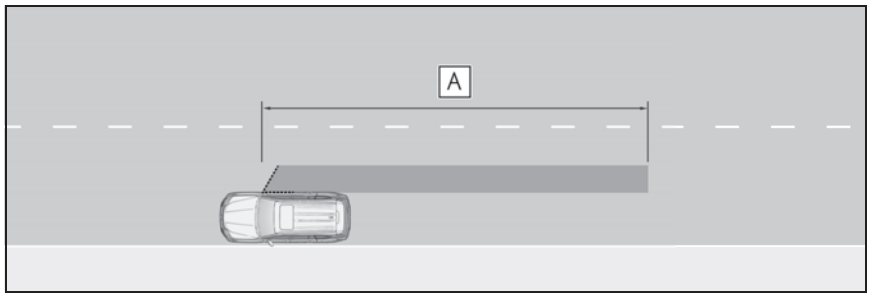
D Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) to 60 m (197 ft.) from the rear bumper*2

*1: The area between the side of the vehicle and 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle cannot be detected.

*2: The greater the difference in speed between your vehicle and the detected vehicle is, the farther away the vehicle will be detected, causing the outside rear view mirror indicator to illuminate or flash.

■ **The Blind Spot Monitor detection areas (while stopped) (if equipped)**

The areas that a vehicle or bicycle can be detected in are outlined below.



The range of each detection area is:

A Approximately 45 m (147 ft.) from the front door*

*: The lower the speed of approaching vehicles or bicycles, the closer the distance of the vehicles or bicycles at which the outside rear view mirror indicator illuminates or flashes.

■ **The Blind Spot Monitor is operational when**

The Blind Spot Monitor is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- The Blind Spot Monitor is on.
- The shift lever is in a position other than R.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) (while driving).

■ **The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle when**

The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle present in the detection area in the following situations:

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- You overtake a vehicle in an adjacent lane slowly.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.
- A vehicle or bicycle traveling in parallel to your stopped vehicle passes near the area of the open door (except back door) (if equipped).

■ **Conditions under which the system will not detect a vehicle (while driving)**

The Blind Spot Monitor is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and objects (while driving):

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles traveling 2 lanes away from your vehicle*
- Vehicles which are being overtaken rapidly by your vehicle

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ **Conditions under which the system will not detect a vehicle (while stopped) (if equipped)**

- The Blind Spot Monitor is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles, bicycles and objects (while stopped):
  - A vehicle or bicycle is approaching from the rear of the vehicle at a traveling speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or less.
  - A vehicle or bicycle judged to have a low possibility of a collision with a door if the door is opened (except the back door)
  - A vehicle or bicycle approaching from directly behind.
  - A vehicle or bicycle approaching from the front.
  - Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects.
  - Animals
- The Blind Spot Monitor may not operate in the following situations (while stopped):
  - The engine switch is in OFF.
  - The vehicle is not stopped completely.

■ **Conditions under which the system may not function correctly**

- The Blind Spot Monitor may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations (while driving):
  - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
  - When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc., is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
  - When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
  - When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
  - When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
  - When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
  - When the difference in speed between your vehicle and another vehicle is changing
  - When a vehicle enters a detection area

traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
- As your vehicle starts from a stop, a vehicle remains in the detection area
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When vehicle lanes are wide, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and the vehicle in an adjacent lane is far away from your vehicle
- When towing a trailer
- When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) is installed to the rear of the vehicle
- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- Immediately after the Blind Spot Monitor is turned on

● The Blind Spot Monitor may not detect a vehicle or bicycle correctly in the following situations (while stopped) (if equipped):
- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
- When stopping on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
- Vehicles or bicycles following from an adjacent parked vehicle
- Vehicles or bicycles approaching from the rear that change lanes suddenly
- Vehicles or bicycles immediately after they start off
- When the back door is open
- When a bicycle carrier or other accessory is installed to the rear of your vehicle
- When there is a person or guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles or similar stationary objects to the rear
- When the vehicle is stopped at an angle to the road
- When a vehicle is traveling near an approaching vehicle or bicycle
- When a vehicle or bicycle is approaching while traveling to the side of a wall, sign or similar stationary object
- When a vehicle or bicycle is approaching at high speed
- When towing a trailer
- When the vehicle is stopped on a steep incline
- When the vehicle is stopped partway around or at the endpoint of a curve

● Instances of the Blind Spot Monitor unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and object may increase in the following situations (while driving):
- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc., that enters the detection area is short
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When vehicle lanes are narrow, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and a vehicle traveling in a lane other than the adjacent lanes enters the detection area
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When the tires are slipping or spinning
- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) is installed to the rear of the vehicle
- When towing a trailer

● Instances of the Blind Spot Monitor unnecessarily detecting vehicles, bicycles and objects may increase in the following situations (while stopped) (if equipped):
- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- A vehicle or bicycle approaching from a position offset from the rear of your vehicle
- When the vehicle is stopped at an angle to the road
- When a vehicle or bicycle is approaching from the rear while parked diagonally
- When there is a person or guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles or similar

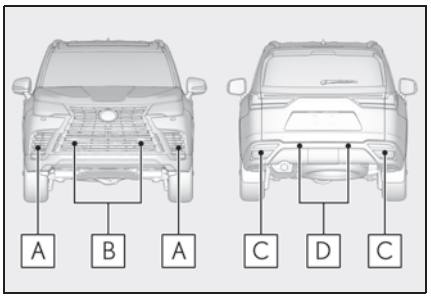
stationary objects to the rear
- Vehicles or bicycles approaching from the rear that change lanes suddenly
- When a vehicle or bicycle is approaching while traveling to the side of a wall, sign or similar stationary object
- When the back door is open
- When a bicycle carrier or other accessory is installed to the rear of your vehicle
- When a vehicle or bicycle is approaching at high speed
- When towing a trailer
- When the vehicle is stopped on a steep incline
- When the vehicle is stopped partway around or at the endpoint of a curve

Lexus parking assist-sensor

The distance from your vehicle to objects, such as a wall, when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the Multimedia Display and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

System components

■ **Types of sensors**



A Front corner sensors

B Front center sensors

C Rear corner sensors

D Rear center sensors

■ **Display (Multimedia Display)**

When the sensors detect an object, such as a wall, a graphic is shown on the Multimedia Display depending on the position and distance to the object. (As the distance to the object becomes short, the distance segments may blink.)

A simplified image is displayed on the

screen when an obstacle is detected while magnified display is shown. (→P.346)

Turning Lexus parking assist-sensor on/off

Use the meter control switches to turn on/off the function. (→P.125)

1 Press the meter control switch to select .

2 Press the meter control switch to select and then press OK.

When the Lexus parking assist-sensor function is disabled, the Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator (→P.118) illuminates on the multi-information display.

To re-enable the system, select on the multi-information display, select and turn it on.

If the system is disabled, it will remain off even if the engine switch is turned to ON after the engine switch has been turned off.

WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

There is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not damage the sensors, and always keep them clean.
- Do not attach a sticker or install an electronic component, such as a backlit license plate (especially fluorescent type), fog lights, fender pole or wireless antenna near a radar sensor.
- Do not subject the surrounding area of the sensor to a strong impact. If subjected to an impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer. If the front or rear bumper needs to be removed/installed or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not modify, disassemble or paint the sensors.
- Do not attach a license plate cover.
- Keep your tires properly inflated.

■ When to disable the function

In the following situations, disable the function as it may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- Failing to observe the warnings above.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

- When using a high pressure washer to wash the vehicle, do not spray the sensors directly, as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.

WARNING

- When using steam to clean the vehicle, do not direct steam too close to the sensors as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.

The system can be operated when

- The engine switch is in ON.
- Lexus parking assist-sensor function is on.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The shift lever is in other than P.

If "Parking Assist Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display

- A sensor may be covered with water drops, ice, snow, dirt, etc. Remove the water drops, ice, snow, dirt, etc., from the sensor to return the system to normal. Also, due to ice forming on a sensor at low temperatures, a warning message may be displayed or the sensor may not be able to detect an object. Once the ice melts, the system will return to normal. If a warning message is displayed even if the sensor is clean, there may be a sensor malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Water may be continuously flowing over the sensor surface, such as in a heavy rain. When the system determines that it is normal, the system will return to normal.

Sensor detection information

- The sensor's detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's front and rear bumpers.
- The following situations may occur during use.
  - Depending on the shape of the object and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
  - Detection may be impossible if static objects draw too close to the sensor.
  - There will be a short delay between static object detection and display (warning buzzer sounds). Even at low speeds, there is a possibility that the object will come within 30 cm (11.9 in.) before the display is shown and the warning buzzer sounds.
  - It might be difficult to hear the buzzer due to the volume of the audio system or air flow noise of the air conditioning system.
  - It may be difficult to hear the sound of this system due to the buzzers of other systems.

Objects which the system may not properly detect

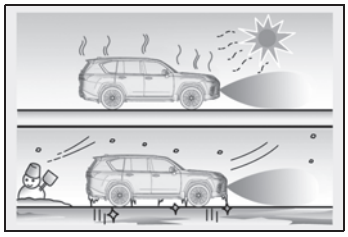
The shape of the object may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following objects:

- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low objects
- Tall objects with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

Situations in which the system may not operate properly

Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect objects. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow, water drops or ice on a sensor. (Cleaning the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- A sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.)
  In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the sensor display may be displayed abnormally, or objects, such as a wall, may not be detected.
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold.

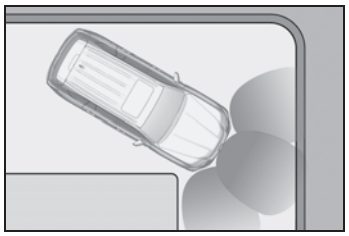


- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- When vehicle horns, vehicle detectors, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, the clearance sonar of other vehicles or other devices which produce ultrasonic waves are near the vehicle.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- If objects draw too close to the sensor.
- When a pedestrian is wearing clothing that does not reflect ultrasonic waves (ex. skirts with gathers or frills).
- When objects that are not perpendicular to the ground, not perpendicular to the vehicle traveling direction, uneven, or waving are in the detection range.
- Strong wind is blowing.
- When driving in inclement weather such as fog, snow or a sandstorm.
- When an object that cannot be detected is between the vehicle and a detected object.
- If an object such as a vehicle, motorcycle, bicycle or pedestrian cuts in front of the vehicle or runs out from the side of the vehicle.
- If the orientation of a sensor has been changed due to a collision or other impact
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eye-let, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow.
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load.
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning.
- When tire chains, a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used.

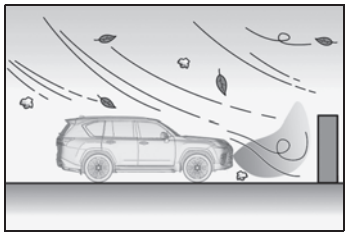
■ Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

In some situations, such as the following, the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

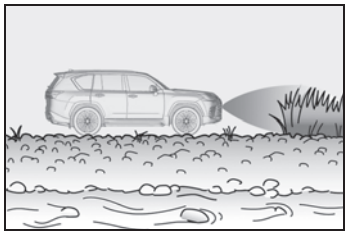
- When driving on a narrow road



- When driving toward a banner, flag, low-hanging branch or boom barrier (such as those used at railroad crossings, toll gates and parking lots)
- When there is a rut or hole in the surface of the road
- When driving on a metal cover (grating), such as those used for drainage ditches
- When driving up or down a steep slope
- If a sensor is hit by a large amount of water, such as when driving on a flooded road
- There is dirt, snow, water drops or ice on a sensor. (Cleaning the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain
- When driving in inclement weather such as fog, snow or a sandstorm
- When strong winds are blowing



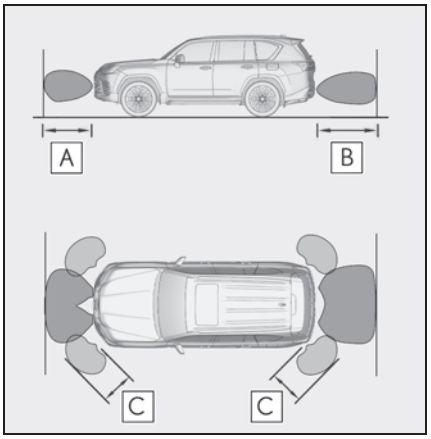
- When vehicle horns, vehicle detectors, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, the clearance sonar of other vehicles or other devices which produce ultrasonic waves are near the vehicle
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- If the orientation of a sensor has been changed due to a collision or other impact
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb
- Driving close to columns (H-shaped steel beams, etc.) in multi-story parking garages, construction sites, etc.
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass



- When tire chains, a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used.

Sensor detection display, object distance

■ Detection range of the sensors



A Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

B Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

C Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect objects that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object, etc.

■ **The distance and buzzer**

Approximate distance to obstacle	Buzzer
Front sensor: 100 cm to 60 cm (3.3 ft. to 2.0 ft.)* Rear sensor: 150 cm to 60 cm (4.9 ft. to 2.0 ft.)*	Slow
60 cm to 45 cm (2.0 ft. to 1.5 ft.)*	Medium
45 cm to 30 cm (1.5 ft. to 1.0 ft.)*	Fast
30 cm to 15 cm (1.0 ft. to 0.5 ft.)	Continuous
Less than 15 cm (0.5 ft.)	

*: Automatic buzzer mute function is enabled. (→P.324)

■ **Buzzer operation and distance to an object**

A buzzer sounds when the sensors are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches an object.
  When the vehicle comes within approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.) of the object, the buzzer sounds continuously.
- When 2 or more sensors simultaneously detect a static object, the buzzer sounds for the nearest object.
- Even when the sensors are operating, the buzzer will be muted in some situations. (automatic buzzer mute function)

■ **Adjusting the buzzer volume**

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display.

Use the meter control switches to change settings. (→P.125)

1. Press the meter control switch to select .
2. Press the meter control switch to select "Vehicle Settings".
3. Select " Volume" and then press OK.

Each time the switch is pressed, the volume level will change between 1, 2, and 3.

■ **Muting a buzzer**

A mute button will be displayed on the multi-information display and Multimedia Display when an object is detected.

To mute the buzzer, press OK or . The buzzers for the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA function and RCD function will be muted simultaneously.

Mute will be canceled automatically in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is changed.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed.
- When there is a malfunction in a sensor or the system is temporarily unavailable.
- When the operating function is disabled manually.
- When the engine switch is turned off.

RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function*

*: If equipped

The RCTA function uses the BSM rear side radar sensors installed behind the rear bumper. This function is intended to assist the driver in checking areas that are not easily visible when backing up.

WARNING

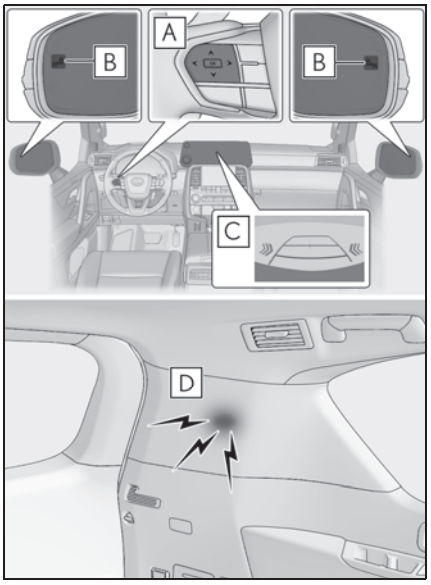
■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

There is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely. (→P.312)

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

→P.314

System components



A Meter control switches

Turning the RCTA function on/off.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, both outside rear view mirror indicators will flash.

C Multimedia Display

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the RCTA icon (→P.327) for the detected side will be displayed on the Multimedia Display. This illustration shows an example of a vehicle approaching from both sides of the vehicle.

D RCTA buzzer

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, a buzzer will sound.

Turning the RCTA function on/off

Use the meter control switches to enable/disable the RCTA function. (→P.125)

1 Press the meter control switch to select .

2 Press the meter control switch to select "RCTA" and then press OK.

When the RCTA function is disabled, the RCTA OFF indicator (→P.118) illuminates. (Each time the engine switch is turned to OFF then changed to ON, the RCTA function will be enabled automatically.)

■ Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ Hearing the RCTA buzzer

The RCTA buzzer may be difficult to hear over loud noises, such as if the audio system volume is high.

■ When "Rear Cross Traffic Alert Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display

The sensor voltage has become abnormal, or water, snow, mud, etc., may be built up in the vicinity of the sensor area of the position above the rear bumper. (→P.314)

Removing the water, snow, mud, etc., from the vicinity of the sensor area should return it to normal. Also, the sensor may not function normally when used in extremely hot or cold weather.

■ When "Rear Cross Traffic Alert Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is shown on the multi-information display

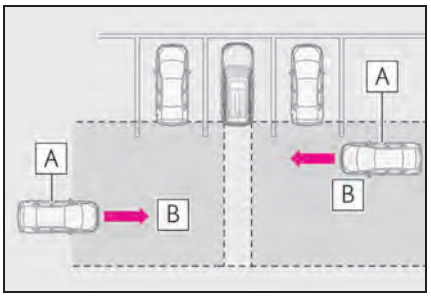
There may be a sensor malfunction or misaligned. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ Radar sensors
→P.314

RCTA function

■ Operation of the RCTA function

The RCTA function uses radar sensors to detect vehicles approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and alerts the driver of the presence of such vehicles by flashing the outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.



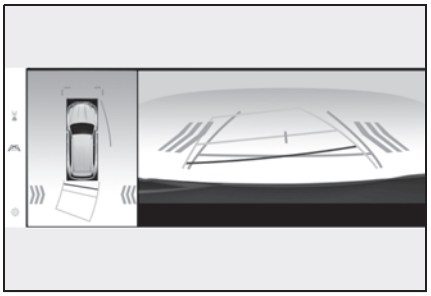
A Approaching vehicles

B Detection areas of approaching vehicles

■ RCTA icon display

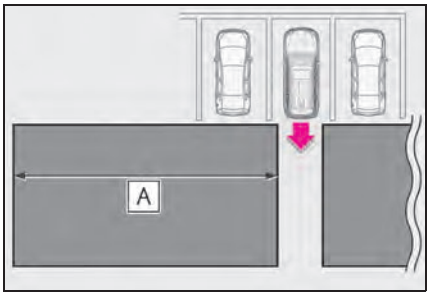
When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the following will be displayed on the Multimedia Display.

- This illustration shows an example of a vehicle approaching from both sides of the vehicle



■ RCTA function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The buzzer can alert the driver of faster vehicles approaching from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle speed	A Approximate alert distance
28 km/h (18 mph) (fast)	20 m (65 ft.)
8 km/h (5 mph) (slow)	5.5 m (18 ft.)

■ The RCTA function is operational when

The RCTA function operates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The engine switch is in ON.
- The RCTA function is on.
- The shift lever is in R.

- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 8 km/h (5 mph).
- The approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and 28 km/h (18 mph).

Adjusting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display.

Use the meter control switches to change settings. (→P.125)

1. Press the meter control switch to select .
2. Press the meter control switch to select "Vehicle Settings".
3. Select "RCTA Volume" and then press OK.

Each time the switch is pressed, the volume level will change between 1, 2, and 3.

Muting a buzzer temporarily

A mute button will be displayed on the multi-information display and Multimedia Display when vehicles or objects are detected. To mute the buzzer, press OK or .

The buzzers for the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA function and RCD function will be muted simultaneously.

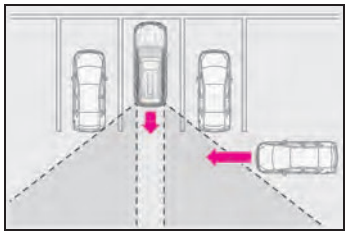
Mute will be canceled automatically in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is changed.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed.
- When there is a malfunction in a sensor or the system is temporarily unavailable.
- When the operating function is disabled manually.
- When the engine switch is turned off.

Conditions under which the system will not detect a vehicle

The RCTA function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Vehicles backing up in a parking space next to your vehicle
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect due to obstructions



- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle
- The distance between the sensor and approaching vehicle gets too close

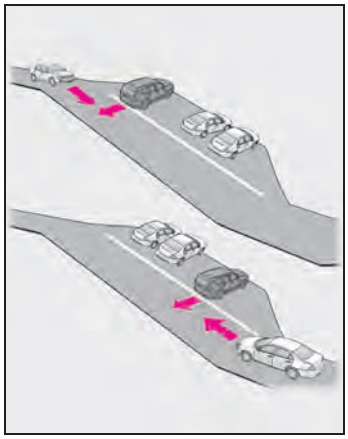
*: Depending on conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

Situations in which the system may not operate properly

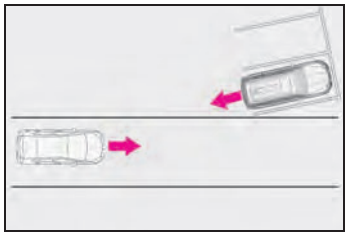
The RCTA function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:

- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc., is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
- When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
- When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
- When a vehicle is approaching at high speed

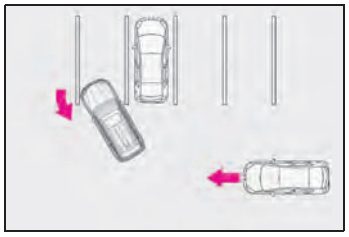
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow
- When backing up on a slope with a sharp change in grade



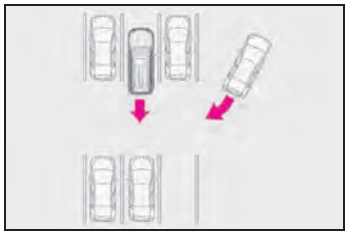
- When backing out of a sharp angle parking spot



- When towing a trailer
- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold
- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- When turning while backing up



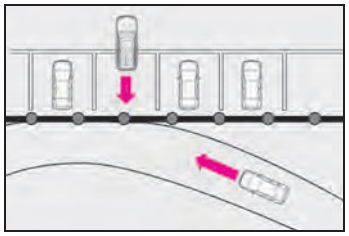
- When a vehicle turns into the detection area



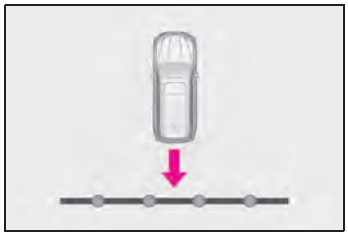
■ Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

Instances of the RCTA function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

- When the parking space faces a street and vehicles are being driven on the street

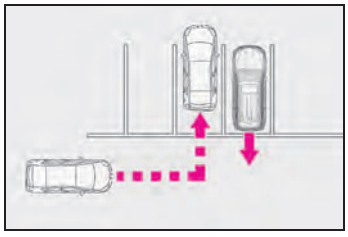


- When the distance between your vehicle and metal objects, such as a guardrail, wall, sign, or parked vehicle, which may reflect electrical waves toward the rear of the vehicle, is short



- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow
- When a vehicle passes by the side of your vehicle

- When a detected vehicle turns while approaching the vehicle



- When there are spinning objects near your vehicle such as the fan of an air conditioning unit
- When water is splashed or sprayed toward the rear bumper, such as from a sprinkler
- Moving objects (flags, exhaust fumes, large rain droplets or snowflakes, rain water on the road surface, etc.)
- When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc., that enters the detection area is short
- Gratings and gutters
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold
- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load

RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function

When the vehicle is backing up, the rear camera detection function can detect pedestrians in the detection area behind the vehicle. If a pedestrian is detected, a buzzer will sound and an icon will be displayed on the Multimedia Display to inform the driver of the pedestrian.

WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

The recognition and control capabilities for this system are limited.

The driver should always drive safely by always being responsible without over relying on the system and have a understanding of the surrounding situations.

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

Observe the following, otherwise there is the danger that could lead to an accident.

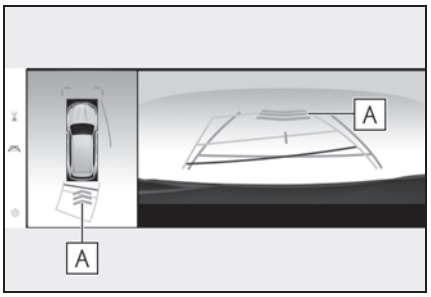
- Always clean the camera without damaging it.
- Do not install market electronic parts (such as Illuminated license plate, fog lamps, etc.) in the camera vicinity.
- Do not subject the camera vicinity to strong impacts. If the vicinity is subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble, remodel or paint the camera.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the camera.
- Do not install market protection parts (bumper trim, etc.) to the rear bumper.
- Maintain suitable tire air pressure.
- Make sure the back door is completely closed.

■ RCD function is turned off

In the following situations the system turns off. The RCD function may not operate properly and thus there is the danger that an accident may occur.

- The contents mentioned above are not observed.
- Suspensions other than Lexus genuine parts are installed.

Multimedia Display



A Pedestrian detection icon

Displayed automatically when a pedestrian is detected.

Turning the RCD function on/off

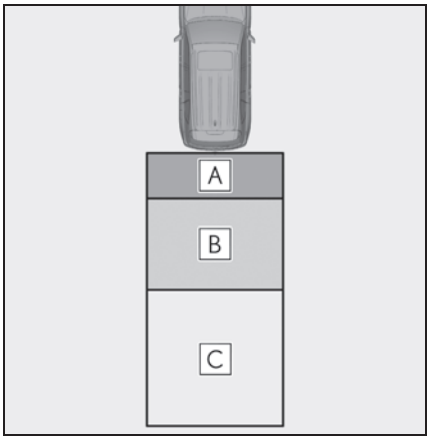
Use the meter control switches to enable/disable the RCD function. (→P.125)

1. Press the meter control switch to select .
2. Press the meter control switch to select “RCD” and then press OK.

When the RCD function is disabled, the RCD OFF indicator (→P.118) illuminates.

When a pedestrian is detected

If the rear camera detection function detects a pedestrian in the detection area, the buzzer and pedestrian detection will operate as follows:



A If a pedestrian is detected in area A
Buzzer: Sounds repeatedly
Pedestrian detection icon: Blinks 3 times and then stays on

B If a pedestrian is detected in area B
Buzzer (When the vehicle is stationary): Sounds 3 times
Buzzer (When the vehicle is backing up, when a pedestrian approaches the rear of the vehicle): Sounds repeatedly
Pedestrian detection icon: Blinks 3 times and then stays on

C If the system determines that your vehicle may collide with a pedestrian in area C
Buzzer: Sounds repeatedly
Pedestrian detection icon: Blinks 3 times and then stays on

The rear camera detection function is operational when

- The engine switch is in ON.
- RCD function is on.
- The shift position is in R.

Adjusting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display.

Use the meter control switches to change settings. (→P.125)

1 Press the meter control switch to select .
2 Press the meter control switch to select “Vehicle Settings”.
3 Select “RCD Volume” and then press OK.

Each time the switch is pressed, the volume level will change between 1, 2, and 3.

Muting a buzzer

A mute button will be displayed on the multi-information display and Multimedia Display when an object is detected. To mute the buzzer, press OK or .
The buzzers for the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA function and RCD function will be muted simultaneously.

Mute will be canceled automatically in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is changed.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed.
- When there is a malfunction in a sensor or the system is temporarily unavailable.
- When the operating function is disabled

manually.

● When the engine switch is turned off.

■ **If "Rear Camera Detection Unavailable Remove the Dirt of Rear Camera" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The rear camera lens may be dirty or covered with snow or ice. In such cases, if it is removed from the rear camera lens, the system should return to normal. (It may be necessary to drive the vehicle for some time before the system returns to normal.)

■ **If "Rear Camera Detection Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display**

● If this message is displayed after the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, fully turn the steering wheel to the left and then the right on level ground.

● If this message is displayed only when the R shift position is selected, the rear camera lens may be dirty. Clean the rear camera lens.

■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

● Some pedestrians, such as the following, may not be detected by the rear camera detection function, preventing the function from operating properly:

- Pedestrians who are bending forward or squatting
- Pedestrians who are lying down
- Pedestrians who are running
- Pedestrians who suddenly enter the detection area
- People riding a bicycle, skateboard, or other light vehicle
- Pedestrians wearing oversized clothing such as a rain coat, long skirt, etc., making their silhouette obscure
- Pedestrians whose body is partially hidden by an object, such as a cart or umbrella
- Pedestrians which are obscured by darkness, such as at night

● In some situations, such as the following, pedestrians may not be detected by the rear camera detection function, preventing the function from operating properly:

- When backing up in inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)
- When the rear camera is obscured (dirt, snow, ice, etc. are attached) or scratched
- When a very bright light, such as the sun, or the headlights of another vehicle, shines directly into the rear camera
- When backing up in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a garage or underground parking lot
- When backing up in a dim environment such as during dusk or in an underground parking lot
- When the camera position and direction are deviated
- When a towing hook is attached
- When water droplets are flowing on the camera lens
- When the vehicle height is extremely changed (nose up, nose down)
- When tire chains or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used

■ **Situations in which the system may operate unexpectedly**

● Even though there are no pedestrians in the detection area, some objects, such as the following, may be detected, possibly causing the rear camera detection function to operate.

- Three dimensional objects, such as a pole, traffic cone, fence, or parked vehicle
- Moving objects, such as a car or motorcycle
- Objects moving toward your vehicle when backing up, such as flags or puddles (or airborne matter, such as smoke, steam, rain, or snow)
- Cobblestone or gravel roads, tram rails, road repairs, white lines, pedestrian crossings or fallen leaves on the road
- Metal covers (gratings), such as those used for drainage ditches
- Objects reflected in a puddle or on a wet road surface
- Shadows on the road

● In some situations, such as the following, the rear camera detection function may operate even though there are no pedestrians in the detection area.

- When backing up toward the roadside or a bump on the road
- When backing up toward an incline/decline
- If the rear of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- If a bumper protector, such as an additional trim strip, is installed to the rear bumper
- If the orientation of the rear camera has been changed
- If a towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle
- When water is flowing over the rear camera lens
- When the rear camera is obscured (dirt, snow, ice, etc. are attached) or scratched
- If there is a flashing light in the detection area, such as the emergency flashers of another vehicle
- When tire chains or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used

● Situations in which the rear camera detection function may be difficult to notice

- The buzzer may be difficult to hear if the surrounding area is noisy, the volume of the audio system volume is high, the air conditioning system is being used, etc.
- If the temperature in the cabin is extremely high or low, the Multimedia Display may not operate correctly.

PKSB (Parking Support Brake)*

*: If equipped

The Parking Support Brake system consists of the following functions that operate when driving at a low speed or backing up, such as when parking. When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with a detected object or pedestrian is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action. If the system determines that the possibility of a collision with a detected object or pedestrian is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

PKSB (Parking Support Brake) system

■ **Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle)**

→P.339

■ **Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle) (if equipped)**

→P.342

■ **Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) (if equipped)**

→P.344

WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

Do not overly rely on the system, as doing so may lead to an accident.

Always drive while checking the safety of the surroundings of the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, weather, etc., the system may not operate.

The detection capabilities of sensors and radars are limited. Always drive while checking the safety of the surroundings of the vehicle.

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive carefully, taking care to observe your surroundings. The Parking Support Brake system is designed to provide support to lessen the severity of collisions. However, it may not operate in some situations.
- The Parking Support Brake system is not designed to stop the vehicle completely. Additionally, even if the system has stopped the vehicle, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal immediately as brake control will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds.
- It is extremely dangerous to check the system operations by intentionally driving the vehicle into the direction of a wall, etc. Never attempt such actions.

■ **When to disable the Parking Support Brake**

In the following situations, disable the Parking Support Brake as the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- When inspecting the vehicle using a chassis roller, chassis dynamo or free roller
- When loading the vehicle onto a boat, truck or other transport vessel
- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow
- When using automatic car washing devices
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When the tires are not properly inflated
- When the tires are very worn
- When tire chains, a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer (with towing hitch) or during emergency towing

Enabling/Disabling the Parking Support Brake

Use the meter control switches to turn on/off the function. (→P.125)

1 Press the meter control switch to select .

2 Press the meter control switch to select and then press OK.

When the Parking Support Brake is disabled, the PKSB OFF indicator (→P.118)

illuminates.

To re-enable the system, select on the multi-information display, select and turn it on.

If the system is disabled, it will remain off even if the engine switch is turned to ON after the engine switch has been turned off.

If the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

Parking Support Brake will be turned off automatically.

Display and buzzer for engine output restriction control and brake control

If the engine output restriction control or brake control operates, a buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information and head-up display (if equipped), Multimedia Display, to alert the driver.

Depending on the situation, engine output restriction control will operate to either limit acceleration or restrict output as much as possible.

- Engine output restriction control is operating (acceleration restriction)

Acceleration greater than a certain amount is restricted by the system.

Multimedia Display: No warning displayed

Multi-information display: "Object Detected Acceleration Reduced"

Head-up display (if equipped): No warning displayed

PKSB OFF indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Does not sound

- Engine output restriction control is operating (output restricted as much as possible)

The system has determined that stronger-than-normal brake operation is necessary.

Multimedia Display: "BRAKE!"

Multi-information display and head-up display (if equipped): "BRAKE!"

PKSB OFF indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Short beep

- Brake control is operating

The system determined that emergency braking is necessary.

Multimedia Display: "BRAKE!"

Multi-information display and head-up display (if equipped): "BRAKE!"

PKSB OFF indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Short beep

- Vehicle stopped by system operation

The vehicle has been stopped by brake control operation.

Multimedia Display: "Press Brake Pedal"

Multi-information display and head-up display (if equipped): "Switch to Brake" (If the accelerator pedal is not depressed, "Press Brake Pedal" will be displayed.)

PKSB OFF indicator: Illuminated

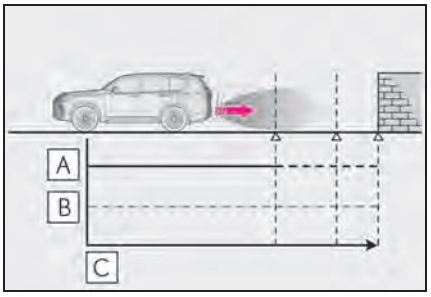
Buzzer: Short beep

System overview

If the Parking Support Brake determines that a collision with a detected object is possible, the engine output

will be restricted to restrain any increase in the vehicle speed. (Engine output restriction control: See figure 2.)
Additionally, if the accelerator pedal continues to be depressed, the brakes will be applied automatically to reduce the vehicle speed. (Brake control: See figure 3.)

- Figure 1: When the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) is not operating

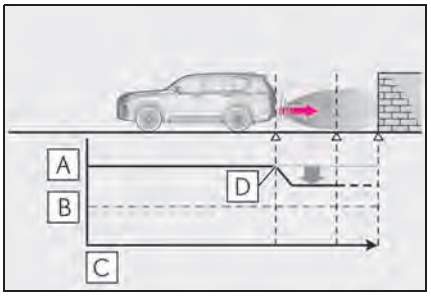


A Engine output

B Braking force

C Time

- Figure 2: When engine output restriction control operates



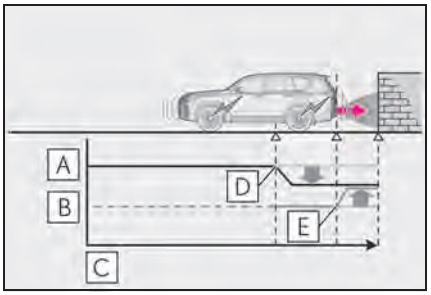
A Engine output

B Braking force

C Time

D Engine output restriction control begins operating (System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is high)

- Figure 3: When engine output restriction control and brake control operates



A Engine output

B Braking force

C Time

D Engine output restriction control begins operating (System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is high)

E Brake control begins operating (System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is extremely high)

If the Parking Support Brake has operated

If the vehicle is stopped due to operation of the Parking Support Brake, the Parking Support Brake will be disabled and the PKSB OFF indicator will illuminate. If the Parking Support Brake operates unnecessarily, brake control can be canceled by depressing the brake pedal or waiting for approximately 2 seconds for it to automatically be canceled. Then, the vehicle can be

operated by depressing the accelerator pedal.

■ **Re-enabling the Parking Support Brake**

To re-enable the Parking Support Brake when it is disabled due to operation of the Parking Support Brake, either enable the system again (→P.335), or turn the engine switch off and then back to ON. Additionally, if any of the following conditions are met, the system will be re-enabled automatically and the PKSB OFF indicator will turn off:

- The P shift position is selected
- The object is no longer detected in the traveling direction of the vehicle
- The traveling direction of the vehicle changes*

*: Except when the Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) operated.

■ **If "Parking Support Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display and the PKSB OFF indicator is flashing**

If the vehicle is stopped due to operation of the Parking Support Brake, the Parking Support Brake will be disabled and the PKSB OFF indicator will illuminate.

- A sensor may be covered with water drops, ice, snow, dirt, etc. Remove the water drops, ice, snow, dirt, etc., from the sensor to return the system to normal. Also, due to ice forming on a sensor at low temperatures, a warning message may be displayed or the sensor may not be able to detect an object. Once the ice melts, the system will return to normal.
- If this message is displayed only when the R shift position is selected, the rear camera lens may be dirty. Clean the camera lens. If this message is displayed when the shift position is any position other than R, a sensor on the front or rear bumper may be dirty. Clean the sensors and their surrounding area on the bumpers.
- If this message continues to be displayed even after cleaning the sensor, or is displayed even though the sensor is clean, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected**

The system needs to be initialized. To initialize the system, drive the vehicle straight ahead for 5 seconds or more at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more.

Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle)*

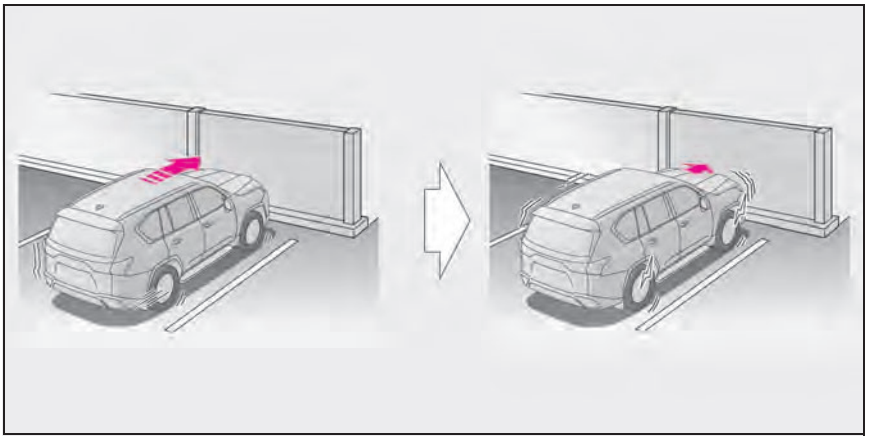
*: If equipped

If the sensors detect a static object, such as a wall, in the traveling direction of the vehicle and the system determines that a collision may occur due to the vehicle suddenly moving forward due to an accidental accelerator pedal operation, the vehicle moving the unintended direction due to the wrong shift position being selected, or while parking or traveling at low speeds, the system will operate to lessen the impact with the detected static object and reduce the resulting damage.

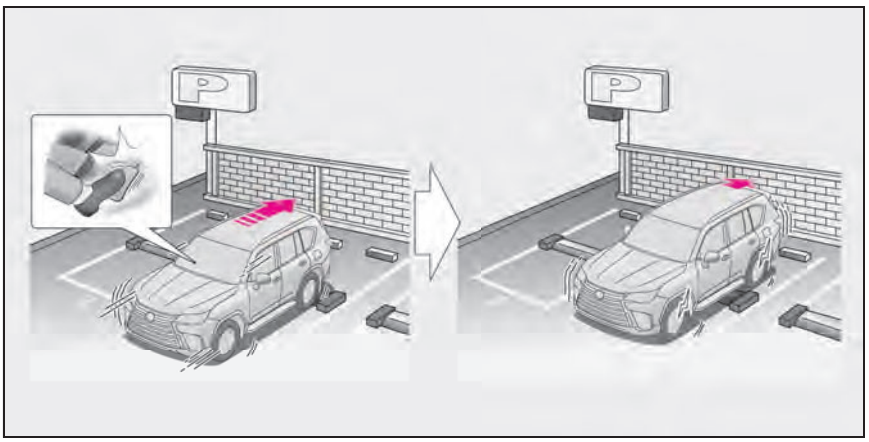
Examples of function operation

This function will operate in situations such as the following if an object is detected in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

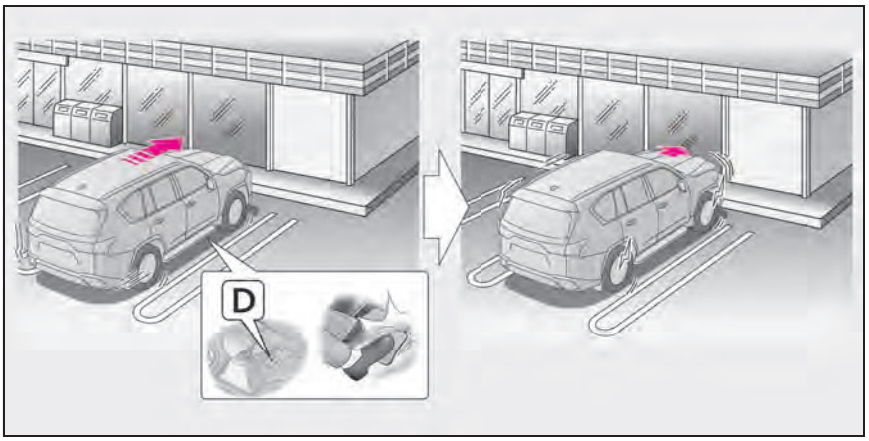
■ **When traveling at a low speed and the brake pedal is not depressed, or is depressed late**



■ When the accelerator pedal is depressed excessively



■ When the vehicle moves in the unintended direction due to the wrong shift position being selected



Types of sensors

→P.319

WARNING

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

→P.320

■ If the Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) operates unnecessarily, such as at a railroad crossing

→P.337

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

→P.320

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) will operate when**

The function will operate when the PKSB OFF indicator is not illuminated or flashing (→P.117, 118) and all of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is enabled.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.
- There is a static object in the traveling direction of the vehicle and approximately 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that a stronger-than-normal brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision.

● Brake control
- Engine output restriction control is operating
- The Parking Support Brake determines that an immediate brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision.

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) will stop operating when**

The function will stop operating if any of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- The system determines that the collision has become avoidable with normal brake operation.
- The static object is no longer approximately 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away from the vehicle or in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

● Brake control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- Approximately 2 seconds have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
- The brake pedal is depressed after the vehicle is stopped by brake control.
- The static object is no longer approximately 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away from the vehicle or in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

■ **Detection range of the Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle)**

The detection range of the Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) differs from the detection range of the Lexus parking assist-sensor. (→P.323) Therefore, even if the Lexus parking assist-sensor detects an object and provides a warning, the Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) may not start operating.

■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

→P.321

■ **Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

→P.322

Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle)*

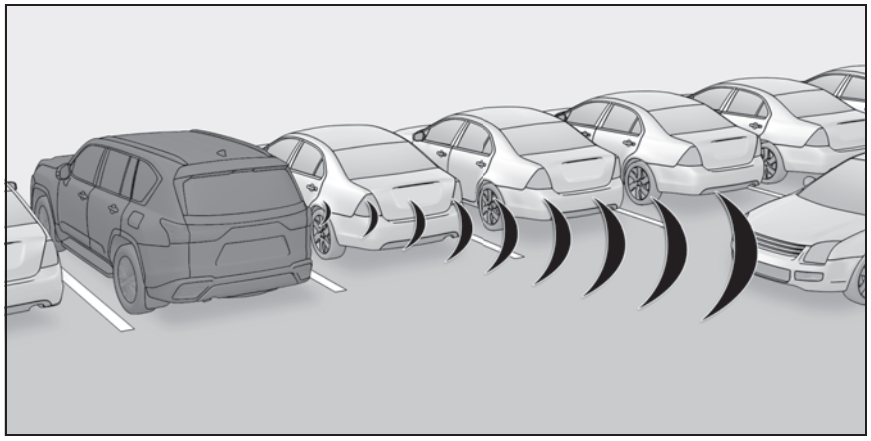
*: If equipped

If a rear radar sensor detects a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and the system determines that the possibility of a collision is high, this function will perform brake control to reduce the likelihood of an impact with the approaching vehicle.

Examples of function operation

This function will operate in situations such as the following if a vehicle is detected in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

■ **When reversing, a vehicle is approaching and the brake pedal is not depressed, or is depressed late**



Types of sensors

→P.314

⚠ WARNING

■ **To ensure the system can operate properly**

→P.314

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle) will operate when**

The function will operate when the PKSB OFF indicator is not illuminated or flashing (→P.117, 118) and all of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is enabled.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.

- Vehicles are approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle at a traveling speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or more.
- The shift lever is in R.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that a stronger than normal brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision with an approaching vehicle.

● Brake control
- Engine output restriction control is operating
- The Parking Support Brake determines that an emergency brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision with an approaching vehicle.

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle) will stop operating when**

The function will stop operating if any of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- The collision becomes avoidable with normal brake operation.
- A vehicle is no longer approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle.

● Brake control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- Approximately 2 seconds have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
- The brake pedal is depressed after the vehicle is stopped by brake control.
- A vehicle is no longer approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle.

■ **Detection area of the Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle)**

The detection area of the Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle) differs from the detection area of the RCTA function (→P.327). Therefore, even if the RCTA function detects a vehicle and provides an alert, the Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle) may not start operating.

■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

→P.328

■ **Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

→P.329

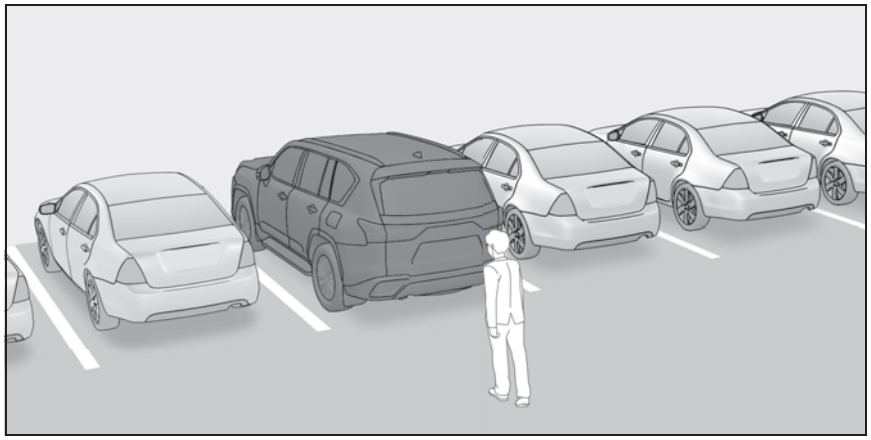
Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle)*

*: If equipped

If the rear camera sensor detects a pedestrian behind the vehicle while backing up and the system determines that the possibility of colliding with the detected pedestrian is high, a buzzer will sound. If the system determines that the possibility of colliding with the detected pedestrian is extremely high, the brakes will be applied automatically to help reduce the impact of the collision.

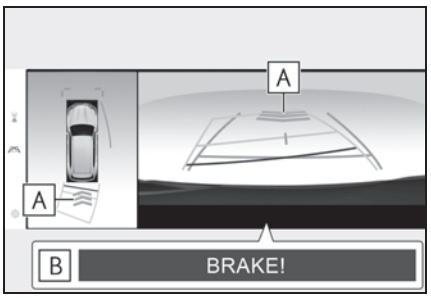
Examples of system operation

When a pedestrian is detected behind the vehicle while backing up, the brake pedal is not depressed or is depressed late.



Multimedia Display

Displays a message to urge the driver to take evasive action when a pedestrian is detected in the detection area behind the vehicle. (A message will also be displayed on the multi-information display and head-up display [if equipped].)



A Pedestrian detection icon

B Brake reminder

WARNING

■ **If the Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) operates unnecessarily**

Depress the brake pedal immediately after the Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) operates. (Operation of the function is canceled by depressing the brake pedal.)

■ **Correct use of the Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle)**

→P.331

■ Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) will operate when

The function will operate when the PKSB OFF indicator is not illuminated or flashing (→P.117, 118) and all of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is enabled.
- The vehicle speed is 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.
- The shift position is in R.
- The rear camera sensor detects a pedestrian behind the vehicle while backing up and the system determines that the possibility of colliding with the detected pedestrian is high.

● Brake control
- Engine output restriction control is operating.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that an emergency brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision with a pedestrian.

■ The Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) will stop operating when

The function will stop operating if any of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- The collision becomes avoidable with normal brake operation.
- The pedestrian is no longer detected behind your vehicle.

● Brake control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- Approximately 2 seconds have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
- The brake pedal is depressed after the vehicle is stopped by brake control.
- The pedestrian is no longer detected behind your vehicle.

■ Re-enabling the Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle)

→P.338

■ Detection area of the Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle)

The detection area of the Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) differs from the detection area of the RCD function (→P.332). Therefore, even if the RCD function detects a pedestrian and provides an alert, the Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) may not start operating.

■ Situations in which the system may not operate properly

→P.333

■ Situations in which the system may operate unexpectedly

→P.333

Multi-terrain Monitor

The Multi-terrain Monitor helps the driver to check the vehicle surroundings. It assists in determining the conditions around the driver in a variety of situations, such as when judging conditions during off-road driving or checking for obstacles when parking.

- The screen illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the screen.

WARNING

■ When using the Multi-terrain Monitor system

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never rely solely on the Multi-terrain Monitor. As with unequipped vehicles, drive carefully while directly confirming the safety of your surroundings and the area to the rear of the vehicle. Take particular care to avoid parked cars and other obstacles.
- Due to the characteristics of the camera lens, the actual position and distance of people and other obstacles will differ from those shown on the Multi-terrain Monitor screen. Directly confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving.
- Never drive while looking only at the screen as the image on the screen is different from actual conditions. If you are driving while looking only at the screen, you may hit a person or an object, resulting in an accident. When driving, be sure to check the vehicle's surroundings with your own eyes and the vehicle's mirrors.
- In low temperatures, the screen may darken or the images may become faint.
  Images of moving objects in particular may distort or disappear from the screen. Therefore, make sure to drive carefully while directly visually confirming the safety of your surroundings.

Multi-terrain Monitor screens

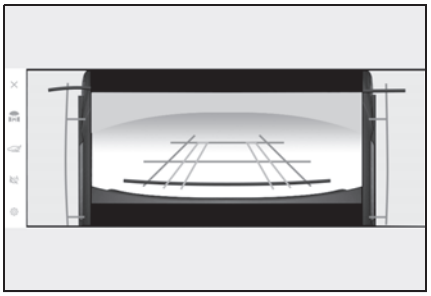
The following screens can be selected according to driving conditions.

- Screens that can be selected vary depending on conditions such as shift position and vehicle speed. (→P.350)
- Depending on the displayed screen, the display can be switched from normal to full screen display.

■ Screens when the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 or H4 and Multi-terrain Select is in on.

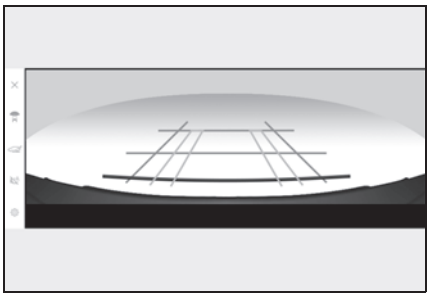
- When checking the area to the front and sides of the vehicle

▶ Front view & dual side views



→P.355

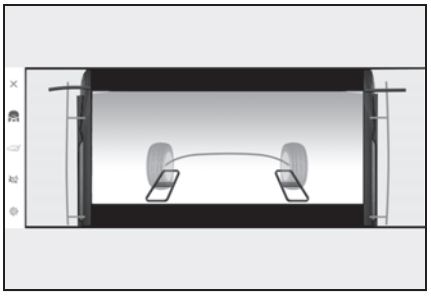
▶ Front view (magnified)



→P.355

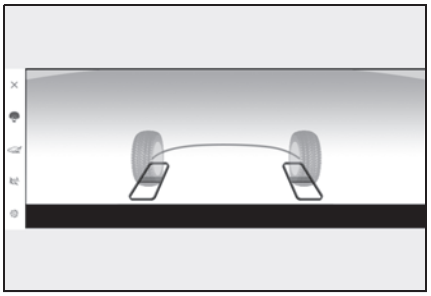
● When checking the condition of the road surface under the vehicle

▶ Under vehicle terrain view & dual side views



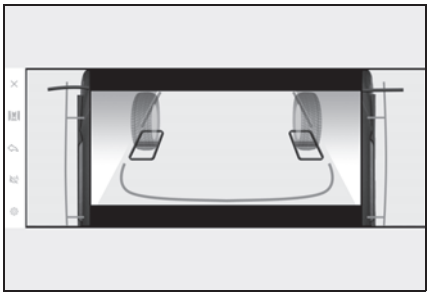
→P.357

▶ Under vehicle terrain view (magnified)



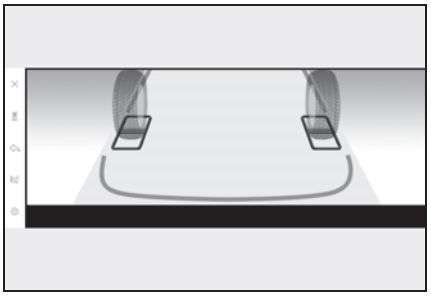
→P.357

▶ Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) & dual side views



→P.360

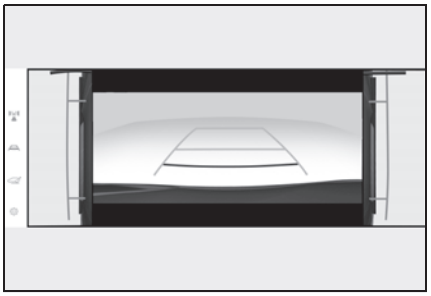
▶ Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) (magnified)



→P.360

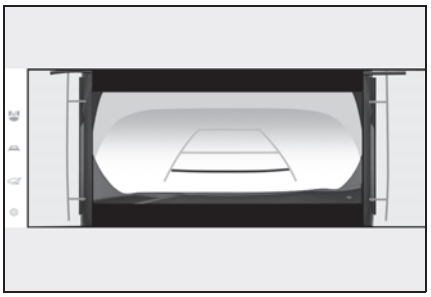
● When checking the area to the rear of the vehicle

▶ Rear view & dual side views



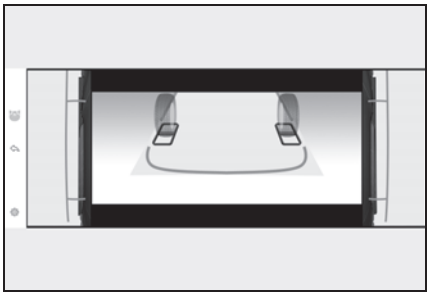
→P.363

▶ Wide rear view & dual side views



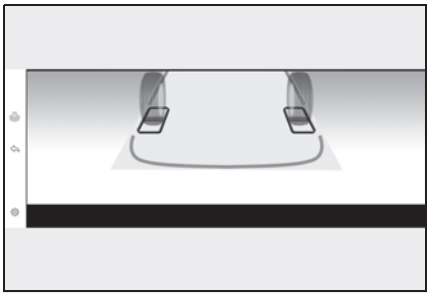
→P.363

▶ Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) & dual side views



→P.366

▶ Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) (magnified)

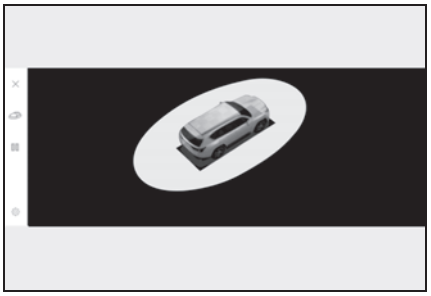


→P.366

■ **Screens when the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4 and Multi-terrain Select is in off.**

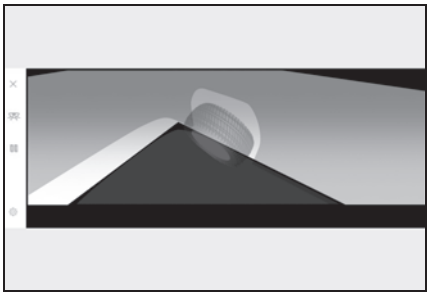
● When checking the area to the around of the vehicle

▶ Moving view



→P.369

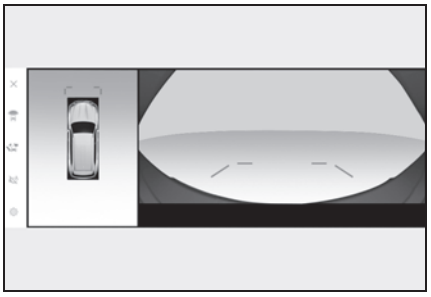
▶ See-through view



→P.369

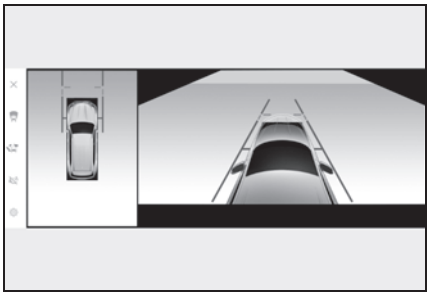
● When checking the area to the front of the vehicle

▶ Wide front view & panoramic view



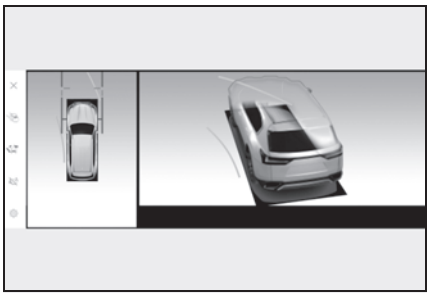
→P.370

▶ Side Clearance View & panoramic view



→P.373

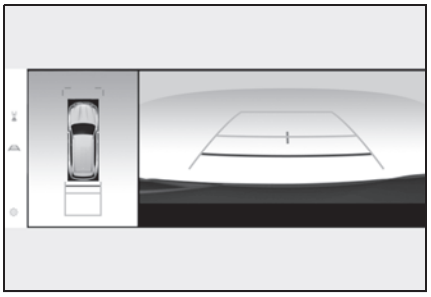
▶ Cornering View & panoramic view



→P.373

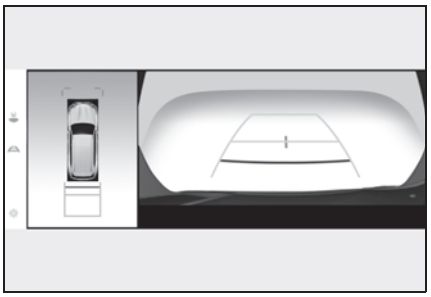
● When checking the area to the rear of the vehicle

▶ Rear view & panoramic view



→P.379

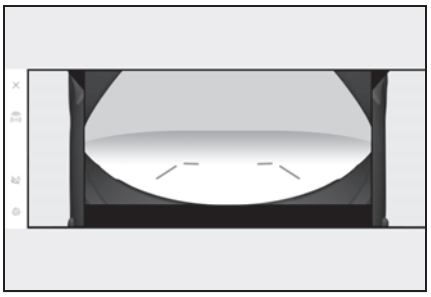
▶ Wide rear view & panoramic view



→P.379

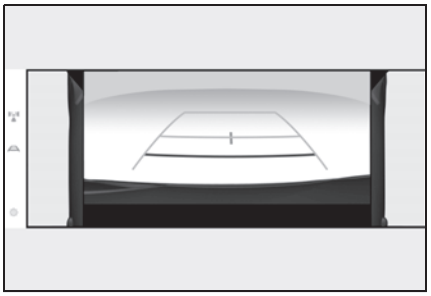
● When folding the outside rear view mirrors

▶ Wide front view & dual side views



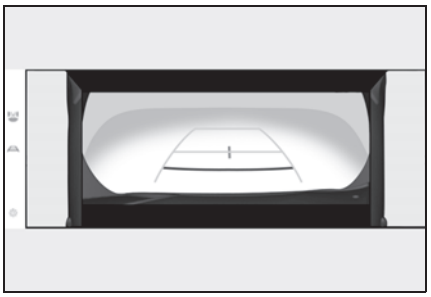
→P.388

▶ Rear view & dual side views



→P.388

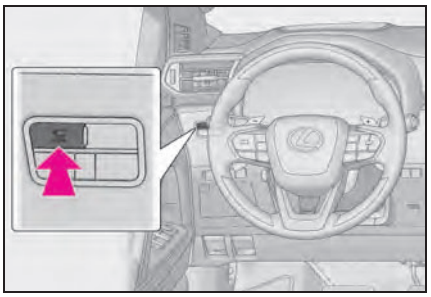
▶ Wide rear view & dual side views



→P.388

VIEW switch

The VIEW switch is located as shown in the illustration.



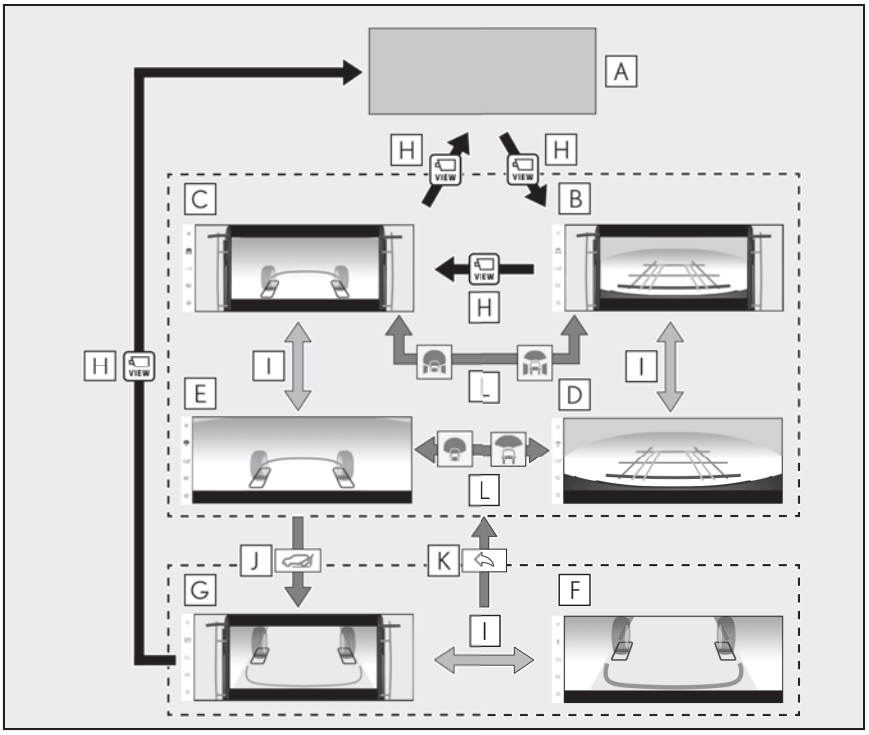
How to switch the screen

When you press the VIEW switch while the engine switch is in ON, the monitor displays operates.

The monitor displays various views of the position of the vehicle. (The following is an example)

Four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 or H4 and Multi-terrain Select is in on

■ When the shift lever is in the P, D or N position



A Audio screen, etc.

B Front view & dual side views

C Under vehicle terrain view & dual side views

D Front view (magnified)

E Under vehicle terrain view (magnified)

F Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) (magnified)

G Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) & dual side views

H Press the VIEW switch

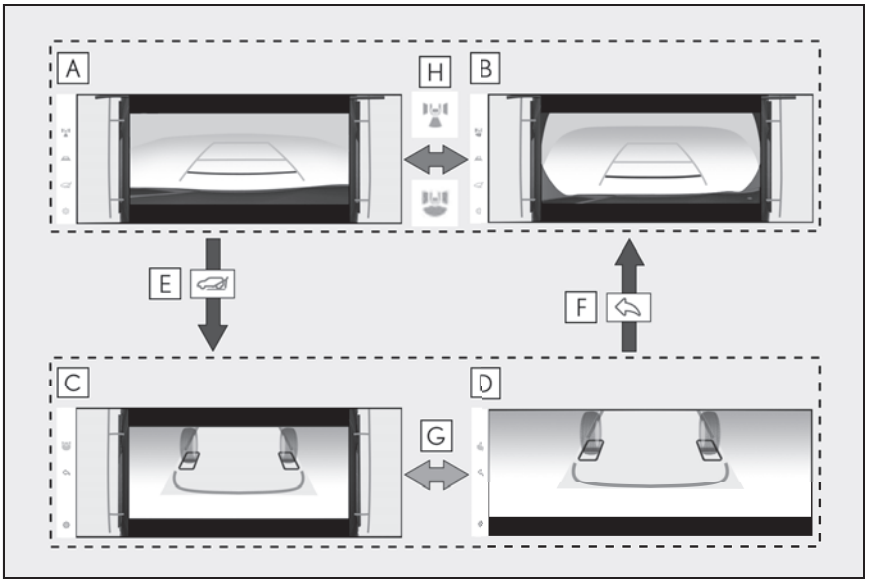
I Select the Multi-terrain Monitor screen

J Select the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) button

K Select the return button

L Select the display mode button

■ When the shift lever is in the R position



A Rear view & dual side views

B Wide rear view & dual side views

C Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) & dual side views

D Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) (magnified)

E Select the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) button

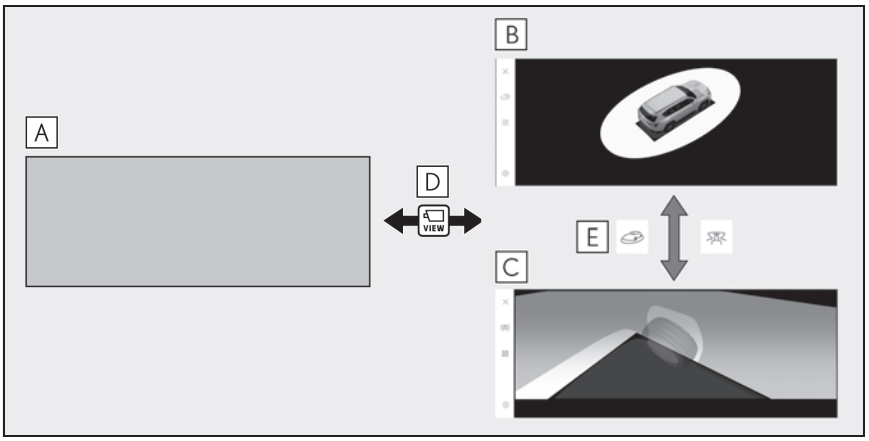
F Select the return button

G Select the Multi-terrain Monitor screen

H Select the display mode button

Four-wheel drive control switch is in H4 and Multi-terrain Select is in off

■ When the shift lever is in the P position



A Audio screen, etc.

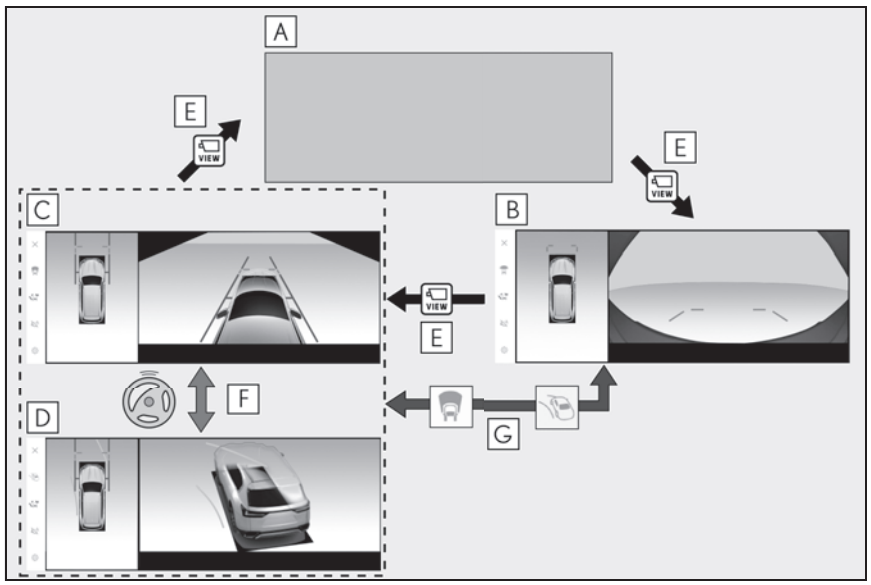
B Moving view

C See-through view

D Press the VIEW switch

E Select the display mode button

■ When the shift lever is in the D or N position



A Audio screen, etc.

B Wide front view & panoramic view

C Side Clearance View & panoramic view

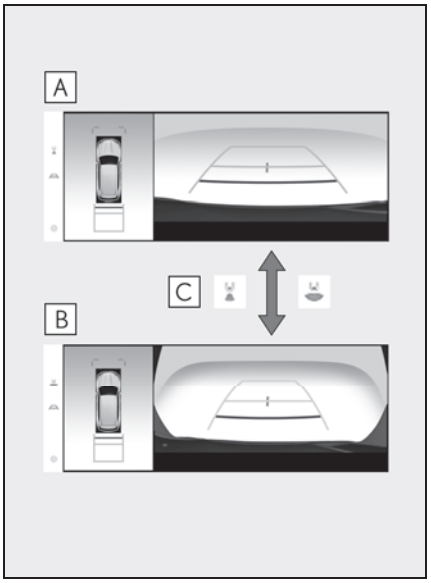
D Cornering View & panoramic view

E Press the VIEW switch

F When the steering wheel is turned by 180° or more from the center (straight-line) position

G Select the display mode button

■ When the shift lever is in the R position



A Rear view & panoramic view

B Wide rear view & panoramic view

C Select the display mode button

■ Multi-terrain Monitor screen display

- The amount of time that the Multi-terrain Monitor screen is displayed changes as follows according to the vehicle speed at the time the VIEW switch was pressed.
- The Multi-terrain Monitor screen is displayed if the vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or less when the VIEW switch is pressed.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 20 km/h (12 mph), the Multi-terrain Monitor display is canceled.
- The guide lines mode and other display settings can be saved by registering the user profile.

Screen display and functions

When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 or H4 and Multi-terrain Select is on, the various screens display information to support several different driving situations, such as when checking for obstacles when moving forward or in reverse, or when judging road surface conditions during off-road driving.

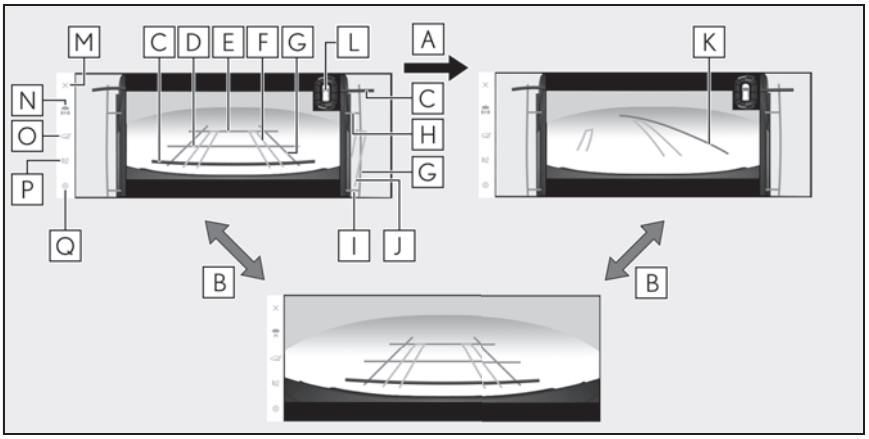
Front view & dual side views

Front view & dual side views can be used to check the area around the front of the vehicle.

To display the screen, press the VIEW switch when the shift lever is in the P, D or N position.

- In addition to an image of the front of the vehicle, guide lines are displayed in a composite view to provide reference for when deciding a direction to move forward in.
- If the front view display is selected while the screen is displayed, the screen switches from normal to magnified display. (Selecting the display again returns the screen to the normal display)
- If the steering wheel is turned 270° or more, guide lines and other features to support turning are automatically displayed.

Screen display



A If the steering wheel is turned 270° or more

B Selecting the display

C 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) distance guide line (red)

D 1 m (3 ft.) distance guide line (blue)

E 2 m (6 ft.) distance guide line (blue)

Items C to E indicate the estimated distance from the front end of the vehicle.

F Front tire course line (yellow)

Indicates the estimated course of the front tires according to steering wheel position.

G Vehicle width lines (blue)

Indicate the width of the vehicle including the outside rear view mirrors.

H Front tire contact line (blue)

I Rear tire contact line (blue)

Items H and I indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

J Rear tire course line (yellow)

Indicates the estimated course of the rear tires.

K Forward movement guide line (blue)

Indicates the estimated tire course of the tightest possible turn.

L Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displayed if an obstacle is detected while the Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned on.

M Display off button

Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

N Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time touch the button.

O Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) selection button

Switch the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) & dual side views (→P.360)

P Automatic display mode selection button

→P.357

Q Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

Automatic display mode

In addition to screen switching by operating the VIEW switch, automatic display mode is available. In this mode, the screen is switched automatically in response to vehicle speed.
In automatic display mode, the monitor will automatically display images in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is shifted to N or D position.
- When vehicle speed is reduced to approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.

Front view & dual side views display

The screen can be displayed when the shift lever is in P, D or N.

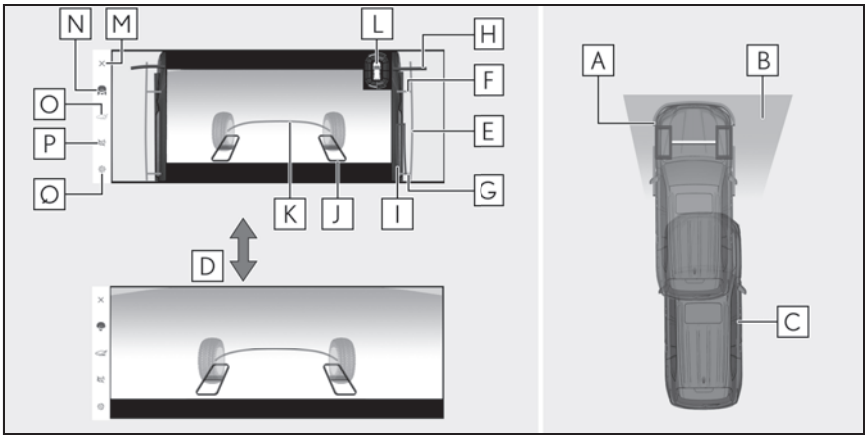
Under vehicle terrain view & dual side views

Lines indicating current vehicle and tire position are displayed in a composite view on an image taken behind the current vehicle position and assists the driver to check conditions underneath the vehicle or determine the position of the front tires.

To display the screen, press the VIEW switch when the shift lever is in the P, D or N position.

- It is necessary to drive a certain distance or more for the image to be displayed.
- If the under vehicle terrain view display is selected while the screen is displayed, the screen switches from normal to magnified display. (Selecting the display again returns the screen to the normal display)

Screen display



A Current vehicle position

B Image displayed in the under vehicle terrain view (image taken behind the current vehicle position)

C Vehicle position at the time the image was taken (behind the current vehicle position)

D Selecting the display

E Vehicle width lines (blue)

Indicate the width of the vehicle including the outside rear view mirrors.

F Front tire contact line (blue)

G Rear tire contact line (blue)

Items F and G indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

H 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) distance guide line (red, black)

Indicate the estimated distance from the front end of the vehicle.

I Rear tire course line (yellow)

Indicates the estimated course of the rear tires.

J Tire position indicator lines (black, white)

Indicates the estimated position of the front tires.

K Vehicle position indicator lines (blue)

Indicates the estimated position of the vehicle.

L Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displayed if an obstacle is detected while the Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned on.

M Display off button

Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

N Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time touch the button.

O Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) selection button

Switch the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) & dual side views (→P.360)

P Automatic display mode selection button

→P.359

Q Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

Automatic display mode

In addition to screen switching by operating the VIEW switch, automatic display mode is available. In this mode, the screen is switched automatically in response to vehicle speed.

In automatic display mode, the monitor will automatically display images in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is shifted to N or D position.
- When vehicle speed is reduced to approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.

Under vehicle terrain view & dual side views

- The screen can be displayed when the shift lever is in P, D or N.
- In the following situations, under vehicle terrain view will disappear.
  - When the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel turned almost all the way to one side
  - After the engine starts or the system returns to normal, a fixed distance or more has not yet been driven
  - When the tires are slipping or spinning
  - Multi Terrain ABS is activated
  - When there is a malfunction in the system
- If the outside rear view mirrors are folded while the under vehicle terrain view is being displayed, a separate screen is displayed.
- If the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel turned to a certain steering angle or greater, a part of the screen may disappear. However, this is not a malfunction.
- In the following situations, the system may not operate normally.
  - The road is covered with snow
  - When there are shadows due to light sources such as sunlight or illumination
  - When driving on slippery roads or tires are spinning
  - Dirt or foreign matter is adhering to the camera lens
  - There is water in front of the vehicle (a river, puddle, sea water, etc.)
  - Optional equipment has been installed

- When the camera is covered or there is an object in the image capture range
- Tires have been replaced
- When the back door is open
- When the steering wheel is operated at or more than a specified steering angle
- On roads that are not flat, such as slopes

WARNING

■ Guide lines

The tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines may differ from actual vehicle positions depending on the number of passengers, cargo weight, road grade, road surface conditions, brightness of the surrounding environment, whether tires or suspension parts other than those specified are equipped, etc. Always drive the vehicle while confirming the safety of your surroundings.

■ Under vehicle terrain view display

The image displayed is one that was previously taken at a point behind the current vehicle position. In cases such as when objects move after the image is taken, the image displayed on the screen may differ from the actual state. In addition, when driving in the dark such as at night, there are cases when obstacles cannot be confirmed from the image.

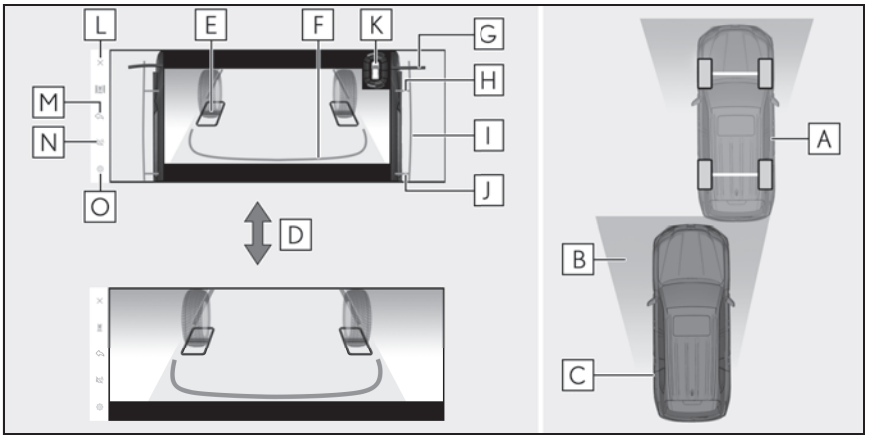
Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) & dual side views

Lines indicating current vehicle and tire position are displayed in a composite view on an image taken behind the current vehicle position and assists the driver to check conditions underneath the vehicle or determine the position of the rear tires.

To display the screen, press the VIEW switch when the shift lever is in the P, D or N position, select the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) selection switch.

- It is necessary to drive a certain distance or more for the image to be displayed.
- If the under vehicle terrain view display is selected while the screen is displayed, the screen switches from normal to magnified display. (Selecting the display again returns the screen to the normal display)

Screen display



A Current vehicle position

B Image displayed in the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) (image taken behind the current vehicle position)

C Vehicle position at the time the image was taken (behind the current vehicle position)

D Selecting the display

E Tire position indicator lines (black, white)

Indicates the estimated position of the rear tires.

F Vehicle position indicator lines (blue)

Indicates the estimated position of the vehicle.

G 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) distance guide line (red, black)

Indicate the estimated distance from the front end of the vehicle.

H Front tire contact line (blue)

Indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

I Vehicle width lines (blue)

Indicate the width of the vehicle including the outside rear view mirrors.

J Rear tire contact line (blue)

Indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

K Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displayed if an obstacle is detected while the Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned on.

L Display off button

Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

M Return button

Return to the previous screen

N Automatic display mode selection button

→P.362

O Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

Automatic display mode

In addition to screen switching by operating the VIEW switch, automatic display mode is available. In this mode, the screen is switched automatically in response to vehicle speed. In automatic display mode, the monitor will automatically display images in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is shifted to N or D position.
- When vehicle speed is reduced to approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.

Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel)

- The screen can be displayed when the shift lever is in P, D or N.
- In the following situations, the display of the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) ends and the screen automatically returns to the most recently used camera screen. In addition, the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) selection switch cannot be operated until the next screen can be displayed.
  - When the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel turned almost all the way to one side
  - When vehicle speed reaches or exceeds approximately 5 km/h (3 mph)
  - When the tires are slipping or spinning
  - Multi Terrain ABS is activated
  - When there is a malfunction in the system
  - When the steering wheel is operated at or more than a specified steering angle
- If the outside rear view mirrors are folded while the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) is being displayed, a separate screen is displayed.
- If the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel turned to a certain steering angle or greater, a part of the screen may disappear. However, this is not a malfunction.
- In the following situations, the system may not operate normally or may not be able to switch to the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel). In addition, the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) selection switch cannot be operated until the next screen can be displayed.
  - The road is covered with snow
  - When there are shadows due to light sources such as sunlight or illumination
  - When driving on slippery roads or tires are spinning
  - Dirt or foreign matter is adhering to the camera lens
  - There is water in front of the vehicle (a river, puddle, sea water, etc.)
  - Optional equipment has been installed
  - When the camera is covered or there is an object in the image capture range
  - Tires have been replaced

- When the back door is open
- When the steering wheel is operated at or more than a specified steering angle
- On roads that are not flat, such as slopes

WARNING

■ Guide lines

The tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines may differ from actual vehicle positions depending on the number of passengers, cargo weight, road grade, road surface conditions, brightness of the surrounding environment, whether tires or suspension parts other than those specified are equipped, etc.
Always drive the vehicle while confirming the safety of your surroundings.

■ Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) display

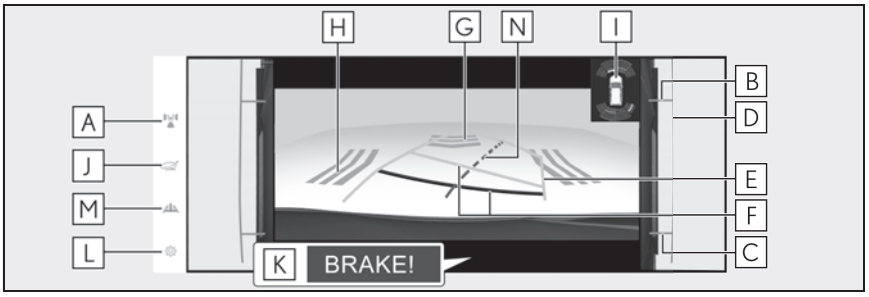
The image displayed is one that was previously taken at a point behind the current vehicle position. In cases such as when objects move after the image is taken, the image displayed on the screen may differ from the actual state. In addition, when driving in the dark such as at night, there are cases when obstacles cannot be confirmed from the image.

Rear view & dual side views/wide rear view & dual side views

The rear view & dual side views and the wide rear view & dual side views screen provide support when checking the areas of behind the vehicle and around the vehicle while backing up, for example while parking.

The screens will be displayed when the shift lever is in the R position.

Screen display



A Display mode switching button

Each time the display mode switching button is selected, the mode will change between the rear view & dual side views mode and the wide rear view & dual side views mode.

B Front tire contact line (blue)

C Rear tire contact line (blue)

Items **B** and **C** indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

D Vehicle width extension guide line (blue)

Indicates the estimated vehicle width including the outside rear view mirrors.

E Projected course lines (yellow)

Indicate the estimated course of the vehicle according to steering operations.

F Distance guide line

Shows the distance behind the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned.

- The guide lines move in conjunction with the estimated course lines.
- The guide lines display points approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) and approximately 1 m (3 ft.) (yellow) from the center of the edge of the bumper.

G Rear Camera Detection

Displayed automatically when a pedestrian is detected.

H Rear Cross Traffic Alert*

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of obstacle is displayed and the buzzer sounds.

I Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displayed if an obstacle is detected while the Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned on.

J Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) selection button

Switch the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) & dual side views (→P.366)

K Parking Support Brake*

When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with detected target objects is high, a warning message is displayed.

L Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

M Guide line switching button

Each time the guide line switching button is selected, the mode will change between the estimated course line mode and the vehicle center estimated course line mode.

N Vehicle center estimated course line

Shows a vehicle center estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

*: If equipped

■ **Rear view & dual side views/wide rear view & dual side views**

- The monitor is canceled when the shift lever is shifted into any position other than the R position.
- For details about the Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.319), Rear Cross Traffic Alert function (→P.325) and Parking Support Brake function. (→P.334)
- The display position of the Lexus parking assist-sensor and the position of obstacles displayed in the camera image do not match.

■ **Guide lines**

If the back door is not closed, guide lines will not be displayed. If the guide lines do not display even when the back door is closed, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor display**

When a sensor indicator on the Lexus parking assist-sensor display illuminates in red or a buzzer sounds continuously, be sure to check the area around the vehicle immediately and do not proceed any further until safety has been ensured, otherwise an unexpected accident may occur.

■ **Rear view & dual side views/wide rear view & dual side views display**

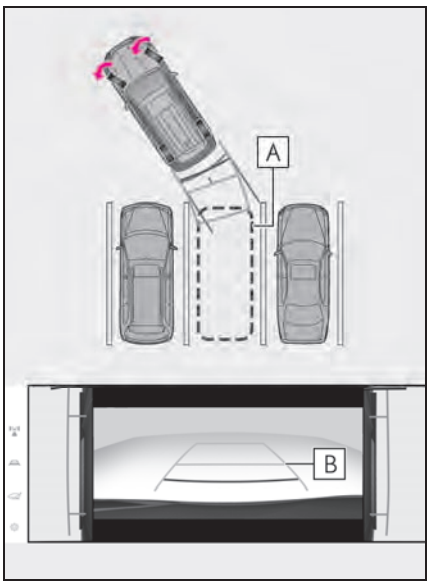
As the Lexus parking assist-sensor display and Rear Cross Traffic Alert display are displayed over the camera view, it may be difficult to see the Lexus parking assist-sensor display and Rear Cross Traffic Alert display depending on the color and brightness of the surrounding area.

Parking

When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

1 Shift the shift lever to the R position.

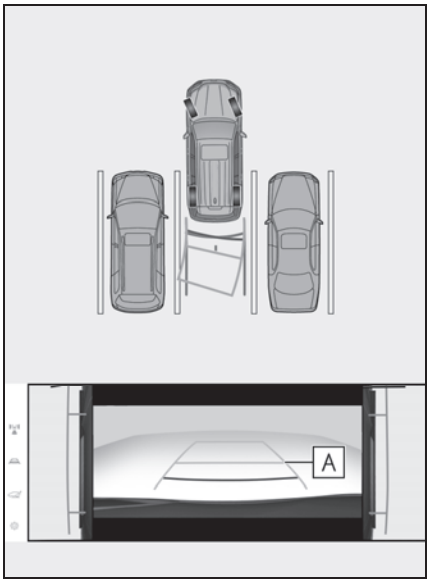
2 Turn the steering wheel so that the estimated course lines are within the parking space, and back up slowly.



A Parking space

B Estimated course lines

3 When the rear position of the vehicle has entered the parking space, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle width guide lines are within the left and right dividing lines of the parking space.



A Vehicle width guide line

4 Once the vehicle width guide lines and the parking space lines are parallel, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) & dual side views

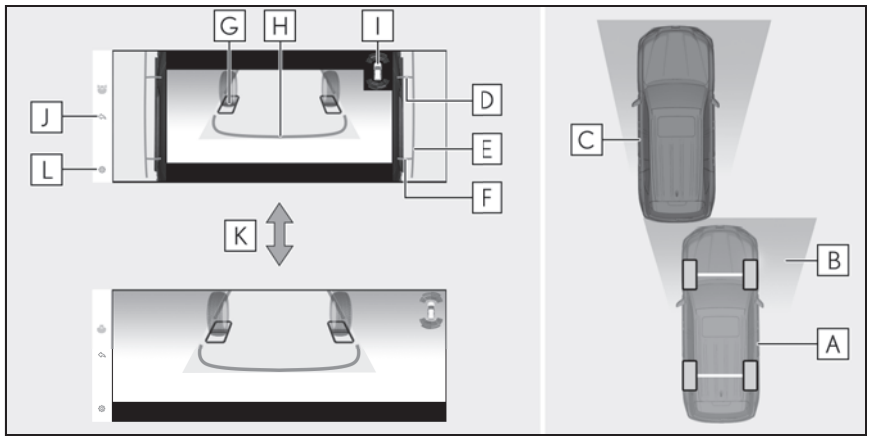
Lines indicating current vehicle and tire position are displayed in a composite view on an image taken in front of the current vehicle position and assists the driver to check conditions underneath the vehicle or determine the position of the rear tires.

To display the screen, when the shift lever is in the R position, select the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) selection switch.

- It is necessary to drive a certain distance or more for the image to be displayed.

- If the under vehicle terrain view display is selected while the screen is displayed, the screen switches from normal to magnified display. (Selecting the display again returns the screen to the normal display)

Screen display



A Current vehicle position

B Image displayed in the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) (image taken in front of the current vehicle position)

C Vehicle position at the time the image was taken (in front of the current vehicle position)

D Front tire contact line (blue)

Indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

E Vehicle width lines (blue)

Indicate the width of the vehicle including the outside rear view mirrors.

F Rear tire contact line (blue)

Indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

G Tire position indicator lines (black, white)

Indicates the estimated position of the rear tires.

H Vehicle position indicator lines (blue)

Indicates the estimated position of the vehicle.

I Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displayed if an obstacle is detected while the Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned on.

J Return switch

Return to the previous screen

K Selecting the display

L Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

■ Under vehicle terrain view (rear side)

● The screen can be displayed when the shift lever is in R.

● While the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) is displayed, if the vehicle speed reaches or exceeds approximately 5 km/h (3 mph), the screen automatically returns to the previous display.

● In the following situations, the display of the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) ends and the screen automatically returns to the most recently used camera screen. In addition, the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) selection switch cannot be operated until the next screen can be displayed.

- When the tires are slipping or spinning
- Multi Terrain ABS is activated
- When there is a malfunction in the system
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert, Rear Camera Detection or Parking Support Brake is activated

● If the outside rear view mirrors are folded while the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) is being displayed, a separate screen is displayed.

● If the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel turned to a certain steering angle or greater, a part of the screen may disappear. However, this is not a malfunction.

● In the following situations, the system may not operate normally or may not be able to switch to the under vehicle terrain view (rear side). In addition, the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) selection switch cannot be operated until the next screen can be displayed.

- The road is covered with snow
- When there are shadows due to light sources such as sunlight or illumination
- When driving on slippery roads or tires are spinning
- Dirt or foreign matter is adhering to the camera lens
- There is water in front of the vehicle (a river, puddle, sea water, etc.)
- Optional equipment has been installed
- When the camera is covered or there is an object in the image capture range
- Tires have been replaced
- When the back door is open
- When the steering wheel is operated at or more than a specified steering angle
- On roads that are not flat, such as slopes

WARNING

■ Guide lines

The tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines may differ from actual vehicle positions depending on the number of passengers, cargo weight, road grade, road surface conditions, brightness of the surrounding environment, whether tires or suspension parts other than those specified are equipped, etc.
Always drive the vehicle while confirming the safety of your surroundings.

WARNING

■ **Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) display**

- The image displayed is one that was previously taken at a point in front of the current vehicle position. In cases such as when objects move after the image is taken, the image displayed on the screen may differ from the actual state. In addition, when driving in the dark such as at night, there are cases when obstacles cannot be confirmed from the image.
- The area covered by the camera is limited. When driving, be sure to check the vehicle's surroundings with your own eyes and the vehicle's mirrors.

Screen display and functions

When the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4 and Multi-terrain Select is off, the various screens display information to support several different driving situations, such as when checking for obstacles when moving forward

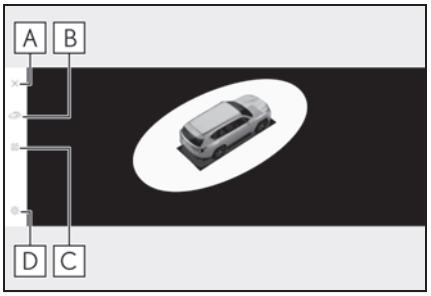
Checking around the vehicle

The moving view screen and the see-through view screen provide support when checking the areas of around the vehicle while parking. These screens display an image of the vicinity of the vehicle combined from the 4 cameras. The screen will display a 360° view around the vehicle from either inside the vehicle or from a birds-eye view at an angle.

To display the moving view/see-through view screen, press the VIEW switch when the shift lever is in the P position and the Lexus parking assist-sensor is enabled.

Screen display

▶ Moving view



A Display off button

Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

B Display mode switching button

Select to change the display mode between the moving view and the see-through view.

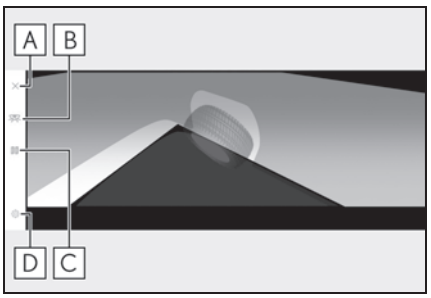
C Rotation pause/resume button

Pauses and resumes the rotation of the display.

D Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

▶ See-through view



A Display off button

Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

B Display mode switching button

Select to change the display mode between the moving view and the see-through view.

C Rotation pause/resume button

Pauses and resumes the rotation of the display.

D Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

- Pressing the VIEW switch again changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the Multimedia Display.

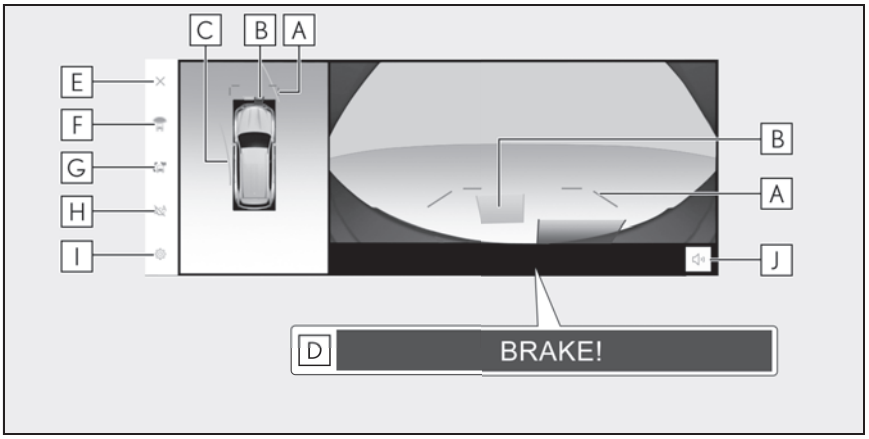
Checking the front and around the vehicle

The wide front view & panoramic view screen provides support when checking the areas in front of the vehicle and around the vehicle when taking-off at T-intersections or other intersections during poor visibility.

To display the screen, press the VIEW switch when the shift lever is in the N or D position with the vehicle moving approximately 20 km/h (13 mph) or less.

This screen will be displayed if the Lexus parking assist-sensor detects an object in front of your vehicle (Lexus parking assist-sensor linked display).

Screen display



A Distance guide lines

Shows distance in front of the vehicle.

- Display points approximately 1 m (3 ft.) from the edge of the bumper.

B Lexus parking assist-sensor

When a sensor detects a stationary object, the direction of and the approximate distance to the stationary object are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

C Estimated course lines

Shows an estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

- This line will be displayed when the steering wheel is turned by 90° or more from the center (straight-line) position.

D Parking Support Brake*

When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with detected target objects is high, a warning message is displayed.

E Display off button

Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

F Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time touch the button.

G Guide line switching button

Select to change the guide line mode between the distance guide line mode and the estimated course line mode. (→P.372)

H Automatic display button

Select to turn automatic display mode on/off. The indicator on the button illuminates during

automatic display mode. (→P.373)

I Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

J Lexus parking assist-sensor mute button

This button temporarily mutes the Lexus parking assist-sensor sound.

*: If equipped

■ **Wide front view & panoramic view display**

- Pressing the VIEW switch changes the screen to the Side Clearance View & panoramic view screen or previously displayed screen, such as the Multimedia Display.
- For details about the Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.319) and Parking Support Brake function. (→P.334)
- The display position of the Lexus parking assist-sensor and the position of target objects displayed in the camera image do not match.

WARNING

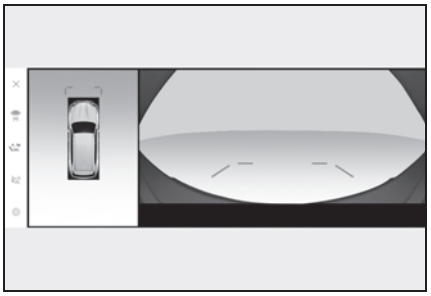
■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor display**

- When a sensor indicator on the Lexus parking assist-sensor display illuminates in red or a buzzer sounds continuously, be sure to check the area around the vehicle immediately and do not proceed any further until safety has been ensured, otherwise an unexpected accident may occur.
- As the Lexus parking assist-sensor display is displayed over the camera view, it may be difficult to see the Lexus parking assist-sensor display depending on the color and brightness of the surrounding area.

Switching the guide line mode

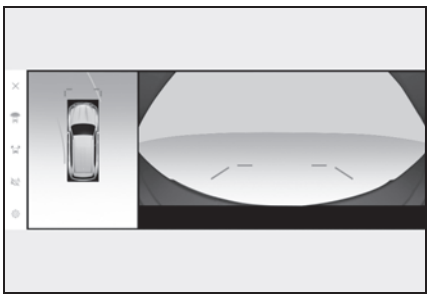
Each time the guide line switching button is selected, the mode will change as follows:

▶ Distance guide line



- Only the distance guide lines are displayed.

▶ Estimated course line



● Estimated course lines will be added to the distance guide lines.

Automatic display mode

In addition to screen switching by operating the VIEW switch, automatic display mode is available. In this mode, the screen is switched automatically in response to vehicle speed.

In automatic display mode, the monitor will automatically display images in the following situations:

● When the shift lever is shifted to N or D position.

● When vehicle speed is reduced to approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.

Checking the sides of the vehicle

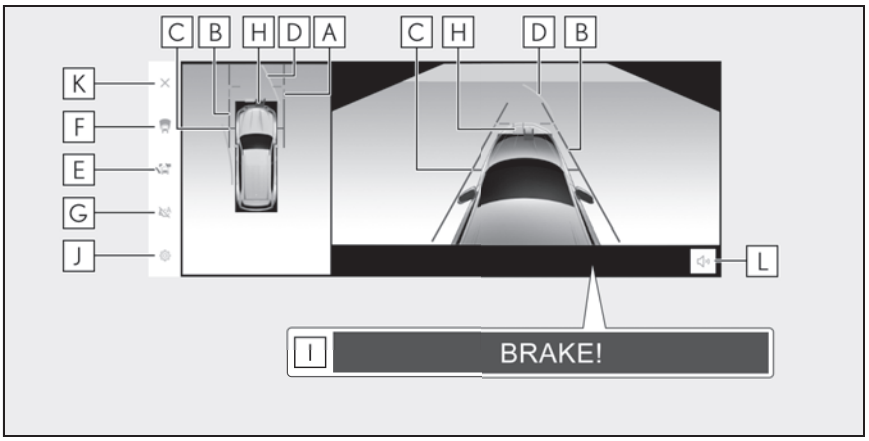
The Side Clearance View & panoramic view screen/Cornering View & panoramic view screen provide support to check the areas around the sides of the vehicle when driving on a narrow road.

To display the Side Clearance View & panoramic view screen, press the VIEW switch repeatedly when the shift lever is in the N or D position with the vehicle moving approximately 20 km/h (13 mph) or less.

The Cornering View & panoramic view screen will be displayed when the steering wheel is turned by 180° or more from the center (straight-line) position when automatic display mode of the Cornering View display is enabled. When the turning angle of the steering wheel becomes 90° or less from the center position, the screen will return to the Side Clearance View & panoramic view screen.

Screen display

▶ Side Clearance View & panoramic view



A Distance guide lines

Show distance in front of the vehicle.

- Display points approximately 1 m (3 ft.) from the edge of the bumper.

B Vehicle width guide lines

Shows guide lines of the vehicle's width including the outside rear view mirrors.

C Front tire guide lines

Shows guide lines of where the front tire touches the ground.

D Estimated course lines

Shows an estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

- This line will be displayed when the steering wheel is turned by 90° or more from the center (straight-line) position.

E Guide line switching button

Select to change the guide line mode between the distance guide line mode and the estimated course line mode. (→P.372)

F Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time touch the button.

G Automatic display button

Select to turn automatic display mode on/off. The indicator on the button illuminates during automatic display mode. (→P.377)

H Lexus parking assist-sensor

When a sensor detects a stationary object, the direction of and the approximate distance to the stationary object are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

I Parking Support Brake*

When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with detected target objects is high, a warning message is displayed.

J Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

K Display off button

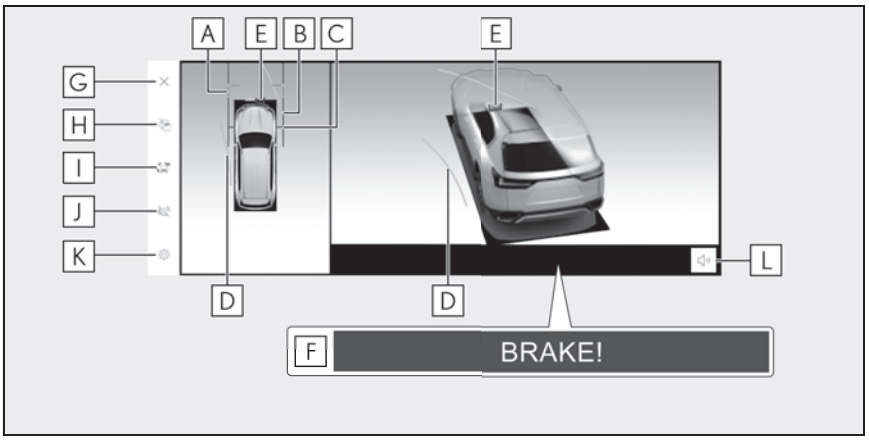
Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

L Lexus parking assist-sensor mute button

This button temporarily mutes the Lexus parking assist-sensor sound.

*: If equipped

▶ Cornering View & panoramic view



A Distance guide lines

Show distance in front of the vehicle.

- Display points approximately 1 m (3 ft.) from the edge of the bumper.

B Vehicle width guide lines

Shows guide lines of the vehicle's width including the outside rear view mirrors.

C Front tire guide lines

Shows guide lines of where the front tire touches the ground.

D Estimated course lines

Shows an estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

• This line will be displayed when the steering wheel is turned by 90° or more from the center (straight-line) position.

E Lexus parking assist-sensor

When a sensor detects a stationary object, the direction of and the approximate distance to the stationary object are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

F Parking Support Brake*

When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with detected target objects is high, a warning message is displayed.

G Display off button

Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

H Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time touch the button.

I Guide line switching button

Select to change the guide line mode between the distance guide line mode and the estimated course line mode. (→P.372)

J Automatic display button of Cornering View

Select to turn automatic display mode of Cornering View on/off. The indicator on the button illuminates during automatic display mode of Cornering View. (→P.377)

K Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

L Lexus parking assist-sensor mute button

This button temporarily mutes the Lexus parking assist-sensor sound.

*: If equipped

■ **Side Clearance View & panoramic view screen/Cornering View & panoramic view display**

- Pressing the VIEW switch changes the screen to the wide front view & panoramic view screen or previously displayed screen, such as the Multimedia Display.
- For details about the Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.319) and Parking Support Brake function. (→P.334)
- The display position of the Lexus parking assist-sensor and the position of target objects displayed in the camera image do not match.

WARNING

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor display

- When a sensor indicator on the Lexus parking assist-sensor display illuminates in red or a buzzer sounds continuously, be sure to check the area around the vehicle immediately and do not proceed any further until safety has been ensured, otherwise an unexpected accident may occur.
- As the Lexus parking assist-sensor display is displayed over the camera view, it may be difficult to see the Lexus parking assist-sensor display depending on the color and brightness of the surrounding area.

Automatic display mode

In addition to screen switching by operating the VIEW switch, automatic display mode is available. In this mode, the screen is switched automatically in response to vehicle speed.

In automatic display mode, the monitor will automatically display images in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is shifted to N or D position.
- When vehicle speed is reduced to approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.

Automatic display mode of Cornering View

When automatic display mode of the Cornering View display is enabled, the screen will change automatically between the Side Clearance View and Cornering View depending on the turning angle of the steering wheel.

In automatic display mode of Cornering View, the monitor will automatically display Cornering View images in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is shifted to N or D position.
- When vehicle speed is reduced to approximately 12 km/h (7 mph) or less.
- When the steering wheel is turned by 180° or more from the center (straight-line) position.

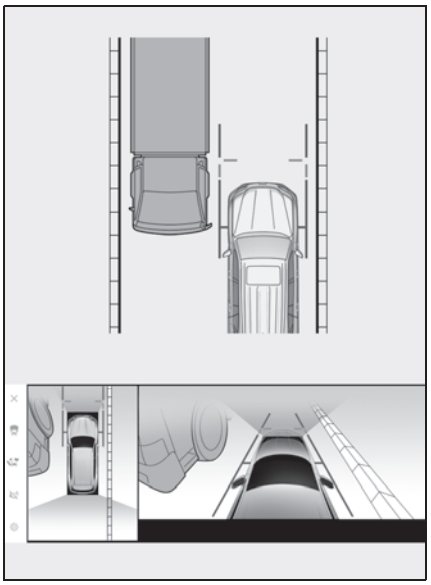
Cornering View images will disappear when the turning angle of the steering wheel becomes 90° or less from the center (straight-line) position.

■ Automatic display mode of Cornering View

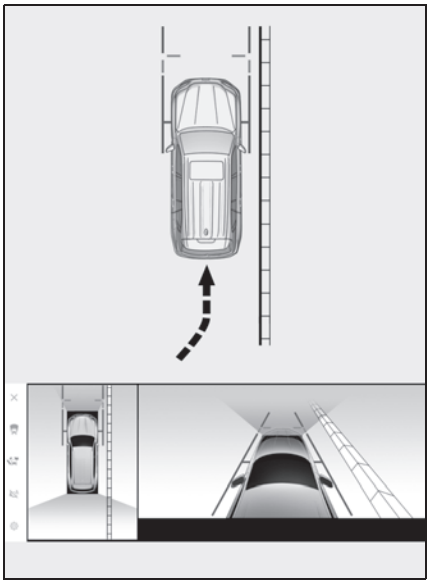
You can change automatic display mode of Cornering View in the custom settings.

Using the vehicle width guide line

▶ Side Clearance View & panoramic view



● Check the positions and distance between the vehicle width guide line and a target object such as the obstacle or curb of the road.

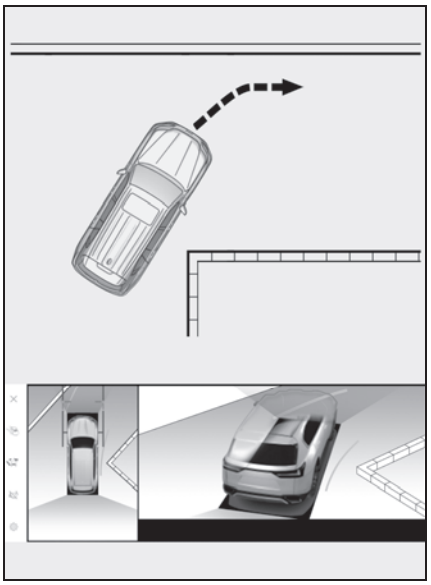


● Pull over to the curb as shown in the illustration above, taking care not to let the vehicle width guide line overlap the target object.

● Ensure that the vehicle width guide line is parallel to the target object.

Using the estimated course line

▶ Cornering View & panoramic view



- Check the positions and distance between the inner estimated course line and a target object such as the obstacle or curb of the road.
- Take care not to let the estimated course line overlap the target object.

Checking the rear and around the vehicle

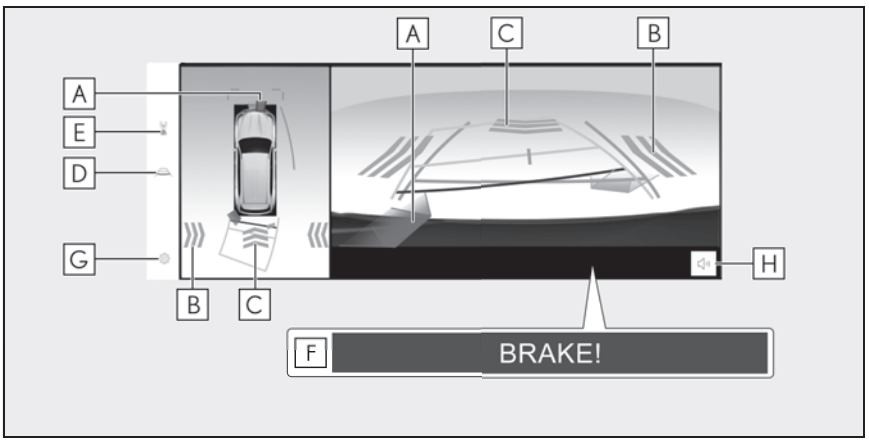
The rear view & panoramic view/wide rear view & panoramic view screen provide support when checking the areas of behind the vehicle and around the vehicle while backing up, for example while parking.

The screens will be displayed when the shift lever is in the R position.

Screen display

Each time the display mode switching button is selected, the mode will change as follows:

▶ Rear view & panoramic view



A Lexus parking assist-sensor

When a sensor detects a stationary object, the direction of and the approximate distance to the stationary object are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

B Rear Cross Traffic Alert*

When a sensor detects a vehicle approaching from the rear, the direction of the vehicle approaching from the rear is displayed and the buzzer sounds.

C Rear Camera Detection

Displayed automatically when a pedestrian is detected.

D Guide line switching button

Select to switch the guide line mode. (→P.382)

E Display mode switching button

Each time the display mode switching button is selected, the mode will change between the rear view & panoramic view mode and the wide rear view & panoramic view mode.

F Parking Support Brake*

When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with detected target objects is high, a warning message is displayed.

G Setting button

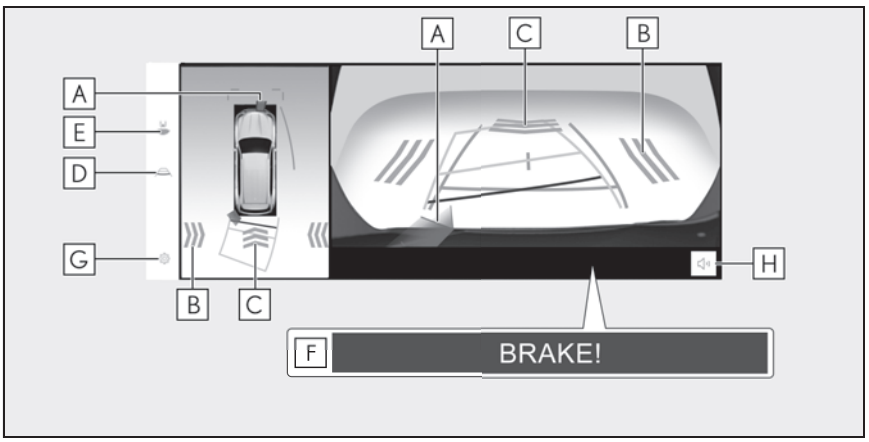
Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

H Lexus parking assist-sensor mute button

This button temporarily mutes the Lexus parking assist-sensor sound.

*: If equipped

▶ Wide rear view & panoramic view



A Lexus parking assist-sensor

When a sensor detects a stationary object, the direction of and the approximate distance to the stationary object are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

B Rear Cross Traffic Alert*

When a sensor detects a vehicle approaching from the rear, the direction of the vehicle approaching from the rear is displayed and the buzzer sounds.

C Rear Camera Detection

Displayed automatically when a pedestrian is detected.

D Guide line switching button

Select to switch the guide line mode. (→P.382)

E Display mode switching button

Each time the display mode switching button is selected, the mode will change between the rear view & panoramic view mode and the wide rear view & panoramic view mode.

F Parking Support Brake*

When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with detected target objects is high, a warning message is displayed.

G Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.390)

H Lexus parking assist-sensor mute button

This button temporarily mutes the Lexus parking assist-sensor sound.

*: If equipped

■ **Rear view & panoramic view/wide rear view & panoramic view display**

- The monitor is canceled when the shift lever is shifted into any position other than the R position.
- For details about the Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.319), Rear Cross Traffic Alert function (→P.325) and Parking Support Brake function. (→P.334)
- The display position of the Lexus parking assist-sensor and the position of target objects displayed in the camera image do not match.

WARNING

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor display**

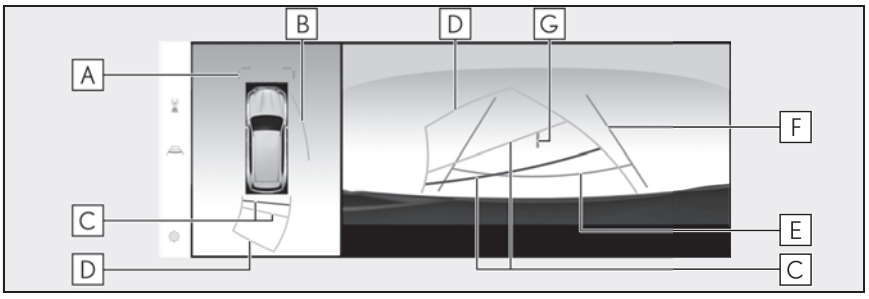
- When a sensor indicator on the Lexus parking assist-sensor display illuminates in red or a buzzer sounds continuously, be sure to check the area around the vehicle immediately and do not proceed any further until safety has been ensured, otherwise an unexpected accident may occur.
- As the Lexus parking assist-sensor display and Rear Cross Traffic Alert display are displayed over the camera view, it may be difficult to see the Lexus parking assist-sensor display and Rear Cross Traffic Alert display depending on the color and brightness of the surrounding area.

Guide lines displayed on the screen

Each time the guide line switching button is selected, the mode will change as follows:

▶ Estimated course line

Estimated course lines are displayed which move in accordance with the operation of the steering wheel.



A Distance guide lines

Shows distance in front of the vehicle.

- Display points approximately 1 m (3 ft.) from the edge of the bumper.

B Estimated course line

Shows a side estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

C Distance guide lines

Shows the distance behind the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned.

- The guide lines move in conjunction with the estimated course lines.
- The guide lines display points approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) and approximately 1 m (3 ft.) (yellow) from the center of the edge of the bumper.

D Estimated course line

Shows a rear estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

E Distance guide line

Shows the distance behind the vehicle.

- Displays a point approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red*) from the edge of the bumper.

F Vehicle width guide lines

Displays a guide path when the vehicle is being backed straight up.

G Vehicle center guide line

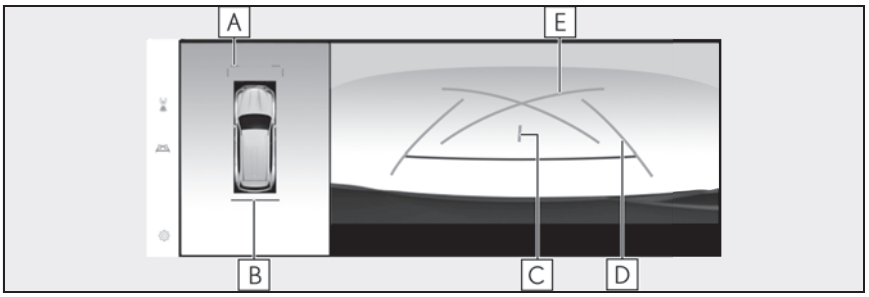
Indicates the estimated vehicle center on the ground.

*: In estimated course line mode, the line will turn blue.

▶ Parking assist guide line

The steering wheel return points (parking assist guide lines) are displayed.

This mode is recommended for those who are comfortable with parking the vehicle without the aid of the estimated course lines.



A Distance guide lines

Shows distance in front of the vehicle.

- Display points approximately 1 m (3 ft.) from the edge of the bumper.

B Distance guide line

Shows the distance behind the vehicle.

- Displays a point approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red*) from the edge of the bumper.

C Vehicle center guide line

Indicates the estimated vehicle center on the ground.

D Vehicle width guide lines

Displays a guide path when the vehicle is being backed straight up.

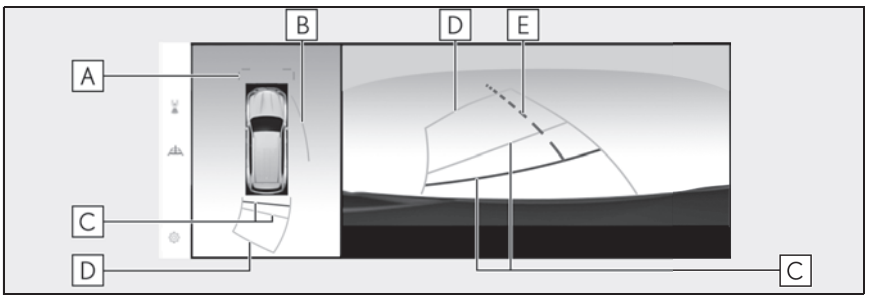
E Parking assist guide lines

Shows the path of the smallest turn possible behind the vehicle.

*: In estimated course line mode, the line will turn blue.

▶ Vehicle center estimated course line

Estimated course lines are displayed which move in accordance with the operation of the steering wheel.



A Distance guide lines

Shows distance in front of the vehicle.

- Display points approximately 1m (3 ft.) from the edge of the bumper.

B Estimated course line

Shows a side estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

C Distance guide lines

Shows the distance behind the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned.

- The guide lines move in conjunction with the estimated course lines.
- The guide lines display points approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) and approximately 1m (3 ft.) (yellow) from the center of the edge of the bumper.

D Estimated course line

Shows a rear estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

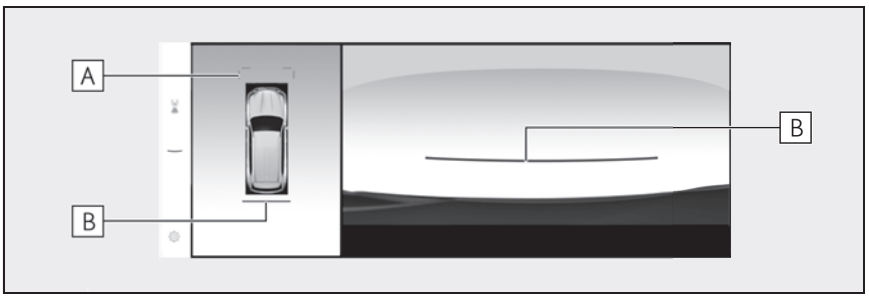
E Vehicle center estimated course line

Shows a vehicle center estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

▶ Distance guide line

Only distance guide line is displayed.

This mode is recommended for those who are comfortable with parking the vehicle without the aid of the guide lines.



A Distance guide lines

Shows distance in front of the vehicle.

- Display points approximately 1 m (3 ft.) from the edge of the bumper.

B Distance guide line

Shows the distance behind the vehicle.

- Displays a point approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red*) from the edge of the bumper.

*: In estimated course line mode, the line will turn blue.

Guide lines display

The display position of the Lexus parking assist-sensor and the position of target objects displayed in the camera image do not match.

Guide lines

If the back door is not closed, guide lines will not be displayed. If the guide lines do not display even when the back door is closed, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

Guide lines

- Depending on the circumstances of the vehicle (number of passengers, amount of luggage, etc.), the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may change. Be sure to check visually around the vehicle before proceeding.
- Do not use the system if the display is incorrect due to an uneven (hilly) road or a non-straight (curvy) road.

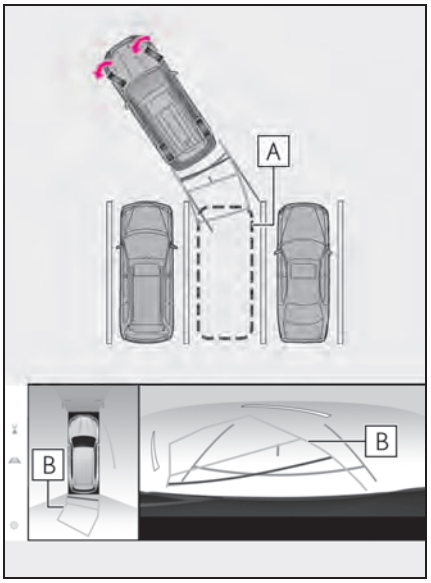
Parking

Using the estimated course line

When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

1 Shift the shift lever to the R position.

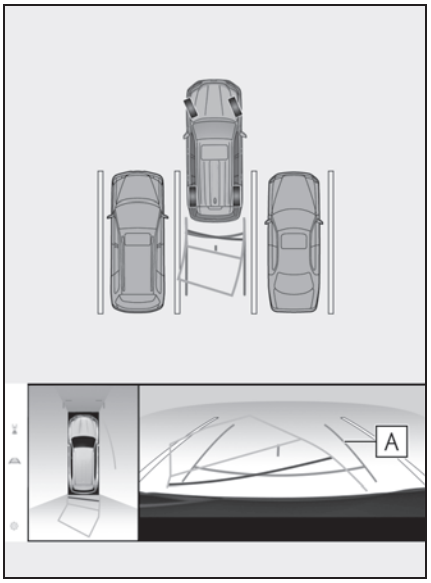
2 Turn the steering wheel so that the estimated course lines are within the parking space, and back up slowly.



A Parking space

B Estimated course lines

3 When the rear position of the vehicle has entered the parking space, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle width guide lines are within the left and right dividing lines of the parking space.



A Vehicle width guide line

4 Once the vehicle width guide lines and the parking space lines are parallel, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

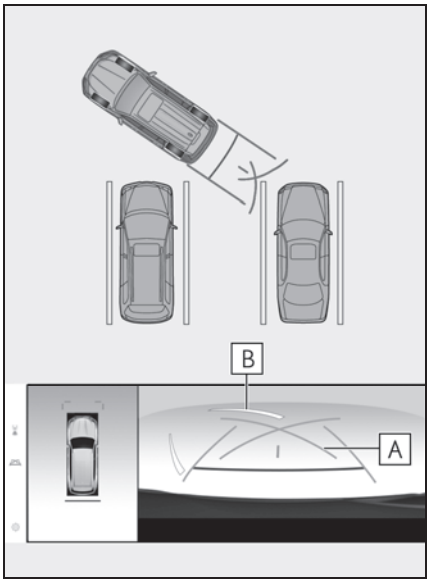
5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

Using parking assist guide line

When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

1 Shift the shift lever to the R position.

2 Back up until the parking assist guide line meets the edge of the dividing line of the parking space.



A Parking assist guide line

B Parking space dividing line

3 Turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, and back up slowly.

4 Once the vehicle is parallel with the parking space, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

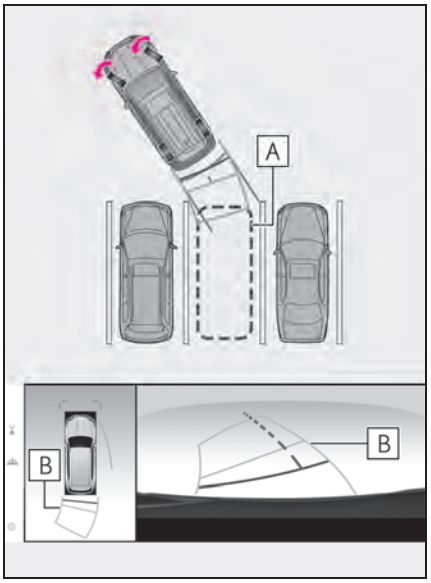
5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

Using the vehicle center estimated course line

When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

1 Shift the shift lever to the R position.

2 Turn the steering wheel so that the estimated course lines are within the parking space, and back up slowly.

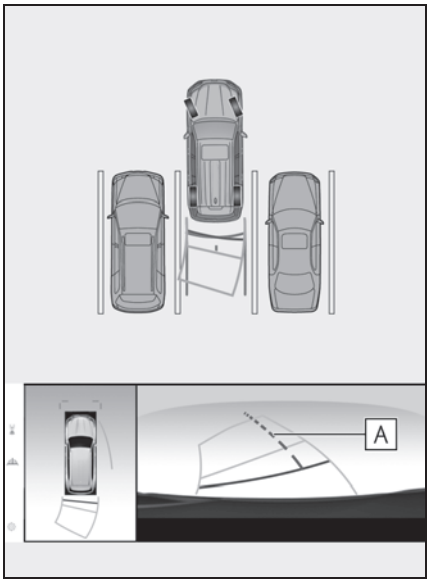


A Parking space

B Estimated course lines

3 When the rear position of the vehicle has entered the parking space, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle center estimated course

line is within the center of the parking space.



A Vehicle center estimated course line

4 Once the vehicle is parallel with the parking space, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

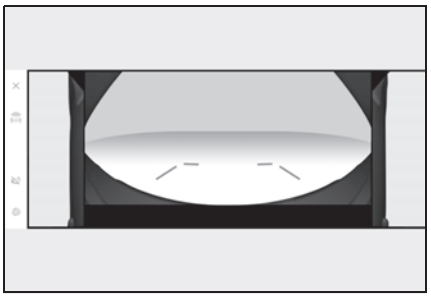
5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

When folding the outside rear view mirrors

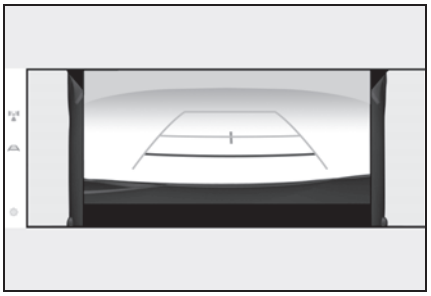
Even when outside rear view mirrors are stored, the monitor can display various images of the vicinity of the vehicle and assist the operation in the confirming safe conditions in a narrow places, parking, etc.

Screen display

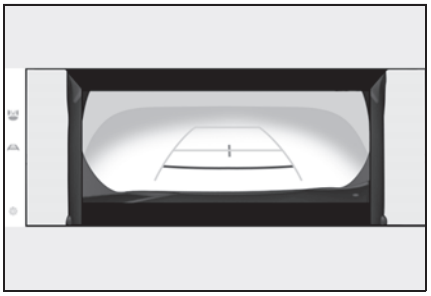
▶ Wide front view & dual side views



▶ Rear view & dual side views



▶ Wide rear view & dual side views



■ Screen display

For details about the front view and the rear view: →P.371, 379

WARNING

■ Guide lines

When a sensor indicator on the Lexus parking assist-sensor display illuminates in red or a buzzer sounds continuously, be sure to check the area around the vehicle immediately and do not proceed any further until safety has been ensured, otherwise an unexpected accident may occur.

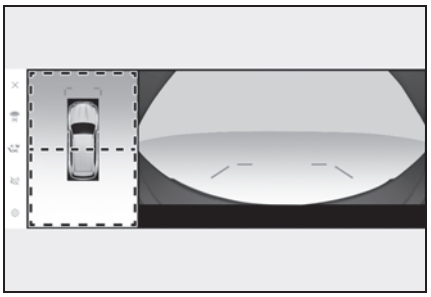
Magnifying function

If displayed objects are too small to see clearly when the panoramic view is displayed, the area around the front side or rear side of the vehicle can be magnified.

Magnifying the display

1 Turn the Lexus parking assist-sensor on.

2 Select the area on the panoramic view display you wish to magnify.



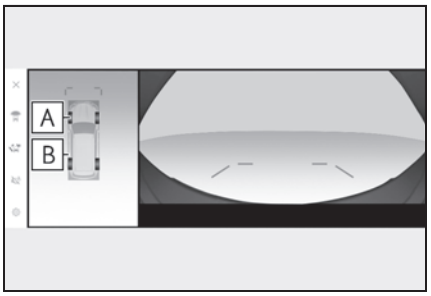
- Selecting one of the 2 areas within the dotted lines will magnify that area. (Dotted lines are not displayed on the actual display.)
- To return to the normal view, select the panoramic view display again.

■ Magnifying the display

- The magnifying function is enabled when all of the following conditions are met:
  - The wide front view & panoramic view/Side Clearance View & panoramic view/rear view & panoramic view/wide rear view & panoramic view is displayed.
  - The vehicle speed is below approximately 12 km/h (7 mph).
  - The Lexus parking assist-sensor is available.
- In the following situations, the magnified display will be canceled automatically:
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 12 km/h (7 mph) or higher.
  - The Lexus parking assist-sensor is unavailable.
- When the display is magnified, the guide lines will not be displayed.

Under vehicle terrain view

A composite of camera vision captured in the past from the current vehicle position to assist understanding of the situation under the vehicle, tire positions, and so on can be displayed. The vision is displayed in panoramic view, side clearance view, or cornering view.



A Tire tracks

Displays the tire position guides linked to the steering wheel.

B Vehicle guide lines

Displays the exterior of the vehicle.

■ Under vehicle terrain view

● Under vehicle terrain view is displayed when the setting on the customized setting screen is turned on and the vehicle is moving forward or backward.

● Under vehicle terrain view is not displayed in the following cases:
- The vehicle speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph).
- The vehicle stops and a certain amount of time passes.
- If the vehicle does not move a certain distance after it is started.
- The side mirrors are folded.
- Multi Terrain ABS is operating.
- The system is not functioning correctly.

● The system may not function correctly in the following situations:
- Snow covered roads.
- There are shadows from lights and so forth.
- There is dirt or a foreign object on the camera lens.
- Water (river, sea, etc.).
- Optional equipment has been installed.
- There is an obstacle in front of the camera.
- The tires were replaced.
- The back door is open and the camera is not in the correct position.
- The road surface is slippery or the wheels slip.
- The vehicle is on a hill or other steep roads.

● As the vision displayed was captured in the past, the screen and the actual situation may differ in the following cases:
- An obstacle appears or moves after vision is captured.
- Sand or snow crumbles and moves after vision is captured.
- Mud or puddles are in the display range.
- When the vehicle slips.

● Part or all of the under vehicle terrain view may appear black in the following cases:
- The vehicle starts moving with no captured vision.
- The steering wheel is turned more than a certain angle.
- The vehicle stops and a certain amount of time passes.

WARNING

■ Under vehicle terrain view

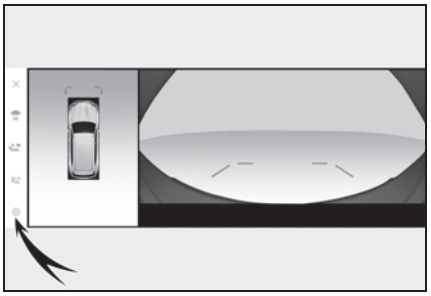
● The tire and vehicle guide lines may not align correctly with the actual vehicle position due to the number of passengers, vehicle load, road gradient, road surface conditions, brightness of the surroundings, optional equipment, tire replacements, and other reasons. Always make sure to check your surroundings while you are driving.

● Displayed vision is vision that was captured in the past. Therefore, if obstacles and other objects move after being captured, the transparent underfloor vision and the actual situation may not always match.

Changing the Multi-terrain Monitor settings

Settings related to Multi-terrain Monitor such as the cornering view auto display and vehicle body color can be changed.

1 Touch the setting button



2 Select the desired item.

● Cornering view

Automatically display the cornering view.

● Vehicle Body Color

Change the vehicle body color displayed on the screen.

● LEXUS Park Assist Distance

Change the distance that the Lexus parking assist-sensor starts detecting obstacles.

● Lexus Park Assist 3D Display

Show or hide the Lexus parking assist-sensor 3D display.

● View Under Vehicle

Turn the under vehicle terrain view display setting on or off. Setting it to on and moving the vehicle forward or backwards displays a composite of camera vision captured in the past from the current vehicle position to assist understanding of the situation under the vehicle, front tire positions, and so on. The vision is displayed in panoramic view, side clearance view, or cornering view.

■ Suspension of the settings display

For safety purposes, you cannot display the custom settings screen while the vehicle is moving.

When using the Multi-terrain Monitor

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in an unexpected accident. Also, when driving, make sure to directly confirm the safety of your surroundings and the area to the rear of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

■ Conditions under which the Multi-terrain Monitor should not be used

Do not use the Multi-terrain Monitor in the following situations. The system may not operate properly, resulting in an unexpected accident.

- When driving on an icy, snow-covered or otherwise slippery road surface
- When using tire chains or a spare tire
- When either front door or the back door is not completely closed
- When driving on an uneven road, such as a hill
- When tires or suspension parts other than those specified are equipped When the tires are replaced, the position indicated by the guide lines displayed on the screen may differ.
- When any aftermarket parts have been installed on the bumper area which is displayed by the camera

■ Guide lines

The tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines may differ from actual vehicle positions depending on the number of passengers, cargo weight, road grade, road surface conditions, brightness of the surrounding environment, etc. Always drive the vehicle while confirming the safety of your surroundings.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Panoramic view

- In the panoramic view, the system combines images taken from the front, back, left and right side cameras into a single image. There are limits to the range and content that can be displayed. Understand the characteristics of this system before using.

NOTICE

- Image clarity may decline at the four corners of the panoramic view. However, this is not a malfunction, as these are the regions along the border of each camera image where the images are combined.
- Depending on lighting conditions near each of the cameras, bright and dark patches may appear on the panoramic view.
- The panoramic view display does not extend higher than the installation position and image capture range of each camera.
- There are blind spots around the vehicle and there are regions that are not displayed in the panoramic view.
- Three-dimensional objects displayed in wide front view or rear view may not be displayed in the panoramic view.
- People and other three-dimensional obstacles may appear differently when displayed in the panoramic view. (These differences include, among others, cases in which displayed objects appear to have fallen over, disappear near image processing areas, appear from image processing areas, or when the actual distance to an object differs from the displayed position.)
- The panoramic view will not be properly displayed when either front door or the back door is open.
- The vehicle icon displayed in the panoramic view is a computer generated image, and properties such as the color, shape and size will differ from the actual vehicle. Therefore, nearby three-dimensional objects may appear to be touching the vehicle, and actual distances to three-dimensional objects may differ from those displayed.
- The camera may not function correctly and the image may be displayed on the screen in the following manner:
  - When the shift lever is in the R position, part or all of the screen may appear black.
  - When the shift lever is in the R position, the screen may not change to the camera image.
  - The guide lines are not displayed on the camera image, and attention symbols and caution notices are displayed.

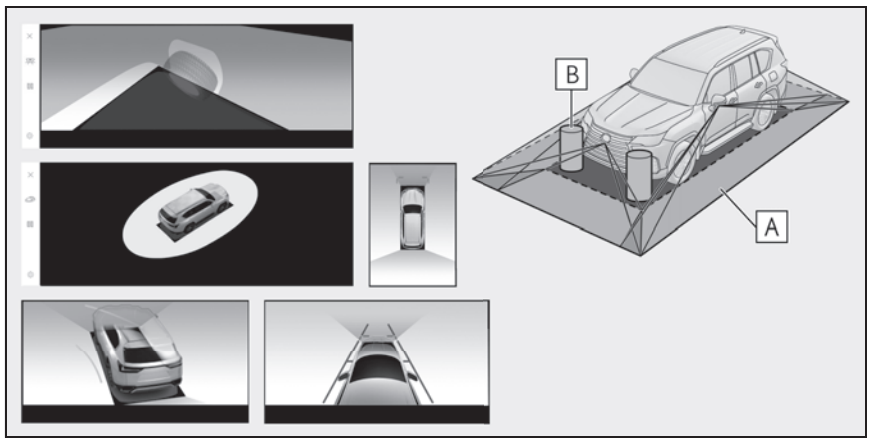
Area displayed on screen

Area of image of panoramic view:

The Multi-terrain Monitor displays an image of the surrounding view of the vehicle.

Since the panoramic view processes and displays images based on flat road surfaces, it cannot depict the position of three-dimension objects (such as vehicle bumpers, etc.) that are in positions higher than the surface of the road. Even if there is room between the bumpers of the vehicles and it seems not likely to collide in the image, in reality, the both vehicles are on a collision course.

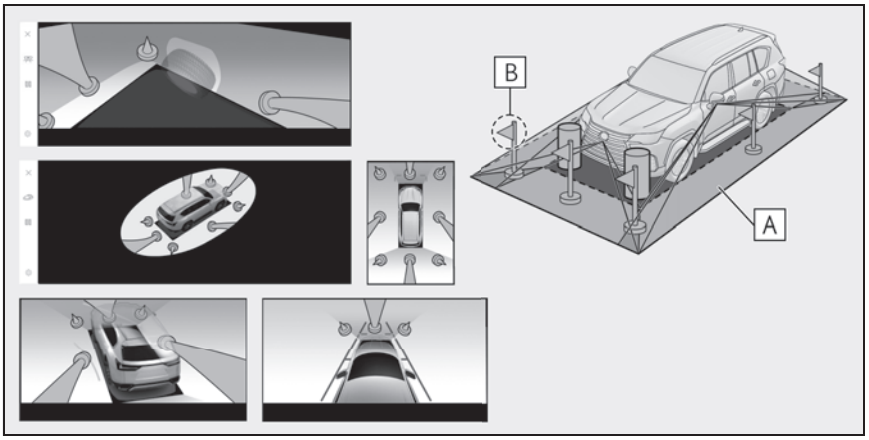
Check the safety of the surroundings directly.



A The area displayed on the screen

B The objects not displayed on the screen

- Objects located in the shaded areas will not be displayed on the screen.



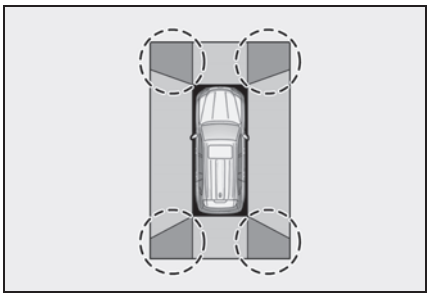
A The area displayed on the screen

B The parts of objects not displayed on the screen

- Parts of objects which extend above a certain height cannot be displayed on the screen.

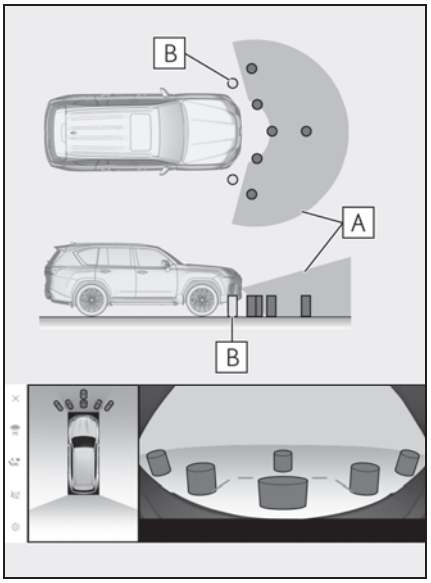
■ **Area displayed on screen**

- As the images obtained from four cameras are processed and displayed on the standard of a flat road surface; the panoramic view/moving view/see-through view/Side Clearance View/Cornering View may be displayed as follows.
  - Objects may look collapsed; thinner or bigger than usual.
  - An object with a higher position than the road surface may look farther away than it actually is or may not appear at all.
  - Tall objects may appear protruding from the non-displayed areas of the image.
- Variations in the brightness of the image may appear for every camera.
- The displayed image may be shifted by inclination of the vehicle body, change in vehicle height, etc., depending on the number of passengers, amount of luggage, fuel quantity, etc.
- If the front doors or back door are not completely closed; neither the image nor the guide lines are displayed.
- The position relations of the vehicle icon and the road surface or obstacle may differ from the actual positions.
- The black areas of the vicinity of the vehicle icon are areas that are not captured by the camera.
- Images like the following are combined, thus some areas may be difficult to view.



Area of the image captured by the camera

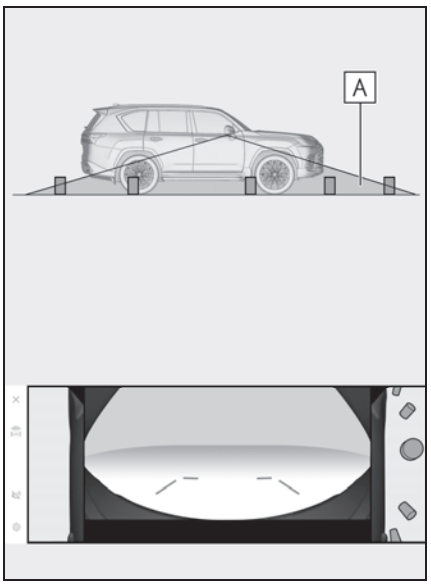
▶ Wide front view



A The area displayed on the screen

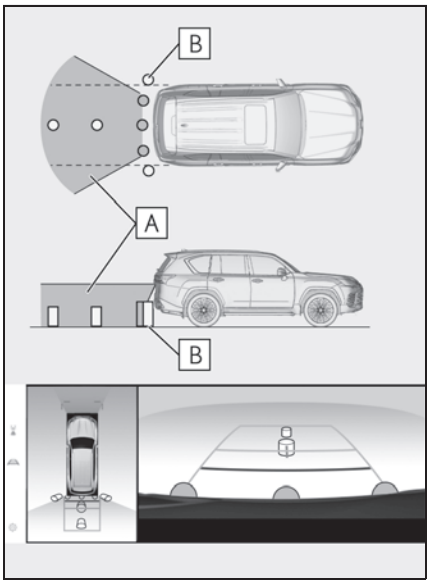
B The objects not displayed on the screen

▶ Side view



A The area displayed on the screen

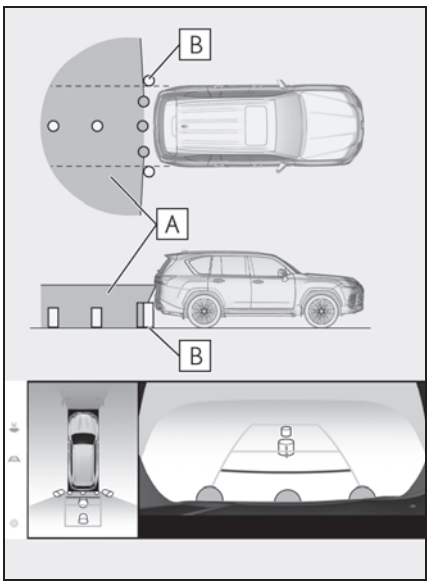
▶ Rear view



A The area displayed on the screen

B The objects not displayed on the screen

▶ Wide rear view



A The area displayed on the screen

B The objects not displayed on the screen

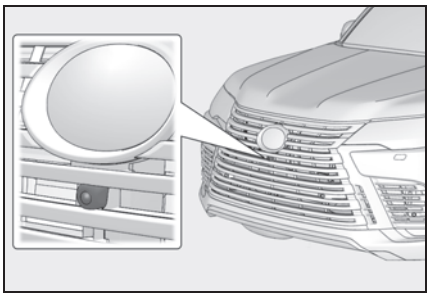
■ Display range

- The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.
- The area displayed on the screen may vary depending on vehicle orientation or road conditions.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distance in the image displayed on the screen will differ from the actual distance.

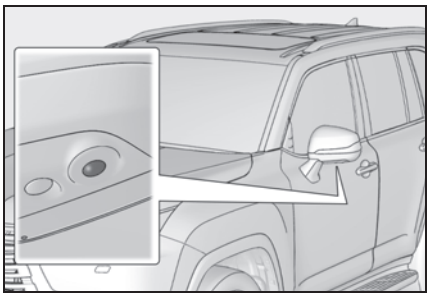
The camera

The cameras for the Multi-terrain Monitor are located as shown in the illustrations.

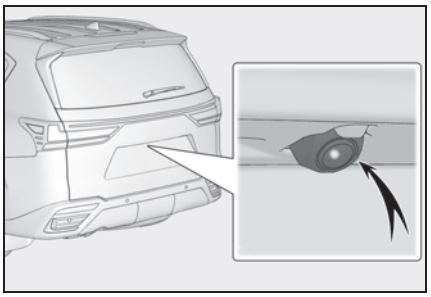
▶ Front camera



▶ Side cameras



▶ Rear camera



Using the camera

If dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud, etc.) is adhering to the camera, it cannot transmit a clear image. In this case, flush it with a large quantity of water and wipe the camera lens clean with a soft and wet

cloth.

Rear camera: Dirt on the camera lens can be cleaned by operating the dedicated camera cleaning washer. (if equipped) (→P.253)

NOTICE

■ How to use the cameras

● The Multi-terrain Monitor may not operate properly in the following cases.

- If the front or the rear of the vehicle or the outside rear view mirror has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle of the camera may change.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- When cleaning the camera lens, flush the camera with a large quantity of water and wipe it with a soft and wet cloth. Strongly rubbing the camera lens may cause the camera lens to be scratched and unable to transmit a clear image.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.
- When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium light or mercury light etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.
- The camera can be damaged by flying rocks and other debris.

● Do not expose the camera to strong impacts as this could cause a malfunction. If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Cleaning the rear camera with washer fluid (rear camera) (if equipped)

- When cleaning the camera, it may be difficult to see the image due to the washer fluid. When backing up, be sure to visually check all around the vehicle both directly and using the mirrors before proceeding.
- If washer fluid remains on the camera lens surface after cleaning, the image may be difficult to see at night due to the height or inclination of the headlights of the vehicle behind.
- Some dirts may not be removed completely after cleaning. In this case, rinse the camera lens with a large quantity of water and then wipe it clean with a soft cloth dampened with water.
- Washer fluid is sprayed onto the camera lens surface. Therefore, the ice, snow, etc. adhering around the camera cannot be removed.

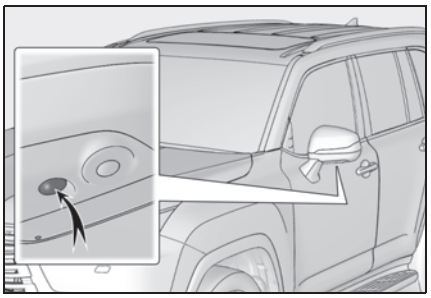
NOTICE

■ **Cleaning the camera with washer fluid**

Do not strike or hit the washer nozzle or subject it to a strong impact, as the washer nozzle installation position and angle may be changed.

Parking assist lights

The parking assist lights of the Multi-terrain Monitor system are installed in the locations shown in the figure.



NOTICE

■ **Parking assist lights**

● Make sure to observe the following precautions, otherwise the Multi-terrain Monitor system may not operate correctly:

- Do not apply excessive force to a light or subject it to a strong impact. Doing so may cause the position or installation angle of the light to deviate.
- Do not remove, disassemble, or modify the lights as they have a waterproof construction.
- When cleaning the lights, wash them with a large amount of water, and then wipe them with a soft wet cloth.
- Do not apply organic solvents, waxes, oil removing solvents, glass coatings, etc. to the covers of the lights, as they are made of resin. If such is applied, remove it immediately.
- Do not expose the lights to sudden temperature changes, such as applying hot water to them when it is cold.
- When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure washer, do not spray water directly on the lights or their surrounding area. High-pressure water can damage the lights and cause them to not operate correctly.

● If a light has been subjected to a strong impact, it may be damaged. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Difference between the screen and the actual road

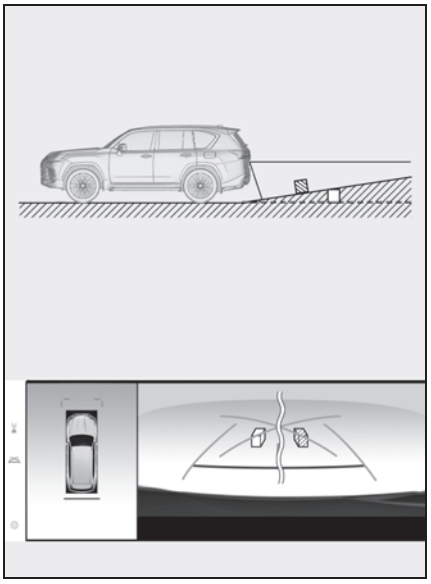
● The distance guide lines and the vehicle width guide lines may not actually be parallel with the dividing lines of the parking space, even when they appear to be so. Be sure to check visually.

● The distances between the vehicle width guide lines and the left and right dividing lines of the parking space may not be equal, even when they appear to be so. Be sure to check visually.

● The distance guide lines give a distance guide for flat road surfaces. In any of the following situations, there is a margin of error between the guide lines on the screen and the actual distance/course on the road.

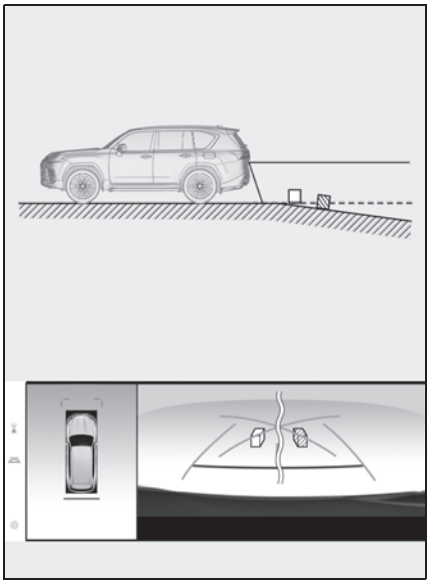
When the ground behind the vehicle slopes up sharply

The distance guide lines will appear to be closer to the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be farther away than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guide lines and the actual distance/course on the road.



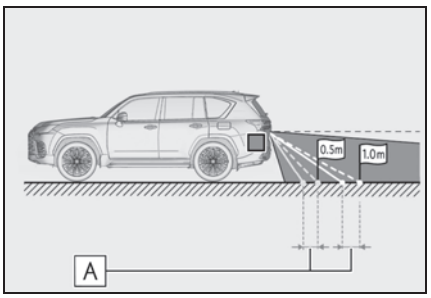
When the ground behind the vehicle slopes down sharply

The distance guide lines will appear to be farther from the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be closer than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guide lines and the actual distance/course on the road.



When any part of the vehicle sags

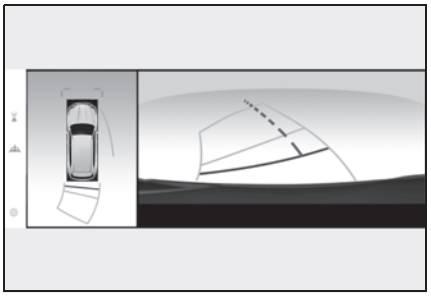
When any part of the vehicle sags due to the number of passengers or the distribution of the load, there is a margin of error between the guide lines on the screen and the actual distance/course on the road.



A A margin of error

Vehicle center estimated course line

As the guide lines are shown in the air near the rear bumper, there are times that they may look like they are off-center.



Distortion of three-dimensional objects on the screen

When there are three-dimensional objects (such as vehicle bumpers, etc.) nearby in positions higher than the surface of the road, take extra care when using the following.

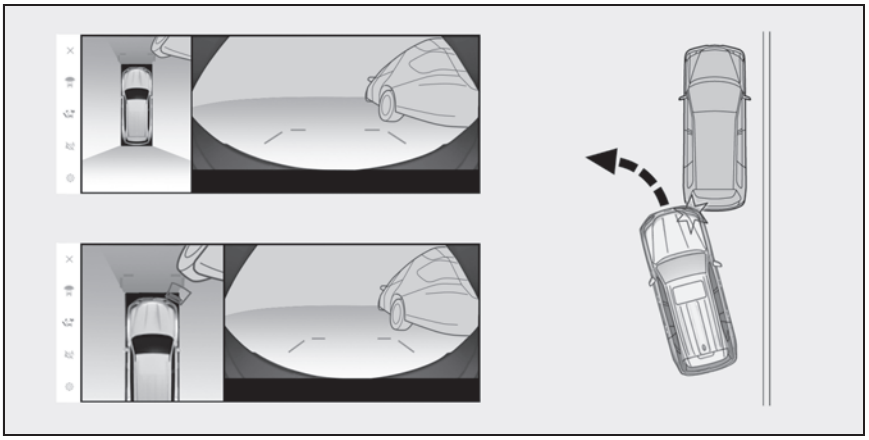
WARNING

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor pop-up display

When a sensor indicator on the Lexus parking assist-sensor display illuminates in red or a buzzer sounds continuously, be sure to check the area around the vehicle immediately and do not proceed any further until safety has been ensured, otherwise an unexpected accident may occur.

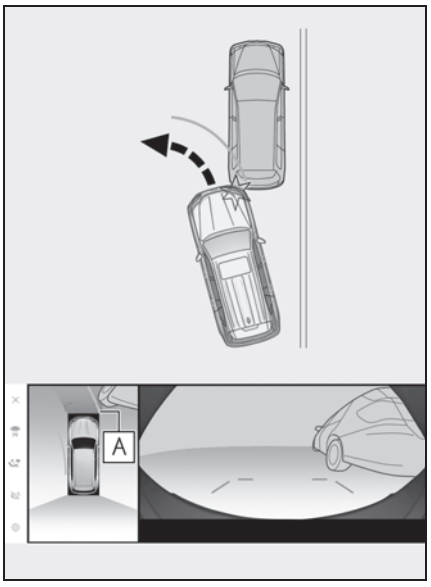
Panoramic view display (including magnified display), Side Clearance View and Cornering View display

Since the panoramic view, Side Clearance View and Cornering View process and display images based on flat road surfaces, it cannot depict the position of three-dimension objects (such as vehicle bumpers, etc.) that are in positions higher than the surface of the road. For example, even though it appears that there is space between the bumpers of the two vehicles in the illustration below and they are not likely to collide, in reality, a collision is about to occur.



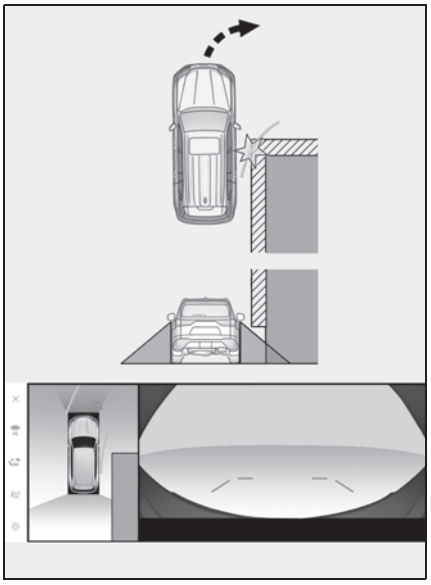
Estimated course lines

Since the estimated course line is displayed for a flat road surface, it cannot depict the position of three-dimensional objects (such as vehicle bumpers, etc.) that are in positions higher than the surface of the road. Even if the bumper of the vehicle is on the outside of the estimated course line in the image, in reality, the vehicles are on a collision course.

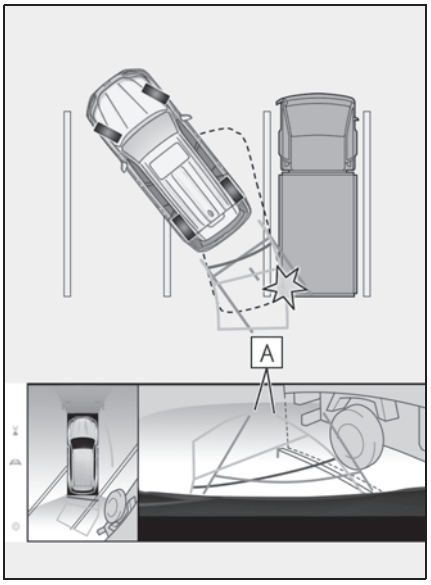


A Estimated course line

Three-dimensional objects (such as the overhang of a wall or loading platform of a truck) in high positions may not be projected on the screen. Check the safety of the surroundings directly.



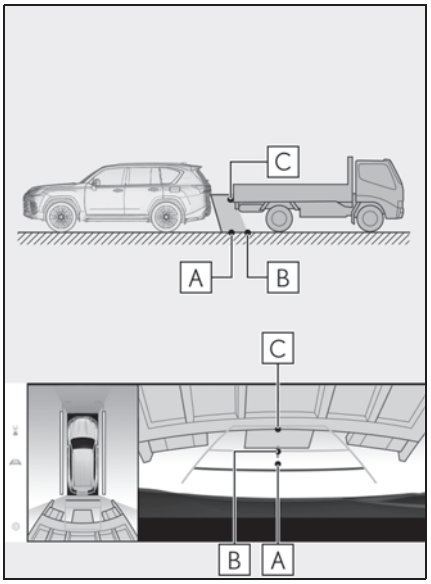
Visually check the surroundings and the area behind the vehicle. In the case shown below, the truck appears to be outside of the estimated course lines and the vehicle does not look as if it hits the truck. However, the rear body of the truck may actually cross over the estimated course lines. In reality if you back up as guided by the estimated course lines, the vehicle may hit the truck.

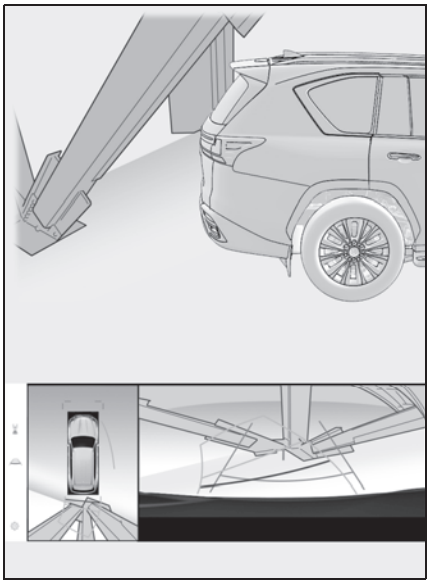


A Estimated course lines

Distance guide lines

Visually check the surroundings and the area behind the vehicle. On the screen, it appears that a truck is parking at point B. However, in reality if you back up to point A, you will hit the truck. On the screen, it appears that A is closest and C is farthest away. However, in reality, the distance to A and C is the same, and B is farther than A and C.





Under vehicle terrain view

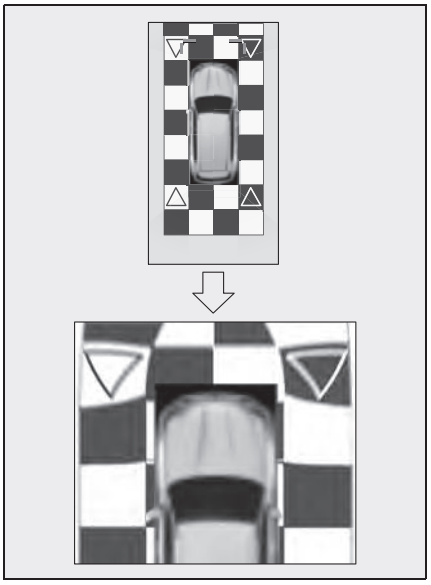
The tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines may differ from actual vehicle positions depending on the number of passengers, weight of the load, road grade, road surface conditions, brightness of the surrounding environment, etc. Always drive the vehicle while directly confirming the safety of your surroundings

Overhang of a diagonal beam

In panoramic view, a diagonal beam may appear straight and seems likely not to be struck, however, since the top part of the beam is actually overhanging, the vehicle may hit it. Make sure to visually check the rear and surroundings.

Magnifying function

Unlike the normal panoramic view, the panoramic view magnifying function zooms in on the vehicle icon. Therefore, white lines on the road, walls, and other objects may look bent.



■ Using under vehicle terrain view

● The images displayed were previously taken behind the current vehicle position. Therefore, actual conditions may differ from those shown on the screen in the following situations.

- When conditions changed such as when an object moved or entered the frame after the image was taken.
- Loose material like sand or snow has crumbled or shifted
- An obstacle has moved
- There is a puddle, tract of mud, etc., within the display range
- The vehicle slips

● In the following situations, actual tire positions and vehicle position may differ from those indicated by the tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines.

- Tires have been replaced
- Optional equipment has been installed

WARNING

■ Guide lines

The displayed guide lines are composed with the image that was previously taken and may differ from the actual state. Always drive the vehicle while confirming the safety of your surroundings.

Things you should know

If you notice any symptoms

If you notice any of the following symptoms, refer to the likely cause and the solution, and re-check.

If the symptom is not resolved by the solution, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is difficult to see	• The vehicle is in a dark area • The temperature around the lens is either high or low • The outside temperature is low • There are water droplets on the camera • It is raining or humid • Foreign matter (mud, etc.) is adhering to the camera • Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the camera • The vehicle is under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights, etc.	Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings. (Use the monitor again once conditions have been improved.) The procedure for adjusting the picture quality of the Multi-terrain Monitor system is the same as the procedure for adjusting the screen display. Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".
The image is blurry	Dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud, etc.) is adhering to the camera.	Flush the camera with a large quantity of water and wipe the camera lens clean with a soft and wet cloth. Rear camera: Operate the dedicated camera cleaning washer and clean the camera lens. (→P.253)
The image is out of alignment	The camera or surrounding area has received a strong impact.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The guide lines are very far out of alignment	The camera position is out of alignment.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
	• The vehicle is tilted. (There is a heavy load on the vehicle, tire pressure is low due to a tire puncture, etc.) • The vehicle is used on an incline.	If this happens due to these causes, it does not indicate a malfunction. Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The estimated course lines move even though the steering wheel is straight	There is a malfunction in the signals being output by the steering sensor.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
Guide lines are not displayed	The back door is open.	Close the back door. If this does not resolve the symptom, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The panoramic view display cannot be magnified	The Lexus parking assist-sensor may be malfunctioning or dirty.	Follow the correction procedures for malfunctions of the Lexus parking assist-sensor. (→P.319)
The See-through view/Moving view/Side Clearance View/Cornering View cannot be displayed		
is displayed	When dirt is detected on the camera.	Clean any dirt from the camera for which the icon was displayed. Operate the dedicated camera cleaning washer and clean the camera lens. (→P.253)

Product license

About Free / Open-Source Software Information

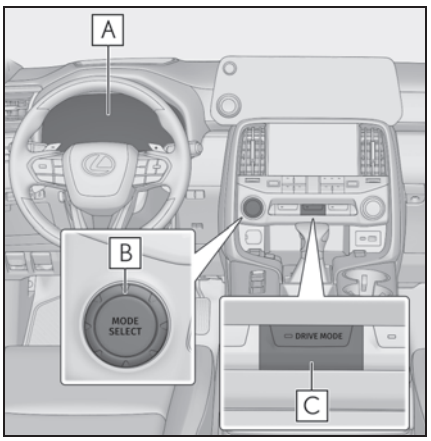
This product includes the free / open-source software.
You can obtain the licensing information of the free / open-source software from the following URL.

https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/svss/toyota/

Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving condition.

System components



A Multi-information display (→P.124)

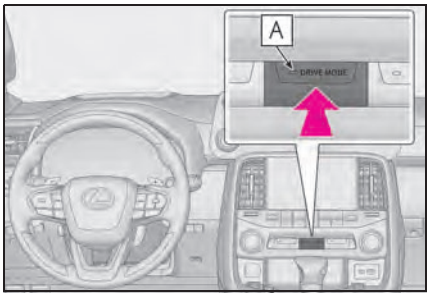
B MODE SELECT switch

C DRIVE MODE switch

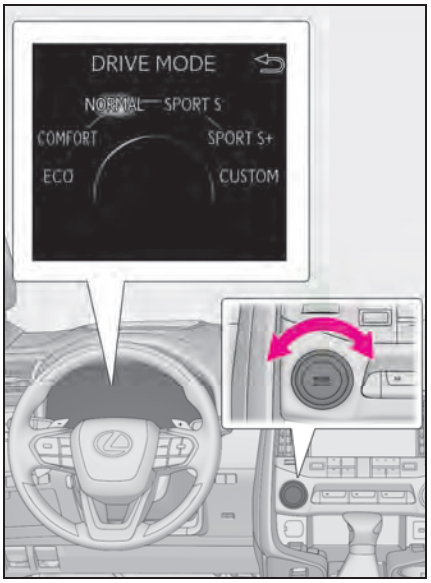
Selecting the driving mode

1 Press the DRIVE MODE switch.

The indicator A on the switch will turn on.



2 Select the driving modes on the multi-information display while turning the MODE SELECT switch left and right.



- Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance. Suitable for city driving.

- Comfort mode

By controlling the suspension, riding comfort is further enhanced. Suitable for city driving. The comfort mode indicator comes on.

- Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling). The Eco drive mode indicator comes on.

- SPORT S mode

Assists acceleration response by controlling the transmission. This mode is suit-

able for when powerful acceleration is desired. The SPORT S mode indicator comes on.

• SPORT S+ mode

Helps to ensure the controllability and stability of the vehicle by integrally controlling the steering wheel and suspensions as well as the transmission and engine, making it suitable for sporty driving. The SPORT S+ mode indicator comes on.

• Custom mode

Allows you to drive with the power train, steering wheel, suspensions and air conditioning system functions set to your preferred settings. Custom mode settings can only be changed on the drive mode customization display of Multimedia Display. (→P.637) The custom mode indicator comes on.

■ **The driving mode select switch can be operated when**

The four-wheel drive control switch is in H4.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Turn off eco air conditioning mode (→P.458)
- Adjust the fan speed (→P.457)
- Turn off Eco drive mode (→P.407)

■ **Automatic deactivation of driving mode**

Driving mode is deactivated and the driving mode will be changed to normal mode in the following conditions:

▶ When SPORT S mode, SPORT S+ mode or custom mode is selected

● After turning the engine switch off and then turning it to ON.

● When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

● When the Multi-terrain Select is turned on

▶ When Eco drive mode or comfort mode is selected

● When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

● When the Multi-terrain Select is turned on

■ **Customization**

The custom mode can be changed.

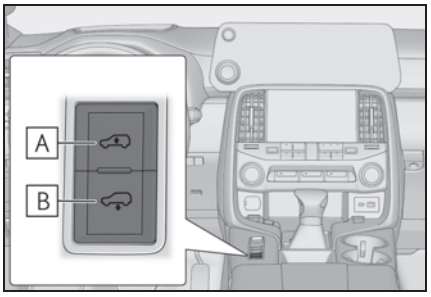
(Customizable features: →P.652)

AHC (Active Height Control Suspension)

The vehicle height modes can be selected to suit driving condition.

System components

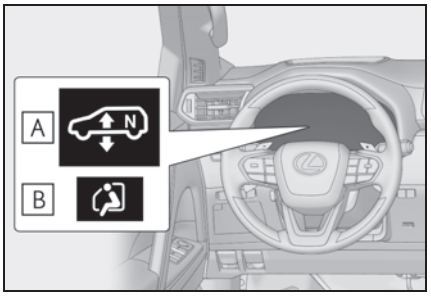
■ Height select switches



A Higher

B Lower

■ Meter display

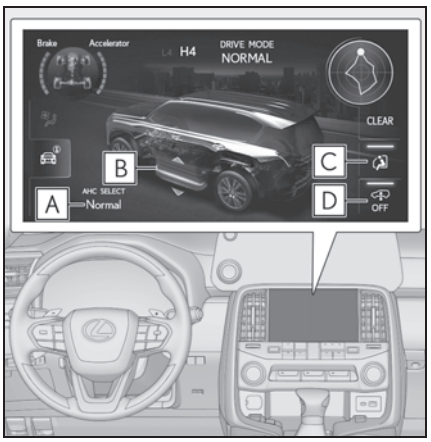


A AHC display

When the vehicle is stopped, selected vehicle height mode is displayed. When driving, current vehicle height mode is displayed.

B Easy access mode indicator

■ Front Multi Operation Panel



A Vehicle height mode

Selected vehicle height mode is displayed.

B AHC display

When the vehicle is stopped, selected vehicle height mode is displayed. When driving, current vehicle height mode is displayed.

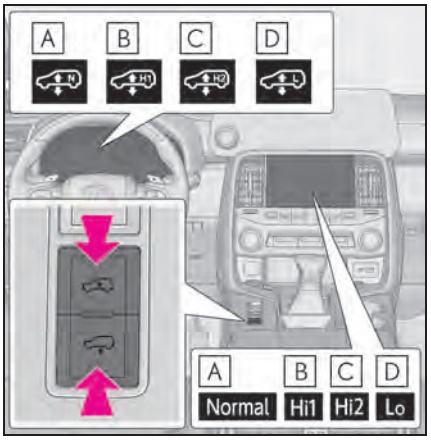
C Easy access mode switch

D Height control OFF switch

Selecting vehicle height

Press the height select switch.

Selected vehicle height mode is displayed on the AHC display and Front Multi Operation Panel. At this time, a part of the AHC display will flash. After the vehicle height is changed, the display will stop flashing, and come on.



A N (Normal) mode

B H1 (Hi1) mode

C H2 (Hi2) mode

D L (Lo) mode

Vehicle height modes

The vehicle height modes will change as the following table by operating the height select switch.

Vehicle height modes	Height select switch	
H2	H1	H2
H1	N	H2
N	L	H1
L	L	N

N mode

The standard vehicle height. This mode is suitable for ordinary driving.

H1 mode

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in H4

This mode is suitable for dirt roads driving.

H1 mode is only available when the vehicle speed is under 100 km/h (62 mph). Vehicle height is approximately 25 mm (1.0 in.) higher than N mode height.

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

This mode is suitable for extremely rough roads driving.

H1 mode is only available when the vehicle speed is under 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle height is approximately 55 mm (2.2 in.) higher than N mode height.

H2 mode

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in H4

This mode is suitable for rough roads driving.

- H2 mode is only available when the vehicle speed is under 30 km/h (19 mph). Vehicle height is approximately 75 mm (3.0 in.) higher than N mode height.
- H2 mode is only available when the vehicle speed is 30 km/h (19 mph) to 60 km/h (37 mph). Vehicle height is approximately 55 mm (2.2 in.) higher than N mode height.

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

This mode is suitable for extremely rough roads driving.

- H2 mode is only available when the vehicle speed is under 15 km/h (9 mph). Vehicle height is approximately 85 mm (3.3 in.) higher than N mode height.
- H2 mode is only available when the vehicle speed is 15 km/h (9 mph) to 50 km/h (31 mph). Vehicle height is approximately 75 mm (3.0 in.) higher than N mode height.

■ **L mode**

This mode allows easy access to the vehicle.

L mode is only available when the vehicle is traveling at 12 km/h (7 mph) or less. Vehicle height is approximately 25 mm (1.0 in.) lower than N mode height.

Conditions for changing the vehicle height mode

Some modes may not be selectable depending on the vehicle speed. Refer to the following table.

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in H4

Vehicle speed	Vehicle height modes			
	L	N	H1	H2
Under 12 km/h (7 mph)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
12 km/h (7 mph) to 60 km/h (37 mph)	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
60 km/h (37 mph) to 100 km/h (62 mph)	No	Yes	Yes	No
100 km/h (62 mph) or over	No	Yes	No	No

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

Vehicle speed	Vehicle height modes			
	L	N	H1	H2
Under 12 km/h (7 mph)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
12 km/h (7 mph) to 50 km/h (31 mph)	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
50 km/h (31 mph) to 80 km/h (50 mph)	No	Yes	Yes	No
80 km/h (50 mph) or over	No	Yes	No	No

Easy access mode

You can select this mode for easy access and easy loading of the vehicle.

To turn easy access mode on, turn the four-wheel drive control switch to H4

and press the easy access mode switch on the Front Multi Operation Panel.

When the easy access mode is in on, the indicator A on the switch and the easy access mode indicator on the meter comes on.

If the engine switch is turned off within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is stopped while easy access mode is on, the vehicle height is lowered automatically.

When the vehicle begins to lower, a buzzer will sound twice. The easy access mode indicator display will come on while the vehicle is lowering to indicate that the vehicle is lowering.

When the operation is complete, the easy access mode indicator will turns off.

Operation conditions of the easy access mode

- The easy access mode is operational when all of the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle height mode is in N mode.
  - The vehicle is stopped on a flat surface.
  - The shift lever is in P.
  - The side doors and back door are not opened after the vehicle is stopped.
- When press the height select switch , the vehicle lowering operation will cancel and the vehicle height will raise again.

In the following cases the easy access mode will not operate

The easy access mode does not operate when the suspension fluid temperature drops below -15°C (5°F).

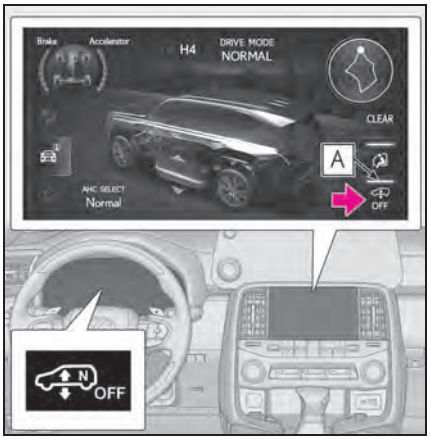
Disabling the height control

Press the height control OFF switch on the Front Multi Operation Panel while the vehicle is stopped.

The indicator A on the switch will come on and the OFF indicator will display on the AHC display.

When the height control OFF indicator is displayed, the vehicle height will not change even if the height select switch is operated.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.



Operating conditions of the AHC

- The engine must be running.

● Vehicle height control must be turned off.

● All side doors and the back door must be closed.

■ **Vehicle height control speed**

The vehicle height control speed will change depending on the operating state of the AHC.

■ **Switching vehicle height mode while the engine is stopped**

● If the engine is stopped while the vehicle height is being lowered, lowering will continue.

● If any luggage is removed from the vehicle or if any occupants leave the vehicle within approximately 30 seconds of the engine switch being turned off, the vehicle height may be lowered by the auto leveling function.

● Operating the height select switch will have no effect while the engine is stopped.

■ **Automatic change in vehicle height modes**

● N mode is automatically selected when all of the following conditions are met:
- The four-wheel drive control switch is shifted to H4
- The Multi-terrain Select is turned off

● In the following situations, H2 mode is automatically selected.
- When the four-wheel drive control switch is shifted to L4
- When the Multi-terrain Select is turned on*

*: The vehicle height mode will change depending on the selected mode.

■ **Automatic change in vehicle height when in H1 mode**

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in H4

● If the vehicle speed exceeds 100 km/h (62 mph), N mode is automatically selected.

● If the vehicle speed drops to 80 km/h (50 mph) or less, H1 mode is automatically resumed.

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

● If the vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), the vehicle height is lowered to 25 mm (1.0 in.) higher than N mode height.

● If the vehicle speed drops to 60 km/h (37 mph) or less, H1 mode is automatically resumed.

■ **Automatic change in vehicle height when in H2 mode**

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in H4

● If the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph), the vehicle height is lowered to 55 mm (2.2 in.) higher than N mode height.

● If the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h (37 mph), H1 mode is automatically selected.

● If the vehicle speed exceeds 100 km/h (62 mph), N mode is automatically selected.

● If the vehicle speed drops to 80 km/h (50 mph) or less, H1 mode is automatically resumed.

● If the vehicle speed drops to 40 km/h (25 mph) or less, the vehicle height is automatically set to 55 mm (2.2 in.) higher than the N mode height.

● If the vehicle speed drops to 10 km/h (6 mph) or less, the vehicle height is automatically set to 75 mm (3.0 in.) higher than the N mode height.

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

● If the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h (9 mph), the vehicle height is lowered to 75 mm (3.0 in.) higher than N mode height.

● If the vehicle speed exceeds 50 km/h (31 mph), H1 mode is automatically selected.

● If the vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), the vehicle height is lowered to 25 mm (1.0 in.) higher than N mode height.

● If the vehicle speed drops to 60 km/h (37 mph) or less, H1 mode is automatically resumed.

● If the vehicle speed drops to 30 km/h (19 mph) or less, the vehicle height is auto-

matically set to 75 mm (3.0 in.) higher than the N mode height.

- If the vehicle speed drops to 5 km/h (3 mph) or less, the vehicle height is automatically set to 85 mm (3.3 in.) higher than the N mode height.

Automatic change in vehicle height when in L mode

If the vehicle speed drops to 12 km/h (7 mph) or less, N mode is automatically resumed.

Extra high mode

If the vehicle becomes stuck, extra high mode may be automatically selected when the vehicle height is in H2 mode with the four-wheel drive control switch in the L4 position.

The vehicle height is raised to 20 mm (0.8 in.) higher than the H2 mode height, or slightly higher.

- Extra high mode will change back to H2 mode when:
  - The vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph)
  - The four-wheel drive control switch is shifted to H4.
- If you press the height select switch when in extra high mode, H1 mode is selected.
- Extra high mode cannot be manually selected.

Turning off the height control

- The system will remain off until the height control OFF switch is pressed again, even if the engine switch is turned off.
- Even if the system is turned off, the system will intervene automatically if the vehicle speed exceeds the following.
  - 30 km/h (18 mph) with H2 or L mode
  - 100 km/h (62 mph) with N or H1 mode

Automatic leveling function

The vehicle is adjusted to a fixed height for each mode, regardless of the number of occupants and the luggage load.

When the vehicle is stopped during driving

The activation of the automatic leveling function may cause the vehicle height to change. This is not a malfunction.

If the vehicle height does not change

If the vehicle is loaded too heavily, or the undercarriage has come into contact with the road surface, the vehicle height cannot be raised/lowered.

- In the following situations, the vehicle is loaded too heavily. Take extra care when driving in this condition.
  - If the vehicle height cannot be raised when in N mode, and "L" appears on the multi-information display
  - If the vehicle height cannot be raised when in H1 mode, and "L" or "N" appears on the multi-information display
  - If the vehicle height cannot be raised when in H2 mode, and "L" or "N" or "H1" appears on the multi-information display
- If the vehicle height cannot be raised even after unloading the vehicle, press the height select switch then press to .

In the following cases the AHC will not operate

- The AHC display on the meter will flash.
- Vehicle height control has not been frequently used.
- The suspension fluid temperature is lower than -30°C (-22°F).
- There is ice on the suspension.
- Driving on bumpy roads which may cause the suspension to fully elongate.
- If the steering wheel is abruptly turned more than 3/4 of a revolution with the center differential lock system activated (→P.417).

Cold weather operation

- It may take longer for the vehicle height to change if the suspension fluid temperature drops below -15°C (5°F).

- The AHC does not operate when the suspension fluid temperature drops below -30°C (-22°F). In this case, even if the height select switch is pressed, the vehicle height will not change. Once the vehicle has been driven for a short time and the suspension fluid has been warmed to within normal operating limits, the AHC will begin operating and the vehicle height will automatically change to the selected mode.

Parking and stopping tips

- If you immediately stop the engine after off-road driving, the vehicle height may gradually lower. When parking, make sure there is nothing under the vehicle that may come in contact with the underbody. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.
- The vehicle height may change as the temperature changes when the engine is stopped. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.

Propeller shaft noise

If the vehicle height is adjusted on a slope, or with the shift lever in a position other than P or N while the vehicle is stopped, you may hear a sound caused by the expansion and contraction of the propeller shaft. This does not indicate a malfunction.

AHC failure warning

- If a malfunction occurs in the AHC, N mode is automatically selected. However, the system may not switch to N mode depending on the location of the malfunction. The warning message is displayed on the multi-information display, and the AHC cannot be activated until the malfunction is corrected.
- Stop the engine and start it again. If the warning message turns off, the system is operating correctly. If the warning message continues to be displayed, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING

When switching the vehicle height mode

Before lowering the vehicle height, check that there are no people under or around the vehicle, and check for obstacles.

If you do not do this, body parts may be caught in the vehicle, possibly leading to an accident.

Using H2 mode

H2 mode should only be used when driving on rough roads, for example when driving off-road. Because the vehicle's center of gravity will become higher when in the mode, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly, resulting in an accident.

When jacking up the vehicle or installing tire chains

Turn off the height control and stop the engine, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

When crossing rivers

Select H2 mode and turn off the height control. Drive at 30 km/h (18 mph) or lower. Otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

If your vehicle must be towed

Put the vehicle height in N mode and turn off the height control, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

WARNING

■ **If your vehicle becomes stuck in a ditch**

Turn off the height control, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

■ **When parking in areas with limited overhead height**

After leaving the vehicle or unloading the luggage, the vehicle height may be slightly higher than normal. Take care when overhead height is limited.

■ **To avoid damage to the vehicle**

- N mode will be switched to automatically even if the vehicle is started off in L mode. Take care when overhead height is limited.
- Do not select L mode when driving on bumpy roads, as the underbody of the vehicle may contact the road surface.
- When traveling on bumpy roads or through water, or when towing, turn off easy access mode.

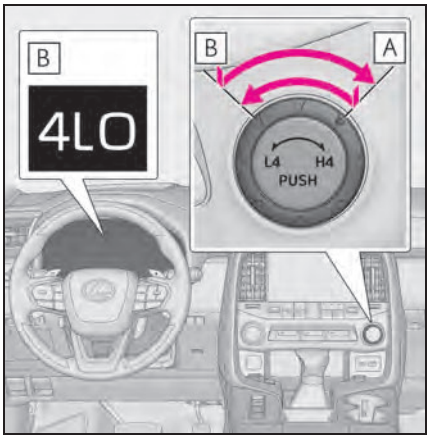
■ **Avoid rapid changes to the vehicle height**

As the pump may overheat. Leave a few seconds between selections when changing the vehicle height mode.

Four-wheel drive system

Use the four-wheel drive control switch and center differential lock switch to select the following transfer and center differential modes.

Four-wheel drive control switch



A H4 (high speed position)

Normal driving on all types of roads.

B L4 (low speed position)

Driving requiring maximum power and traction such as climbing or descending steep hills, off-road driving, and hard pulling in sand or mud, etc.

The low speed four-wheel drive indicator will come on.

Shifting between H4 and L4

■ **Shifting from H4 to L4**

1 Stop the vehicle completely.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

3 Push and turn the four-wheel drive control switch counterclockwise.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on.

■ Shifting from L4 to H4

1 Stop the vehicle completely.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

3 Push and turn the four-wheel drive control switch clockwise.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns off.

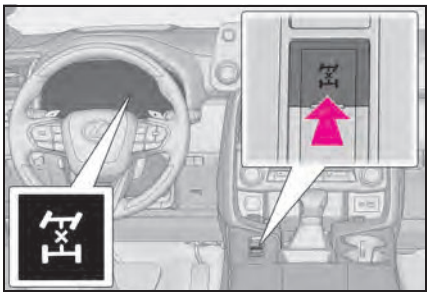
Center differential lock switch

Lock the center differential when your vehicle's wheels get stuck in a ditch or when driving on a slippery or bumpy surface.

The center differential lock indicator will come on.

To unlock the center differential, push the switch again.

Unlock the center differential after the wheels have been freed, or after moving to a flat, non-slippery surface.



■ The four-wheel drive control switch can be operated when

- The engine switch is in ON.
- The shift lever is in N.
- The vehicle is stopped completely.

■ The low speed four-wheel drive indicator light

The indicator light blinks while shifting between "H4" and "L4".

■ Advice for driving on slippery roads

- If you shift the four-wheel drive control switch to L4 and the shift lever to the 2 range of M while driving in steep off-road areas, the output of the brake can be controlled effectively by the Active TRC, which assists the driver to control the driving power of 4 wheels.
- Use the 1 range of M of the shift lever for maximum power and traction when your wheels get stuck or when driving down a steep incline.

■ The center differential lock indicator

The indicator blinks while locking/unlocking the center differential.

■ The center differential lock switch can be operated when

- The engine switch is in ON.
- The vehicle speed is less than 100 km/h (62 mph).

■ Locking/unlocking the center differential

- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 with the center differential locked, VSC is automatically turned off. (The center differential lock and VSC OFF indicator lights come on.)
- If the operation is not completed, the center differential lock indicator blinks. If the indicator light does not turn off when unlocking the center differential, drive straight ahead while accelerating or decelerating, or drive in reverse.
- If the center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is on, cancel the cruise control system.

■ If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator blinks

- If the low speed four-wheel drive indica-

tor light continues to blink when using the four-wheel drive control switch, stop the vehicle completely, move the shift lever to N and then operate the switch again.

- If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely. The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the shift lever is in P. You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode.

To complete the shifting, stop the vehicle completely, return the shift lever to N, and confirm that the shift was completed (the indicator turns on/off).

- If the engine coolant temperature is too low, the four-wheel drive control system may not be able to shift. When the engine is warmer operate the switch again.

If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator continues to blink even after attempting the above, there may be a malfunction in the engine, the brake system or the four-wheel drive system. In this case, you may not be able to shift between H4 and L4, and the center differential lock may not be operable. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

WARNING

■ While driving

Never move the four-wheel drive control switch if the wheels have lost traction. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is parked

If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely. The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the shift lever is in P. You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the center differential

- For normal driving on dry and hard surface roads, unlock the center differential.
- Unlock the center differential after the wheels are out of the ditch or off the slippery or bumpy surface.
- Do not push the center differential lock switch when the vehicle is turning or when its wheels are spinning freely off the ground.

Crawl Control (with Turn Assist function)

Allows travel on extremely rough off-road surfaces at a fixed low speed without pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. Minimizes loss of traction or vehicle slip when driving on slippery road surfaces, allowing for stable driving.

WARNING

■ When using Crawl Control (with Turn Assist function)

Do not rely solely on the Crawl Control (with Turn Assist function). This function does not extend the vehicle's performance limitations. Always thoroughly check the road conditions, and drive safely.

■ These conditions may cause the system not to operate properly

When driving on the following surfaces, the system may not be able to maintain a fixed low speed, which may result in an accident:

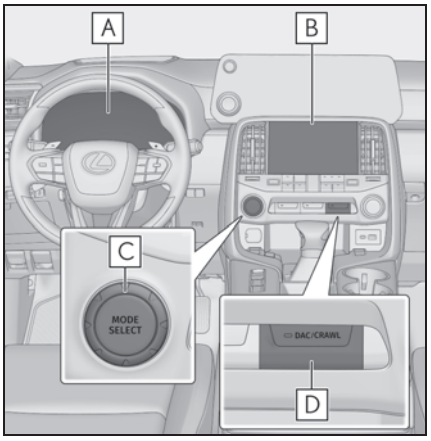
- Extremely steep inclines.
- Extremely uneven surfaces.
- Snow-covered roads, or other slippery surfaces.

NOTICE

■ When using Turn Assist function

The Turn Assist function is a function to assist turning performance when driving off-road. The function may be less effective on paved road surfaces.

System components



A Meter (→P.116, 124)

B Front Multi Operation Panel (→P.446)

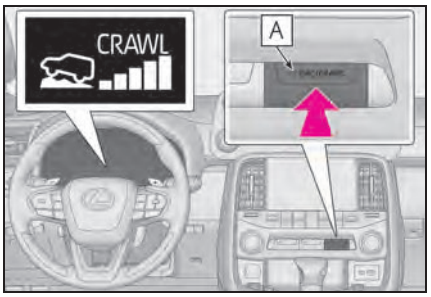
C MODE SELECT switch

D DAC/CRAWL switch

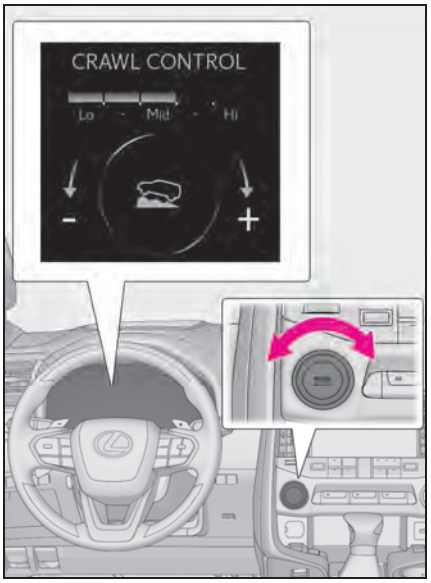
Turning Crawl Control on

1 Press the DAC/CRAWL switch.

The indicator light A and the Crawl Control indicator on the meter will come on, and the slip indicator light will flash.



2 Turn the MODE SELECT switch left or right to select a mode on the meter.



Selectable modes

A mode which matches the road conditions can be selected from among the following 5 modes.

1 Lo

Suitable for driving on rocky roads or decline

2 Lo-Mid

Suitable for driving on rocky roads, decline or bumpy incline

3 Mid

Suitable for driving on bumpy inclines

4 Mid-Hi

Suitable for driving on bumpy inclines, debris roads, snow-covered roads, muddy roads, gravel roads and grass roads

5 Hi

Suitable for driving on bumpy inclines, debris roads, snow-covered roads, muddy roads, gravel roads and grass roads

Turning Crawl Control off

▶ When the DAC/CRAWL switch indicator illuminates

Press the DAC/CRAWL switch again.

▶ When the DAC/CRAWL switch indicator does not illuminate

Press the DAC/CRAWL switch to turn the indicator on. Press the DAC/CRAWL switch again with the indicator turned on.

If Crawl Control is turned off, the Crawl Control indicator, slip indicator light and the Turn Assist indicator (when the Turn Assist function is in use) will go off and a message stating that Crawl Control has been turned off will be displayed on the multi-information display for several seconds.

When turning off Crawl Control while driving, drive extremely carefully.

Operation conditions of the Crawl Control

- The engine is running.
- The shift lever is in any gear other than P or N.

- The four-wheel drive control switch is in L4.
- The driver's door is closed.

■ Automatic system cancelation of Crawl Control

In the following situations, the buzzer will sound intermittently and Crawl Control will be canceled automatically. In this event, the Crawl Control indicator will flash and then go off, the Turn Assist indicator will go off (if the Turn Assist function is in use), and a message stating that Crawl Control has been turned off will be displayed on the multi-information display for several seconds.

- When the shift lever is moved to P or N.
- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4.
- When the driver's door is opened.

■ Function limitations of Crawl Control

- In the following situations, brake control can be used to drive downhill at a constant speed. However, engine control is not available when driving uphill at a constant speed.
  - When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).
- In the following situation, engine control and brake control will stop temporarily. In this event, the Crawl Control indicator will flash.
  - When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 25 km/h (15 mph).

■ When the Crawl Control system is operated continuously

- If Crawl Control is used continuously for a long time, the brake system may overheat. In this case, a buzzer will sound, a message stating a malfunction will be displayed on the multi-information display, and the Crawl Control indicator will flash and then go off. In this event, as Crawl Control will be temporarily inoperable, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe place, and allow the brake system to cool down sufficiently until the message goes off. (In the meantime, normal driving is possible.)
- If Crawl Control is used continuously for a long time, the automatic transmission may overheat. In this case, a buzzer will sound, the system will be temporarily canceled, and a message stating a malfunction may be displayed on the multi-information display. In this event, stop the vehicle in a safe place until the message goes off.

■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the Crawl Control system

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in Crawl Control system.
- Either of the following conditions may occur when the Crawl Control system is operating. None of these are indicators that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on. (→P.587, 592)

Turn Assist function

This function assists cornering performance in accordance with steering operation when driving through a tight corner. It maintains vehicle speed while driving and implements control that improves turning performance according to the driver's steering wheel operation, to reduce the number of turns.

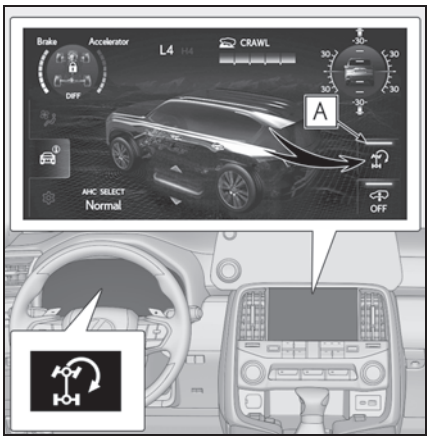
Turning the Turn Assist function on

1 While Crawl Control is operating, press the on Front Multi Operation Panel to display the off-road driving information display screen. (→P.446)

2 Press the Turn Assist switch

The indicator light A and Turn Assist indicator on the meter will come on.

To turn the system off, press the switch again.



Turning the Turn Assist function off

1 While the Turn Assist function is operating, press the on Front Multi Operation Panel to display the off-road driving information display screen. (→P.446)

2 Press the Turn Assist switch

The indicator light on the Turn Assist switch and Turn Assist indicator on the meter will go off, and a message stating that the Turn Assist function has been turned off will be displayed on the multi-information display for several seconds.

■ Operation conditions of the Turn Assist function

- The vehicle speed is approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.
- Crawl Control is operating.
- The brake pedal is not depressed
- The shift lever is in any gear other than P, R or N.
- The steering wheel is turned very far.

■ Function limitations of the Turn Assist function

In the following situations, the Turn Assist function will stop temporarily. In this event, the Turn Assist indicator will flash.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 10km/h (6 mph).
- When the shift lever is moved to R.

■ When the battery is disconnected

The Turn Assist indicator will flash and the system needs to be initialized. Drive the vehicle straight ahead for a while at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more. If the Turn Assist indicator still flashes even after initializing the system, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Multi-terrain Select

Multi-terrain Select is a system that improves drivability in off-road situations.

Select a mode that most closely matches the type of terrain on which you are driving from several modes. Brake control, drive force control and suspension control can be optimized in accordance with the selected mode.

When AUTO mode is selected, brake control, drive force control and suspension control are optimized automatically according to the road conditions.

WARNING

■ When using the Multi-terrain Select

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:

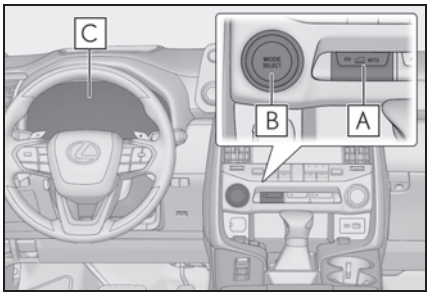
- Check that the selected mode indicators are illuminated before driving. Multi-terrain Select will not operate when the indicators are off.
- The road conditions listed (→P.423) are for reference only. There is a chance that the function may not be the most appropriate in terms of road conditions such as pitch, slipperiness, undulation, etc. Thoroughly check the road conditions before driving.
- Multi-terrain Select is not intended to expand the limits of the vehicle. Check the road conditions thoroughly beforehand, and drive safely and carefully.

NOTICE

■ Precaution for use

The Multi-terrain Select is intended for use during off-road driving. Do not use the system at any other time.

System components



A MTS switch

B MODE SELECT switch

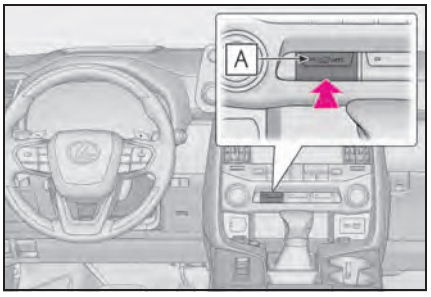
C Multi-information display

Selected mode is displayed.

Switching modes

1 Press the MTS switch.

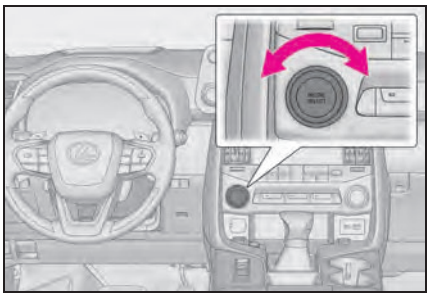
The indicator A on the switch will turn on.



2 Select the driving modes on the multi-information display while

turning the MODE SELECT switch left and right.

Depending on the positions of the four-wheel drive control switch, a mode can be selected from among the following modes.



▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

Mode		Road Conditions
	AUTO	Suitable for the road conditions
	SAND	Suitable for sandy roads
	MUD	Suitable for muddy roads
	ROCK	Suitable for rocky terrain

If the brake control has activated, the slip indicator light will flash.

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in H4

Mode		Road Conditions
	AUTO	Suitable for the road conditions
	DIRT	Suitable for dirt roads

Mode		Road Conditions
	SAND	Suitable for sandy roads
	MUD	Suitable for muddy roads
	DEEP SNOW	Suitable for deep snow roads

If the brake control has activated, the slip indicator light will flash.
When the vehicle is in SAND, MUD or DEEP SNOW mode, VSC is automatically turned off. (VSC OFF indicator light come on.)

■ Multi-terrain Select

Multi-terrain Select controls the vehicle so that it can maximize the drive force and improve drivability on rough roads. As a result, fuel efficiency may diminish when compared to driving in normal mode.

■ Automatic system cancelation

In the following situations, Multi-terrain Select will be canceled automatically.

- When the DRIVE MODE switch is pressed while the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4.
- When the engine switch is turned off

■ AUTO mode

Estimates the road conditions where the vehicle is being driven and optimizes brake control, drive force control and suspension control.
The capability to estimate the road conditions is limited and there is a chance that the Multi-terrain Select may not be the most appropriate for road conditions such as pitch, slipperiness, undulation, etc.
In these cases, select the mode that matches the road conditions before driving.

■ Turning off Multi-terrain Select

Performing the following turns Multi-terrain

Select off, and then the display on the multi-information display will disappear.

▶ When the MTS switch indicator is illuminated

Press the MTS switch while the system is in operation.

▶ When the MTS switch indicator is not illuminated

Press the MTS switch to turn the indicator on.

Press the MTS switch again with the Multi-terrain Select indicator illuminated.

■ **When the vehicle is stuck**

Switching the transfer and differential
For the operation of the following functions, refer to the following pages.

- Four-wheel drive system (→P.416)
- Center differential lock (→P.417)

■ **Driving in Multi-terrain Select**

The following types of situations may occur, but they are not malfunctions.

- Vibrations may be felt throughout the vehicle or steering wheel.
- Operating noise may be heard from the engine compartment.

■ **When an inspection at your Lexus dealer is necessary**

In the following situations, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

- When the slip indicator light illuminates.
- When the indicator for each mode does not illuminate on the multi-information display even though Multi-terrain Select is selected.

Downhill assist control system

The downhill assist control system helps to prevent excessive speed on steep downhill slopes. The system will operate when the vehicle is traveling under 30 km/h (18 mph) and transfer mode is in H4.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When using downhill assist control system**

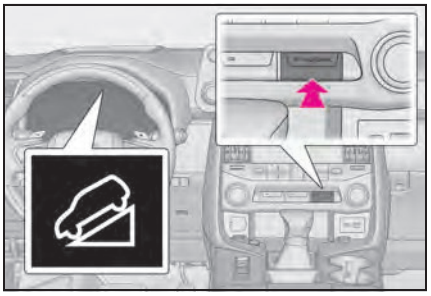
Do not rely overmuch on the downhill assist control system. This function does not extend the vehicle's performance limitations. Always thoroughly check the road conditions, and drive safely.

System operation

Press the DAC/CRAWL switch.

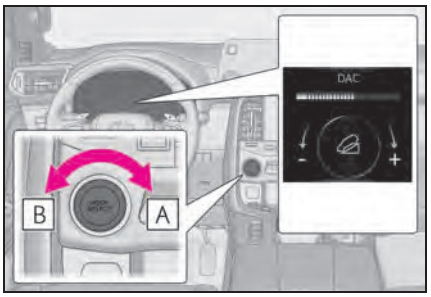
The downhill assist control system indicator will come on and the system will operate.

When the system is in operation, the slip indicator light will flash, and the stop lights/high mounted stop lights will be lit. A sound may also occur during the operation. This does not indicate a malfunction.



Setting the speed of the downhill assist control system

Turn the MODE SELECT switch to set the desired speed (approx. 4 to 30 km/h [2 to 18 mph]). The set speed is displayed on the multi-information display.



A Increases the speed

B Decreases the speed

Turning off the system

▶ When the DAC/CRAWL switch indicator illuminates

Press the DAC/CRAWL switch again.

▶ When the DAC/CRAWL switch indicator does not illuminate

Press the DAC/CRAWL switch to turn the indicator on. Press the DAC/CRAWL switch again with the indicator turned on.

The downhill assist control system indicator will flash as the system gradually ceases operation, and will turn off when the system is fully off.
Press the DAC/CRAWL switch while the downhill assist control system indicator is flashing to start the system again.

Operating tips

The system will operate when the shift lever is in a position other than P, however to make effective use of the system it is recommended to select a lower shift range.

If the downhill assist control system indicator flashes

- In the following situations, the indicator flashes and the system will not operate:
  - The four-wheel drive control switch is changed to a position other than H4.
  - The shift lever is in P.
  - The vehicle speed exceeds approximately 30 km/h (18 mph).
  - The brake system overheats.
- In the following situations, the indicator flashes to alert the driver, but the system will operate:
  - The shift lever is in N.
  - The DAC/CRAWL switch is pressed while the DAC/CRAWL switch indicator illuminates.

The system will gradually ceases operation. The indicator will flash during operation, and then go off when the system is fully off.

When the downhill assist control system is operated continuously

If the downhill assist control system is operated for a long period of time, the brake system may abnormally overheat. To prevent that, a buzzer will sound and the function is temporarily stopped.

In this case, the downhill assist control system indicator will flash and "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display. (The vehicle can be driven normally during this time)

When the downhill assist control system indicator switches to steadily illuminated after a short while and the "Traction Control Turned Off" disappears, the system will become available.

Sounds and vibrations caused by the downhill assist control system

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started

or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in downhill assist control system.

- Either of the following conditions may occur when the downhill assist control system is operating. None of these are indicators that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

■ System malfunction

In the following cases, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- The downhill assist control system indicator does not come on when the DAC/CRAWL switch is pressed.
- The slip indicator light comes on.

⚠ WARNING

■ The system may not operate on the following surfaces, which may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury

On the following surfaces, the vehicle may be unable to maintain a constant low speed especially when the grip performance limit of the tires is exceeded or if the tires do not make sufficient contact with the ground. This could result in serious injury, or even death.

- Slippery surfaces such as wet or muddy roads
- Icy surface
- Very bumpy and rough roads

DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter) system*

*: If equipped

When the deposit collected by the filter reaches a predetermined amount, it is automatically regenerated.

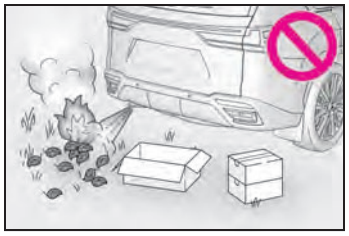
⚠ WARNING

■ During regeneration

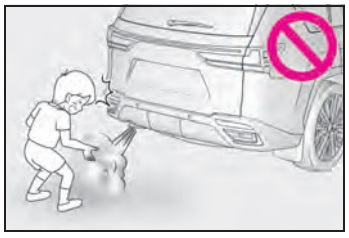
Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns caused by the hot exhaust pipe and exhaust gases, or may cause a fire.

- Do not stop the vehicle where flammable materials, such as dry grass, are near the exhaust pipe.



- Make sure that there are no people near the exhaust pipe.



- Do not carry out regeneration when the vehicle is in an enclosed area, such as a garage.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipe and exhaust gases during regeneration.

NOTICE

■ To prevent the DPF system from failing

- Do not drive for long periods of time while "DPF Full Visit Your Dealer" appears on the multi-information display
- Do not use fuel other than the specified type
- Do not use engine oil other than the recommended type
- Do not modify the exhaust pipe

Regeneration

- During normal driving, the filter is automatically regenerated every several hundred kilometers*. During regeneration, "DPF Regeneration in Progress" is displayed on the multi-information display.
- When the amount of accumulated deposit reaches a certain level, regeneration can be performed. (→P.428)

*: Differs in accordance with weather, driving conditions, etc.

System characteristics

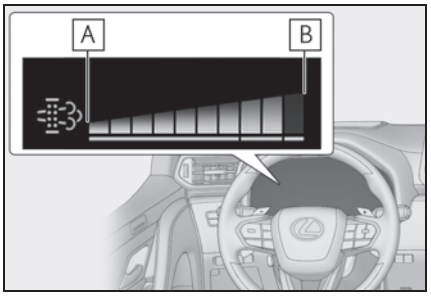
The DPF system has the following characteristics:

- Idle speed increases during regeneration
- The smell of the exhaust gas differs from that of a conventional diesel vehicle
- White smoke may be emitted from the exhaust pipe during regeneration. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

DPF deposition monitor

The amount of accumulated deposit in the DPF system can be confirmed from the DPF deposition monitor.

The DPF deposition monitor appears when the DPF system switch is pressed or the warning message is displayed. Use the displayed DPF deposition as a reference.



A Low

B Full

DPF system failure warning

- If "DPF full See Owner's Manual" appears on the multi-information display, follow the procedure below to regenerate.

1. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

Do not stop the engine. Also, make sure that there are no flammable materials near the exhaust pipe. (→P.427)

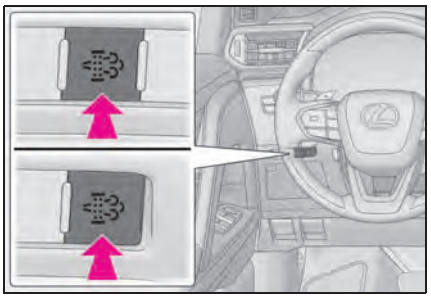
Check the engine is warmed up. If the engine is cold, warm up the engine by

depressing the accelerator pedal.*1

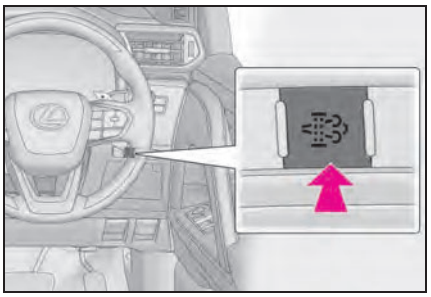
3 Press the DPF system switch.

The "Manual Regeneration in Progress Keep Flammables Away from Vehicle" appears on the multi-information display, and the idling engine speed will increase.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



Regeneration will take around 15 - 40 minutes to complete.*2

When the warning message disappears, the idling engine speed will have finished returning to normal.

The DPF system switch may not operate when the vehicle is higher than 4000 m (13124 ft.) above sea level.

*1: Depending on the situation, it may be necessary to depress the accelerator pedal until the engine speed is increased to 3000 rpm. If the engine coolant temperature or exhaust gas temperature is low, it may take a long time to regenerate, or regeneration may be impossible.

*2: Time required for regeneration differs in accordance with the outside temperature. Also, if the engine speed is still approximately 2000 rpm 10 minutes after pressing the DPF system switch, the exhaust gas temperature may be low. In this case, depress the accelerator pedal to run the engine at approximately 3000 rpm for a while.

- If "DPF Full Manual Regeneration Required See Owner's Manual" appears on the multi-information display, press the DPF system switch to regenerate the filter.
- If "DPF Full Visit Your Dealer" appears on the multi-information display and the malfunction indicator lamp comes on, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Regeneration with the DPF system switch

- After pressing the DPF system switch, depressing the accelerator pedal will stop regeneration. If regeneration has been stopped, restart regeneration as soon as possible.
- After regeneration is finished, race the engine several time to clean the exhaust system.
- If regeneration is carried out while the exhaust pipe is hot (for example directly after driving), it will take less time than when the engine is cold.

Replacing the engine oil

Make sure to use an oil of the recommended grade or of matching quality. (→P.626)

■ DPF system warning

Under the following driving conditions, the warning message may appears earlier than normal.*

- When only driving at low speeds (for example 20 km/h [12 mph] or below).
- If the engine is turned on and off frequently (if the engine is not left running for more than 10 minutes at a time).

*: Differs in accordance with weather, driving conditions, etc.

NOTICE

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if you continue driving while the warning message appears on the multi-information display. In this event, damage may be caused to the vehicle or an accident may occur. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Driving assist systems

To keep driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

Summary of the driving assist systems

■ ECB (Electronically Controlled Brake System)

The electronically controlled system generates braking force corresponding to the brake operation

■ Multi Terrain ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface, or in off-road conditions (such as rough roads, sand and mud)
The Multi Terrain ABS operates in synchronization with the Multi-terrain Select

■ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

Provides cooperative control of the Multi Terrain ABS, Active TRC, VSC and EPS.

Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

■ Trailer Sway Control

Helps the driver to control trailer sway by selectively applying brake pressure for individual wheels and reducing driving torque when trailer sway is detected.

■ Active TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

■ Hill-start assist control

Helps to reduce the backward movement of the vehicle when starting on an uphill

■ EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

■ VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)

Provides integrated control of the Multi Terrain ABS, brake assist, Active TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control and EPS systems. Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes, engine output and steering assist.

■ AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)

The damping force of the shock absorbers are independently controlled for the 4 wheels according to factors including the road surface conditions and driving operation, contributing toward enhancing smooth driving comfort and superior stability, and helping to maintain vehicle posture.

In addition, the damping force can be changed by selecting the drive mode with the driving mode select (→P.407), and driving comfort can be ensured during off-road driving by setting the four-wheel drive control switch to L4. (→P.416)

■ Emergency brake signal

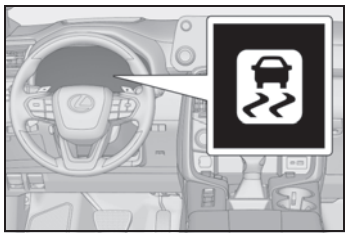
When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

■ Secondary Collision Brake (if equipped)

When the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision and the system operates, the brakes and brake lights are automatically controlled to reduce the vehicle speed and help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision.

■ **When the Active TRC/VSC/Multi Terrain ABS/Trailer Sway Control systems are operating**

The slip indicator light will flash while the Active TRC/VSC/Multi Terrain ABS/Trailer Sway Control systems are operating.

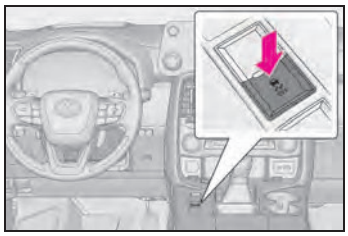


■ **Disabling the Active TRC system**

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the Active TRC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels.

Pressing OFF to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

To turn the Active TRC system off, quickly press and release OFF.



"Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press OFF again to turn the system back on.

■ **Turning off the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems**

To turn the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems off, press and hold OFF for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.*

Press OFF again to turn the systems back on.

*: On vehicles with PCS (Pre-Collision System), PCS will also be disabled (only Pre-Collision warning is available). The PCS warning light will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.273)

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that Active TRC has been disabled even if OFF has not been pressed**

Active TRC is temporary deactivated. If the information continues to show, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Operating conditions of hill-start assist control**

When all of the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift lever is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is not engaged.
- The engine switch is in ON

■ **Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control**

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift lever is shifted to P or N.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The brake pedal is depressed and the parking brake is engaged.
- A maximum of 2 seconds have elapsed after the brake pedal is released.
- The engine switch is turned to OFF.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the Multi Terrain ABS, brake assist, VSC, Trailer Sway Control, Active TRC and hill-start assist control systems**

● A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.

● Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
- Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
- A motor sound may be heard also after the vehicle comes to a stop.

■ **ECB operating sound**

ECB operating sound may be heard in the following cases, but it does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred.

● Operating sound heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is operated.

● Motor sound of the brake system heard from the front part of the vehicle when the driver's door is opened.

● Operating sound heard from the engine compartment when one or two minutes passed after the stop of the engine.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Automatic reactivation of Active TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems**

After turning the Active TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

● When the engine switch is turned off.

● If only the Active TRC system is turned off, the Active TRC will turn on when vehicle speed increases.
If both the Active TRC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ **If the brake system overheats**

The brake system may overheat. In this case, a buzzer will sound, "Traction Control Turned Off" is displayed on the multi-information display, and Active TRC and hill-start assist control will be temporarily inoperable. In this event, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe place, and allow the brake system to cool down sufficiently. (There is no problem with continuing normal driving.)

After a short time, the display message on the multi-information display turns off, and you will be able to use Active TRC and hill-start assist control.

■ **Operating conditions of emergency brake signal**

When the following conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

● The emergency flashers are off.

● Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).

● The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that it is a sudden braking operation.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal**

The emergency brake signal will be canceled in any of the following situations:

● The emergency flashers are turned on.

● The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

■ Secondary Collision Brake operating conditions (if equipped)

The system operates when the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision while the vehicle is in motion. However, the system does not operate when the components are damaged.

■ Secondary Collision Brake automatic cancellation (if equipped)

The system is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- The vehicle speed drops to approximately 0 km/h (0 mph).
- A certain amount of time elapses during operation
- The accelerator pedal is depressed a large amount

WARNING

■ The Multi Terrain ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ Stopping distance when the Multi Terrain ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The Multi Terrain ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ Active TRC/VSC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the Active TRC/VSC system is operating.
Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ Hill-start assist control does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■ When the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ When the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help enhance vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems off unless necessary.

Trailer Sway Control is part of the VSC system and will not operate if VSC is turned off or experiences a malfunction.

WARNING

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.
The Multi Terrain ABS, Active TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

■ Trailer Sway Control precaution

The Trailer Sway Control system is not able to reduce trailer sway in all situations. Depending on many factors such as the conditions of the vehicle, trailer, road surface and driving environment, the Trailer Sway Control system may not be effective. Refer to your trailer owner's manual for information on how to tow your trailer properly.

■ If trailer sway occurs

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead. Do not try to control trailer swaying by turning the steering wheel.
- Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed.
  Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize. (→P.221)

■ Secondary Collision Brake (if equipped)

Do not rely solely upon the Secondary Collision Brake. This system is designed to help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision, however, that effect changes according to various conditions. Overly relying on the system may result in death or serious injury.

Off-road precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

Off-road vehicle features

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause the vehicle to rollover.

⚠ WARNING

■ Off-road vehicle precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death, serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should always fasten their seat belts.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
  Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles:

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

WARNING

■ Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death, serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

NOTICE

■ To prevent the water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

■ When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the riverbed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated in brake drums and around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.

NOTICE

- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the scheduled Maintenance (→P.522).

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Intercooler coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires*.

Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

*: Tire chains cannot be mounted on vehicles with 22-inch tires

Fuel for diesel engine at low temperatures

Use winter diesel fuel during low temperatures. Usage of summer diesel fuel at low temperatures may lead to incorrect operation of the fuel system and engine malfunction. Reduce as much as possible amount of summer diesel fuel in the fuel tank during usage at low

temperatures, and refuel with winter diesel fuel as soon as possible. Check information about type and features of usage of diesel fuel at the gas stations.

WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ When installing tire chains (vehicles without 22-inch tires)

Turn off the AHC.

The vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident. (→P.409)

■ Driving with tire chains (vehicles without 22-inch tires)

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Do not use LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) system (if equipped).

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from your Lexus dealer or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.

- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

- Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, make sure to block the wheels. Failure to do so may be dangerous because it may cause the vehicle to move unexpectedly, possibly leading to an accident.

When the parking brake is in automatic mode, release the parking brake after shifting the shift lever to P. (→P.234)

- If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, confirm that the shift lever cannot be moved out of P*.

*: The shift lever will be locked if it is attempted to be shifted from P to any other position without depressing the brake pedal. If the shift lever can be shifted from P, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

WARNING

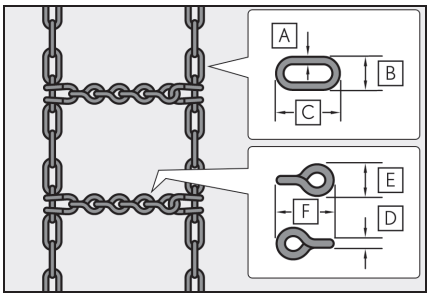
■ When parking the vehicle

When parking the vehicle without applying the parking brake, make sure to chock the wheels. If you do not chock the wheels, the vehicle may move unexpectedly, possibly resulting in an accident.

Selecting tire chains

▶ Vehicles without 22-inch tires

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the snow chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



Side chain:

A 5 mm (0.20 in.) in diameter

B 18 mm (0.71 in.) in width

C 46 mm (1.81 in.) in length

Cross chain:

D 6.3 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter

E 22.6 mm (0.89 in.) in width

F 38.1 mm (1.50 in.) in length

▶ Vehicles with 22-inch tires

Tire chains cannot be mounted.

Snow tires should be used instead.

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

■ **Tire chain installation (vehicles without 22-inch tires)**

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires only. Do not install tire chains on the front tires.
- Install tire chains on rear tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 - 1.0 km (1/4 - 1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

NOTICE

■ **Fitting tire chains (vehicles without 22-inch tires)**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Eco-friendly driving tips

For improved fuel economy and reduced CO_2 emissions, pay attention to the following points:

Using Eco drive mode

When using Eco drive mode, the torque corresponding to the accelerator pedal depression amount can be generated more smoothly than it is in normal conditions. In addition, the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) will be minimized, improving the fuel economy. (→P.407)

Use of Eco Driving Indicator

The Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping the Eco Driving Indicator Light on and keeping the bar display of the Eco Driving Indicator shown in the multi-information display within the Zone of Eco driving. (→P.126)

Accelerator pedal/brake pedal operation

Drive your vehicle smoothly. Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

When braking

Observe conditions in front of and around the vehicle, and estimate your stopping position. Release the accelerator pedal early and continue coasting. Use the brake pedal to adjust your stopping position. Make sure to operate the brake pedal gently.

Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel economy. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible.

Highway driving

Control and maintain the vehicle at a constant speed. Before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator pedal and gently apply the brakes.

Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

In summer: When the ambient temperature is high, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioning system and reduce fuel consumption as well.

In winter: Turn the "A/C" switch on only when both heating and dehumidifying are needed, and if only heating is needed, turn the "A/C" switch off. Turning the "A/C" switch on when unnecessary leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Performing idling stops

- Avoid unnecessary idling. Stop the engine when parking the vehicle to reduce excessive fuel consumption, even it is only for a short period of time.
- Except in severe environment, such as when the outside temperature is extremely low, warming up the engine before driving is unnecessary. Rather than idling, it is more efficient to drive the vehicle gently to warm up each part while avoiding increasing the engine revolutions unnecessarily and accelerating or decelerating suddenly.
- Using the Stop & Start system will help improve fuel economy. (if equipped) (→P.307)
- The followings are performed to maintain the functions, not unnecessary idling.

• Cleaning of the exhaust emission control system (if equipped)

• Idling before stopping the engine with turbocharger (→P.214)

Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage will lead to poor fuel economy. Avoid carrying

unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack will also cause poor fuel economy.

Regular maintenance

- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently. Improper tire inflation pressure can cause poor fuel economy. Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel economy. Use tires that are appropriate for the season and road conditions.
- Use oil and fluid of the recommended quality, which affect fuel consumption and the life of the vehicle. Also, check oil and fluid periodically. (→P.522)

5-1. Display

Front Multi Operation Panel 446

Rear Multi Operation Panel (4-passenger models) 449

5-2. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge 453

5-3. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front automatic air conditioning system 455

Rear air conditioning system 465

Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators 469

5-4. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 473

5-5. Using the storage features

List of storage features 478

Luggage compartment features 485

5-6. Using the other interior features

Other interior features 489

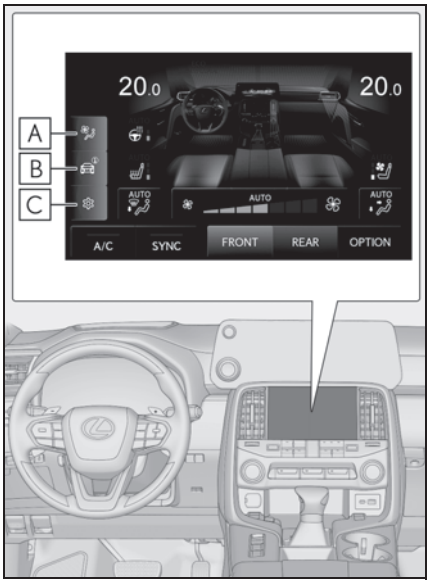
Garage door opener 505

Front Multi Operation Panel

Front Multi Operation Panel built-into the instrument panel can be used to operate the air conditioning system.

Also, information related to off-road driving is shown on the display.

Front Multi Operation Panel overview



A Touch to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P.455, 465)

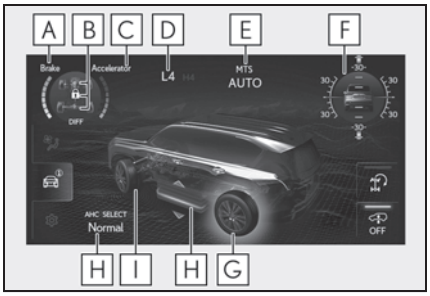
B Touch to display the Off-road driving information display screen.

C Touch to display the Front Multi Operation Panel settings screen.

Off-road driving information display screen

Information related to off-road driving is shown on the display.

▶ When the Multi-terrain Select is turned on



A Brake pedal display

Displays the amount of depression of the brake pedal.

B Differential lock operation display

C Accelerator pedal display

Displays the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal.

D Transfer mode display

E Multi-terrain Select mode display

F Inclinometer display

Displays the vertical and horizontal tilt angles of the vehicle.

G Active TRC operation display

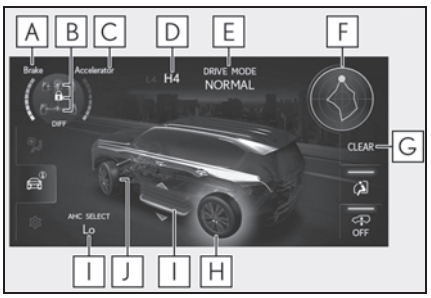
The tires with Active TRC operating are shown in orange.

H AHC (Active Height Control Suspension) display

I Front tire direction display

Displays the estimated direction of the front tires.

▶ When the Multi-terrain Select is turned off



A Brake pedal display

Displays the amount of depression of the brake pedal.

B Differential lock operation display

C Accelerator pedal display

Displays the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal.

D Transfer mode display

E Driving mode select display/Crawl Control mode display/Downhill assist control system set speed display

F G-force display

Displays the G (acceleration) in the front, rear, right and left directions that is applied to the vehicle.

G Resetting the lateral G-forces

The record of the G (acceleration) in the front, rear, right and left directions that is applied to the vehicle can be reset.

H Active TRC operation display

The tires with Active TRC operating are shown in orange.

I AHC (Active Height Control Suspension) display

J Front tire direction display

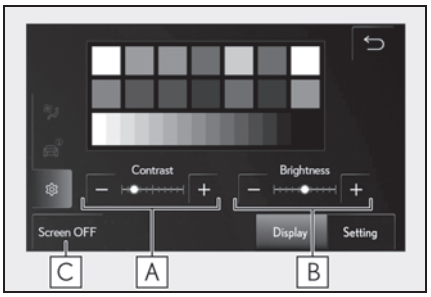
Displays the estimated direction of the front tires.

Front Multi Operation Panel settings

Settings such as screen operation restrictions and screen brightness can be adjusted.

■ Adjusting image quality

Select “Display” and then select each adjustment switch.



A Adjust contrast.

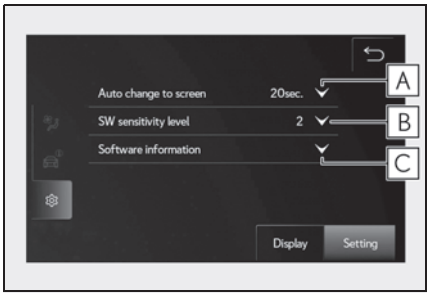
B Adjust brightness.

C Touch to turn the screen off.

To display the screen again, touch the screen and touch the button in the center of the screen.

■ Changing settings

Select “Setting” and then select the setting for each item.



A The time it takes to switch screen displays when no operation is performed can be set to either 20 seconds, 1 minute or 5 minutes.

B The screen operation sensitivity can be set to either 1 (low), 2 (normal) or 3 (high).

C Software information is displayed.

Operation condition

When the engine switch is in ON.

Operation screen

- Touch the operation screen gently with your fingers so that the screen is not damaged.
- If the operation screen does not respond, withdraw your hand from the screen momentarily and then touch it again.
- When is displayed on the screen, select to return to the previous screen.
- In the following situations, the operation screen may not respond or operate normally.
  - When wearing gloves
  - When operating the screen with your nails
  - When another finger or the palm is near another switch
  - When the screen is dirty or wet
  - When a film is applied to the surface of the operation screen
  - When the surface of the operation screen is coated
  - When the vehicle is in an area where strong electrical waves or noise are emitted, such as near a television tower, power plant, gasoline station, broadcasting station, large display, airport, etc.
  - When carrying a wireless device such as a radio or cell phone
- If the operation screen is touched or covered by the following types of metallic objects, the operation screen may not respond or operate normally.
  - A card that has metal on it, such as aluminum foil, etc.
  - A pack of cigarettes containing aluminum foil
  - A wallet or bag made of metal
  - Coins
  - A heating pad
  - CDs, DVDs or other media
- The operation screen may respond when wiping the operation screen for cleaning.
- If your hand is near the operation screen when the engine switch is turned to ACC or ON, the operation screen may not respond. If this occurs, withdraw your hand from the operation screen, and then turn the engine switch to OFF and then to ON.

LCD screen

- When the LCD screen is viewed at an angle, it looks lighter or darker.
- When light from the sun or another external light source strikes the screen, the screen is difficult to see.
- When wearing sunglasses with polarized lenses, the screen looks lighter or darker.

WARNING

■ Use when driving

For safety reasons, drivers should avoid performing operations as much as possible while driving. Performing operations while driving may cause the driver to mistakenly operate the steering wheel, which may lead to an accident. Stop the vehicle before using. Furthermore, avoid looking at the screen as much as possible while driving.

NOTICE

■ Cleaning the screen

If the screen becomes dirty, wipe it gently using a soft dry cloth such as an eyeglass cleaner for plastic lenses.

Pressing it excessively by hand or rubbing it with a hard cloth may scratch the surface. Note that the LCD is coated. The screen may be damaged if exposed to substances such as gasoline or alkaline solutions.

■ Preventing battery discharge

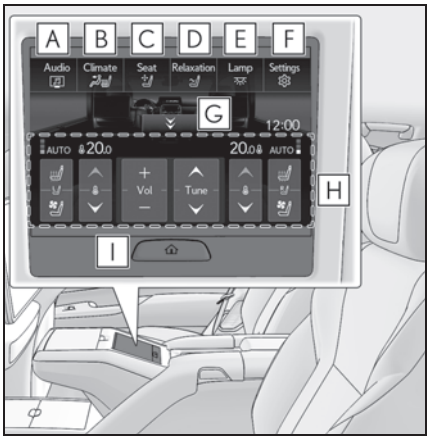
Do not operate the screen for a long period of time when the engine is stopped.

Rear Multi Operation Panel (4-passenger models)

The Rear Multi Operation Panel built-into the rear armrest can be used to operate the rear audio system, air conditioning system, seat, relaxation seat or lights.

Rear Multi Operation Panel overview

■ Home screen



A Touch to display the audio control screen.
Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

B Touch to display the rear air conditioning control screen. (→P.465, 469)

C Touch to display the rear seat adjustment screen. (→P.179, 208)

D Touch to display the relaxation seat control screen. (→P.182)

E Touch to display the rear interior light control screen. (→P.476)

F Touch to display the Rear Multi Operation Panel settings screen. (→P.450)

G Touch to display/hide the shortcut screen.

H Shortcut screen

The following can be adjusted or operated:

- Rear air conditioning system temperature setting (→P.465)
- Rear seat heaters/rear seat ventilators (→P.469)
- Audio system

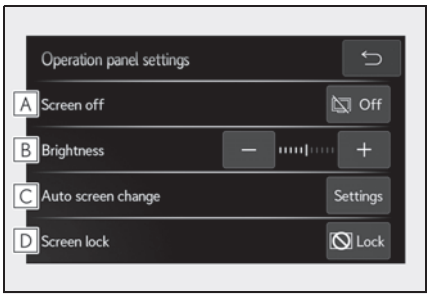
Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

I button

Press to display the home screen. When the screen is on, press and hold to turn the screen off.

■ Rear Multi Operation Panel settings screen

Screen operation settings and the brightness of the screen can be changed.



A Touch to turn the screen off.

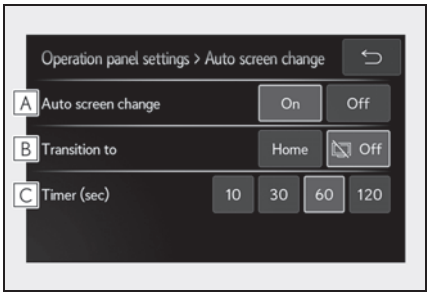
Press the button to display the home screen.

B Touch to adjust the brightness of the screen.

C Touch to display the automatic screen transition settings screen.

D Touch to lock the Rear Multi Operation Panel.

■ Auto screen change settings screen



A Touch to turn the automatic screen transition function on/off.

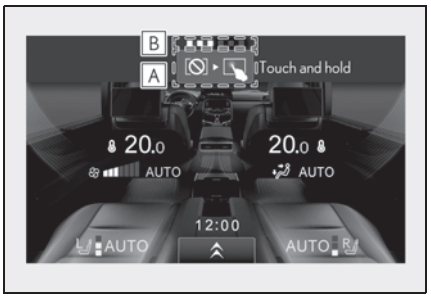
B Touch to set whether the screen will transition to the home screen or turn off when the automatic screen transition function operates.

C Touch to set the amount of time (10/30/60/120 seconds) the Rear Multi Operation Panel must be idle before the automatic screen transition function operates.

When the screen is off, press the button to turn the screen on and display the previously displayed screen. Press again to display the home screen.

Unlocking the Rear Multi Operation Panel

Touch and hold A until the unlock status indicators (B) are completely illuminated to unlock the Rear Multi Operation Panel.



Operation screen

When is displayed on the screen, select to return to the previous screen.

Operating the Rear Multi Operation Panel

- When operating the Rear Multi Operation Panel, only use the tip of a finger. The Rear Multi Operation Panel cannot be operated with a fingernail, pen, etc.
- Use only one finger when operating the Rear Multi Operation Panel. The Rear Multi Operation Panel cannot be operated with multiple fingers.
- When the engine switch is changed to ACC or ON, if a hand object, liquid or foreign matter is touching the Rear Multi Operation Panel, it may not operate correctly. In this case, remove anything touching the Rear Multi Operation Panel and wait for approximately 30 seconds before operating it again.
  If the Rear Multi Operation Panel still cannot be operated normally, press and hold the button to turn the Rear Multi Operation Panel off, and then press the button again to turn it back on and operate it.
- In the following situations, the Rear Multi Operation Panel may not operate properly:
  - If wearing gloves during operation, non response may occur.
  - If a wet hand is used to operate the Rear Multi Operation Panel.
  - If a screen cover or coating is applied to on the Rear Multi Operation Panel.
  - If the Rear Multi Operation Panel is dirty or has liquid attached to it, incorrect operation or non-response may occur.
  - If the Rear Multi Operation Panel receives electro magnetic waves, incorrect operation or non-response may occur.
  - If a mobile phone or other wireless communication device brought near the Rear Multi Operation Panel.
- If a metal object, such as the following, is touching or covering the Rear Multi Operation Panel:
  - Coins
  - Keys
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Magnetic isolation cards
  - Metallic foil, such as the inner packaging of a cigarette box
  - Disposable heat packs
  - Discs, such as a CD or DVD, Cables, such as a USB cable
  - Mobile devices, such as smartphones, mobile phones, tablets, etc.
- Make sure to keep the Rear Multi Operation Panel clean. If the Rear Multi Operation Panel is dirty, it may not operate correctly. (When cleaning the Rear Multi Operation Panel, turn the screen off to avoid unexpected operation.)

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the Rear Multi Operation Panel

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the Rear Multi Operation Panel.

- Keep the Rear Multi Operation Panel free of liquids, such as drinks or rain, as they may cause a short circuit.
- Do not sit on or set heavy objects on the Rear Multi Operation Panel.
- Do not push the Rear Multi Operation Panel with a strong force or use a sharp pointed object to operate the panel.

Lexus Climate Concierge

The seat heaters, seat ventilators (if equipped) and heated steering wheel (if equipped) are each automatically controlled according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside and cabin temperature, etc. Lexus Climate Concierge allows a comfortable condition to be maintained without adjusting each system.

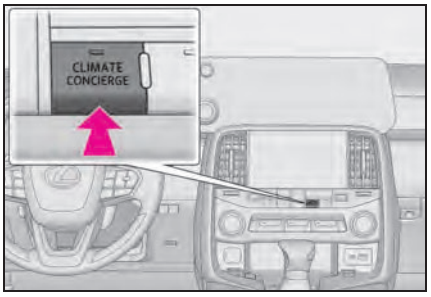
Turning on Lexus Climate Concierge

Press the "CLIMATE CONCIERGE" switch

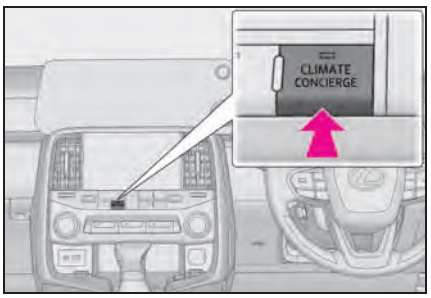
The indicator above the switch illuminates, and the automatic air conditioning system, seat heaters and ventilators, and heated steering wheel operate in automatic mode.

If any of the system is operated manually, the indicator turns off. However, all other functions continue to operate in automatic mode.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



Operation of each system

■ **Automatic air conditioning system (→P.455, 465)**

The temperature can be adjusted independently for the driver seat, passenger seat, and rear seats.

When a passenger is detected in the second seat, the rear air conditioning operates in automatic mode.

■ **Seat heaters and ventilators (if equipped) (→P.469)**

Heating or ventilation is automatically selected according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside temperature, etc.

The seat heaters and ventilators of the front passenger seat and second outboard seats operate in automatic mode if passengers are detected.

■ **Heated steering wheel (if equipped) (→P.469)**

Heated steering wheel operates automatically according to the outside temperature and cabin temperature.

■ **Front air conditioning system operation**

To improve air conditioning performance in the front seat area, the air outlets on the rear of the console box may close when there is no passenger in the second seat.

■ **Rear air conditioning system operation**

The rear air conditioning system may stop automatically when there is no passenger in the second seat.

■ **Seat heater/ventilator operation**

When automatic mode is selected using the seat heater/ventilator switch, passenger detection is not performed.

Front automatic air conditioning system

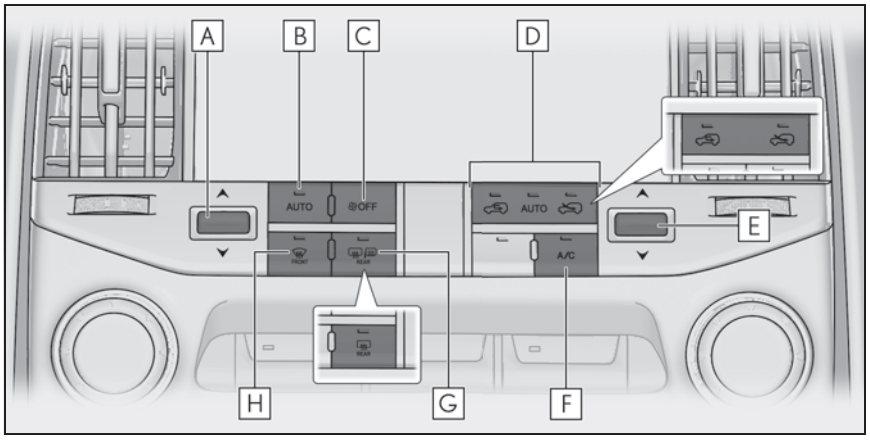
Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

The air conditioning system can be operated using the air conditioning control panel and air conditioning control screen on the Front Multi Operation Panel.

For details about Front Multi Operation Panel, refer to P.446.

Air conditioning controls

▶ Air conditioning control panel (left-hand drive vehicles)



A Left-hand side temperature control switches

B Automatic mode switch

C "OFF" switch

D Outside/recirculated air mode switch

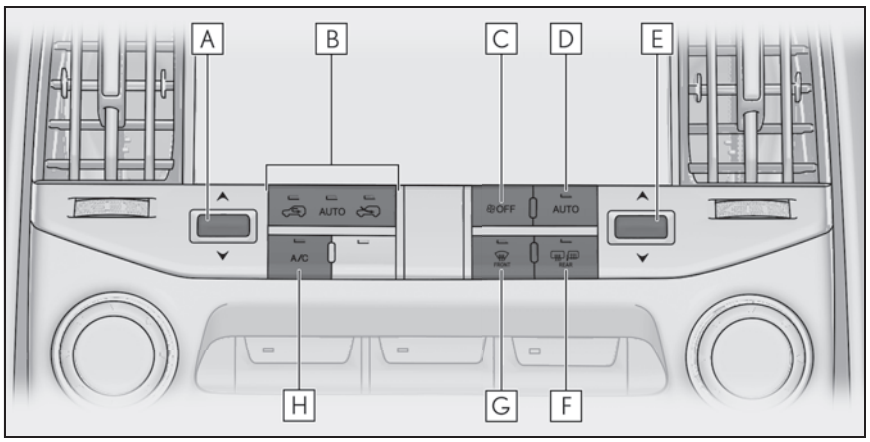
E Right-hand side temperature control switches

F "A/C" switch

G Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch

H Windshield defogger switch

▶ Air conditioning control panel (right-hand drive vehicles)



A Left-hand side temperature control switches

B Outside/recirculated air mode switch

C "OFF" switch

D Automatic mode switch

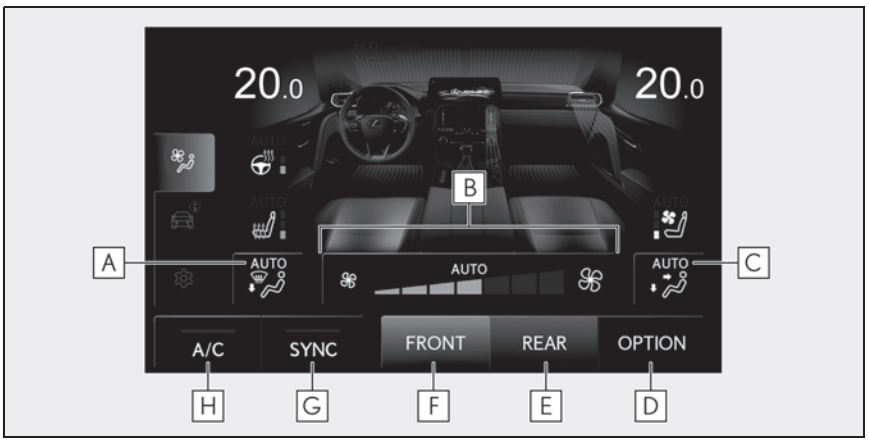
E Right-hand side temperature control switches

F Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch

G Windshield defogger switch

H "A/C" switch

▶ Front Multi Operation Panel



A Left-hand side airflow mode control switch

B Fan speed control switches

C Right-hand side airflow mode control switch

D "OPTION" switch

E "REAR" switch (→P.465)

F "FRONT" switch

G "SYNC" switch

H "A/C" switch

Adjusting the temperature setting

Operate the temperature control switches on the air conditioning control panel upwards to increase the temperature.

Operate the temperature control switches on the air conditioning control panel downwards to decrease the temperature.

If the switch is pressed and held, the temperature will continuously change.

If the indicator on the "A/C" switch does not illuminate, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

Adjusting the fan speed setting

Select the fan speed control switch on the air conditioning control screen to increase the fan speed.

Select the fan speed control switch on the air conditioning control screen to decrease the fan speed.

The fan speed is shown on the display. (7 levels)

Press the "OFF" switch on the air conditioning control panel to turn the fan off.

Change the airflow mode

Select the airflow mode control switch on the air conditioning control screen.

The airflow mode changes each time the switch is selected.

: Air flows to the upper body

: Air flows to the upper body and feet

: Air flows to the feet

: Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Operate the outside/recirculated air mode switch on the air conditioning control panel.

The mode switches between outside air mode, automatic mode (if equipped) and recirculated air mode each time the switch is operated.

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically according to the outside air condition.

Set cooling and dehumidification function

Select the "A/C" switch on the air conditioning control screen.

The "A/C" switch on the air conditioning control panel can also be operated to set cooling and dehumidification function.

Eco air conditioning mode

The air conditioning is controlled with low fuel consumption prioritized such as reducing fan speed, etc.

Select the eco air conditioning mode switch on the option control screen. (→P.458)

Defogging the windshield

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press the windshield defogger switch on the air conditioning control panel.

Set the outside/recirculated air mode switch to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows quickly, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press the windshield defogger switch again when the windshield is defogged.

When the windshield defogger switch is on, the indicator illuminates on the windshield defogger switch.

Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors (if equipped)

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch on the air conditioning control panel.

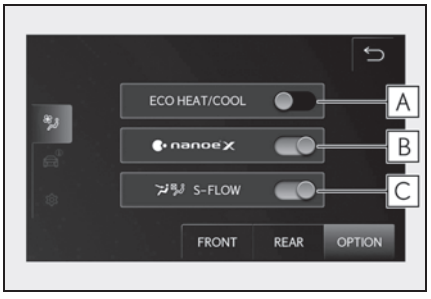
The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 minutes. (Depending on the surrounding environment and outside temperature, the defogger may continue to operate after 15 minutes have elapsed.)

When the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch is on, the indicator illuminates on the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch.

Option control screen

Select the "OPTION" switch to display the option control screen.

The functions can be switched (ON) and (OFF).



A Eco air conditioning mode (→P.458)

B nanoe™ X* (if equipped)

(→P.459)

C Front seat concentrated airflow mode (S-FLOW) (→P.462)

*: nanoe™ and the nanoe™ mark are trademarks of Panasonic Corporation.

■ **Fogging up of the windows**

- The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Turning the cooling and dehumidification function on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.
- If you turn the cooling and dehumidification function off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ **When driving on dusty roads**

Close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake mode be set to outside air mode and the fan speed to any setting except off.

■ **Outside/recirculated air mode**

- Setting to the recirculated air mode temporarily is recommended in preventing dirty air from entering the vehicle interior and helping to cool the vehicle when the outside air temperature is high.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ **When the outside temperature falls to nearly 0°C (32°F)**

The dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" switch is selected.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

- In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:
  - Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
  - Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected
- To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:
  - Adjust the fan speed
  - Turn off Eco drive mode (→P.407)
  - Turn off eco air conditioning mode
- When the driving mode is set to Eco drive mode, the eco air conditioning mode will be turned on automatically. Even in this case, the eco air conditioning mode can be turned off by selecting the eco air conditioning mode switch.

■ **nanoe™ X*1 (if equipped)**

The air conditioning system adopts nanoe™ generator. This helps to fill the cabin with refreshing air by emitting slightly acidic nanoe™ coated with water particles through the front center vent*2.

- When the fan is turned on and nanoe™ X on the option control screen is selected, the nanoe™ X system is activated.
- When the fan is operated in the following conditions, system performance will be maximized. If the following conditions are not met, performance will be limited.
  - The upper body, upper body and feet, feet air outlets are being used.
  - The air outlets are open.
- When nanoe™ X is generated, a small amount of ozone is emitted and may be faintly smelled in some situations. However, this is approximately the same as the amount that already exists in nature, such as in forests, and it has no affect on the human body.
- A slight noise may be heard during operation. This is not a malfunction.

*1: nanoe™ X is a nanoe™ generator.

*2: According to temperature and humidity conditions, fan speed and direction of the air flow, the nanoe™ system may not operate at full capacity.

■ **Ventilation and air conditioning odors**

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- In order to suppress odors that occur when the air conditioning system starts, the air flow mode may change to blow air to the feet or air may stop blowing for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.
- On some models: When parking, the system automatically switches to outside air mode to encourage better air circulation throughout the vehicle, helping to reduce odors that occur when starting the vehicle.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

■ **Using the voice control system**

Air conditioning system can be operated using voice commands. For details, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **Air conditioning filter**

→P.562

■ **Air conditioning system operations when the engine is stopped due to the Stop & Start system (vehicles with Stop & Start system)**

When the engine is stopped due to the Stop & Start system operations, the air conditioning cooling and dehumidification functions turn off and only ambient temperature air is blown, and there is a possibility that the blowing of ambient temperature air will stop. To prevent the air conditioning system from turning off, press the Stop & Start cancel switch to deactivate the system.

■ **When the windshield is fogged up and the engine is stopped due to the Stop & Start system (vehicles with Stop & Start system)**

Press the windshield defogger switch to restart the engine and defog the windshield. If the windshield continuously fogs up, press the Stop & Start cancel switch and refrain from using the Stop & Start system.

■ **When an odor comes from the air conditioning system while the engine is stopped due to the Stop & Start system (vehicles with Stop & Start system)**

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to restart the engine.

■ **While the cool box is on (vehicles with cool box)**

▶ Except GCC countries*, Lebanon, Jordan, Yemen, Iraq

The front air conditioning system cannot be turned off.

▶ GCC countries*, Lebanon, Jordan, Yemen, Iraq

The front air conditioning system cannot be turned off. However, air flow to the occupants can be stopped by pressing the "OFF" button on the air conditioning control panel.

Also, a very small amount of air is blown from the windshield air vent to protect the air conditioning system.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.650)

WARNING

■ **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

Do not use the windshield defogger switch during cool air operation in extremely humid weather.
The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

■ **When the outside rear view mirror defoggers (if equipped) are operating**

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces when the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on.

■ **nanoe™ X (if equipped)**

Do not disassemble or repair the generator because it contains high voltage parts. Contact your Lexus dealer if the generator needs repair.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

■ **To prevent damage to the nanoe™ X (if equipped)**

Do not insert anything into the air outlets, attach anything to it, or use sprays around the air outlets. These things may cause the generator not to work properly.

Using automatic mode

1 Press the automatic mode switch on the air conditioning control panel.

2 Press the outside/recirculated air mode switch to switch to automatic mode. (if equipped)

3 Adjust the temperature setting.

4 To stop the operation, press the "OFF" switch on the air conditioning control panel.

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

■ **Using automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after the automatic mode switch is pressed.

Cool air may blow around the upper body even when the heater is on due to sunlight.

■ **Automatic mode for air intake control (if equipped)**

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes. When the dehumidification function is off, and the fan is operating, turning automatic mode on will activate the dehumidification function.

Adjusting the temperature and airflow for driver and passenger seats simultaneously ("SYNC" mode)

To turn on the "SYNC" mode, select the "SYNC" switch on the air conditioning control screen.

The driver's side temperature control switches can be used to adjust the temperature for the driver's and passenger's side. To enter individual mode, operate the passenger's side temperature control switches or select the "SYNC" switch again.

When the "SYNC" mode is on, the indicator illuminates on display.

Using front seat concentrated airflow mode (S-FLOW)

Directing airflow to the front seats only and to all seats can be switched via switch operation. Unnecessary air conditioning is suppressed, contributing to increased fuel efficiency.

Select on the option control screen of the air conditioning control screen and switch the airflow.

(ON): Airflow to the front seats only

(OFF): Airflow to all the seats

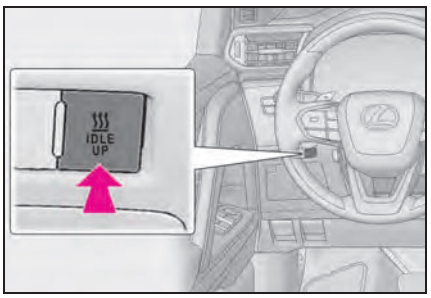
Even if the function is switched to directing airflow to only the front seats, when a rear seat is occupied, it may automatically direct airflow to all seats.

Heater idle up (if equipped)/Power heater (if equipped)

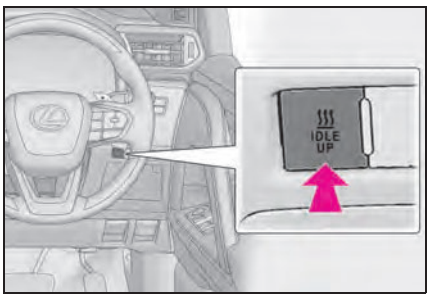
Heater idle up

This feature is used to boost heating effect in extremely cold conditions when the vehicle is not moving.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles

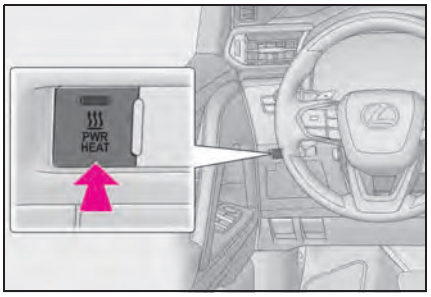


Press the switch to increase engine speed.

Press the switch again to return the engine to the normal idle speed. If you do not turn the switch to off, the engine speed is increased whenever the engine is started.

Power heater

This feature is used to heat the engine coolant, speed up warming of the cab in cold weather, and keep the cab warm.



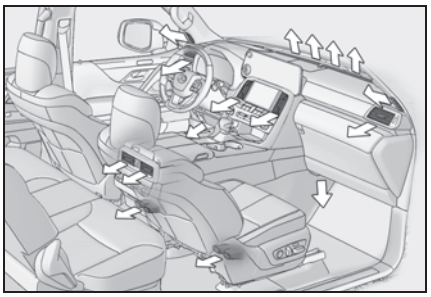
Turns the power heater on/off

If you do not turn the switch to off, the engine speed is increased whenever the engine is started.

Air outlet layout and operations

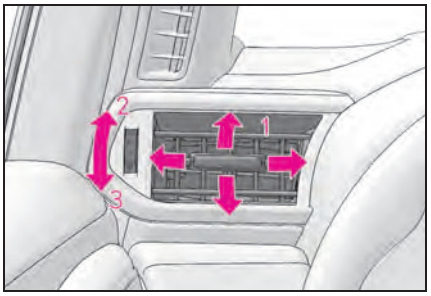
Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume change according to the selected air flow mode.



Adjusting the air flow direction and opening/closing the air outlets

▶ Front (side)

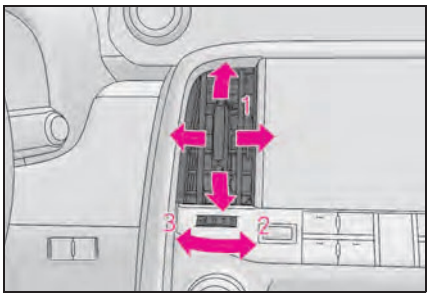


1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Open the vent

3 Close the vent

▶ Front (center)

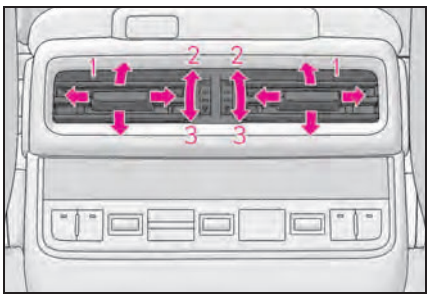


1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Open the vent

3 Close the vent

▶ Rear



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

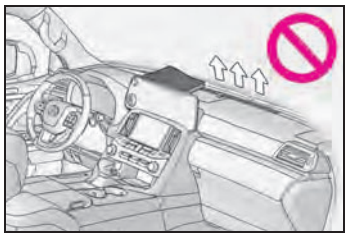
2 Open the vent

3 Close the vent

WARNING

■ To not interrupt the windshield defogger from operating

Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



NOTICE

■ To prevent air conditioning system malfunction

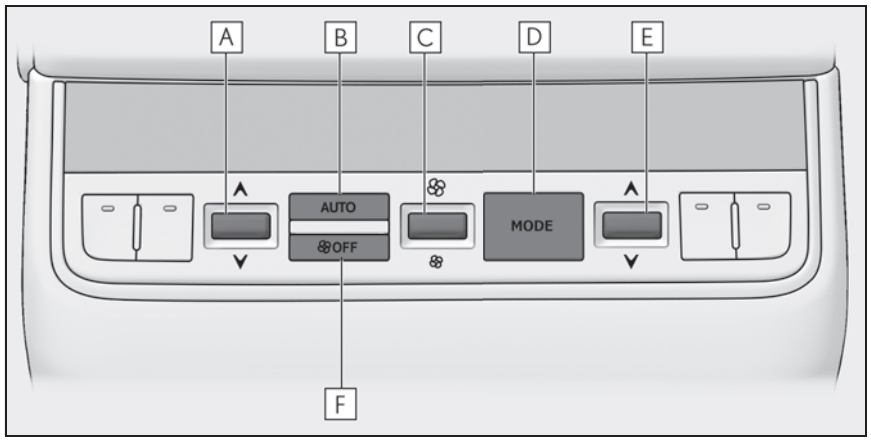
Make sure that nothing falls into the air outlets. An object that falls into the air outlet may cause a malfunction.

Rear air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Rear air conditioning controls

▶ Air conditioning control panel (5-passenger and 7-passenger models)



A Left-hand side temperature control switch

B Automatic mode switch

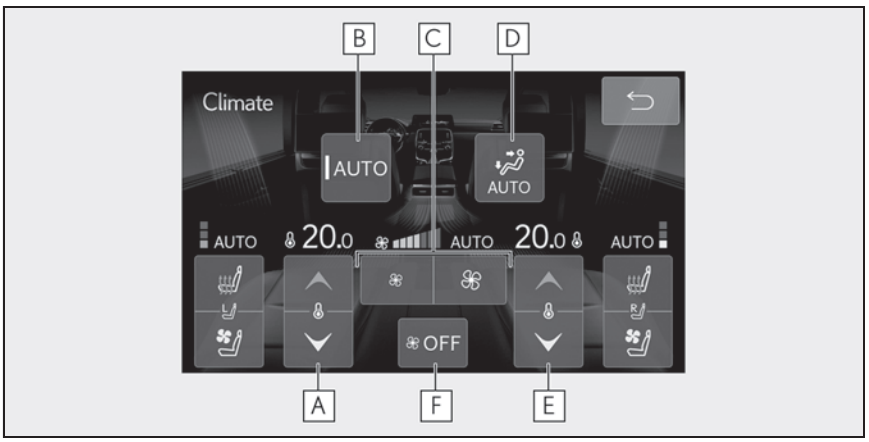
C Fan speed control switch

D Airflow mode control switch

E Right-hand side temperature control switch

F "OFF" switch

▶ Rear Multi Operation Panel (4-passenger models)



A Left-hand side temperature control switch

B Automatic mode switch

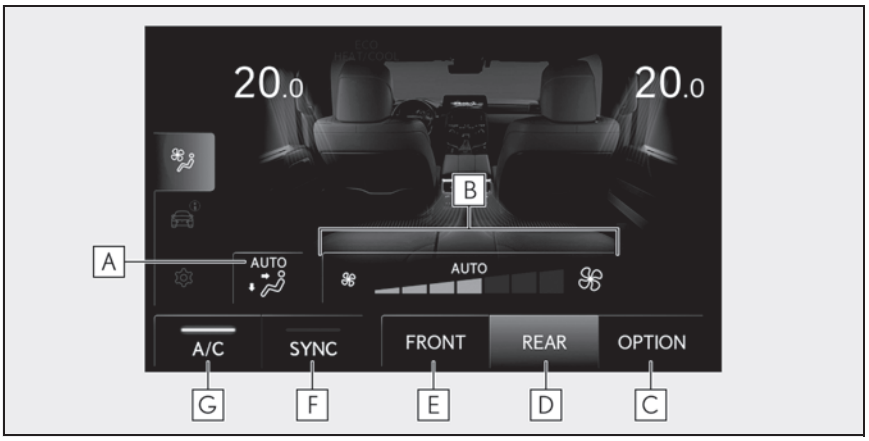
C Fan speed control switches

D Airflow mode control switch

E Right-hand side temperature control switch

F "OFF" switch

▶ Front Multi Operation Panel



A Airflow mode control switch

B Fan speed control switches

C "OPTION" switch (→P.458)

D "REAR" switch

E "FRONT" switch (→P.455)

F "SYNC" switch (→P.461)

G "A/C" switch (→P.458)

Adjusting the temperature setting

Operate the temperature control switches on the air conditioning control panel upwards or select ∧ of the temperature control switches on the air conditioning control screen to increase the temperature.

Operate the temperature control switches on the air conditioning control panel downwards or select ∨ of the temperature control switches on the air conditioning control screen to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the right-hand and left-hand seats can be set separately.

Adjusting the fan speed setting

Operate the fan speed control switch on the air conditioning control panel upwards or select the fan speed control switch on the air conditioning control screen to increase the fan speed.

Operate the fan speed control switch on the air conditioning control panel downwards or select the fan speed control switch on the air conditioning control screen to decrease the fan speed.

The fan speed is shown on the display. (7 levels)

Press the "OFF" switch to turn off the fan.

Change the airflow mode

Press the airflow mode control switch on the air conditioning control panel or select the airflow mode control switch on the air conditioning control screen.

The airflow mode changes as follows each time the switch is pressed.

: Air flows to the upper body

: Air flows to the upper body and feet

: Air flows to the feet

- When the front air conditioning system is off, only air blows without the cooling function activated.
- During use, various odors from inside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring: The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the rear air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Using the automatic mode

1 Press the automatic mode switch on the air conditioning control panel or select the automatic mode switch on the air conditioning control screen.

2 Adjust the temperature setting.

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator on the display goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

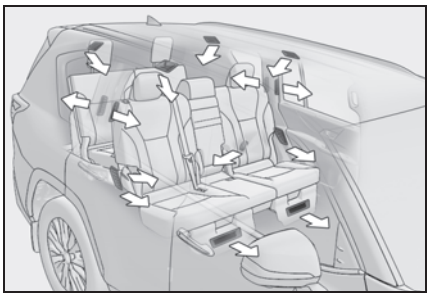
To stop the operation, press the "OFF" switch.

Air outlet layout and operations

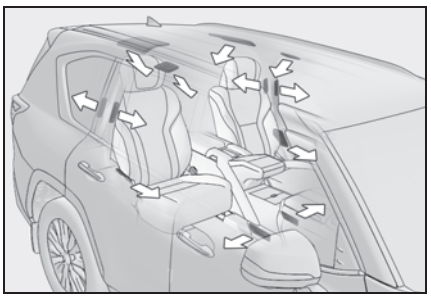
■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected air flow mode.

▶ 5-passenger and 7-passenger models

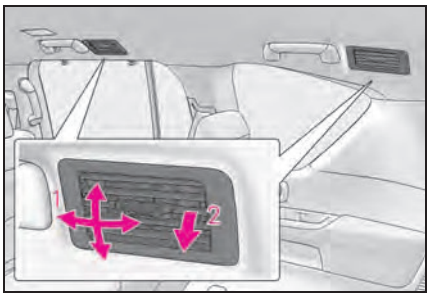


▶ 4-passenger models



■ Adjusting the air flow direction and opening/closing the air outlets (side ceiling)

▶ Roof side outlets

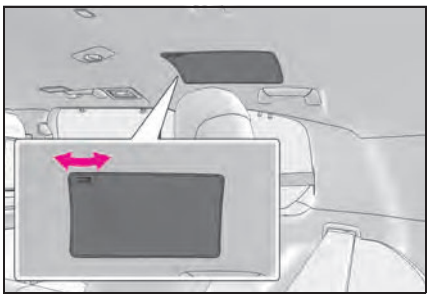


1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Turn the knob down fully to close the vent.

▶ Roof (4-passenger models)

Turn the knob to open or close the vent



Heated steering wheel*/seat heaters/seat ventilators*

*: If equipped

- Heated steering wheel

Warm up the grips of the steering wheel

- Seat heaters

Warm up the seat upholstery

- Seat ventilators

Maintain good ventilation by pulling air through the seat upholstery

WARNING

■ To prevent minor burn injuries

Care should be taken if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel or seats when the heater is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters and seat ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the functions when the engine is not running.

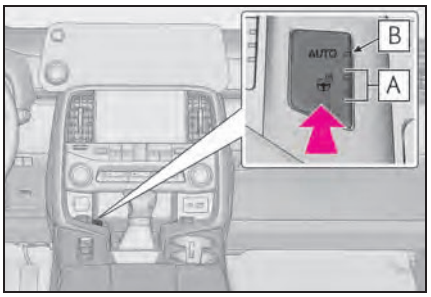
Heated steering wheel (if equipped)

Turns the heated steering wheel on/off

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO (lit) → Hi (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The AUTO indicator B and/or level indicator A illuminates during operation.



■ Operation condition

The engine switch is in ON.

■ If the indicator light flashes

Press the switch to turn the heated steering wheel off and then press the switch again. If the indicator light still flashes, a malfunction may be occurring. Turn the heated steering wheel off and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Customization

Settings for the heated steering wheel can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.650)

Seat heaters

■ Front

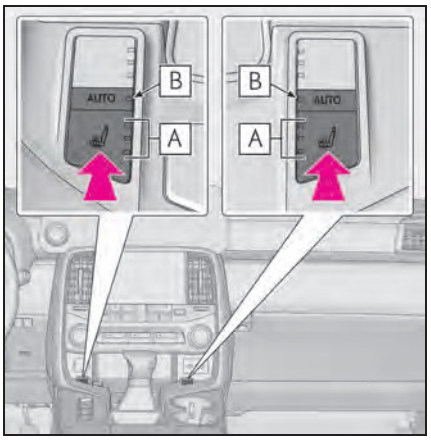
Turns the seat heaters on/off

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO (lit) → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The AUTO indicator B and/or level indicator A illuminates during operation.

When in the AUTO mode, the seat heaters or seat ventilators automatically operate according to circumstances.



■ Outboard rear seats (5-passenger and 7-passenger models) (if equipped)

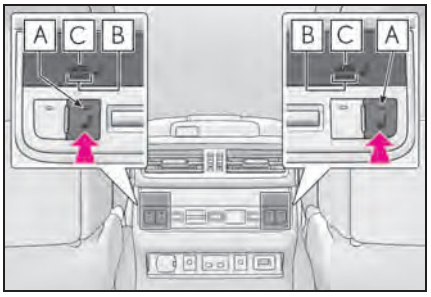
Turns the seat heaters on/off

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO (lit) → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

While the rear seat heaters are operating, the indicator A on the seat heater switch and level indicator B illuminate, or the indicator A on the seat heater switch, level indicator B and "AUTO" indicator C illuminate.

When in the AUTO mode, the seat heaters or seat ventilators automatically operate according to circumstances.



■ Rear (4-passenger models)

Select "Climate" on the home screen to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P.449)

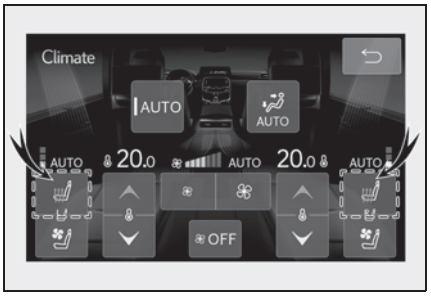
The rear seat heaters can also be operated from the shortcut screen.

▶ Rear air conditioning control screen

Adjust the rear seat heater temperature level

Each time the switch is selected, the temperature level and level indicator (orange) change as follows:

AUTO (lit) → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

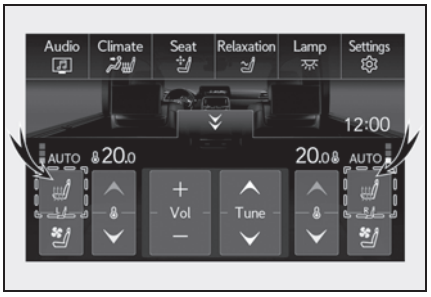


▶ Shortcut screen

Adjust the rear seat heater temperature level

Each time the switch is selected, the temperature level and level indicator (orange) change as follows:

AUTO (lit) → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off



■ **The seat heaters can be used when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **Customization**

Settings for the seat heaters can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.650)

WARNING

■ **To prevent causes of overheating and minor burn injuries**

Observe the following precautions when using a seat heater

- Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
- Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

Seat ventilators (if equipped)

■ **Front**

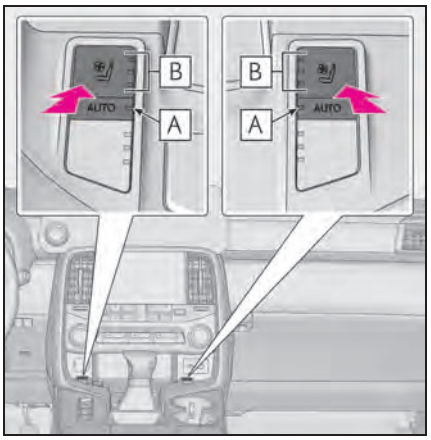
Turns the seat ventilators on/off

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO (lit) → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The AUTO indicator A and/or level indicator B illuminates during operation.

When in the AUTO mode, the seat heaters or seat ventilators automatically operate according to circumstances.



■ **Outboard rear seats (5-passenger and 7-passenger models) (if equipped)**

Turns the seat ventilators on/off

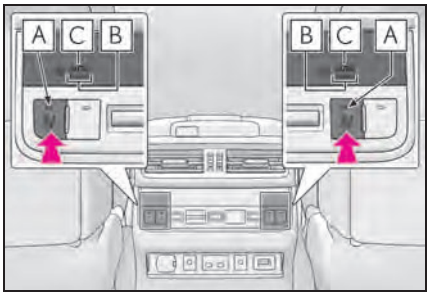
Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO (lit) → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

While the rear seat ventilators are operating, the indicator A on the seat ventilator switch and level indicator B illuminate, or the indicator A on the seat ventilator switch, level indicator B and "AUTO" indicator C illuminate.

When in the AUTO mode, the seat heat-

ers or seat ventilators automatically operate according to circumstances.



■ Rear (4-passenger models)

Select "Climate" on the home screen to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P.449)

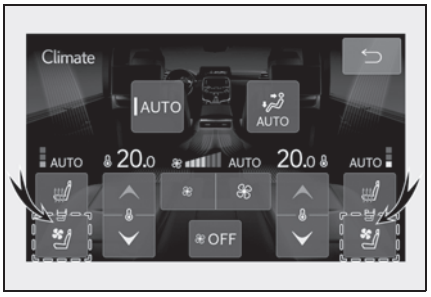
The rear seat ventilators can also be operated from the shortcut screen.

▶ Rear air conditioning control screen

Adjust the rear seat ventilator fan speed level

Each time the switch is selected, the fan speed level and level indicator (blue) change as follows:

AUTO (lit) → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

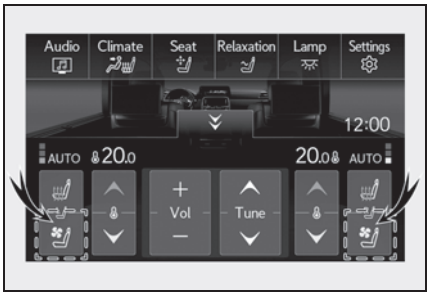


▶ Shortcut screen

Adjust the rear seat ventilator fan speed level

Each time the switch is selected, the fan speed level and level indicator (blue) change as follows:

AUTO (lit) → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off



■ The seat ventilators can be used when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ Air conditioning system-linked control mode

When the seat ventilator fan speed level is Hi, the seat ventilator fan speed becomes higher according to the fan speed of the air conditioning system.

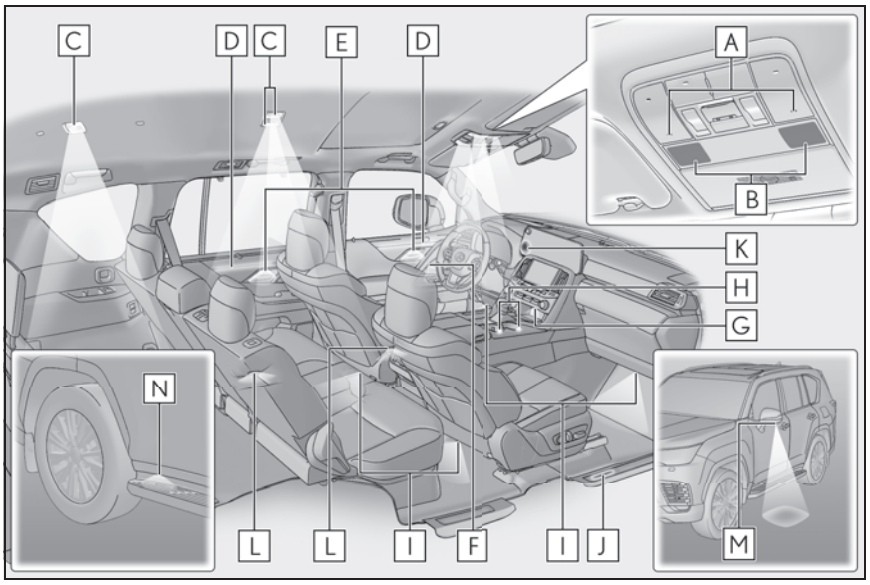
■ Customization

Settings for the seat ventilators can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.650)

Interior lights list

Location of the interior lights

▶ 5-passenger or 7-passenger models



A Shift lever lights

B Front interior lights/front personal lights (→P.475, 476)

C Rear personal lights (→P.476)

D Door trim ornament lights

E Inside door handle lights

F Spot lights

G Auxiliary box lights

H Cup holder lights

I Footwell lights

J Scuff lights*

K Engine switch illumination

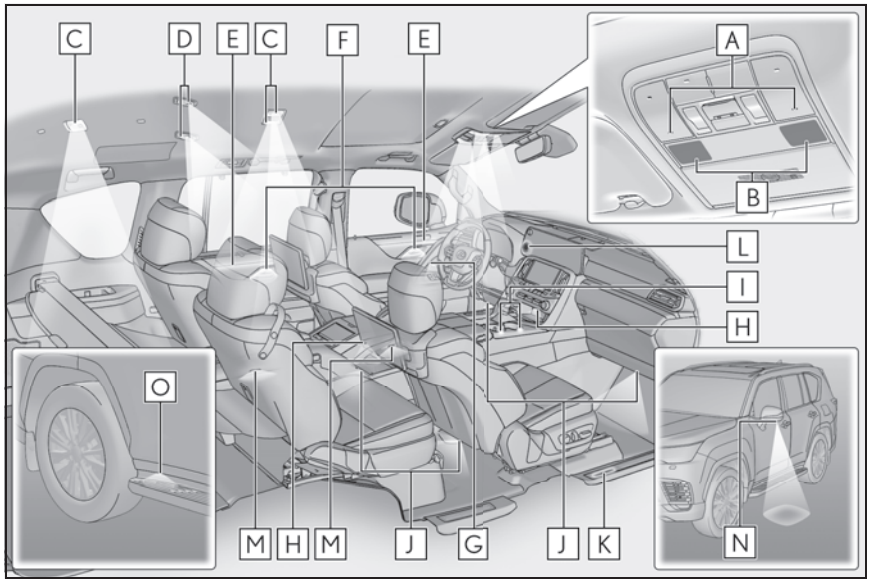
L Door courtesy lights

M Outer foot lights

N Running board lights

*: If equipped

▶ 4-passenger models



A Shift lever lights

B Front interior lights/front personal lights (→P.475, 476)

C Rear personal lights (→P.476)

D Rear reading lights (→P.476)

E Door trim ornament lights

F Inside door handle lights

G Spot lights

H Auxiliary box lights

I Cup holder lights

J Footwell lights

K Scuff lights*

L Engine switch illumination

M Door courtesy lights

N Outer foot lights

O Running board lights

*: If equipped

■ **Illuminated entry system**

The lights automatically turn on/off according to the engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed. Also, the brightness of the lights is automatically adjusted linked with the shift operation.

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

If the interior lights remain on when the engine switch is turned to OFF, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ **Using voice control system (if equipped)**

The following operations can be performed using the voice control system.

- Turning interior light on/off
- Changing color of interior light

For information regarding the voice control system, refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **The interior lights may turn on automatically when**

If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the interior lights will turn on automatically.
The interior lights will turn off automatically after approximately 20 minutes.
The interior lights can be turned off manually. However, in order to help prevent further collisions, it is recommended that they be left on until safety can be ensured.
(The interior lights may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

■ **Customization**

Setting (e.g.the time elapsed before the lights turn off and color of the lights) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.651)

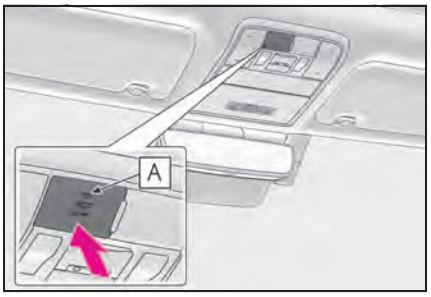
NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Operating interior lights

■ **Turning the door position on**



Press the door-linked interior light switch

The lights turn on/off according to the opening/closing of the doors.

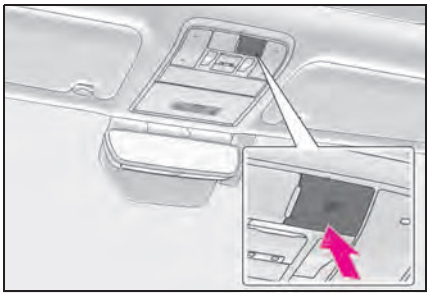
When the door position is on, the indicator A illuminates.

■ **Turning the lights on/off**

Turns the lights on/off

The rear personal lights will turn on linked with the front interior lights operation.

When a door is opened while the door position is on, the lights turn on.

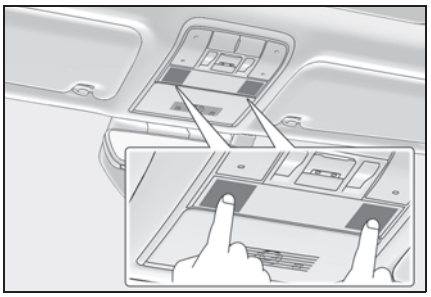


Operating personal lights

■ Front personal lights

Turns the lights on/off (touch the light)

When the front personal lights illuminate with the door-linked function on, they will not turn off even if the switch is pressed.

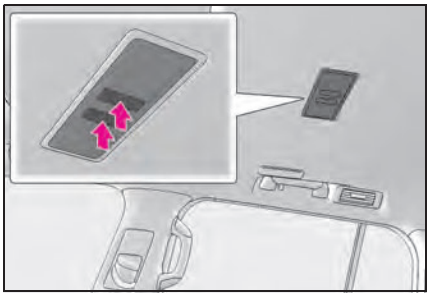


■ Rear personal lights

▶ Center side

Turns the lights on/off

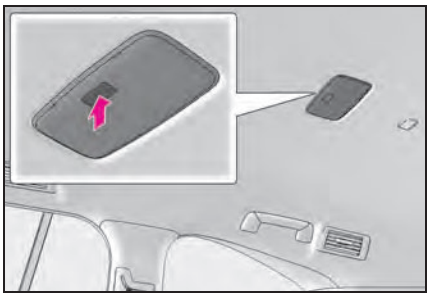
When the rear personal lights illuminate linked with the interior lights operation or when they illuminate with the door-linked function on, they will not turn off even if the switch is pressed.



▶ Rear side

Turns the lights on/off

When the rear personal lights illuminate linked with the interior lights operation or when they illuminate with the door-linked function on, they will not turn off even if the switch is pressed.



■ When front personal lights do not respond as normal

- When water, dirt, etc., have adhered to the lens surface
- When operated with a wet hand
- When wearing gloves, etc.

Operating rear reading lights (if equipped)

1 Display the home screen and then touch “Lamp” on the Rear Multi Operation Panel. (→P.449)

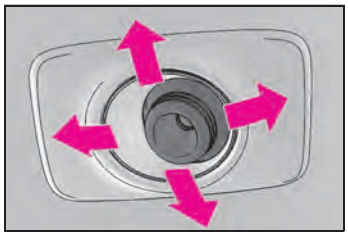
2 To turn on/off the rear reading lights, touch the respective button.

There are 3 brightness levels which can be adjusted each time touch the respective button.

Touch and holding the respective button will turn the light off, regardless of the brightness level.

Rear reading lights

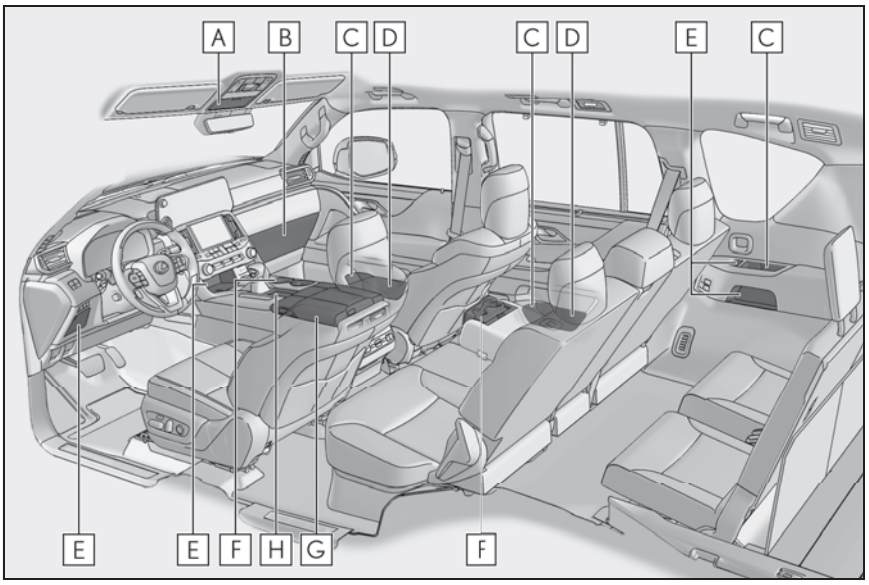
The illuminating angle can be adjusted in all directions.



List of storage features

Location of the storage features

▶ 5-passenger or 7-passenger models



A Overhead console (if equipped) (→P.481)

B Glove box (→P.480)

C Bottle holders (→P.482)

D Door pockets

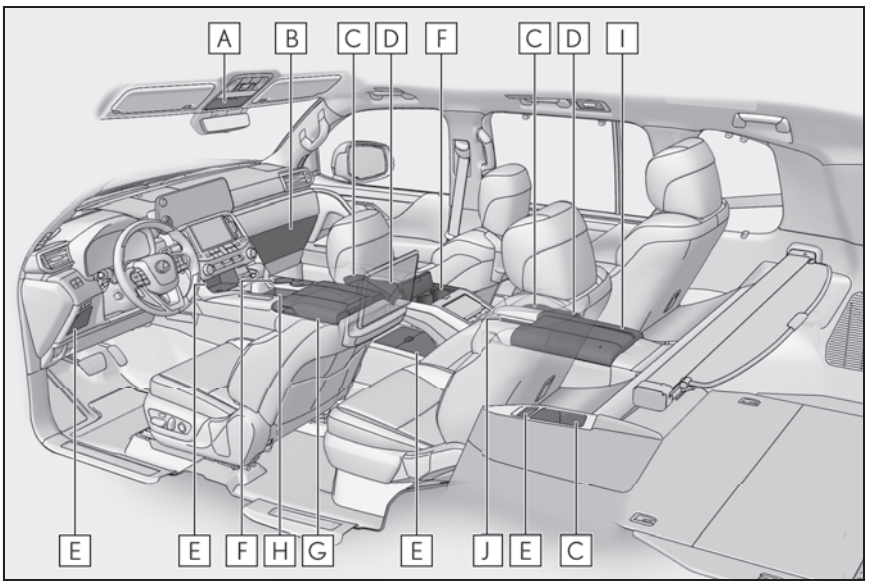
E Auxiliary boxes (if equipped) (→P.483)

F Cup holders (→P.482)

G Console box (if equipped) (→P.480)/Cool box (if equipped) (→P.489)

H Open tray (if equipped) (→P.484)/Wireless charger (if equipped) (→P.495)

▶ 4-passenger models



A Overhead console (if equipped) (→P.481)

B Glove box (→P.480)

C Bottle holders (→P.482)

D Door pockets

E Auxiliary boxes (if equipped) (→P.483)

F Cup holders (→P.482)

G Front console box (if equipped) (→P.480)/Cool box (if equipped) (→P.489)

H Open tray (→P.484)

I Rear console box (→P.480)

J Open tray (if equipped) (→P.484)/Wireless charger (if equipped) (→P.495)

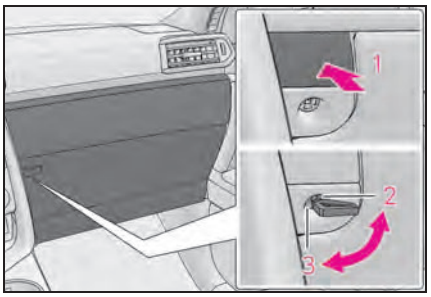
WARNING

■ **Items that should not be left in the storage spaces**

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

Glove box



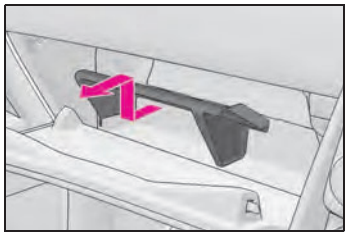
1 Open (press the button)
2 Unlock with the mechanical key
3 Lock with the mechanical key

■ **Glove box light**

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

■ **Removing the partition**

The partition inside the glove box can be removed by pulling it.



WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open glove box or the items stored inside.

Console box (if equipped)

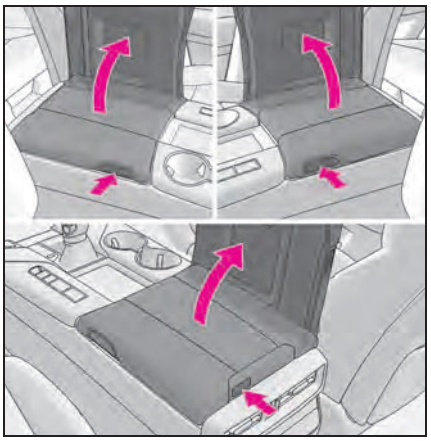
▶ Front

Your vehicle is equipped with either a console box or cool box.

For vehicles with the cool box, refer to P.489.

While pressing the button, lift up and open the lid.

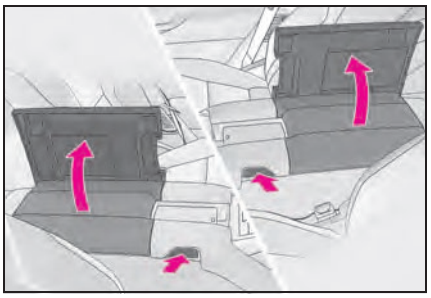
The console box can be opened from right, left or back side of the console box.



▶ Rear (if equipped)

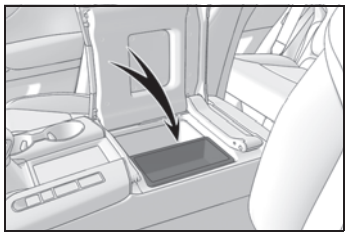
Push the button to release the lock, and then lift the lid to open the console box.

The console box can be opened from either side.



■ Tray in the console box (front)

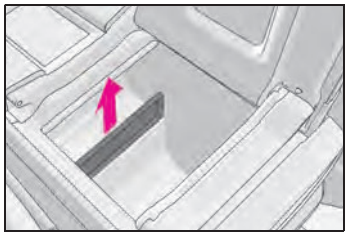
The tray in the console box can be moved left or right, or can be removed.



■ Console box insert (front)

The insert in the console box can be removed.

Remove the insert.



WARNING

■ Caution while driving

Keep the console box closed.

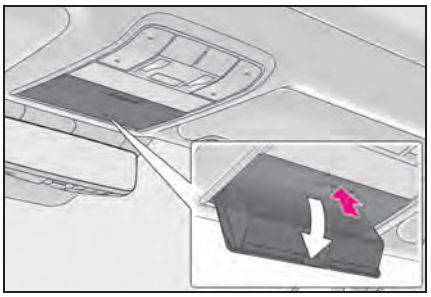
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

■ When opening and closing the console box

Take care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.

Overhead console (if equipped)

Press the lid.



WARNING

■ Items unsuitable for storing

Do not store items heavier than 0.2 kg (0.4 lb.).

Doing so may cause the overhead console to open and the items inside may fall out, resulting in an accident.

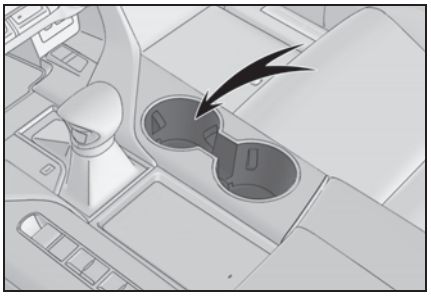
■ Caution while driving

Keep the overhead console closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

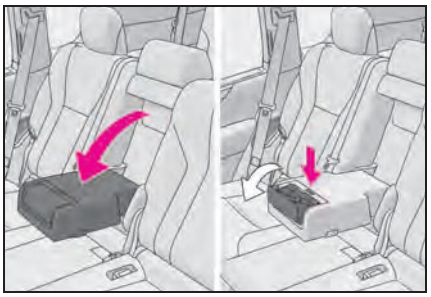
Cup holders

▶ Front



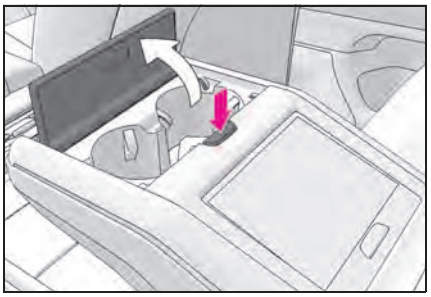
▶ Rear (type A) (if equipped)

To open, pull down the armrest and press in and release the rear cup holder on the armrest.



▶ Rear (type B) (if equipped)

Press the button and open the lid.



WARNING

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holders

Do not place anything other than cups or beverage cans in the cup holders. Even when the lid is closed, items must not be stored in the cup holders.

Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ When not in use

Keep the cup holders are closed. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

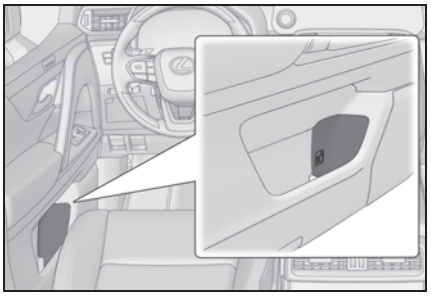
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the cup holders (vehicles with rear armrest)

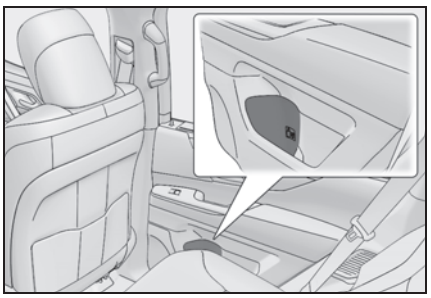
Stow the cup holders before stowing the rear armrest.

Bottle holders

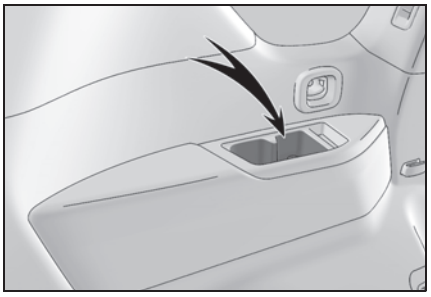
▶ Front doors



▶ Rear doors



▶ Rear side trims



■ **Bottle holders**

- When storing a bottle, close the cap.
- The bottle may not be stored depending on its size or shape.

NOTICE

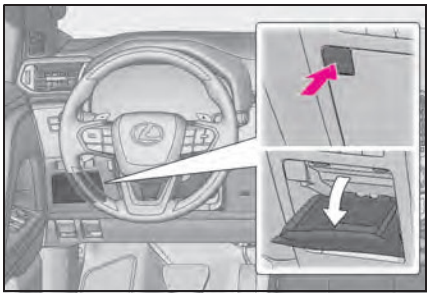
■ **Items that should be not stowed in the bottle holders**

Do not place open bottles or glass and paper cups containing liquid in the bottle holders. The contents may spill and glasses may break.

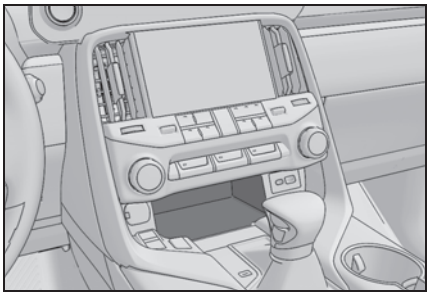
Auxiliary boxes

▶ Instrument panel

Press the button

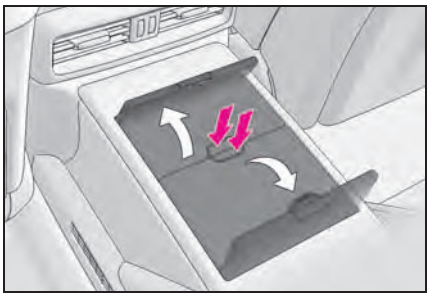


▶ Front

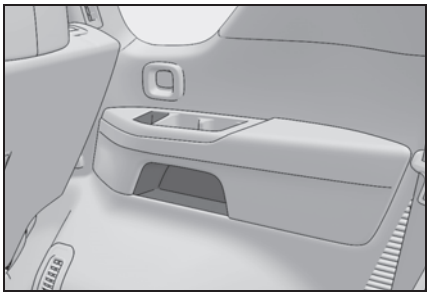


▶ Rear (if equipped)

Press the button to open the lid.



▶ Rear side trims (if equipped)



WARNING

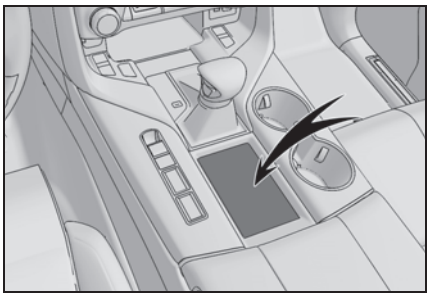
■ **Caution while driving**

Do not leave the auxiliary box open while driving.

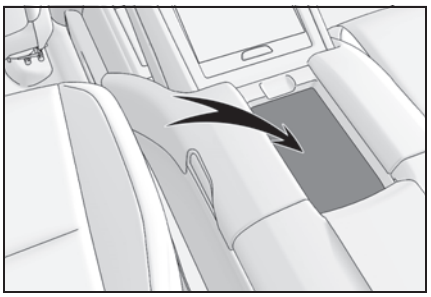
Items stored in it may fall out and cause death or serious injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

Open tray (if equipped)

▶ Front (if equipped)



▶ Rear (if equipped)



WARNING

■ **Items unsuitable for the open tray**

Observe the following precautions when putting items in the open tray. Failure to do so may cause items to be thrown out of the tray in the event of sudden braking or steering. In these cases, the items may interfere with pedal operation or cause driver distraction, resulting in an accident.

- Do not store items in the tray that can easily shift or roll out.
- Do not stack items in the tray higher than the tray's edge.
- Do not put items in the tray that may protrude over the tray's edge.

Luggage compartment features

WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Keep the deck board closed.

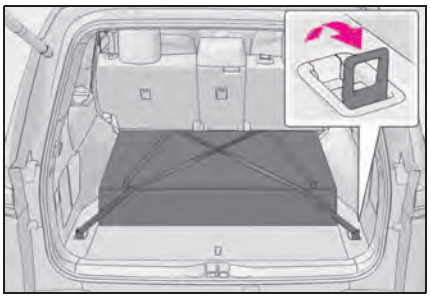
In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open deck board or the items stored inside.

Cargo hooks

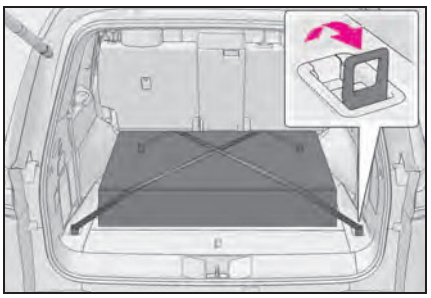
Raise the hook to use.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

▶ 4-passenger or 5-passenger models



▶ 7-passenger models

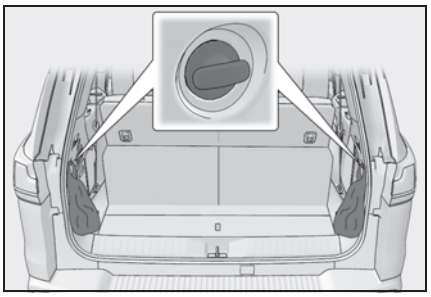


WARNING

■ **When cargo hooks are not in use**

To avoid injury, always return the hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

Grocery bag hooks



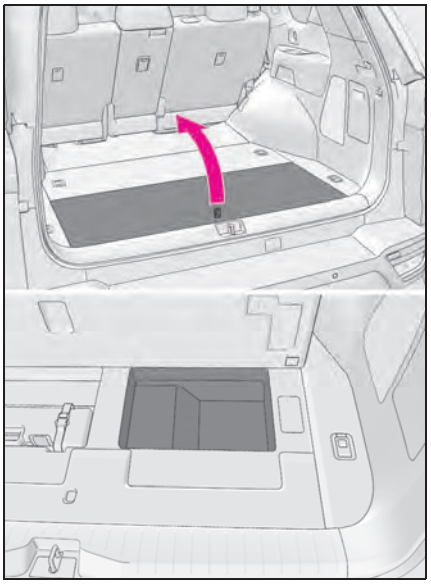
NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the grocery bag hooks**

Do not hang any object heavier than 3 kg (6.6 lb.) on the grocery bag hooks.

Storage compartment (4-passenger or 5-passenger models)

Open the deck board.

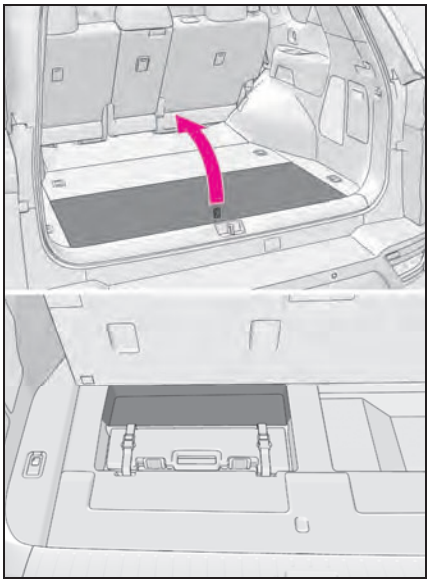


Warning reflector holder

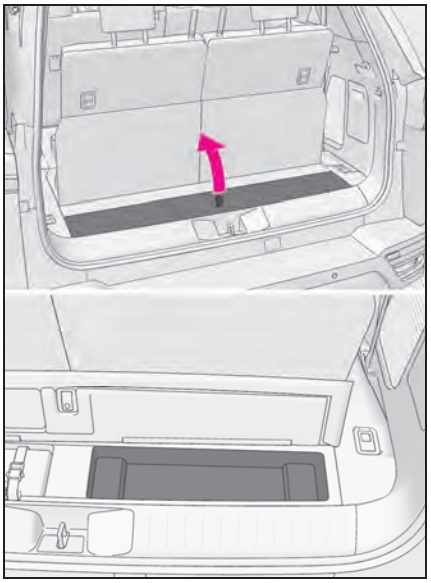
Open the deck board.

The warning reflector itself is not included as an original equipment.

▶ 4-passenger or 5-passenger models



▶ 7-passenger models



■ Warning reflector

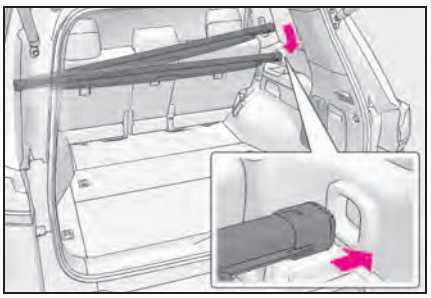
Depending on the size and shape of the

warning reflector case, you may not be able to store it.

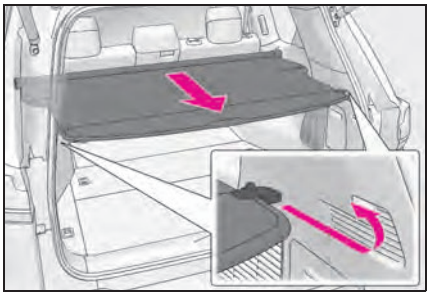
Luggage cover (5-passenger or 7-passenger models) (if equipped)

Installing the luggage cover

1 Install one side of the luggage cover to the holder. While pushing that side in, install the other side to the opposite holder.

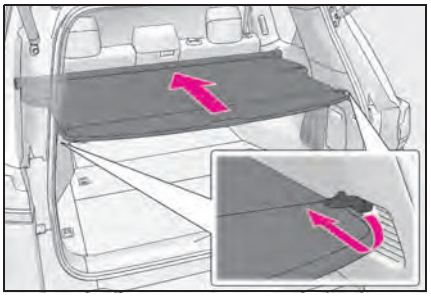


2 Pull out the luggage cover and secure it to the hook brackets.



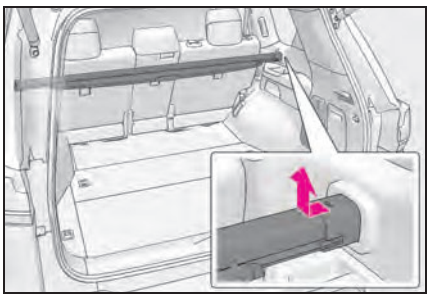
Removing the luggage cover

1 Detach the both ends of the luggage cover from the holder and retract it.



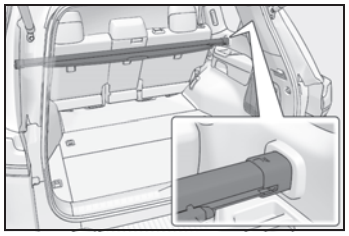
2 Push one end of the luggage cover inward and remove it from the holder.

After remove the luggage cover, remove it from the vehicle.



When installing the luggage cover

Keep the "TOP" mark on the luggage cover ends upward.



WARNING

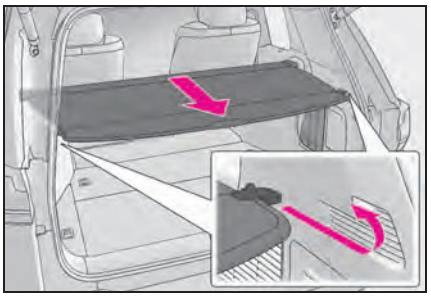
■ **Luggage cover**

- Do not allow children to climb on the luggage cover. Climbing on the luggage cover could result in damage to the luggage cover, possibly causing death or serious injury to the child.
- Do not put your fingers or arms between the luggage cover and its surrounding part. Fingers or arms may become jammed, resulting in serious injury.

Luggage cover (4-passenger models)

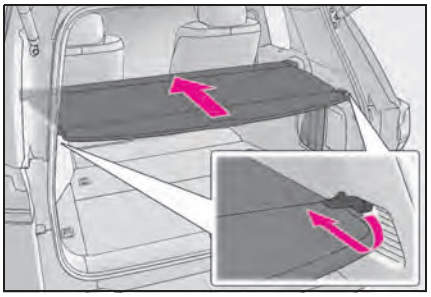
■ Pulling out the luggage cover

Pull out the luggage cover and secure it to the hook brackets.



■ Retracting the luggage cover

Detach the both ends of the luggage cover from the holder and retract it.



■ Removing the luggage cover

Lexus does not recommend that the luggage cover is removed by yourself. If it is necessary to remove the luggage cover, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

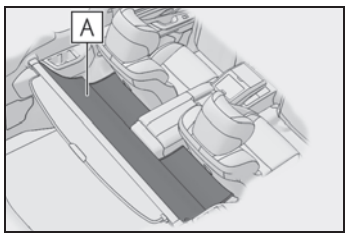
■ **Luggage cover**

- Do not allow children to climb on the luggage cover. Climbing on the luggage cover could result in damage to the luggage cover, possibly causing death or serious injury to the child.
- Do not put your fingers or arms between the luggage cover and its surrounding part. Fingers or arms may become jammed, resulting in serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the luggage cover**

Do not place an object between the seatback and luggage cover A .



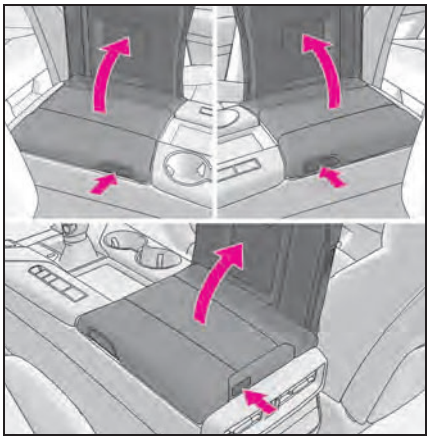
Other interior features

Cool box (if equipped)

While the engine is running, the cool box, which is cooled by the air conditioning, can be used.

1 While pressing the button, lift up and open the lid.

The cool box can be opened from right, left or back side of the cool box.

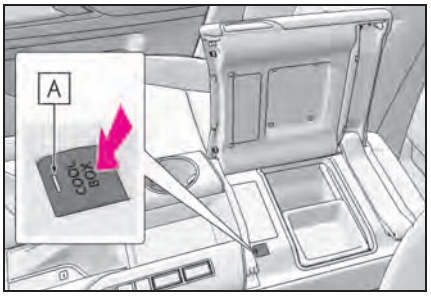


2 Turns the cool box on/off

When on, the indicator light A comes on.

Except GCC countries*, Lebanon, Jordan, Yemen, Syria and Iraq: If the front air conditioning system is not in use, the front air conditioning system is automatically turned on when the cool box is turned on.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait



If the front air conditioning system is not in use

▶ Except GCC countries*, Lebanon, Jordan, Yemen and Iraq

When the cool box is turned on, the front air conditioning system is automatically turned on.

▶ GCC countries*, Lebanon, Jordan, Yemen and Iraq

When the cool box is turned on, a very small amount of air is blown from the windshield air vent to protect the air conditioning system.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

While the cool box is on

▶ Except GCC countries*, Lebanon, Jordan, Yemen and Iraq

- The front air conditioning system cannot be turned off.
- To adjust the temperature of the cool box, the cool box may stop operating temporarily.

▶ GCC countries*, Lebanon, Jordan, Yemen and Iraq

- The front air conditioning system cannot be turned off. However, air flow to the occupants can be stopped by pressing the "OFF" button on the air conditioning control panel.

Also, a very small amount of air is blown

from the windshield air vent to protect the air conditioning system.

- To adjust the temperature of the cool box, the cool box may stop operating temporarily.

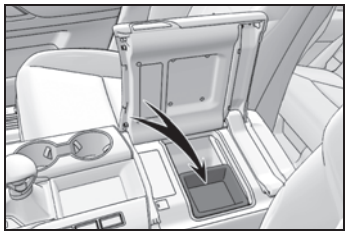
*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

■ **When the outside temperature is 0°C (32°F) or below**

The cool box may not operate.

■ **Tray in the cool box**

The tray in the cool box can be moved left or right, or can be removed.



■ **Items unsuitable for the cool box**

- Drinks in unsealed containers
- Fragile items, perishables or anything with strong odor
- Owner's manual, electronic devices, CDs, etc.

■ **When cleaning the inside of the cool box**

Wipe dirt off with a cloth dampened with water. Directly applying water may cause a malfunction.

WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Keep the cool box closed while driving.

Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ **When opening and closing the cool box**

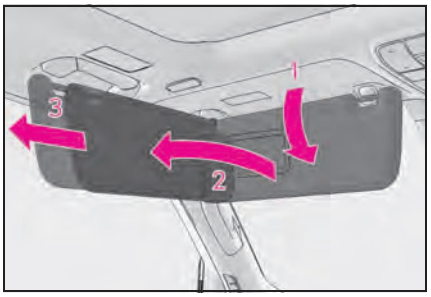
Take care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the cool box on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Sun visors



1 To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

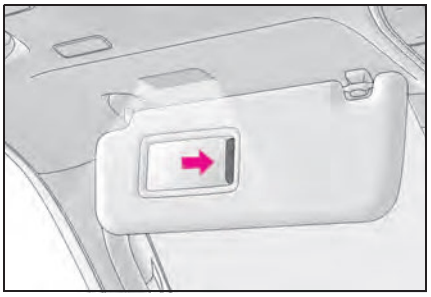
2 To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

3 To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.

Vanity mirrors

Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.



■ **Automatic light off to prevent battery discharge**

If the vanity lights remain on when the engine switch is turned to OFF, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

Power outlet

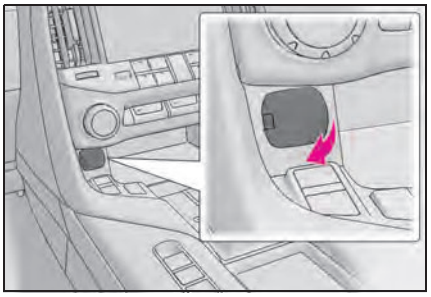
■ 12 V DC

Please use a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

When using electronic goods, make sure that the power consumption of all the connected power outlets is less than 120 W.

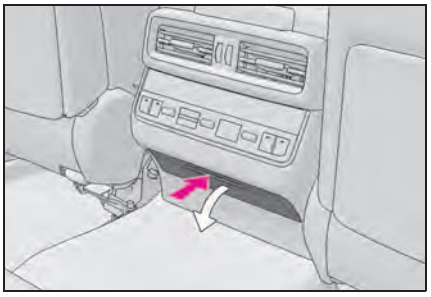
▶ Front

Open the lid.

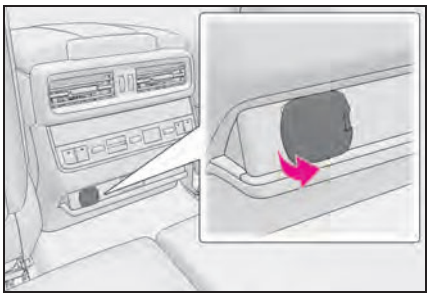


▶ Rear side of the console (if equipped)

Open the lid.



Open the lid.



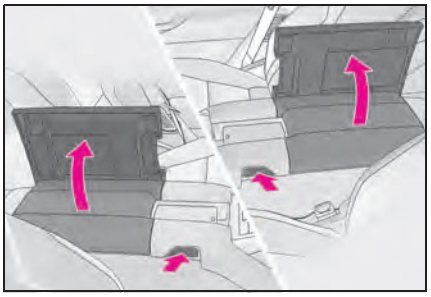
▶ Inside of the rear console box (if equipped)

Push the button to release the lock, and then lift the lid to open the console box.

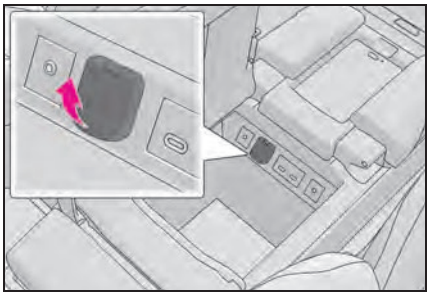
The console box can be opened from either side.

5

Interior features



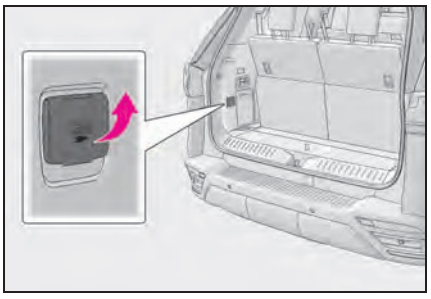
Open the lid.



■ 220 V AC

Accessories that use less than 100 W.

Open the lid.



■ The power outlet can be used when

▶ 12 V DC

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

▶ 220 V AC

The engine switch is in ON.

■ When turning the engine switch off

Disconnect electrical devices with charging functions, such as mobile battery packs. If such devices are left connected, the engine switch may not be turned off normally.

WARNING

■ Rear side of the console

Do not put anything on the rear side of the console or close the lid when anything is on the lid. Also, close the lid when the power outlet is not in use.

In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an injury many occur due to an occupant being struck by the open lid or the items stored inside.

NOTICE

■ When power outlet is not in use

To avoid damaging the power outlet, close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.

Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ To prevent blown fuse (220 V AC)

Do not use a 220 V AC appliance that requires more than 100 W. If a 220 V AC appliance that consumes more than 100 W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is off.

■ Appliances that may not operate properly (220 V AC)

The following 220 V AC appliances may not operate properly even if their power consumption is under 100 W:

- Appliances with high initial peak wattage
- Measuring devices that process precise data

NOTICE

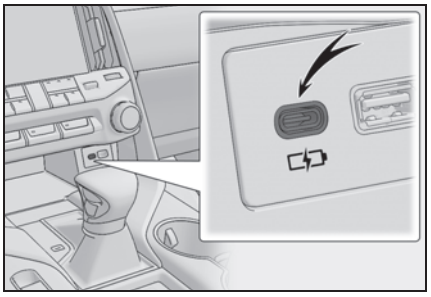
- Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply

USB Type-C charging ports (if equipped)

The USB Type-C charging ports are used to supply 3 A of electricity at 5 V to external devices.
The USB Type-C charging ports are for charging only. They are not designed for data transfer or other purposes.
Depending on the external device, it may not charge properly. Refer to the manual included with the device before using a USB charging port.

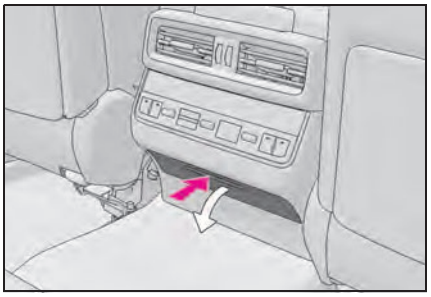
Using the USB Type-C charging ports

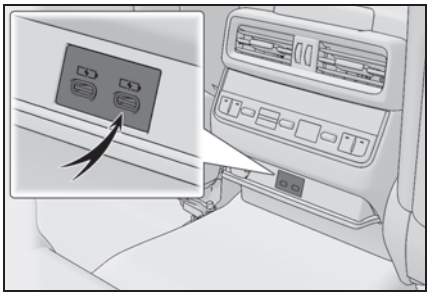
▶ Front



▶ Rear side of the console (if equipped)

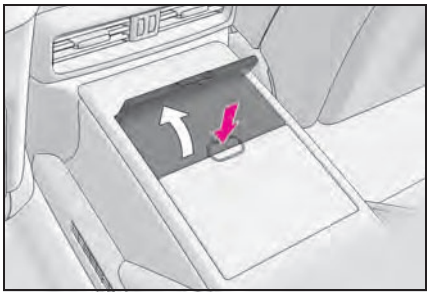
Open the lid.

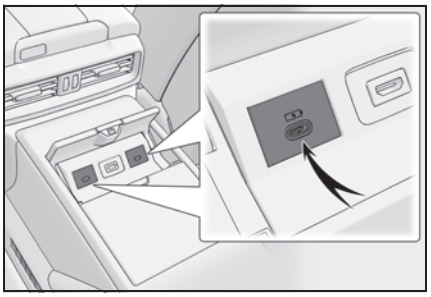




▶ Auxiliary box (if equipped)

Press the button to open the lid.

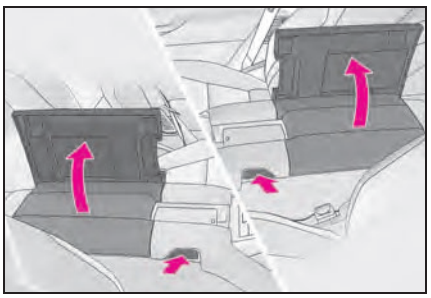


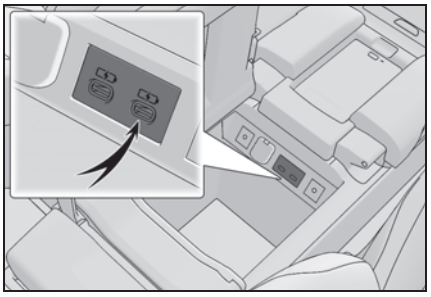


▶ Inside of the rear console box (if equipped)

Push the button to release the lock, and then lift the lid to open the console box.

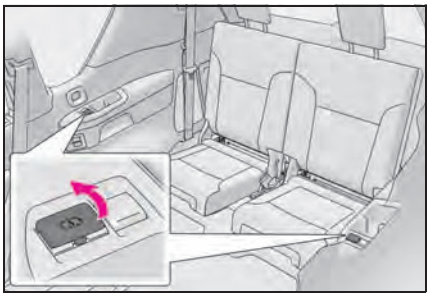
The console box can be opened from either side.





▶ Rear side trims (if equipped)

Open the lid.



■ The USB Type-C charging ports can be used when

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

■ Situations in which the USB Type-C charging ports may not operate correctly

- If a device which consumes more than 3 A at 5 V is connected
- If a device designed to communicate with a personal computer, such as a USB memory device, is connected
- If the connected external device is turned off (depending on device)
- If the temperature inside the vehicle is high, such as after the vehicle has been parked in the sun

■ About connected external devices

Depending on the connected external device, charging may occasionally be suspended and then start again. This is not a malfunction.

WARNING

■ Rear side of the console

Do not put anything on the rear side of the console or close the lid when anything is on the lid. Also, close the lid when the USB Type-C charging ports is not in use.

In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an injury many occur due to an occupant being struck by the open lid or the items stored inside.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the USB Type-C charging ports

- Do not insert foreign objects into the ports.
- Do not spill water or other liquids into the ports.
- When the USB Type-C charging ports are not in use, close the lids. If a foreign object or liquid enters a port may cause a short circuit.

NOTICE

- Do not apply excessive force to or impact the USB Type-C charging ports.
- Do not disassemble or modify the USB Type-C charging ports.

■ To prevent damage to external devices

- Do not leave external devices in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to an external device.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary force to an external device or the cable of an external device while it is connected.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the USB Type-C charging ports for a long period of time with the engine stopped.

Wireless charger (if equipped)

A portable device can be charged by just placing Qi standard wireless charge compatible portable devices according to the Wireless Power Consortium, such as smartphones and mobile batteries, etc., on the charge area.

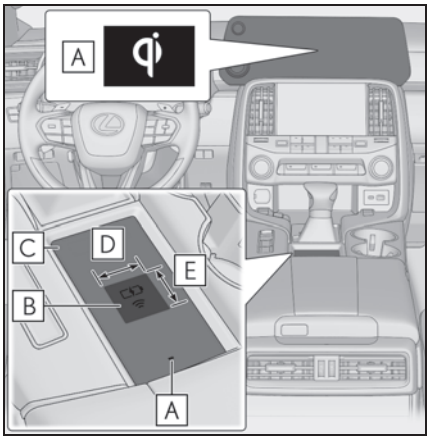
This function cannot be used with portable devices that are larger than the charging tray. Also, depending on the portable device, it may not operate as normal. Please read the operation manual for portable devices to be used.

■ The "Qi" logo

The "Qi" logo is a trademark of the Wireless Power Consortium.

■ Name for all parts

▶ Front (if equipped)



A Operation indicator light

B Charge area*

C Charging tray

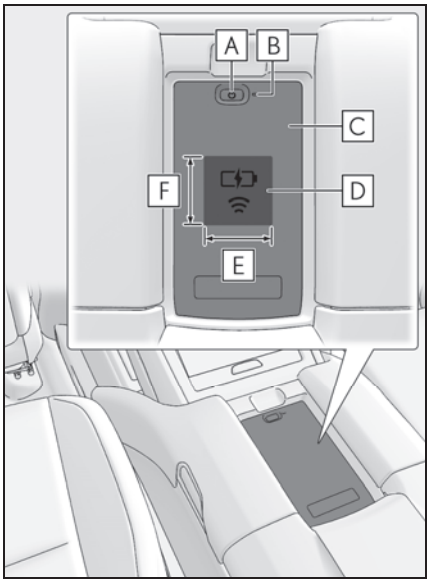
D Approximately 6 cm (2.4 in.)

E Approximately 7 cm (2.8 in.)

*: Portable devices and wireless chargers contain charging coils. The charging coil in the wireless charger can be moved within the charge area near the center of the charging tray. If the charging coil inside a portable device is detected in the charge area, the charging coil inside the wireless charger will move toward it and start charging. If the charging coil inside a portable device moves outside of the charge area, charging will automatically stop.
If 2 or more portable devices are placed on the charging tray, their charging coils

may not be properly detected and they may not be charged.

▶ Rear (if equipped)



A Power supply switch

B Operation indicator light

C Charging tray

D Charge area*

E Approximately 6 cm (2.4 in.)

F Approximately 7 cm (2.8 in.)

*: Portable devices and wireless chargers contain charging coils. The charging coil in the wireless charger can be moved within the charge area near the center of the charging tray. If the charging coil inside a portable device is detected in the charge area, the charging coil inside the wireless charger will move toward it and start charging. If the charging coil inside a portable device moves outside of the charge area, charging will automatically stop.

If 2 or more portable devices are placed on the charging tray, their charging coils may not be properly detected and they may not be charged.

■ Using the wireless charger

▶ Front (if equipped)

Place the portable device on the charging tray

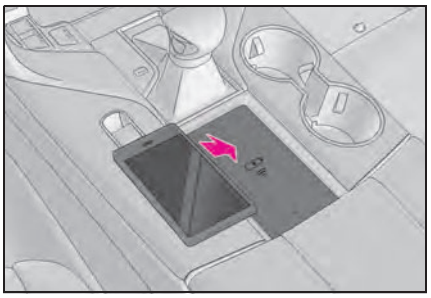
Place the charging side of the portable device down with the center of the device in the center of the charge area.

Depending on the portable device, the charging coil may not be located in the center of the device. In this case, place the portable device so that its charging coil is in the center of the charge area.

When charging, the operation indicator light (orange) comes on.

If charging is not occurring, try placing the portable device as close to the center of the charging area as possible.

When charging is complete, the operation indicator light (green) comes on.



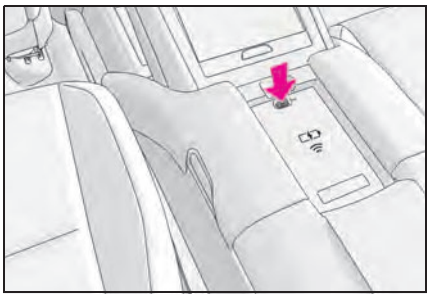
▶ Rear (if equipped)

1 Press the power supply switch of the wireless charger.

Switches on and off with each press of the power supply switch.

When turned on, the operation indicator light (green) comes on.

Even with the engine off, the on/off state of the power supply switch is memorized.



2 Place the portable device on the charging tray

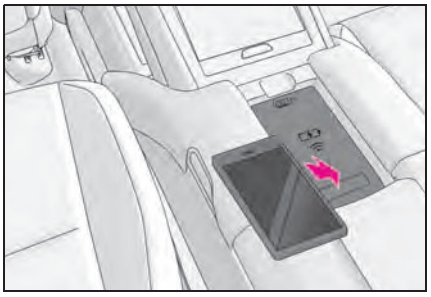
Place the charging side of the portable device down with the center of the device in the center of the charge area.

Depending on the portable device, the charging coil may not be located in the center of the device. In this case, place the portable device so that its charging coil is in the center of the charge area.

When charging, the operation indicator light (orange) comes on.

If charging is not occurring, try placing the portable device as close to the center of the charging area as possible.

When charging is complete, the operation indicator light (green) comes on.



Recharging function

- When charging is complete and after a fixed time in the charge suspension state, charging restarts.
- When a portable device is moved significantly in the charge area, the charging coil is disconnected and charging is stopped momentarily. However, if there is a charging coil in the charge area, the charging coil inside the wireless charger will move toward it and then charging restarts.

Rapid charging function

- The following portable devices support rapid charging.
  - Portable devices compliant with WPC Ver1.2.4 and compatible with rapid charging
  - iPhone's with an iOS version that supports 7.5 W charging (iPhone 8 and later models)
- When a portable device that supports rapid charging is charged, charging automatically switches to the rapid charging function.

■ **Lighting conditions of operation indicator light**

Operation indicator light		Conditions
Charging tray side	Center display side[*1]	
Turning off	Disappear	When the Wireless charger power supply is off
Green (comes on)	Gray	On Standby (charging possible state)[*2]
		When charging is complete[*3]
Orange (comes on)	Blue	When placing the portable device on the charging area (detecting the portable device)
		Charging

[*1]: Only displayed on the front wireless device.

[*2]: Charging power will not be output during standby. A metallic object will not be heated, if it is placed on the charging tray in this state.

[*3]: Depending on the portable device, there are cases where the operation indicator light will continue being lit up orange even after the charging is complete.

■ **When the wireless charger does not operate properly**

When the wireless charger does not operate properly, handle the probable cause based on the following tables.

Operation indicator light		Suspected causes/Handling method
Charging tray side	Center Display side*	
Orange (Flashing repeatedly once every second)	Gray	**Vehicle to wireless charger communication failure** **→ If the engine is running, stop and then restart the engine.** If the engine switch is in ACC, start the engine. (→P.228)
Green (Flashing repeatedly once every second)	Disappear	**Wireless charger and multimedia system communication failure** **→ If the engine is running, stop and then restart the engine.** If the engine switch is in ACC, start the engine. (→P.228)
Green (comes on)	Blue	**AM radio stations are being automatically selected** **→ Wait until the system has completed the automatic selection of AM radio stations. In the case that automatic selection cannot be completed, stop automatic selection.**
		The smart entry & start system is detecting the key. **→ Wait until key detection has completed.**

Operation indicator light		Suspected causes/Handling method
Charging tray side	Center Display side*	
Orange (Repeatedly flashes 3 times continuously)	Gray	**Foreign substance detection:** **A metallic foreign substance is in the charge area, and so the abnormal heating prevention function of the charging coil operated** **→ Remove the foreign substance from the charge area.**
		Portable device misaligned: **→ The charging coil in the portable device moved outside of the charge area, and so the abnormal heating prevention function of the charging coil operated**
Orange (Repeatedly flashes 4 times continuously)	Gray	**Safety shutdown resulting when the temperature within the wireless charger exceeded the set value** **→ Stop charging, remove the portable device from the charging tray, wait for the temperature to drop, and then start charging again.**

*: Only displayed on the front wireless device.

■ **The wireless charger can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

■ **Usable portable devices**

- Qi standard wireless charge standard can be used on compatible devices. However, not all Qi standard devices and compatibility are guaranteed.
- Starting with mobile phones and smartphones, it is aimed for low power electrically supplied portable devices of no more than 5W.
- However, charging exceeding 5 W is supported by the following portable devices.
  - Charging at 7.5 W or less is supported by iPhone's that support 7.5 W charging.
  - Charging at 10 W or less is supported by portable devices compliant with EPP output as defined by WPC standard Ver1.2.4.

■ **When covers and accessories are attached to portable devices**

Do not charge in situations where cover and accessories not able to handle Qi are attached to the portable device. Depending on the type of cover (including for certain genuine manufacturer parts) and accessory, it may not be possible to charge. When charging is not performed even with the portable device placed on the charge area, remove the cover and accessories.

■ **While charging, noise enters the AM radio**

- Rear (if equipped): Turn off the wireless charger and confirm that the noise has decreased. If the noise decreases, continuously pushing the power supply switch of the wireless charger for 2 seconds, the frequency of the charger can be changed and the noise can be reduced. Also, on that occasion, the operation indicator light will flash orange 2 times.
- iPhone's use a particular frequency for rapid charging. Depending on the iOS version, rapid charging may not be performed while switching frequencies.

■ **Important points of the wireless charger**

- If the electronic key cannot be detected within the vehicle interior, charging cannot be done. When the door is opened and closed, charging may be temporarily suspended.
- When charging, the wireless charging device and portable device will get warmer, however this is not a malfunction.
  When a portable device gets warm while charging, charging may stop due to the protection function on the portable device side. In this case, when the temperature of the portable device drops significantly, charge again.

The fan may start operating to lower the temperature inside the wireless charger, however this is not a malfunction.

■ **Operation sounds**

Front (if equipped): A buzzing noise may be heard when pressing the engine switch to turn to ACC or ON or when detecting a portable device. However, this is not a malfunction.

Rear (if equipped): A buzzing noise may be heard when pressing the power supply switch to turn the power supply on, when turning the engine switch to ACC or ON while the wireless charger power supply is on, or when detecting a portable device. However, this is not a malfunction.

WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

When charging a portable device, for safety reasons, the driver should not operate the main part of the portable device while driving.

■ **Caution while in motion**

Do not charge lightweight devices such as wireless headphones while in motion. These devices are very light and may be ejected from the charging tray, which may lead to unforeseen accidents.

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverters, as well as any other electrical medical device, should consult their physician about the usage of the wireless charger.

■ **To prevent malfunctions or burns**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in a equipment failure and damage, catch fire, burns due to overheat or electric shock.

- Do not insert any metallic objects between the charge area and the portable device while charging
- Do not attach an aluminum sticker or other metallic object to the charge area
- Do not attach an aluminum sticker or other metallic object to the side of the portable device (or to its case or cover) that touches the charge area
- Do not use the charging tray as a small storage space
- Do not subject to a strong force or impact
- Do not disassemble, modify or remove

WARNING

- Do not charge devices other than specified portable devices
- Keep away from magnetic items
- Do not charge devices if the charge area is covered in dust
- Do not cover with a cloth or similar material

NOTICE

■ Situations in which the function may not operate normally

Devices may not be charged normally in the following situations.

- The portable device is fully charged
- The portable device is being charged with a cable connected
- There is foreign matter between the charge area and portable device
- Charging has caused the portable device to heat up
- The temperature around the charging tray is 35°C (95°F) or higher, such as in extreme heat
- The portable device is placed with its charging side facing up
- The portable device is placed in an area misaligned from the charge area
- The portable device is larger than the charging tray
- A foldable and portable device is placed outside the charge area
- The vehicle is in an area where strong electrical waves or noise are emitted, such as near a television tower, power plant, gasoline station, broadcasting station, large display, airport, etc.
- Any of the following objects that is 2 mm (0.08 in) or thicker is stuck or installed between the charging side of the portable device and the charge area.
  - Thick cases or covers
  - A case or cover attached with an uneven or tilted surface, so that the charging side is not flat
  - Thick decorations
  - Accessories, such as finger rings, straps, etc.
- When the portable device is in contact with, or is covered by any of the following metallic objects:
  - A card that has metal on it, such as aluminum foil, etc.
  - A pack of cigarettes that includes aluminum foil
  - A wallet or bag that is made of metal
  - Coins
  - A heating pad
  - CDs, DVDs or other media
  - A metal accessory
  - A case or cover made of metal
- Electric wave type wireless remote controls are being used nearby
- 2 or more portable devices are placed on the charging tray at the same time

If charging is abnormal or the operation indicator light continues to flash for any other reason, the wireless charger may be malfunctioning. Contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ To prevent malfunctions and data corruptions

- When charging, bringing a credit, or other magnetic card, or magnetic storage media close to the charge area may clear any stored data due to magnetic influence. Also, do not bring a wristwatch or other precision instrument close to the charge area since doing so may cause it to malfunction.
- Do not charge with a non-contact IC card such as a transportation system IC card inserted between the charging side of a portable device and the charge area. The IC chip may become extremely hot and damage the portable device or IC card. Be especially careful not to charge a portable device inside a case or cover with a non-contact IC card attached.
- Do not leave portable devices inside the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle can become hot in extreme heat, which could cause a malfunction.

■ If the smartphone OS has been updated

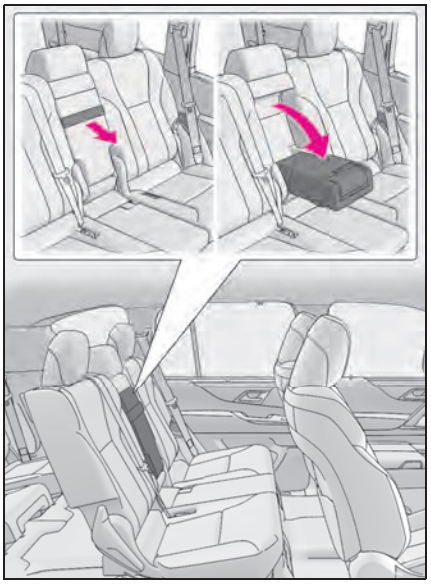
If the smartphone OS has been updated to a newer version, its charging specifications may have changed significantly. For details, check the information on the manufacturer's website.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the wireless charger for a long period of time when the engine is stopped.

Armrest (if equipped)

Fold down the armrest for use.



NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the armrest

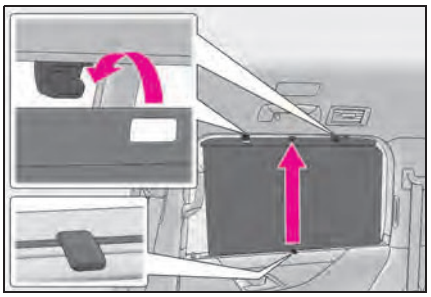
Do not apply too much load on the armrest.

Rear door/rear quarter sunshades (if equipped)

▶ Rear door

Pull the tab of the rear door sunshade and hook the shade on the anchor.

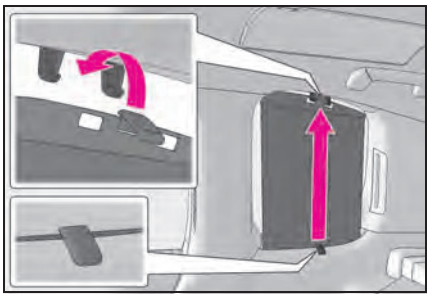
To retract the rear door sunshade, unhook the shade and retract it slowly.



▶ Rear quarter

Pull the tab of the rear quarter sunshade and hook the shade on the anchor.

To retract the rear quarter sunshade, unhook the shade and retract it slowly.



WARNING

■ Rear door/rear quarter sunshades

- When a sunshade is in use, do not put fingers on the anchors or in the groove of the sunshade. Otherwise, a finger may get caught, possibly causing an injury.
- Do not use the sunshade when either hook is detached.

The sunshade may come off, possibly causing an injury.

NOTICE

■ To ensure the rear door/rear quarter sunshade can operate properly

Observe the following precautions

- Do not place anything where it may interrupt opening/closing of the sunshade.
- Do not attach anything to the sunshade.
- Do not apply excessive force to the sunshade when it is being hooked on the anchor.
- Do not operate the sunshade while the rear door is opening or closing.
- Do not store the sunshade in a tilted position.
  If stored in a tilted position, the sunshade screen may become creased.

■ To prevent damage to the rear door/rear quarter sunshades

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to the sunshades:

- Do not hook anything other than the sunshade on hook.

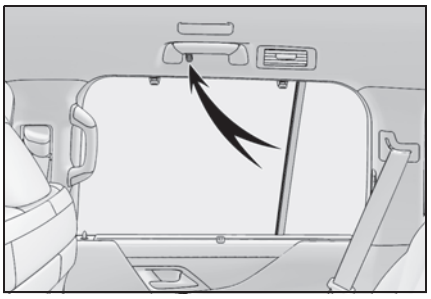
The hook may be damaged.

- Do not pull on the screen while the sunshade is hooked on the anchor.

The screen may be damaged.

Coat hooks

The coat hooks are provided with the second seat assist grips.



WARNING

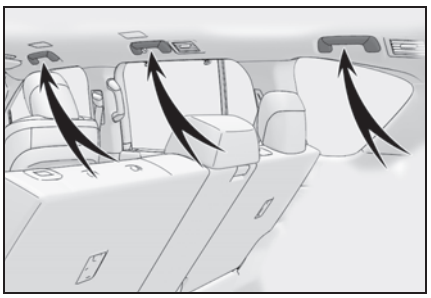
■ Items that must not be hanged on the hook

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

Assist grips

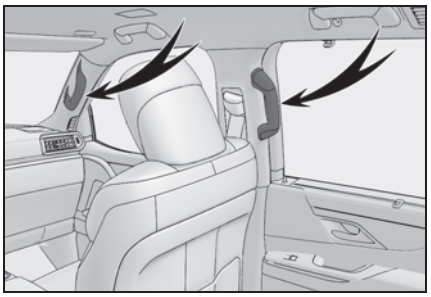
▶ Type A

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



▶ Type B

An assist grip installed on the pillar can be used when getting in or out of the vehicle and others.



WARNING

■ Assist grips (type A)

Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the assist grip

Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Garage door opener*

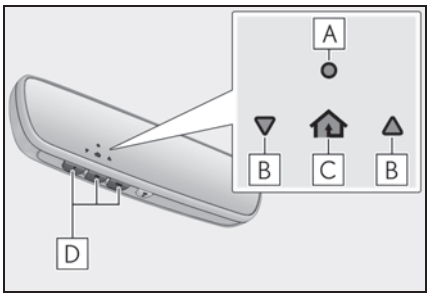
*: If equipped

The garage door opener can be programmed using the HomeLink® to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.

System components

The HomeLink® wireless control system in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming methods on the following pages to determine the method which is appropriate for the device.

▶ Vehicles with inside rear view mirror



A HomeLink® indicator light

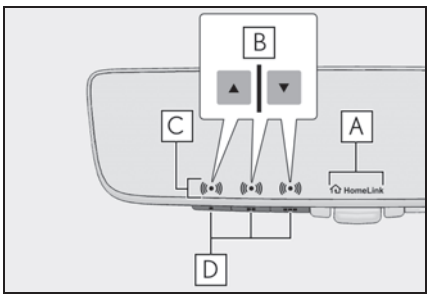
B Garage door operation indicators

C HomeLink® icon

Illuminates while HomeLink® is operating.

D Buttons

▶ Vehicles with Digital Rear-view Mirror



A HomeLink® logo

Appears while HomeLink® is operating. When the menu button (→P.188) is pressed, the logo disappears even while the HomeLink® is operating.

B Garage door operation indicators

C HomeLink® indicator light

Illuminates above each button selected.

D Buttons

■ **Codes stored in the HomeLink® memory**

- The registered codes are not erased even if the battery cable is disconnected.
- If learning failed when registering a different code to a HomeLink® button that already has a code registered to it, the already registered code will not be erased.

WARNING

■ **When programming a garage door or other remote control device**

The garage door or other device may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ **Conforming to federal safety standards**

Do not use the HomeLink® compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.

This includes any garage door that cannot detect an interfering object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

■ **When operating or programming HomeLink®**

Never allow a child to operate or play with the HomeLink® buttons.

Programming the HomeLink®

■ **Before programming HomeLink®**

- During programming, it is possible that garage doors, gates, or other devices may operate. For this reason, make sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or other devices to prevent injury or other potential harm.
- It is recommended that a new battery be placed in the remote control transmitter for more accurate programming.
- Garage door opener motors manufactured after 1995 may be equipped with rolling code protection. If this is the case, you may need a stepladder or other sturdy, safe device to reach the “Learn” or “Smart” button on the garage door opener motor.

■ Programming HomeLink®

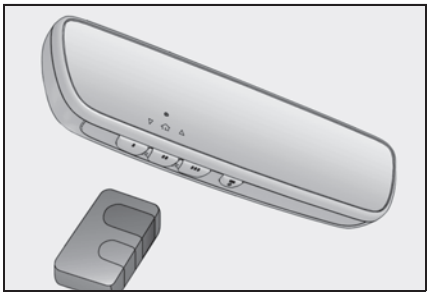
Steps **1** through **3** must be performed within 60 seconds, otherwise the HomeLink® indicator light will stop flashing and programming will not be successfully completed.

1 Press and release the HomeLink® button you want to program and check that the HomeLink® indicator light flashes (orange).

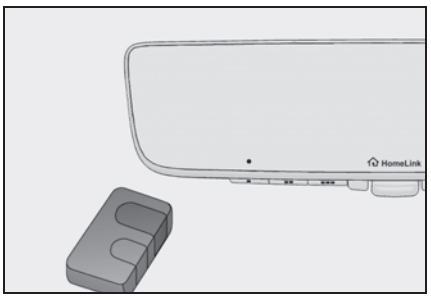
2 Point the remote control transmitter for the device at the rear view mirror, 25 to 75 mm (1 to 3 in.) from the HomeLink® buttons.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.

▶ Vehicles with inside rear view mirror



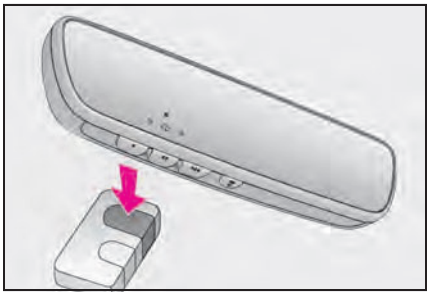
▶ Vehicles with Digital Rear-view Mirror



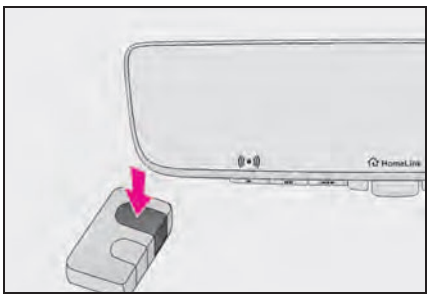
▶ Garage door opener type A

3 Press and hold the remote control transmitter button until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from slowly flashing orange to rapidly flashing green (rolling code) or continuously lit green (fixed code), then release the button.

▶ Vehicles with inside rear view mirror



▶ Vehicles with Digital Rear-view Mirror



▶ Garage door type B (Programming an entry gate/Programming the HomeLink®)

3 Press and release the remote control transmitter button at 2 second intervals, repeatedly, until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from slowly flashing (orange) to rapidly flashing (green) (rolling code) or continuously lit (green) (fixed code).

4 Test the HomeLink® operation by pressing the newly programmed button and observing the indicator light:

- HomeLink® indicator light illuminates: Programming of a fixed code device has completed. The garage door or other device should operate when a HomeLink® button is pressed and released.
- HomeLink® indicator light flashes rapidly: The garage door opener motor or other device is equipped with a rolling code. To complete programming, firmly press and hold the HomeLink® button for 2 seconds then release it.
- If the garage door or other device does not operate, proceed to "Programming a rolling code system".

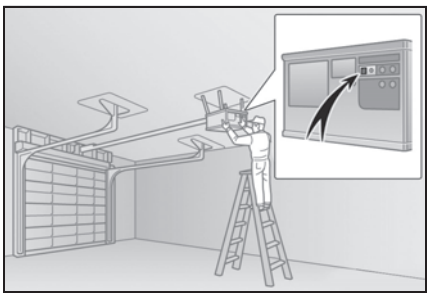
5 Repeat the steps above to program another device for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ Programming a rolling code system

Two or more people may be necessary to complete rolling code programming.

1 Locate the "Learn" or "Smart" button on the garage door opener motor in the garage.

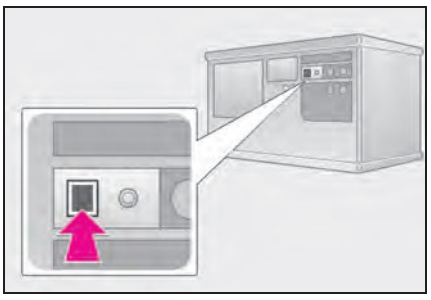
This button can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the unit. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer. Refer to the owner's manual supplied with the garage door opener motor for details.



2 Press and release the "Learn" or "Smart" button.

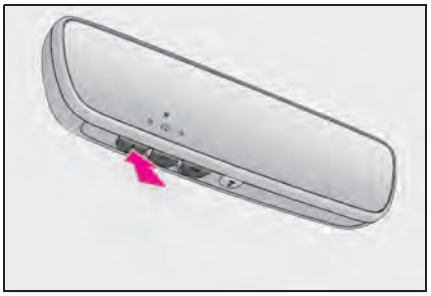
Perform step **3** within 30 seconds after

performing step2.

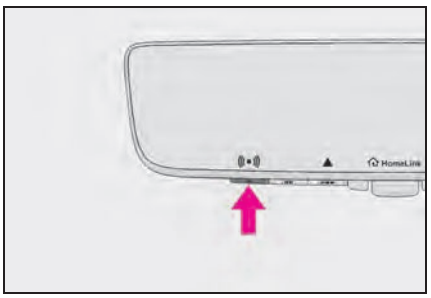


3 Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button (inside the vehicle) for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this sequence (press/hold/release) up to 3 times to complete programming.
If the garage door opener motor operates when the HomeLink® button is pressed, the garage door opener motor recognizes the HomeLink® signal.

▶ Vehicles with inside rear view mirror



▶ Vehicles with Digital Rear-view Mirror



■ Enabling 2-way communication with a garage door (only available for compatible devices)

When enabled, 2-way communication allows you to check the status of the opening and closing of a garage door through indicators in your vehicle.

2-way communication is only available if the garage door opener motor used is a compatible device. (To check device compatibility, refer to www.homelink.com.)

1 Within 5 seconds after programming the garage door opener has been completed, if the garage door opener motor is trained to HomeLink®, both garage door operation indicators will flash rapidly (green) and the light on the garage door opener motor will blink twice, indicating that 2-way communication is enabled.

If the indicators do not flash, perform steps2 and 3 within the first 10 presses of the HomeLink® button after programming has been completed.

2 Press a programmed HomeLink® button to operate a garage door.

3 Within 1 minute of pressing the HomeLink® button, after the garage door operation has stopped, press the "Learn" or "Smart" button on the garage door opener motor. Within 5 seconds of the establishment of 2-way communication with the garage door opener, both garage door operation indicators in the vehicle will flash rapidly (green) and the light on the garage door opener motor will blink twice, indicating that 2-way communication is enabled.

■ **Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button**

When the following procedure is performed, buttons which already have devices registered to them can be overwritten:

1 Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button.

2 When the HomeLink® indicator starts flashing orange, release the HomeLink® button and perform "Programming HomeLink®" step**1** (it takes 20 seconds for the HomeLink® indicator to start flashing).

■ **Before programming**

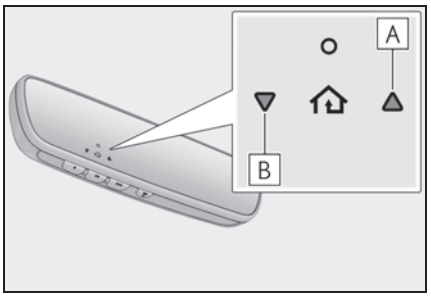
- Install a new battery in the transmitter.
- The battery side of the transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® buttons.

Operating HomeLink®

Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light should turn on.

The status of the opening and closing of a garage door is shown by the garage door opener indicators.

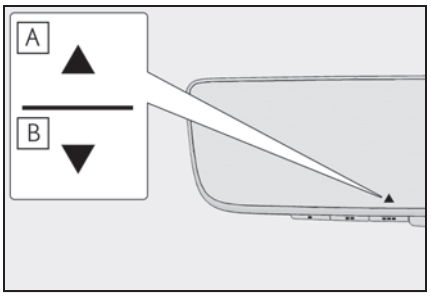
▶ Vehicles with inside rear view mirror



A Opening

B Closing

▶ Vehicles with Digital Rear-view Mirror



A Opening

B Closing

This function is only available if the garage

door opener motor used is a compatible device. (To check device compatibility, refer to www.homelink.com.)

Color	Status
Orange (flashing)	Currently opening/closing
Green	Opening/closing has completed
Red (flashing)	Feedback signals cannot be received

The indicators can operate within approximately 250 m (820 ft.) of the garage door. However, if there are obstructions between the garage door and the vehicle, such as houses and trees, feedback signals from the garage door may not be received.

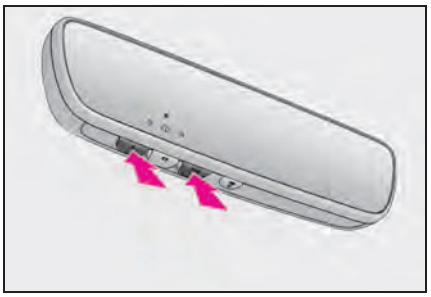
To recall the previous door operation status, press and release either HomeLink® buttons and or and (vehicles with inside rear view mirror), and or and (vehicles with Digital Rear-view Mirror), simultaneously. The last recorded status will be displayed for 3 seconds.

Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three codes)

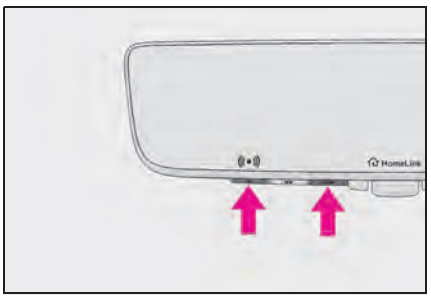
Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from continuously lit (orange) to rapidly flashing (green).

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.

▶ Vehicles with inside rear view mirror



▶ Vehicles with Digital Rear-view Mirror



6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 514

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 517

6-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 520

Scheduled maintenance 522

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 530

Hood 532

Engine compartment 533

Draining the fuel filter water (diesel engine only) 544

AdBlue™ 546

Tires 550

Tire inflation pressure 559

Wheels 560

Air conditioning filter 562

Electronic key battery 563

Checking and replacing fuses 566

Light bulbs 569

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

Cleaning instructions

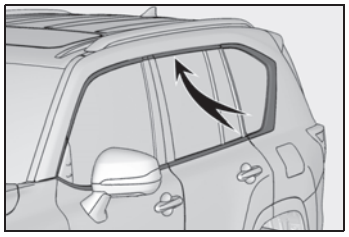
- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

Black stainless steel window moldings (if equipped)

The stainless steel window moldings are made of black oxide coated stainless steel.

When cleaning the vehicle, do not scrub the moldings with an abrasive cleaner as their finish may be damaged or the color may change.



Automatic car washes

- Before washing the vehicle:
  - Fold the mirrors
  - Turn off the power back door

Start washing from the front of the vehicle.

Extend the mirrors before driving.

- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface, parts (wheel, etc.) and harm your vehicle's paint.
- Rear spoiler may not be washable in some automatic car washes. There may also be an increased risk of damage to vehicle.

High pressure car washes

- As water may enter the cabin, do not bring the nozzle tip near the gaps around the doors or perimeter of the windows, or spray these areas continuously.
- Do not use the high-pressure washer too close to the bearings and oil seals of drivetrain system parts (such as the differential gear).

If used too close to such parts, the high water pressure may cause water to enter the parts and grease to be washed out, causing the system performance to decrease.

Wheels and wheel ornaments (vehicles without matte painted wheels)

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent.
- Wash detergent off with water immediately after use.
- To protect the paint from damage, make sure to observe the following precautions.

- Do not use acidic, alkaline or abrasive detergent.
- Do not use hard brushes.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, such as after driving or parking in hot weather.

■ **Aluminum wheels (vehicles with matte painted wheels)**

As matte painted wheels require different cleaning methods than conventional aluminum wheels, be sure to observer the following. For details, consult your Lexus dealer.

● Remove dirt using water. If the wheels are excessively dirty, use a sponge or soft cloth dampened with a diluted neutral detergent to remove the dirt.

● When using detergent, make sure to rinse it off with water immediately. Then use a soft cloth to wipe off the water.

● To prevent the matte paint from being damaged, make sure to observe the following precautions:

- Do not scrub or polish the wheels using a brush or dry cloth.
- Do not use any wheel coatings or abrasive detergents.
- When using an automatic car wash, disable/do not select the wheel brush function (if such an option is available).
- Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, such as after driving or parking in hot weather.

■ **Brake caliper coating**

● When using detergent, use neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners, as they will damage the coating.

● Do not use detergent on the brake calipers when they are hot.

● Wash detergent off immediately after use.

■ **Brake pads and calipers**

Rust may form if the vehicle is parked with wet brake pads or disc rotors, causing them to stick. Before parking the vehicle after it is washed, drive slowly and apply the brakes several times to dry the parts.

■ **Bumpers and side moldings**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ **Plated portions**

If dirt cannot be removed, clean the parts as follows:

● Use a soft cloth dampened with an approximately 5% solution of neutral detergent and water to clean the dirt off.

● Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.

● To remove oily deposits, use alcohol wet wipes or a similar product.

■ **Note for a smart entry & start system**

● If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the electronic key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.163)

● If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.

WARNING

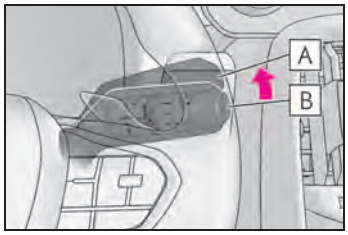
■ **When washing the vehicle**

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components, etc. to catch fire.

WARNING

When cleaning the windshield

Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



A Off

B AUTO

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipes to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes can cause burns.

Precaution regarding the rear bumper with Blind Spot Monitor (if equipped)

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels, etc.)

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights.
  Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

NOTICE

■ When using an automatic car wash

Set the wiper switch to off position.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ When using a high pressure car wash

- When washing the vehicle, do not spray the camera or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Vehicles with Lexus Safety System +: Do not spray water directly on the radar which is equipped behind the emblem. Otherwise it may cause the device to be damaged.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), connectors or the following parts.
  The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.
  - Traction related parts
  - Steering parts
  - Suspension parts
  - Brake parts
- Keep the cleaning nozzle at least 30 cm (11.9 in.) away from the vehicle body. Otherwise resin section, such as moldings and bumpers, may be deformed and damaged. Also, do not continuously hold the nozzle in the same place.
- Do not spray the lower part of the windshield continuously. If water enters the air conditioning system intake located near the lower part of the windshield, the air conditioning system may not operate correctly.
- Do not wash the underside of the vehicle using a high pressure car washer.

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Protecting the vehicle interior

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.
- If dirt cannot be removed, wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
  Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Handling the seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

WARNING

■ **Water in the vehicle**

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components, etc., to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.50)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Vehicles with wireless charger:
  Do not let the wireless charger (→P.495) get wet. Failure to do so may cause the charger to become hot and cause burns or could cause electric shock resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)**

Do not use a polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **Cleaning detergents**

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
  - Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use a polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ **Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ **Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water. Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ **When cleaning the inside of the windshield (vehicles with Lexus Safety System +)**

Do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens. (→P.257)

■ **Cleaning the inside of the rear quarter windows and rear window**

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear quarter windows and rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

- Remove dirt using a water-dampened soft cloth or synthetic chamois.
- Wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.

Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

The metal areas use a layer of real metal to the surface. It is necessary to clean them regularly. If dirty areas are left uncleaned for long period of time, they may be difficult to clean.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:

WARNING

■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

■ Handling of the battery

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P.540)

Scheduled maintenance

- Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

The interval for scheduled maintenance is determined by the odometer reading or the time interval, whichever comes first, shown in the schedule.

Maintenance beyond the last period should be performed at the same intervals.

- Where to go for the maintenance service?

It makes good sense to take your vehicle to your local Lexus dealer for the maintenance service as well as other inspections and repairs.

Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists receiving the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips and in-dealership training programs. They learn to work on Lexus before they work on your vehicle, rather than while they are working on it. Doesn't that seem like the best way?

Your Lexus dealer has invested a lot of money in special Lexus tools and service equipment. It helps them to do the job better and at less cost.

Your Lexus dealer's service department will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically.

Rubber hoses (for cooling and heater system, brake system and fuel system) should be inspected by a qualified technician according to the Lexus maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses are particularly important maintenance items. Have any deteriorated or damaged hoses replaced immediately. Note that rubber hoses will deteriorate with age, resulting in swelling, chafing or cracking.

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Simple instructions for how to perform them are presented in this section.
Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by

your Lexus dealer who will keep a record of maintenance on your vehicle. This record could be helpful should you ever require Warranty Service.

Does your vehicle need repairs?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P.121)
- Engine continually runs hot, oil pressure gauge stays low

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

Scheduled maintenance

Perform maintenance by the schedule as follows:

Maintenance schedule requirements

Your vehicle needs to be serviced according to the normal maintenance schedule. (See "Maintenance schedule".)

If you mainly operate your vehicle under one or more of the special operating conditions below, some of the maintenance schedule items need to be serviced more frequently in order to keep your vehicle in good condition.
(See "Additional maintenance schedule".)

A. Road Conditions 1. Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow or waterlogged roads. 2. Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.) 3. Operating on road which has road salt applied.	B. Driving Conditions 1. Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Towing a trailer (with towing hitch), using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.) 2. Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use. 3. Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.

Maintenance schedule

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

L = Lubricate

T = Tighten to specified torque

SERVICE INTERVAL:			ODOMETER READING								MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)			x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
			x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS												
1	Drive belts	Gasoline engine			I		I		I		I	24
		Diesel engine	Inspect at first 100000 km (60000 miles) or 72 months, after 100000 km (60000 miles) inspect every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 12 months									
2	Engine oil	Gasoline engine	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See note 1.>>									
		Diesel engine	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See notes 2 and 3.>>									
3	Engine oil filter	Gasoline engine	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See note 1.>>									
		Diesel engine	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See notes 2 and 4.>>									
4	Cooling and heater system <<See note 5.>>						I				I	24
5	Engine coolant (including inter-cooler coolant) <<See note 6.>>						I				I	-
6	Exhaust pipes and mountings				I		I		I		I	12
IGNITION SYSTEM												
7	Spark plugs (gasoline engine)								R			-
8	DPF hoses for checking exhaust pressure (diesel engine with DPF system)		-									R: 36
9	Battery			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	12
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS												
10	Fuel filter (gasoline engine) <<See note 7.>>										R	96
11	Valve mechanism (gasoline engine) <<See note 8 and 9.>>		Add injector cleaner to the fuel tank every 10000 km.									-

SERVICE INTERVAL:			ODOMETER READING								MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)			x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
			x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
12	Fuel injection system (gasoline engine) <<See notes 8 and 10.>>			Add injector cleaner to the fuel tank every 10000 km (6000 miles).								-
13	Water sediment accumulator (diesel engine)			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	12
14	Air cleaner filter (including checking pre-air cleaner if it is equipped)	Gasoline engine			I		R		I		R	I: 24 R: 48
		Diesel engine		Inspect every 5000 km (3000 miles) Replace every 30000 km (18000 miles)								I: 6 R: 36
15	Diesel smoke (diesel engine)						I				I	48
16	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve (gasoline engine) <<See note 5.>>						I				I	24
17	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines and connections (diesel engine) <<See note 5.>>						I				I	24
18	Charcoal canister (gasoline engine)						I				I	24
CHASSIS AND BODY												
19	Brake pedal and parking brake <<See note 11.>>			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
20	Brake pads and discs			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
21	Brake fluid			I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I: 6 R: 24
22	Brake pipes and hoses				I		I		I		I	12
23	Vacuum pump (diesel engine)			Inspect every 200000 km (120000 miles)								-

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING									MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
		x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
24	Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
25	Propeller shafts grease <<See notes 12 and 13.>>		L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	6
26	Propeller shaft bolts		T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	6
27	Propeller shaft boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
28	Drive shaft boots			I		I		I		I	24
29	Suspension ball joints and dust covers		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
30	Automatic transmission fluid					I				I	24
31	Automatic transmission fluid cooler hoses and connections					I				I	24
32	Transfer oil					I				I	48
33	Front differential oil			I		R		I		R	I: 12 R: 48
34	Rear differential oil			I		R		I		R	I: 12 R: 48
35	Front and rear suspensions		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
36	Active height control suspension fluid		Replace every 100000 km (60000 miles)								-
37	Active height control gas chamber		Inspect at first 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months, then every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 12 months								
38	Tires and inflation pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
39	Lights, horn, wipers and washers		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
40	Air conditioning filter			R		R		R		R	-

NOTE:

1. Replace both the engine oil and oil filter, even when the maintenance reminder does not appear, after 12 months have passed, or when driven over 10000 km

(6000 miles) since the last oil change. This may cause the maintenance reminder appear even when driven less than 10000 km (6000 miles). Replace both engine oil and oil filter every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months, in which the vehicle is mainly driven in dirt or dusty roads, even when the maintenance reminder does not appear.

2. For India and Chile only: Replace both the engine oil and oil filter even when the maintenance reminder does not appear, after 12 months have passed, or when you have driven over 10000 km (6000 miles) since the last oil change. Replace both engine oil and oil filter every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months, in which the vehicle is mainly driven in dirt or dusty roads, even when the maintenance reminder does not appear.

3. Except for India and Chile: Replace the engine oil even when the maintenance reminder does not appear, after 6 months have passed, or when you have driven over 5000 km (3000 miles) since the last oil change. Replace the engine oil every 2500 km (1500 miles) or 3 months, in which the vehicle is mainly driven in dirt or dusty roads, even when the maintenance reminder does not appear.

4. Except for India and Chile: Replace the engine oil filter even when the maintenance reminder does not appear, after 6 months have passed, or when you have driven over 5000 km (3000 miles) since the last oil change.

5. After 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months inspection, inspect every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 12 months.

6. First replace at 160000 km (96000 miles), then replace every 80000 km (48000 miles).

7. Including the filter in fuel tank.

8. Toyota genuine fuel injector cleaner or equivalent.

9. For Philippines and Malaysia only.

10. For Costa Rica, Guatemala, Panama, Bolivia, Peru, Iraq, Bahrain, Qatar, Kuwait, United Arab Emirates, Yemen, Saudi Arabia, Oman, Brunei, and Mongolia only.

11. Parking brake inspection is not necessary.

12. Lubricate within 24 hours after submerging.

13. With grease fitting only.

Additional maintenance schedule

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more

frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see "Maintenance schedule requirements".)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow or waterlogged roads.	
Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection* of brake pipes and hoses	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
Inspection* of drive shaft boots	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 12 months
Replacement of transfer oil	Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months
Lubrication of propeller shafts <<See notes 1 and 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Tightening of propeller shaft bolts	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection* of propeller shaft boots	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection* of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection* of front and rear suspensions	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note 3.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
Inspection* or replacement of air cleaner filter (including checking pre-air cleaner if it is equipped)	▶ Gasoline engine I: Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 12 months R: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months ▶ Diesel engine I: Every 2500 km (1500 miles) or 3 months R: Every 30000 km (18000 miles) or 36 months
Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months

A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
Replacement of transfer oil	Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months
Lubrication of propeller shafts <<See notes 1 and 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Tightening of propeller shaft bolts	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection* of propeller shaft boots	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Replacement of air conditioning filter	Every 15000 km (9000 miles)

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

A-3: Operating on road which has road salt applied.	
Lubrication of propeller shafts <<See notes 1 and 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Tightening of propeller shaft bolts	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection* of propeller shaft boots	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Towing a trailer (with towing hitch), using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.)	
Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months
Replacement of transfer oil	Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months
Replacement of front differential oil	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months
Replacement of rear differential oil	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months
Lubrication of propeller shafts <<See notes 1 and 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Tightening of propeller shaft bolts	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Towing a trailer (with towing hitch), using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.)	
Inspection* of propeller shaft boots	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection* of front and rear suspensions	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note 3.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-2: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-3: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.	
Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months
Replacement of transfer oil	Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months
Replacement of front differential oil	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months
Replacement of rear differential oil	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

NOTE:

1. Lubricate within 24 hours after submerging.

2. With grease fitting only.

3. For seat mounting bolts, suspension member retaining bolts and leaf springs retaining U bolts.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Maintenance

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P.540)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts) • Distilled water
Engine coolant/intercooler coolant level (→P.538)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is premixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P.536)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P.566)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P.569)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original
Engine radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator (→P.539)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P.559)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P.542)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, engine radiator, exhaust manifold, etc., right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately. If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ When working near the cooling fan or radiator grille

Be sure the engine switch is off. With the engine switch in ON, the cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P.539)

■ When working on or under the vehicle

Do not get under the vehicle with just the jack supporting it. Always use automotive jack stands or other solid supports.

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc., from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

■ If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

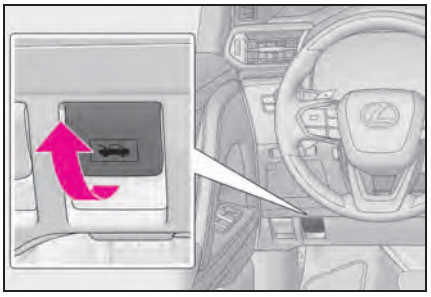
Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

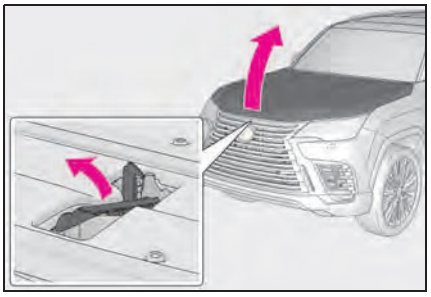
Opening the hood

1 Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



WARNING

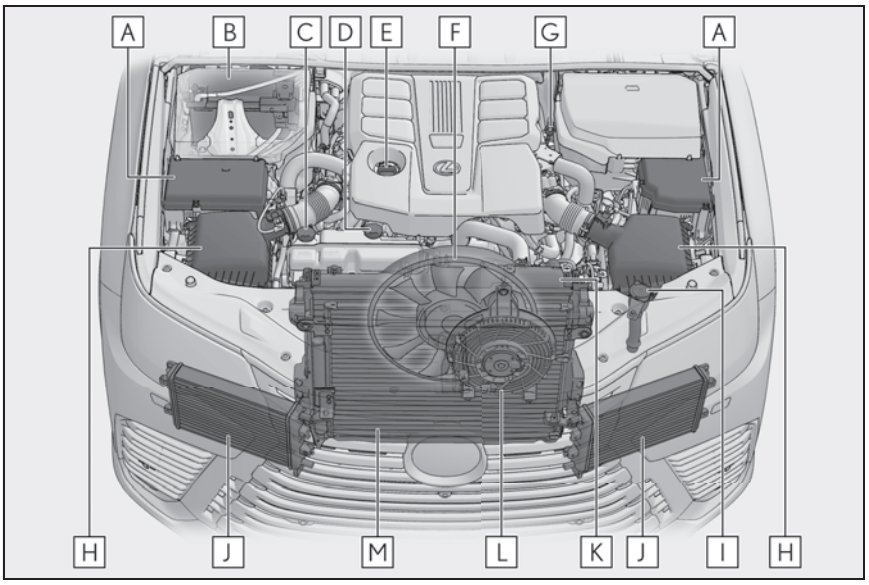
■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Engine compartment

Components

▶ Gasoline engine



A Fuse boxes (→P.566)

B Battery (→P.540)

C Intercooler coolant reservoir (→P.538)

D Engine coolant reservoir (→P.538)

E Engine oil filler cap (→P.537)

F Radiator cooling fan (→P.539)

G Engine oil level dipstick (→P.536)

H Air cleaners (→P.543)

I Washer fluid tank (→P.542)

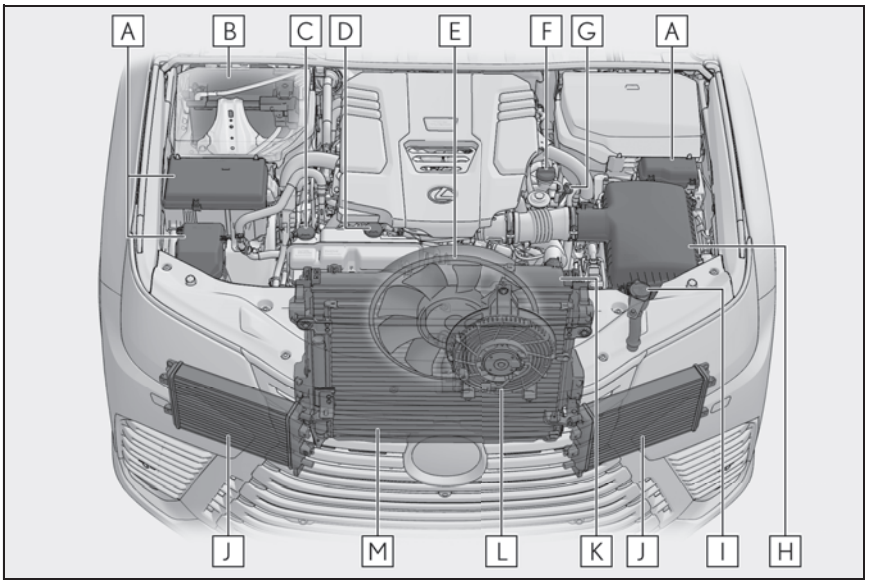
J Intercooler radiators (→P.539)

K Engine radiator (→P.539)

L Electric cooling fan (if equipped)

M Condenser (→P.539)

▶ Diesel engine



A Fuse boxes (→P.566)

B Battery (→P.540)

C Intercooler coolant reservoir (→P.538)

D Engine coolant reservoir (→P.538)

E Radiator cooling fan (→P.539)

F Engine oil filler cap (→P.537)

G Engine oil level dipstick (→P.536)

H Air cleaner (→P.543)

I Washer fluid tank (→P.542)

J Intercooler radiators (→P.539)

K Engine radiator (→P.539)

L Electric cooling fan (if equipped)

M Condenser (→P.539)

WARNING

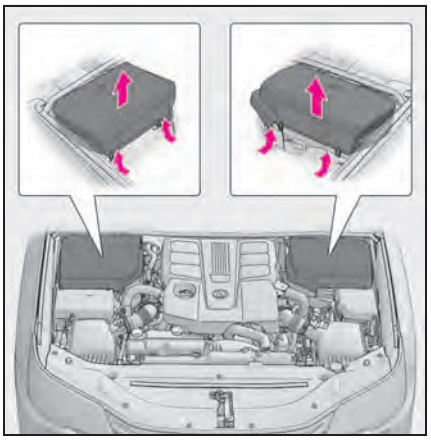
■ When the engine is hot (diesel engine)

Do not touch the engine cover as it become very hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

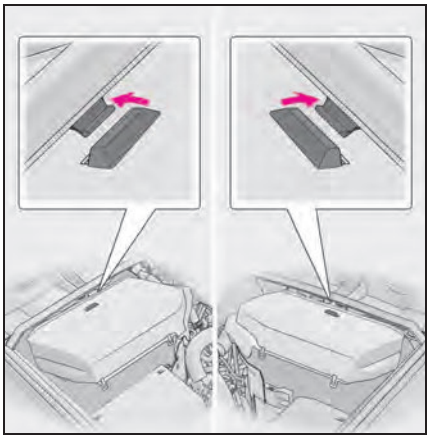
Engine compartment cover

■ Keep the engine compartment cover opened

1 Push the tab in and pull the lock release, and lift the cover.

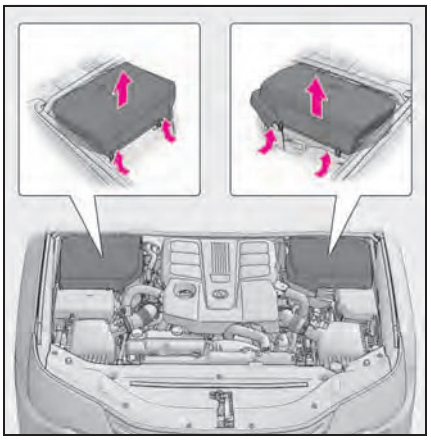


2 Install the cover as shown in the illustration.

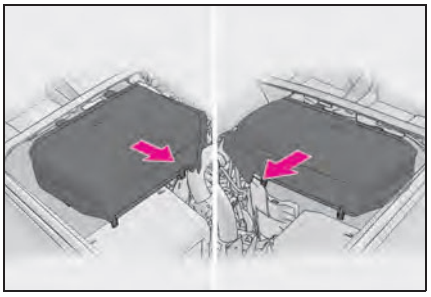


■ Removing the engine compartment cover

1 Push the tab in and pull the lock release, and lift the cover.

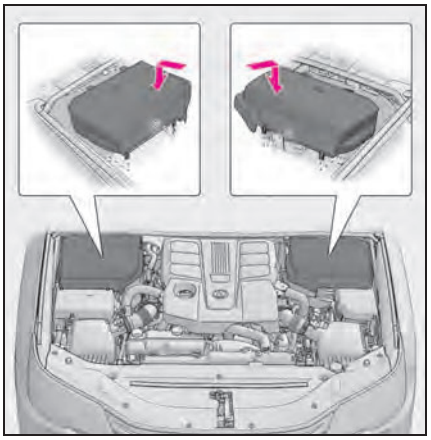


2 Pull the cover toward the front of the vehicle to remove it.



■ Installing the engine compartment cover

Install the cover as shown in the illustration.



NOTICE

■ After installing an engine compartment cover

Make sure the cover is securely installed in its original position.

Checking and adding the engine oil

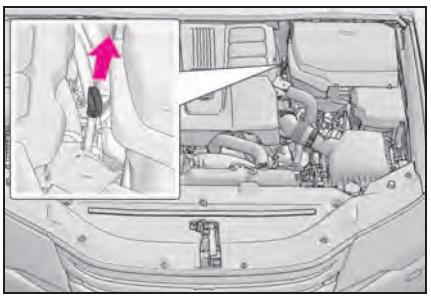
With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

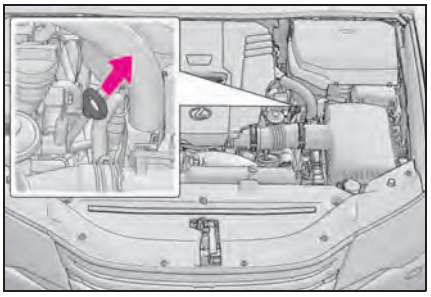
1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

▶ Gasoline engine



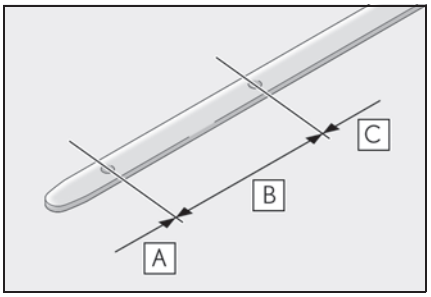
▶ Diesel engine



3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.



A Low

B Normal

C Excessive

The shape of the dipstick may differ

depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

■ Checking the oil type and preparing the items needed

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

● Engine oil selection

→P.626

● Oil quantity (Low → Full)

Gasoline engine:
1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp.qt.)
Diesel engine:
2.1 L (2.2 qt., 1.8 Imp.qt.)

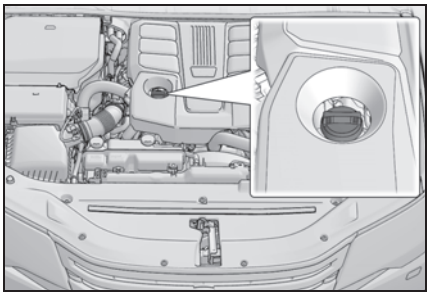
● Items

Clean funnel

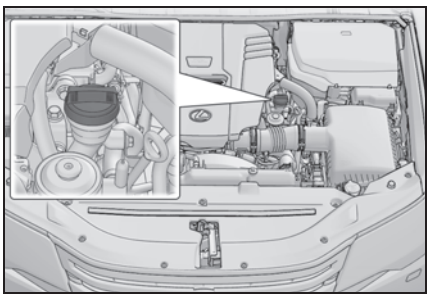
■ Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

▶ Gasoline engine



▶ Diesel engine



1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, when towing, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

■ After changing the engine oil

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

1 Press < or > of the meter control switches to select ⚙.

2 Press ∧ or ∨ to select "Vehicle Settings" and then press OK.

3 Press ∧ or ∨ to select "Oil Maintenance" and then press OK.

4 Press ∧ or ∨ to select "Yes" and then press OK.

"Reset complete" will be displayed when the reset procedure has been completed.

WARNING

■ **Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ **When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

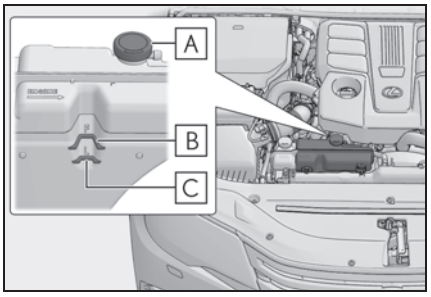
■ **After changing the engine oil**

Make sure to reset the engine oil maintenance data. If it is not reset, the next maintenance timing will not be displayed properly.

Checking the coolant

■ Engine coolant reservoir

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



A Reservoir cap

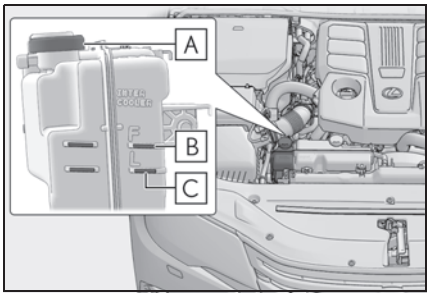
B "F" line

C "L" line

If the level is on or below the "L" line, add coolant up to the "F" line. (→P.616)

■ Intercooler coolant reservoir

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



A Reservoir cap

B "F" line

C "L" line

If the level is on or below the "L" line, add coolant up to the "F" line. (→P.616)

■ Coolant selection

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.
"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -35°C [-31°F])
For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the engine radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir cap, intercooler radiator, intercooler coolant reservoir cap, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

WARNING

■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap or intercooler coolant reservoir cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

■ When adding coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Checking the engine radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator

Check the engine radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator and clear any foreign objects. If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the engine radiator, condenser or intercooler radiator as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Checking the battery

Check the battery as follows.

■ Caution symbols

The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks
	Shield eyes
	Keep away from children
	Battery acid
	Note operating instructions
	Explosive gas

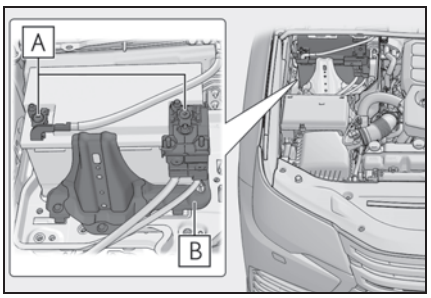
■ Keep the engine compartment cover opened or removing the cover

→P.535

■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

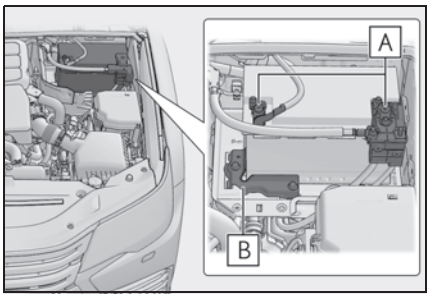
▶ Type A



A Terminals

B Clamp

▶ Type B

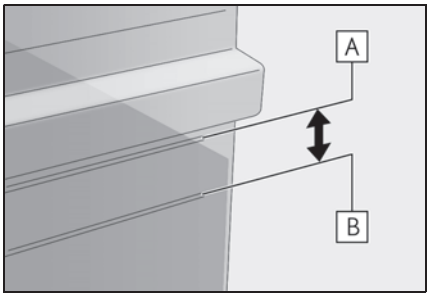


A Terminals

B Clamp

■ Checking battery fluid

Check that the level is between the upper and lower lines.



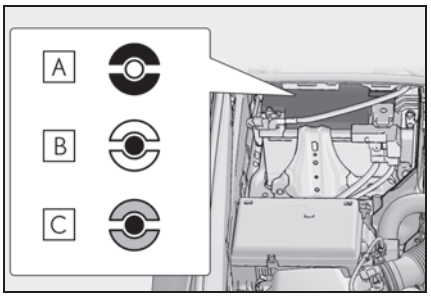
A Upper line

B Lower line

If the fluid level is at or below the lower line, add distilled water.

■ **Checking the battery condition (vehicles with battery indicator)**

Check the battery condition by indicator color.



A Red and clear: Replacement is necessary. Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

B Clear and red: Charging is necessary. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

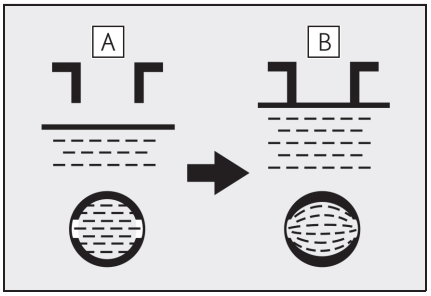
C Blue and red: Good condition

■ **Adding distilled water**

1 Remove the vent plug.

2 Add distilled water.

If the upper line cannot be seen, check the fluid level by looking directly at the cell.



A LOW

B O.K.

3 Put the vent plug back on and close it securely.

■ **Install the engine compartment cover**

→P.535

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.

1 Shift the shift lever to P.
2 Open and close any of the doors.
3 Restart the engine.

- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACC. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine before disconnect the battery. Take extra care when connect-

ing the battery if the engine switch mode prior to discharge is unknown.

If the engine will not start even after multiple attempts, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ Chemicals in the battery

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

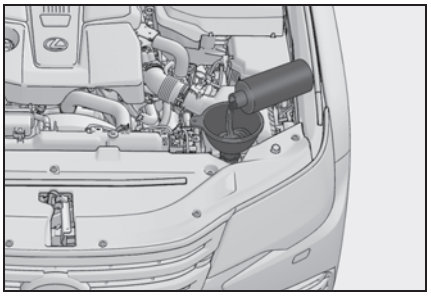
Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ When adding distilled water

Avoid overfilling. Water spilled during battery recharging may cause corrosion.

Adding the washer fluid

If none of the washer does not work or the "Windshield Washer Fluid Low" appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



WARNING

■ When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine, etc.

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine anti-freeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces, as well as damaging the pump leading to problems of the washer fluid not spraying.

■ Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

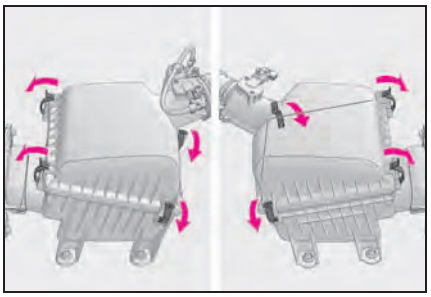
Checking the air cleaner filter

Check the air cleaner filter as follows:

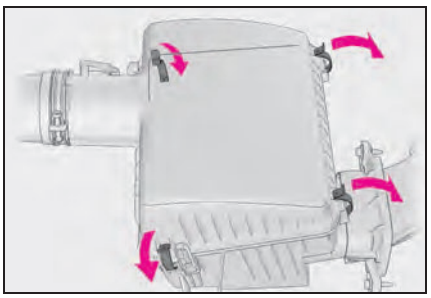
1 Use compressed air to remove dust or sand etc. from the area surrounding the air cleaner filter case.

2 Release the clips.

▶ Gasoline engine



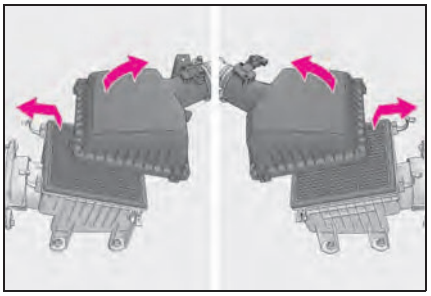
▶ Diesel engine



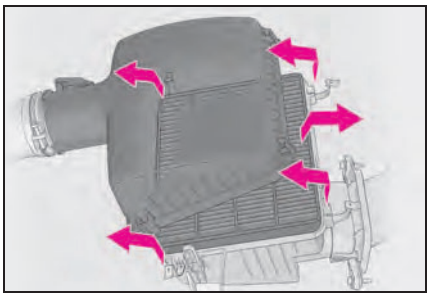
3 Lift the cover and take out the air cleaner filter.

Inspect the outer surface of the filter, and replace the filter if it is extremely dirty. If the filter is only moderately dusty, use compressed air to blow dust out of the filter.

▶ Gasoline engine

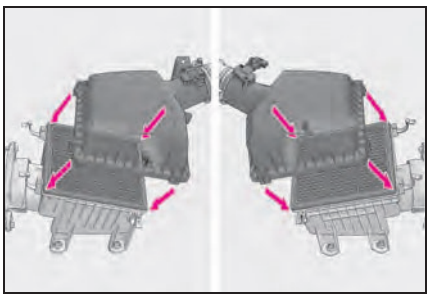


▶ Diesel engine

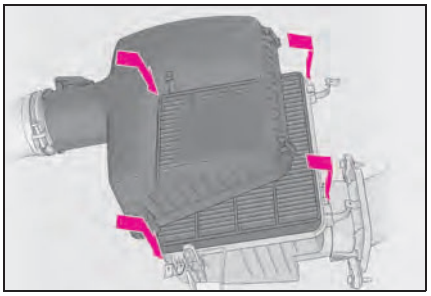


4 After checking, make sure the filter is set properly. Fully engage the claws and then secure the upper cover of the air cleaner case.

▶ Gasoline engine



▶ Diesel engine



WARNING

■ To prevent inhaling dust

Wear a respirator when using compressed air to clean the air cleaner filter.

NOTICE

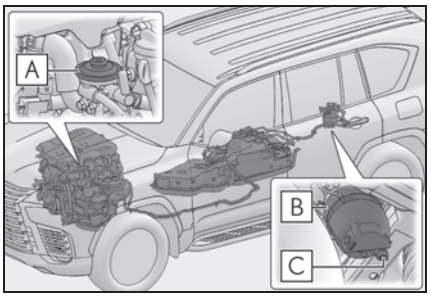
■ To prevent damaging the engine

- Do not drive with the air cleaner filter removed. Doing so causes excessive engine wear.
- Do not hit or drop the filter, as it may contain dust or sand etc.

Draining the fuel filter water (diesel engine only)

You may drain the fuel filter yourself. However, as the operation is difficult, we recommend having it drained by your Lexus dealer. Even if you decide to drain it yourself, contact your Lexus dealer.

Components



A Priming pump

B Fuel filter

C Drain plug

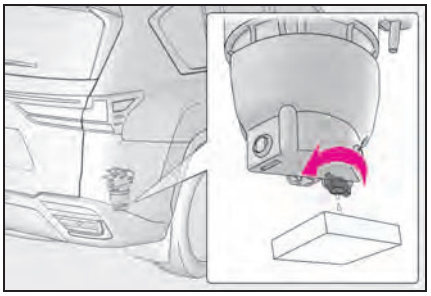
Draining the water

The water in the fuel filter needs to be drained if the warning message is shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer sounds (if equipped). (→P.592)

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Place a small tray under the drain plug to catch the water and any fuel that comes out.

3 Turn the drain plug counterclockwise about 2 to 2 1/2 turns and then drain the water.



4 After draining, tighten the drain plug by hand.

AdBlue™*

*: If equipped

AdBlue™ is used to reduce the amount of nitrogen oxides in exhaust gas. Make sure to observe the following precautions regarding AdBlue™.

- AdBlue™ is consumed in the process of driving.
- When AdBlue™ is depleted, the engine cannot be restarted.
- When AdBlue™ needs to be refilled, have it refilled at your Lexus dealer

It may be a criminal offence to use a vehicle that does not consume any reagent if it is required for the reduction of emissions.

Possible driving range

The amount of AdBlue™ that is consumed while driving differs according to the driving conditions and driving environment. When the amount of AdBlue™ that is consumed increases, the possible driving range until it is necessary to refill AdBlue™ decreases.

Possible driving range		
Short*1		Long
[High-load driving] • When firmly depressing the accelerator pedal • When driving on long uphill slopes • When the DPF system is operating	[Normal driving]*2	[Low-load driving] • When driving short distances • When in traffic congestion

*1: When the vehicle is used at high elevations and in low temperatures, the amount of AdBlue™ that is consumed increases.

*2: During normal driving, 1.0 L (1.1 qt., 0.9 Imp.qt.) of AdBlue™ is consumed approximately every 1000 km (621 miles). Also, after a full refill, the vehicle can be driven for approximately 17000 km (10564 miles) before all AdBlue™ is depleted.

■ **AdBlue™ gauge**

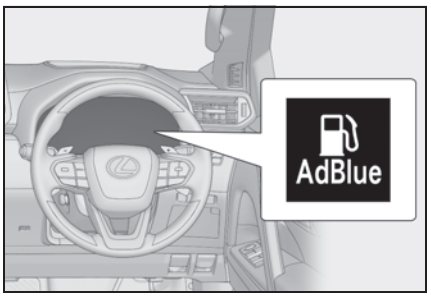
Displays the quantity of AdBlue™ remaining in the tank. (→P.127)

AdBlue™ warning light and warning message

When the AdBlue™ level is low, the low AdBlue™ level warning light turns on and a warning message appears on the multi-information display. (→P.547)

When the possible driving range based on the remaining amount of AdBlue™ reaches approximately 2400 km (1491 miles), the low AdBlue™ level warning light turns on and a warning message is displayed.

When refilling AdBlue™ by yourself in an emergency, be sure to follow the correct refilling procedures. (→P.548)



■ **Warning message**

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display, follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedure.

Warning message	Details/Actions
"AdBlue level Low Fill up AdBlue in 2400km See Owner's Manual"*1	**When AdBlue™ needs to be refilled → Have AdBlue™ refilled at your Lexus dealer.**
"AdBlue level Low No start in 1100km Fill up AdBlue See Owner's Manual"*1, 2	**When AdBlue™ needs to be refilled If the displayed driving distance is exceeded, the engine cannot be restarted. → Have AdBlue™ refilled at your Lexus dealer immediately.**
"AdBlue Empty Unable to restart Engine Fill up AdBlue See Owner's Manual"*2	**When AdBlue™ needs to be refilled → If the engine is stopped, it cannot be restarted. Without stopping the engine, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.**

*1: Use the driving range as a reference. The possible driving range that is displayed may differ from the actual driving range depending on the refill method, driving conditions and driving environment. (→P.546)

*2: The buzzer sounds in accordance with the warning message.

NOTICE

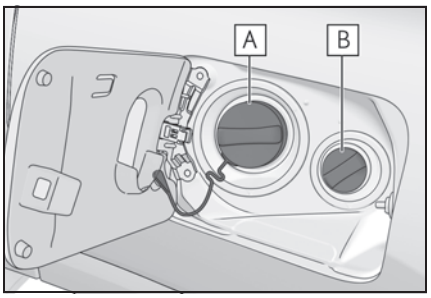
■ When the AdBlue™ level is low

When AdBlue™ is depleted, the engine cannot be restarted.

Be sure to have AdBlue™ refilled at your Lexus dealer before it is completely depleted.

Refilling AdBlue™ by yourself in an emergency

■ Location of the AdBlue™ tank cap



A Fuel tank cap (→P.256)

B AdBlue™ tank cap

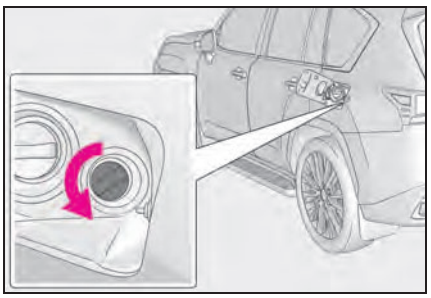
■ Refilling AdBlue™

When the engine cannot be restarted due to the depletion of AdBlue™, adding approximately 7.0 L (7.4 qt., 6.2 Imp.qt.) or more of AdBlue™ will allow the engine to be started again. Perform the following procedures to refill AdBlue™. (The AdBlue™ tank has a capacity of 17.4 L (18.4 qt., 15.3 Imp.qt.).)

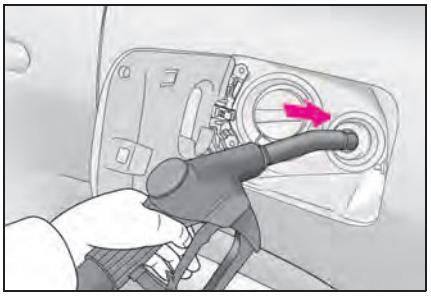
▶ Refilling with the refilling equipment

1 Park the vehicle on a level surface, turn the engine switch off, and then open the fuel filler door. (→P.256)

2 Open the AdBlue™ tank cap.

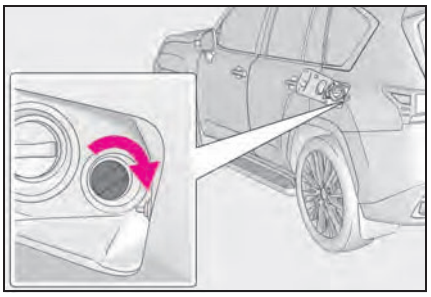


3 Insert the nozzle and refill AdBlue™.



4 Close the AdBlue™ tank cap.

Turn the cap until you hear a click.

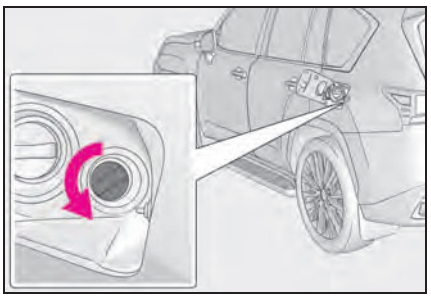


5 Check that the engine starts.

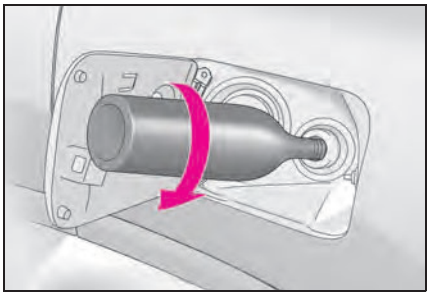
▶ Refilling with the bottle

1 Park the vehicle on a level surface, turn the engine switch off, and then open the fuel filler door. (→P.256)

2 Open the AdBlue™ tank cap.

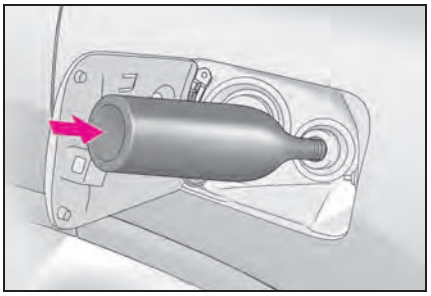


3 Insert a bottle of AdBlue™ and fully tighten it.



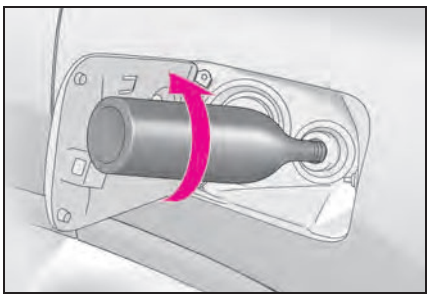
4 Push down on the bottle.

AdBlue™ will begin to be refilled. Refill AdBlue™ slowly so that it does not spill. Do not remove the bottle until it is empty.



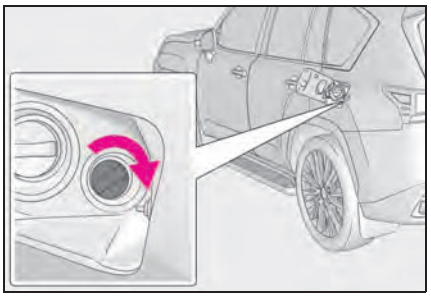
5 Check that no AdBlue™ remains in the bottle, and then remove it.

Repeat steps 3 to 5 until approximately 7.0 L (7.4 qt., 6.2 Imp.qt.) or more of AdBlue™ have been refilled.



6 Close the AdBlue™ tank cap.

Turn the cap until you hear a click.



7 Check that the engine starts.

The way of refilling may differ from those shown in the illustration.

■ Refilling AdBlue™

- Use AdBlue™ (compliant with ISO 22241-1).
  AdBlue™ is a trademark of the German Association of the Automotive Industry (VDA).
- Before driving for a long period of time in an area where AdBlue™ cannot be refilled, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ When refilling AdBlue™

After refilling AdBlue™, the engine may take a few seconds longer than normal to start.

NOTICE

■ When refilling AdBlue™

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle parts, paint, etc.

- Do not use urea solution other than AdBlue™.
- If AdBlue™ comes into contact with any painted surfaces on the vehicle, immediately wash the affected areas with water.

■ When refilling AdBlue™ with the refilling equipment

Observe the following precautions to prevent AdBlue™ overflowing from the AdBlue™ tank:

- Securely insert the nozzle into the AdBlue™ filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the AdBlue™ tank.

■ When storing AdBlue™ containers

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in damage to vehicle parts, paint, etc., and changes in the chemical compounds of AdBlue™ may cause unpleasant odors.

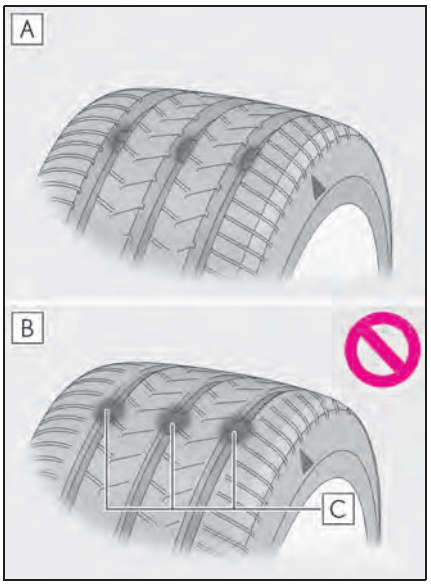
- Do not leave AdBlue™ containers inside the vehicle.
- Tightly seal AdBlue™ containers and store them in a cool, dry location with good ventilation and no exposure to direct sunlight.

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread. Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



A New tread

B Worn tread

C Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or " △ " mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage.
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage.

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

WARNING

When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

NOTICE

Driving on rough roads

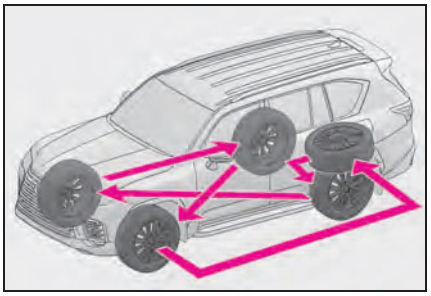
Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 5000 km (3000 miles).

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

■ When rotating the tires

Make sure that the engine switch is OFF. If the tires are rotated while the engine switch is in ON, the tire position information will not be updated.

If this accidentally occurs, either turn the engine switch to OFF and then to ON, or initialize the system after checking that the tire pressure is properly adjusted.

Tire pressure warning system

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

The tire pressure warning system of this vehicle adopts a 2-type warning system

- When "Adjust Pressure" is displayed (Normal Warning)

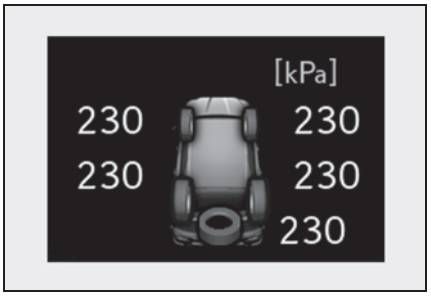
The tire pressure warning light comes on and a buzzer sounds when the tire inflation pressure becomes low due to natural air leakage or outside temperature. (Ways of coping:→P.589, 633)

- When "Immediately Check Tire when Safe" is displayed (Emergency Warning)

The tire pressure warning light comes on and a buzzer sounds when the tire inflation pressure becomes low suddenly due to a blowout. (Ways of coping: →P.589, 597) However, the system may not be able to detect sudden tire ruptures (bursting, etc.).

- The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the multi-information display.

The unit can be changed.



■ How to change the unit

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off.

Changing the unit cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

2 Turn the engine switch to ON.

3 Press < or > of the meter control switches on the steering wheel and select ⚙.

4 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select "Vehicle Settings", and then press OK.

5 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select "TPWS setting", and then press OK.

6 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select "Setting Unit", and then press OK.

7 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select the desired unit, and then press OK.

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation

pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ **Tire inflation pressure**

- It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the engine switch is turned to ON. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using a tire pressure gauge.

■ **Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly**

- In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.
  - If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
  - A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
  - A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
  - Tire chains, etc. are equipped.
  - An auxiliary-supported run-flat tire is equipped.
  - If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
  - If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
  - If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
  - If wheels without tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
  - If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- Performance may be affected in the following situations.
  - Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
  - When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

If tire position information is not correctly displayed due to the radio wave conditions, the display may be corrected by driving and changing the radio wave conditions.

- When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.
- When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

■ **Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system**

For some models, the warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with the conditions under which it was initialized. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. (→P.556)

■ **When replacing the tires and wheels**

▶ Type A

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

▶ Type B

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 10 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P.552)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ **The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:**

- When rotating the tires.
- When changing the tire size.
- When changing between two registered wheel sets.
- After registering the ID codes. (→P.556)

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

■ **How to initialize the tire pressure warning system**

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and stop the engine for 20 minutes or more.

2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level.

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Turn the engine switch to ON.

Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

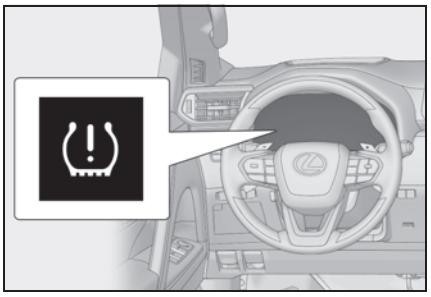
4 Press < or > of the meter control switches on the steering wheel and select .

5 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select "Vehicle Settings", and then press OK.

6 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select "TPWS setting", and then press OK.

7 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select the "Set Pressure". Then press and hold OK until the tire pressure warning light blinks 3 times.

Then "Set Pressure Accepted" will be displayed on the multi-information display. "---" will be displayed on the multi-information display for the inflation pressure of each tire while initialization is being performed.



8 Drive straight (with occasional left and right turns) at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

When initialization is complete, the inflation pressure of each tire will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Even if the vehicle is not driven at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, initialization can be completed by driving for a long time. However, if initialization does not complete after driving for 1 hour or more, park the vehicle in a safe place for approximately 20 minutes and then drive the vehicle again.

■ **When initializing**

- Initialization is performed while driving at a vehicle speed of approximately 40 km/h (25mph) or more.
- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- The tire pressure warning system can be initialized by yourself, but depending on the driving conditions and driving environment, initialization may take some time to complete.

■ **The initialization operation**

- If you have accidentally turned the engine switch to OFF during initialization, it is not necessary to restart the initialization again as initialization will restart automatically when the engine switch has been turned to ON for the next time.
- If you accidentally perform initialization when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.
- While the position of each tire is being determined and the inflation pressures are not being displayed on the multi-information display, if the inflation pressure of a tire drops, the tire pressure warning light will come on.

■ **If the tire pressure warning system is not initialized properly**

- In the following situations, initialization may take longer than usual to be completed or may not be possible. Normally, initialization completes within approximately 30 minutes.
  - Vehicle is not driven at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more
  - Vehicle is driven on unpaved roads

If initialization does not complete after driving for 1 hour or more, park the vehicle in a safe place for approximately 20 minutes

and then drive the vehicle again.

- If the vehicle is reversed during initialization, the data up to that point is reset, so perform the initialization procedure again from the beginning.
- In the following situations, initialization will not be started or was not completed properly and the system will not operate properly. Perform the initialization procedure again.
  - If, when attempting to start initialization, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
  - If, when the vehicle has been driven for about 20 minutes after performing initialization, the tire pressure warning light blinks for approximately 1 minute and then illuminates.
- If initialization cannot be completed after performing the above procedure, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not initialize tire inflation pressure without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

Registering ID codes

■ The ID codes must be registered in the following circumstances:

- When installing the new tire pressure warning valve and transmitters
- When installing already registered tire pressure warning valve and transmitters (such as replacing summer and winter tire, etc.)

Every tire pressure warning valve and transmitter has a unique ID code. It is necessary to register the ID code in the tire pressure warning computer

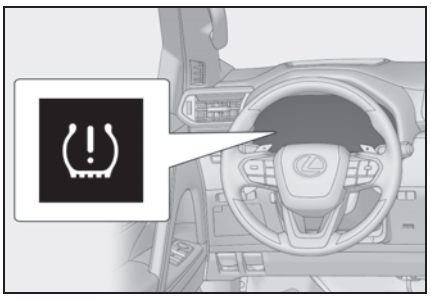
■ How to register the ID codes

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off for 20 minutes or more.
2. Turn the engine switch to ON. (→P.228)
3. Press < or > of the meter control switches on the steering wheel and select .
4. Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select “Vehicle Settings”, and then press OK.
5. Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select “TPWS setting”, and then press OK.
6. Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select “Change Wheel Set”. Then press and hold OK until the tire pressure warning light starts slowly blinking 3 times.

Then “Identify Wheel Accepted” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

When registration is being performed, the tire pressure warning light will blink for approximately 1 minute then illuminate and “---” will be displayed for the inflation pressure of each tire on the multi-information

display.



7 Drive straight (with occasional left and right turns) at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

Registration is complete when the tire pressure warning light turns off and the inflation pressure of each tire is displayed on the multi-information display.

Registration may take longer than approximately 1 hour in certain situations, such as when the vehicle is stopped for a long time at traffic lights, etc.

8 Initialize the tire pressure warning system. (→P.554)

■ When registering ID codes

- ID code registration is performed while driving at a vehicle speed of approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.
- Before performing ID code registration, make sure that no wheels with tire pressure warning valve and transmitters installed are near the vehicle.
- Make sure to initialize the tire pressure warning system after registering the ID codes. If the system is initialized before registering the ID codes, the initialized values will be invalid.
- As the tires will be warm when registration is completed, make sure to allow the tires to cool before performing initialization.
- ID codes can be registered by yourself, but depending on the driving conditions and driving environment, registration may take some time to complete.

■ Canceling ID code registration

- To cancel ID code registration after it has been started, select "Change Wheel Set" on the multi-information display and press and hold OK again.
- If ID code registration has been canceled, the tire pressure warning light will blink for approximately 1 minute when the engine switch is turned to ON and then illuminate. The tire pressure warning system will be operational when the tire pressure warning light turns off.
- If the warning light does not turn off even after several minutes have elapsed, ID code registration may not have been canceled correctly. To cancel registration, perform the ID code registration start procedure again and then turn the engine switch off before driving.

■ If ID codes are not registered properly

- In the following situations, ID code registration may take longer than usual to be completed or may not be possible. Normally, registration completes within approximately 30 minutes.
  If ID code registration is not complete after driving for approximately 30 minutes, continue driving for a while.
  - Vehicle is not parked for approximately 20 minutes or more before driving
  - Vehicle is not driven at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more
  - Vehicle is driven on unpaved roads
  - Vehicle is driven near other vehicles and system cannot recognize tire pressure warning valve and transmitters of your vehicle over those of other vehicles
  - Wheel with tire pressure warning valve and transmitter installed is inside or near the vehicle

If registration does not complete after driving for 1 hour or more, perform the ID code registration procedure again from the beginning.

- If the vehicle is reversed during registra-

tion, the data up to that point is reset, so perform the registration procedure again from the beginning.

- In the following situations, ID code registration will not be started or was not completed properly and the system will not operate properly. Perform the ID code registration procedure again.
  - If, when attempting to start ID code registration, the tire pressure warning light does not blink slowly 3 times.
  - If, when the vehicle has been driven for about 20 minutes after performing ID code registration, the tire pressure warning light blinks for approximately 1 minute and then illuminates.

If the ID codes cannot be registered even when performing the above procedure, contact your Lexus dealer.

Selecting wheel set

Your vehicle is equipped with tire pressure warning system with the function to have ID codes registered for a second wheel set, for example a winter set. You can register a second wheel set by yourself or your Lexus dealer.

After registration of a second wheel set, either of these two wheel sets can be selected for usage with the tire pressure warning system.

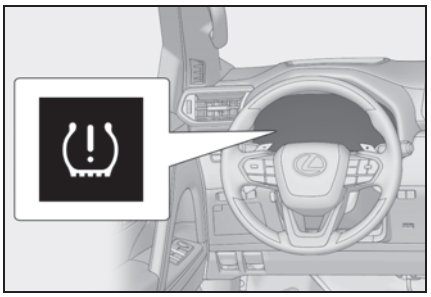
Operating conditions for the function

- This function will perform the change of wheel set only if a second wheel set has been registered. If no second wheel set has been registered, no change will be made when selecting this function in the menu.
- Only a change between both registered wheel set is possible, mixing between these wheel sets is not supported.

How to change between wheel sets

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place and fit the vehicle with your preferred wheel set.
2. Press < or > of the meter control switches on the steering wheel and select .
3. Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select “Vehicle Settings”, and then press OK.
4. Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select “TPWS setting”, and then press OK.
5. Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select “Change Wheel Set”. Then press and hold OK until the tire pressure warning light starts slowly blinking 3 times.

Afterward, the tire pressure warning light turns on after flashing for 1 minute.



After 2 minutes, changing the ID codes of a second wheel set is being performed. The tire pressure warning light will turn off.

6 Initialize the tire pressure warning system. (→P.554)

If the tire inflation pressure settings for the installed tires change, initialization operations are required, but if the tire inflation pressure settings are the same, initialization is not required.

7 Drive straight (with occasional left and right turns) at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

Changing a second wheel set is complete when the tire pressure warning light turns off and the inflation pressure of each tire is displayed on the multi-information display.

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain the proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks.

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

WARNING

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated.
If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as offset.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

■ When replacing wheels

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P.553)

WARNING

■ **When replacing wheels**

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

■ **Use of defective wheels prohibited**

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

NOTICE

■ **Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

Air conditioning filter

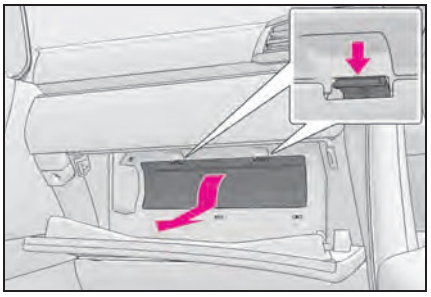
The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removal method

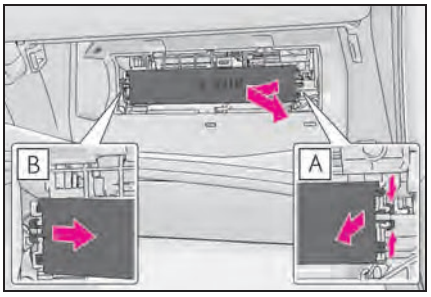
1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the glove box and remove the separate tray. (→P.480)

3 Remove the panel.



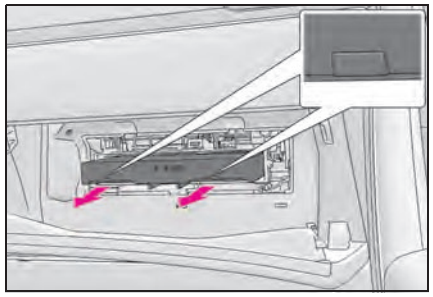
4 Unlock the filter cover (A), pull the filter cover out of the claws (B), and remove the filter cover.



▶ Except for vehicles with model code* that has "V" as the last letter

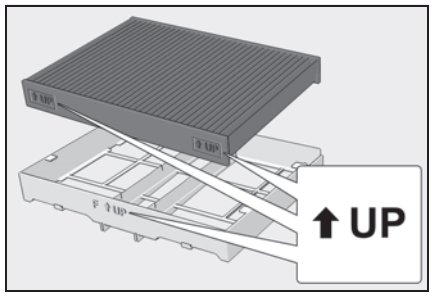
*: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.623)

5 Remove the filter case.



6 Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The "⇧UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.



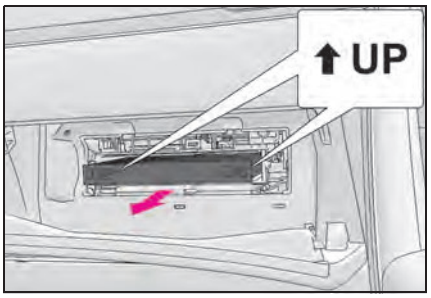
▶ For vehicles with model code* that has "V" as the last letter

*: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.623)

5 Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The "⇧UP" marks shown on the filter

should be pointing up.



■ **Checking interval**

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (→P.522)

■ **If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

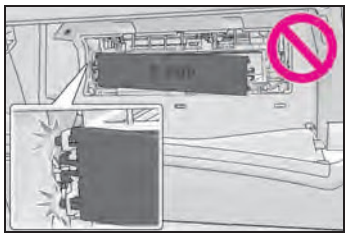
NOTICE

■ **When using the air conditioning system**

Make sure that a filter is always installed. Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

■ **To prevent damage to the filter cover**

When moving the filter cover in the direction of arrow to release the fitting, pay attention not to apply excessive force to the claws. Otherwise, the claws may be damaged.



Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

■ **If the electronic key battery is depleted**

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

■ **When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)**

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

Items to prepare

Prepare the following before replacing the battery:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

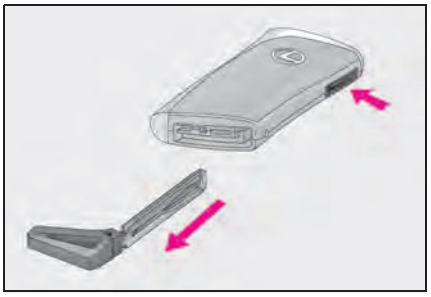
■ **Use a CR2032 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

Replacing the battery

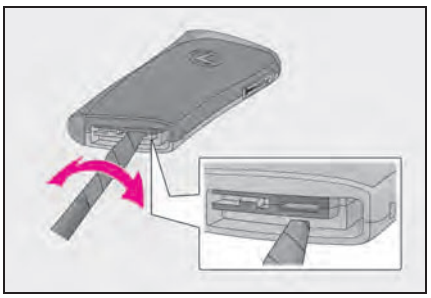
▶ Type A

1 Take out the mechanical key.



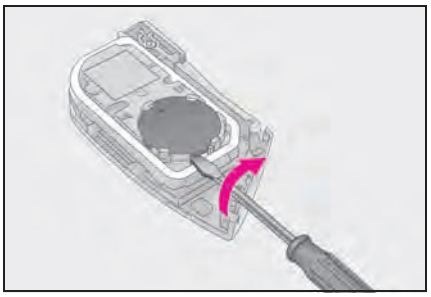
2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, wrap the tip of the screwdriver with tape.



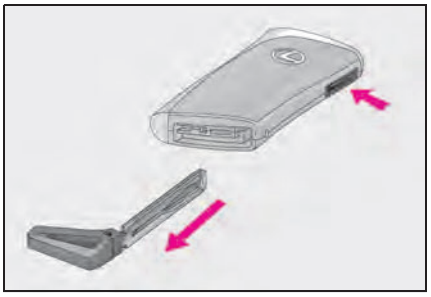
3 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the “+” terminal facing up.



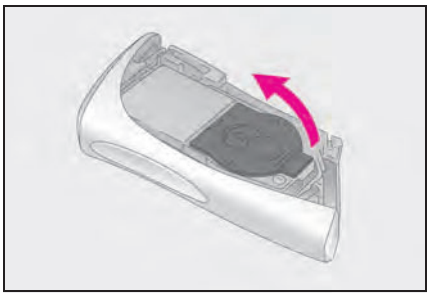
▶ Type B

1 Take out the mechanical key.



2 Remove the cover.

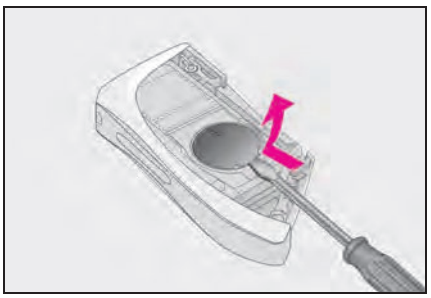
3 Remove the battery cover.



4 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the “+” terminal

facing up.



WARNING

■ Battery precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not swallow the battery. Doing so may cause chemical burns.
- A coin battery or button battery is used in the electronic key. If a battery is swallowed, it may cause severe chemical burns in as little as 2 hours and may result in death or serious injury.
- Keep away new and removed batteries from children.
- If the cover cannot be firmly closed, stop using the electronic key and stow the key in the place where children cannot reach, and then contact your Lexus dealer.
- If you accidentally swallow a battery or put a battery into a part of your body, get emergency medical attention immediately.

■ To prevent battery explosion or leakage of flammable liquid or gas

- Replace the battery with a new battery of the same type. If a wrong type of battery is used, it may explode.
- Do not expose batteries to extremely low pressure due to high altitude or extremely high temperatures.
- Do not burn, break or cut a battery.

NOTICE

■ When replacing the battery

Use a flathead screwdriver of appropriate size. Applying excessive force may deform or damage the cover.

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

Checking and replacing fuses

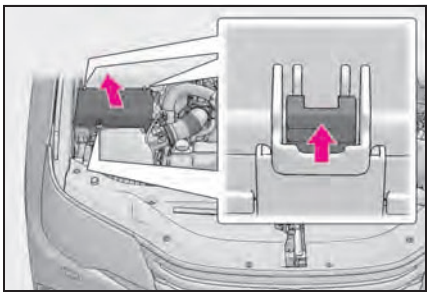
1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment (gasoline engine)

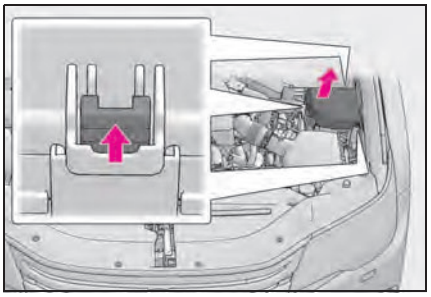
Type A:

Keep the engine compartment cover opened or removing the cover (→P.535) and push the tab in and lift the lid off.



Type B:

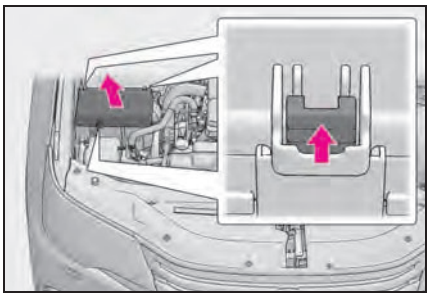
Keep the engine compartment cover opened or removing the cover (→P.535) and push the tab in and lift the lid off.



▶ Engine compartment (diesel engine)

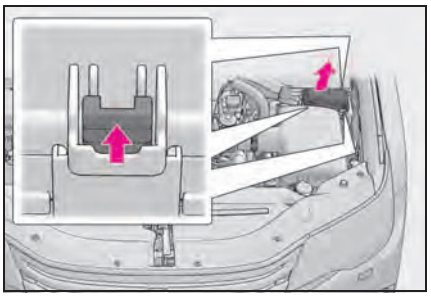
Type A:

Keep the engine compartment cover opened or removing the cover (→P.535) and push the tab in and lift the lid off.



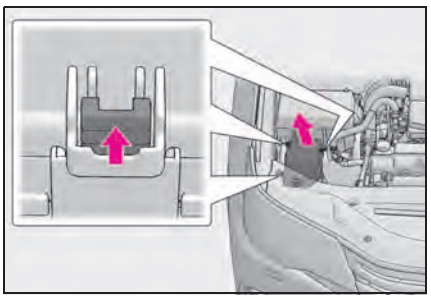
Type B:

Keep the engine compartment cover opened or removing the cover (→P.535) and push the tab in and lift the lid off.



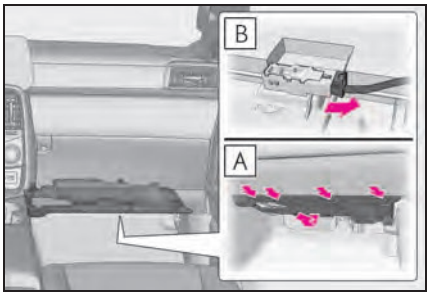
Type C:

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

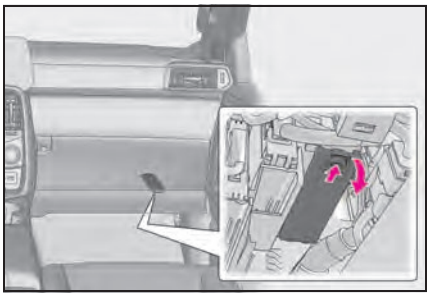


▶ Instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)

Remove the cover A and then remove the footwell light connector B .

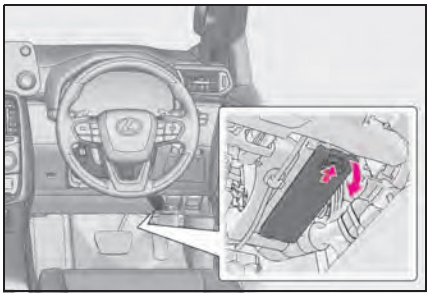


Remove the lid.



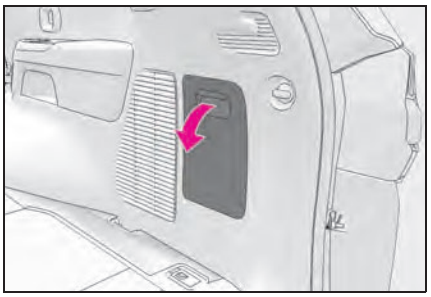
▶ Instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)

Remove the lid.

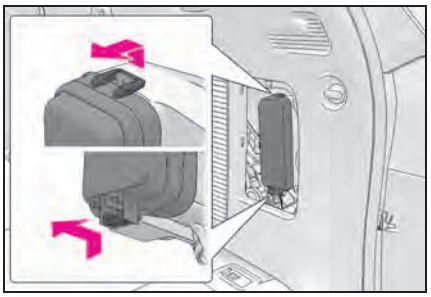


▶ Luggage compartment

Remove the cover.



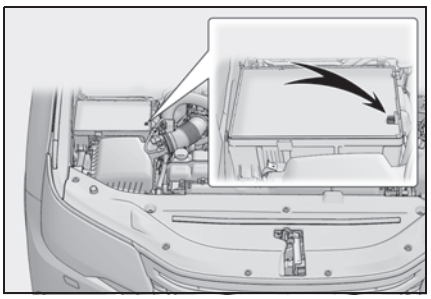
Remove the lid.



3 Remove the fuse with the pullout tool.

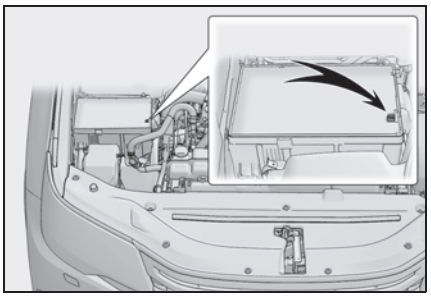
▶ Gasoline engine

Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.



▶ Diesel engine

Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.

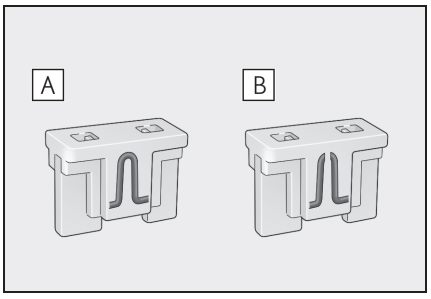


4 Check if the fuse is blown.

Type A and B:
Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type C and D:
Contact your Lexus dealer.

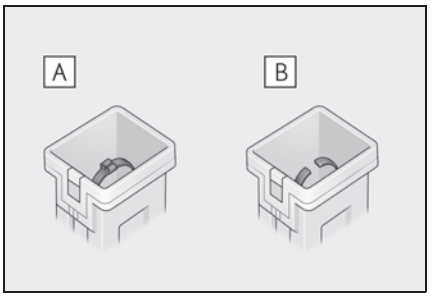
▶ Type A



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

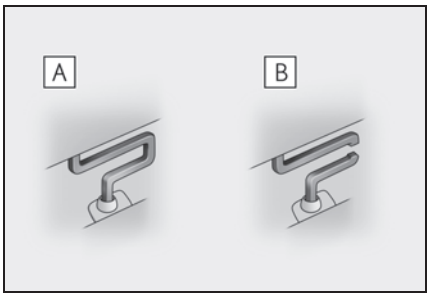
▶ Type B



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

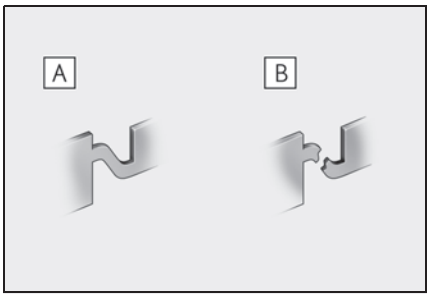
▶ Type C



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

▶ Type D



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

■ After a fuse is replaced

- When installing the lid, make sure that the tab is installed securely.
- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P.569)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If there is an overload in a circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

■ When replacing light bulbs

Lexus recommends that you use genuine Lexus products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

WARNING

■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

NOTICE

■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

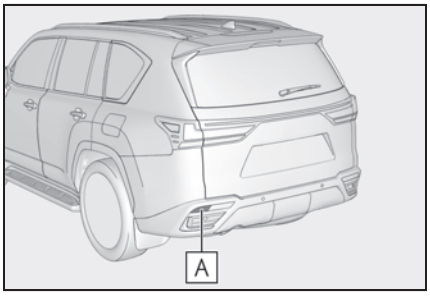
Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulb by yourself. Before replacing, check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. As there is a danger that components may be damaged, we recommend that replacement is carried out by your Lexus dealer.

Preparing for light bulb replacement

Check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. (→P.634)

Bulb location



A Rear fog lights (if equipped)

■ Lights that need to be replaced by your Lexus dealer

- Headlights
- Front position lights and daytime running lights
- Front turn signal lights
- Front fog lights
- Cornering lights
- Side turn signal lights

- Tail lights
- Stop lights
- Rear turn signal lights
- Back-up lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights
- Outer foot lights
- Running board lights

LED lights

The lights other than the rear fog lights (if equipped) each consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the light lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the light.

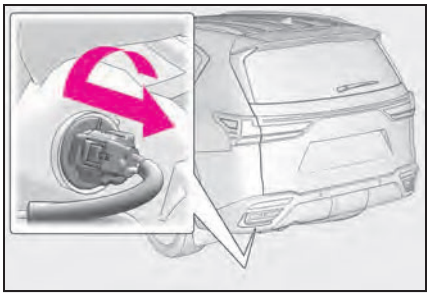
When replacing light bulbs

→P.569

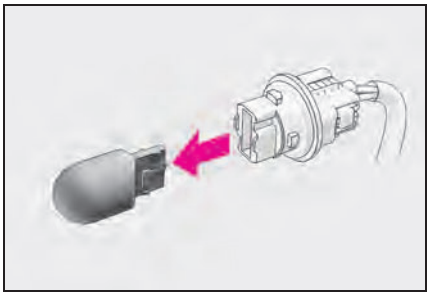
Replacing light bulb

Rear fog lights (if equipped)

1 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



2 Remove the light bulb.



3 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

WARNING

Replacing light bulb

- Turn off the light. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the light.
  The bulb become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
  Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.

WARNING

- Fully install light bulb and any parts used to secure it. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the light unit. This may damage the light or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to repair or disassemble light bulbs, connectors, electric circuits or component parts.
  Doing so may result in death or serious injury due to electric shock.

■ To prevent damage or fire

- Make sure bulb is fully seated and locked.
- Check the wattage of the bulb before installing to prevent heat damage.

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 574

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 574

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising .. 575

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 577

If you think something is wrong 580

Fuel pump shut off system (gasoline engine only)..... 581

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 582

If a warning message is displayed 592

If you have a flat tire..... 597

If the engine will not start 607

If you lose your keys..... 608

If the electronic key or fingerprint authentication system does not operate properly 609

If the vehicle battery is discharged 611

If your vehicle overheats 616

If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls (diesel engine only) 618

If the vehicle becomes stuck . 619

Emergency flashers

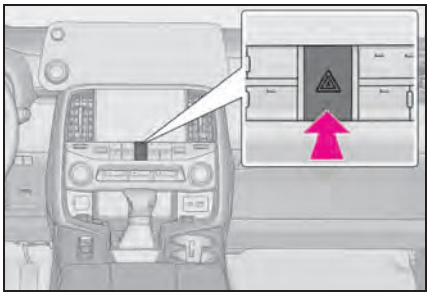
The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Operating instructions

Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash.

To turn them off, press the switch once again.



■ Emergency flashers

- If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.
- If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the emergency flashers will turn on automatically.
  The emergency flashers will turn off automatically after operating for approximately 20 minutes. To manually turn the emergency flashers off, press the switch twice. (The emergency flashers may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

Stopping the vehicle

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

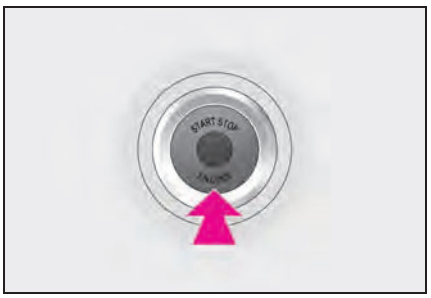
4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive

seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

If emergency stopped

The functions of the air conditioning, etc. may be partially limited in order to reduce the power consumption of the battery.

WARNING

If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control. However, power assist for these systems may be lost making it difficult to steer or brake before stopping the vehicle depending on the remaining charge in the battery or usage conditions. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising

This vehicle is not designed to be able to drive on roads that are deeply flooded with water. Do not drive on roads where the roads may be submerged or the water may be rising. It is dangerous to remain in the vehicle, if it anticipated that the vehicle will be flooded or set a drift. Remain calm and follow the following.

- If the door can be opened, open the door and exit the vehicle.
- If the door can not be opened, open the window using the power window switch and ensure an escape route.
- If the window can be opened, exit the vehicle through the window.
- If the door and window cannot be opened due to the rising water, remain calm, wait until the water level inside the vehicle rises to the point that the water pressure inside of the vehicle equals the water pressure outside of the vehicle and then open the door after waiting for the rising water to enter the vehicle, and exit the vehicle. When the outside water level exceeds half the height of the door, the door cannot be opened from the inside due to water pressure.

Water level exceeds the floor

When the water level exceeds the floor and time has passed, the electrical equipment will get damaged, the power windows will not operate, the engine stop, and the vehicle may not be able to get moving.

Using an emergency escape hammer*

Laminated glass is used in the windshield and the windows on this vehicle. Laminated glass cannot be shattered with an emergency hammer*.

*: Contact your Lexus dealer or aftermarket accessory manufacturer for further information about an emergency hammer.

WARNING

Caution while driving

Do not drive on roads where the roads may be submerged or the water may be rising. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged and cannot move, as well as become flooded and set a drift, which may lead to death.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

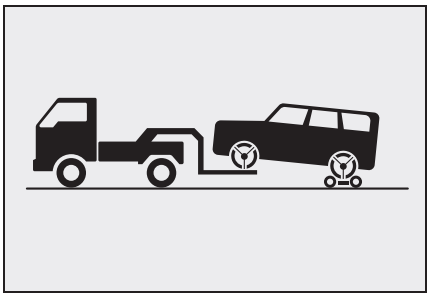
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

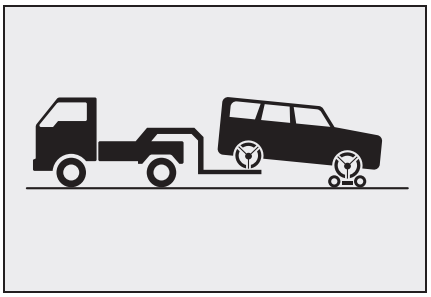
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

▶ From the rear



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

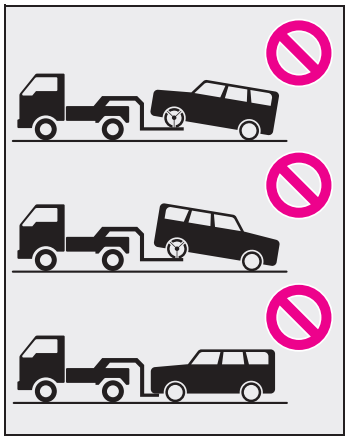
WARNING

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When towing the vehicle

Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain or related parts may be damaged, the vehicle may fly off the truck.



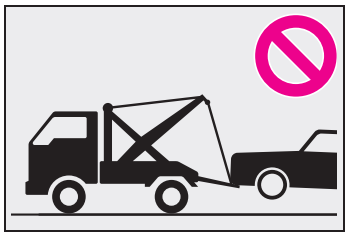
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the engine switch is off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

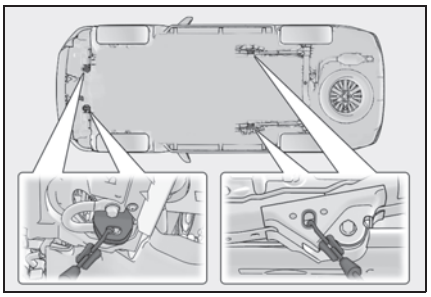
■ Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

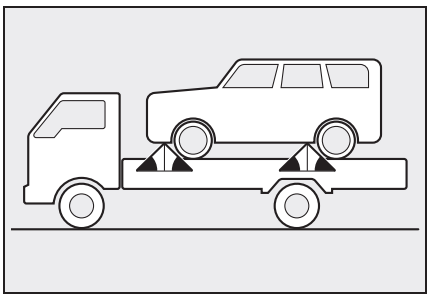


Using a flatbed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.



If you cannot tie down the vehicle using the method above, use tire strapping belts.

NOTICE

■ Using a flatbed truck

- Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.
- Make sure to turn off the AHC. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change and the vehicle may be damaged. (→P.412)

Emergency towing

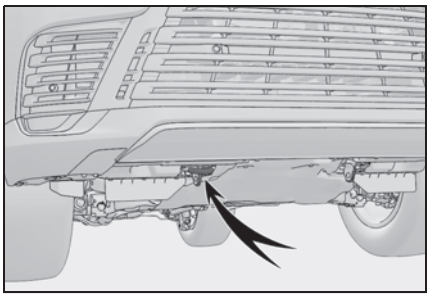
If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing hook. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for at most 80 km (50 miles) at under 30 km/h (18 mph).

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

Emergency towing procedure

1 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing hook.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.



2 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.

If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to ON.

3 Put the four-wheel drive control switch in "H4". (The center differential is unlocked.)

4 Change the vehicle height to N (standard) mode and end the vehicle height operation. (→P.412)

5 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.

Turn automatic mode off. (→P.238)

When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P.234

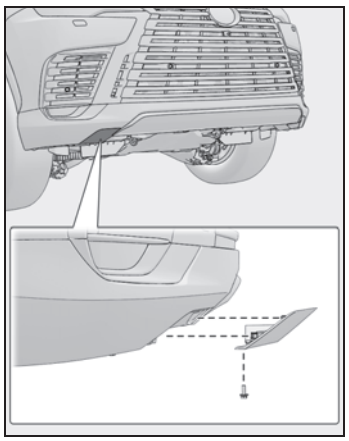
While towing

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

If the cables or chains touch the bumper

If the cables or chains touch the bumper due to the angle at which the cables or chains are hanging, remove the cover (if equipped) on the bumper.

- Remove the bolt, pull the cover toward you, and then detach the 2 claws.



WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

While towing

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing hook, cables or chains. The towing hook, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.
- Make sure to turn off the AHC. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change and part of your body may be caught under the vehicle, possibly causing injury. (→P.412)
- Do not turn the engine switch off. There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

NOTICE

■ When towing a vehicle equipped with a Stop & Start system (if equipped)

If it is necessary to tow the vehicle with all 4 wheels on the ground, perform the following procedure before towing the vehicle, in order to protect the system. Turn the engine switch off and then start the engine or turn the engine switch to ON.

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.
- Engine oil pressure gauge continually points lower than normal.
- Voltmeter continually points higher or lower than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system (gasoline engine only)

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Restarting the engine

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

1 Turn the engine switch to ACC or OFF.

2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.

If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Actions to the warning lights or warning buzzers

■ Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
(Red)	Indicates that: ● The brake fluid level is low; or ● The brake system is malfunctioning → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**

■ Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
(Yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The parking brake system; or ● The electronically controlled brake system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Charging system warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

■ Low engine oil pressure warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

■ High coolant temperature warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine is overheating → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Handling method (→P.616)**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

■ Malfunction indicator lamp

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The electronic engine control system; ● The electronic throttle control system; ● The electronic automatic transmission control system; or ● The DPF system (if equipped) → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ SRS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The SRS airbag system; or ● The seat belt pretensioner system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ ABS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The Multi-terrain ABS; or ● The brake assist system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Red) (Yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ PCS warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes or illuminates) (If equipped)	When a buzzer sounds simultaneously: Indicates a malfunction has occurred in the PCS (Pre-Collision System). → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** When a buzzer does not sound: The PCS (Pre-Collision System) has become temporarily unavailable, corrective action may be necessary. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.260, 595)** If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) or VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system is disabled, the PCS warning light will illuminate. → P.273

■ LTA indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
(Orange) (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.282)**

■ BSM OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
(If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) function → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** Indicates that the rear bumper around the radar sensor is covered with dirt, etc. (→P.314) → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.313, 592)**

■ RCTA OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
(If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** Indicates that the rear bumper around the radar sensor is covered with dirt, etc. (→P.314) → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.326, 592)**

■ RCD OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** Indicates that the function temporarily cannot be used due to the camera being dirty, etc. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.333, 592)**

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the Lexus parking assist-sensor function → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to a sensor being dirty or covered with ice, etc. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.321, 592)**

■ PKSB OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to a sensor being dirty or covered with ice, etc. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.338, 592)**

■ Inappropriate pedal operation warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When a buzzer sounds: ● Brake Override System is malfunctioning ● Drive-Start Control is malfunctioning ● Drive-Start Control is operating ● Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) (if equipped) is operating. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.** When a buzzer does not sound: Brake Override System is operating. → **Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

■ Stop & Start cancel indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes) (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the Stop & Start system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Slip indicator light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The VSC system; ● The Trailer Sway Control system; ● The Active TRC system; ● The hill-start assist control system; ● The downhill assist control system; ● The Multi-terrain Select; or ● The Crawl Control → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Low speed four-wheel drive indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
(Flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the four-wheel drive system when the light flashes rapidly. → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Center differential lock indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
(Flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the center differential lock system when the light flashes rapidly. → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Parking brake indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
(Flashes)	It is possible that the parking brake is not fully engaged or released → **Operate the parking brake switch once again.** This light comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released, the system is operating normally.

■ Brake hold operated indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
(Flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the brake hold system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Low fuel level warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	▶ Vehicles without sub fuel tank system Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 12.0 L (3.2 gal., 2.6 Imp.gal.) or less ▶ Vehicles with sub fuel tank system Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 16.5 L (4.4 gal., 3.6 Imp.gal.) or less → **Refuel the vehicle.**

■ Low AdBlue™ level warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (If equipped)	Insufficient level of AdBlue™ → **Refill AdBlue™.**

■ Tire pressure warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system → **Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.** When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as ● Natural causes ● Flat tire → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place.** **Handling method (→P.591)**

■ Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*1, 2

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.** **If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.**

*1: Driver's and passenger's seat belt warning buzzer (except for GCC countries*3, Iraq, Jordan, Lebanon, and Yemen):
The driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

*2: Driver's seat belt warning buzzer (for GCC countries*3, Iraq, Jordan, Lebanon, and Yemen):
The driver's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the engine switch is turned to ON, the buzzer sounds. If the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

Front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer (for GCC countries*3, Iraq, Jordan, Lebanon, and Yemen:
The front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

*3: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

■ Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.**

*: Rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer:
The rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the rear passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time, after the seat belt is fastened and unfastened and the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

■ Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

■ Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ Speed warning buzzer (for India)

The buzzer sounds when your vehicle speed reaches or exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph). Then, the buzzer sounds when your vehicle speed reaches or exceeds 120 km/h (75 mph) in a different tone.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

For some models, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty,

refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Inspect the tires to check if a tire is punctured.

If a tire is punctured: →P.597

If none of the tires are punctured:

Turn the engine switch to OFF then turn it to ON. Check if the tire pressure warning light comes on or blinks.

▶ If the tire pressure warning light blinks for approximately 1 minute then stays on

There may be a malfunction in the tire pressure warning system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

▶ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

1 After the temperature of the tires has lowered sufficiently, check the inflation pressure of each tire and adjust them to the specified level.

2 If the warning light does not turn off even after several minutes have elapsed, check that the inflation pressure of each tire is at the specified level and perform initialization. (→P.554)

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire**

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off.
Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly**

→P.553

WARNING

■ **If a warning light comes on or a warning buzzer sounds when a warning message is shown on the multi-information display**

Check and follow the message shown on the multi-information display.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on**

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact your Lexus dealer. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **When the electric power steering system warning light comes on**

When the light comes on yellow, the assist to the power steering is restricted.
When the light comes on red, the assist to the power steering is lost and handling operations of the steering wheel become extremely heavy.
When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

WARNING

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

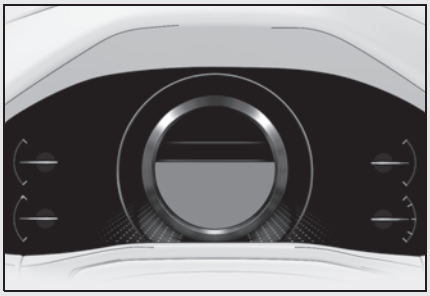
NOTICE

■ To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly

Do not install tires with different specifications or manufacturers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



If a warning message is displayed again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
—	Sounds	• Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed • Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the systems shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
—	Does not sound	• Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance • Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

■ Warning messages

The warning messages explained below may differ from the actual messages according to operation conditions and vehicle specifications.

■ Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

■ If a message that indicates the need for visiting your Lexus dealer is displayed

The system or part shown on the multi-information display is malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ If a message about an operation is shown

● If a message about an operation of the accelerator pedal or brake pedal is shown

- A warning message about an operation of the brake pedal may be shown while the driving assist systems such as PCS (Pre-Collision system) (if equipped), the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) or the dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) is operating. If a warning message is shown, be sure to decelerate the vehicle or follow an instruction shown on the multi-information display.
- A warning message is shown when Brake Override System operates. (→P.214)
- A warning message is shown when Drive-Start Control or Parking Support

Brake (if equipped) (→P.219, 334) operates. Follow the instructions on the multi-information display.

● If a message about an operation of the engine switch is shown

An instruction for operation of the engine switch is shown when the incorrect procedure for starting the engine is performed or the engine switch is operated incorrectly. Follow the instructions shown on the multi-information display to operate the engine switch again.

● If a message about a shift lever operation is shown

To prevent the shift lever from being operated incorrectly or the vehicle from moving unexpectedly, a message that requires shifting the shift lever may be shown on the multi-information display. In that case, follow the instruction of the message and shift the shift lever.

● If a message or image about an open/close state of a part or replenishment of a consumable is shown

Confirm the part indicated by the multi-information display or a warning light, and then perform the coping method such as closing the open door or replenishing a consumable.

■ If a message that indicates the need for referring to Owner's Manual is displayed

● If the following messages are shown, follow the instructions, accordingly.
- "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place" (→P.616)
- "Blind Spot Monitor Unavailable" (→P.313)
- "Rear Cross Traffic Alert Unavailable" (→P.326)
- "Rear Camera Detection Unavailable" (→P.333)
- "Water accumulation in fuel filter" (→P.544)
- "AdBlue level Low Fill up AdBlue in 2400km" (→P.547)
- "AdBlue level Low No start in 1100km Fill up AdBlue" (→P.547)
- "AdBlue Empty Unable to restart Engine Fill up AdBlue" (→P.547)
- "DPF full" (→P.428)

● If the following messages are shown, there may be a malfunction. Immediately have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- "Transmission Oil Temp. High Stop in a safe place and See owner's manual"
- "Smart Entry & Start System malfunction"
- "Brake Hold Unavailable" (→P.241)

● If the following messages are shown, there may be a malfunction. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.
- "Oil Pressure Low"
- "Braking Power Low"

● If "12-Volt Battery Charging System Malfunction Stop in a Safe Place" is shown

Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system. Pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. While the message is displayed, the functions of the air conditioning, etc. may be partially limited in order to reduce the power consumption of the battery.

■ If "Shift into P before exiting vehicle" is shown

Message is displayed when the driver's door is opened without turning the engine switch to OFF with the shift lever in any position other than P.

Shift the shift lever to P.

■ If "Auto Power Off to Conserve Battery" is shown

Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function.

Next time when starting the engine, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery.

■ **If "Engine Oil Level Low Add or Replace" is displayed**

The engine oil level may be low. Check the level of the engine oil, and add engine oil if necessary. This message may be displayed if the vehicle is stopped on a slope. Move the vehicle to a level surface and check if the message disappears.

■ **If "Oil Maintenance Required Soon" is displayed**

Indicates that the engine oil should be scheduled to be changed.

Check the engine oil and change it if necessary. After changing the engine oil, make sure to reset the message. (→P.537)

■ **If "Oil Maintenance Required" is displayed**

Indicates that the engine oil should be changed.

Check and change the engine oil, and oil filter by your Lexus dealer. After changing the engine oil, make sure to reset the message. (→P.537)

■ **If "Replace fuel filter" is shown**

The fuel filter needs to be replaced.

For Indonesia: If the engine is operated with biodiesel mixed fuel with more than 5% FAME (B5), fuel filter replacement intervals tend to become shorter.

■ **If "DPF Full Manual Regeneration Required See Owner's Manual" is displayed**

The deposit collected in the filter needs to be regenerated. (→P.428)

■ **If "DPF Regeneration in Progress" is displayed**

Regeneration is being automatically carried out by the DPF system. (→P.428)

■ **If a message that indicates the malfunction of front camera is displayed**

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (→P.260, 582)

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)*
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)*
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*
- Dynamic radar cruise control*

*: If equipped

■ **If a message that indicates the malfunction of radar sensor is displayed**

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (→P.260, 582)

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)*
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)*
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*
- Dynamic radar cruise control*

*: If equipped

■ **If "Radar Cruise Control Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is shown**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) or dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) system is suspended temporarily or until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (causes and coping methods: →P.260)

■ **If "Radar Cruise Control Unavailable" is shown**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) or dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) system cannot be used temporarily. Use the system when it becomes available again.

■ **If a following message is shown, take appropriate action and confirm that the message has disappeared.**

- "CRAWL Unavailable See Owner's Manual" (→P.420)
- "Turn Assist Function Unavailable Check System Operation Conditions" (→P.422)
- "Turn Assist Function Unavailable Activate CRAWL" (→P.419)

■ If "Speed Limit Exceeded" is displayed (on some models)

The vehicle speed has reached or exceeded 120 km/h (75 mph). At this time, a buzzer also sounds. The buzzer will stop sounding after 6 seconds or if you decelerate to below 120 km/h (75 mph). Reduce your vehicle speed.

WARNING

■ If a warning light comes on or a warning buzzer sounds when a warning message is shown on the multi-information display

Check and follow the message displayed on the multi-information display. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ While the engine oil level warning is displayed

Continued engine operation with low engine oil will damage the engine.

■ If "Water accumulation in fuel filter See owner's manual" is shown

Never drive the vehicle if the warning message is displayed. Continued driving with water accumulated in the fuel filter will damage the fuel injection pump.

If you have a flat tire

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.
For details about tires: →P.550

WARNING

■ If you have a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

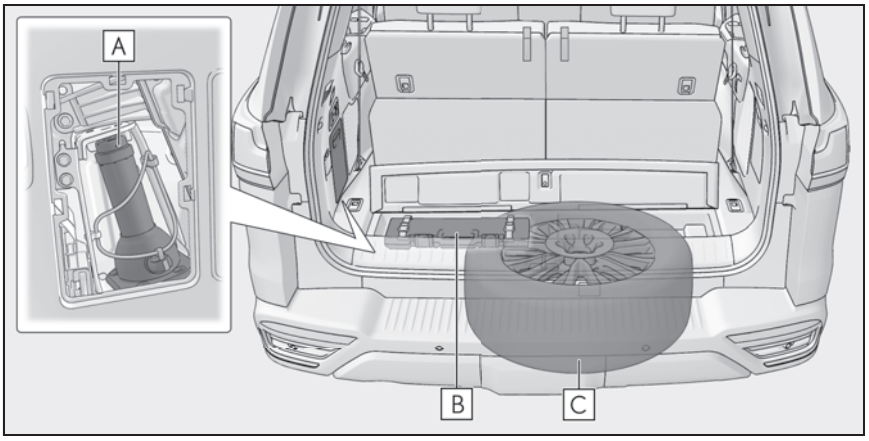
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Turn off the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor (→P.109)
- Turn off the AHC. (→P.409)
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P.574)

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools

▶ 7-passenger models

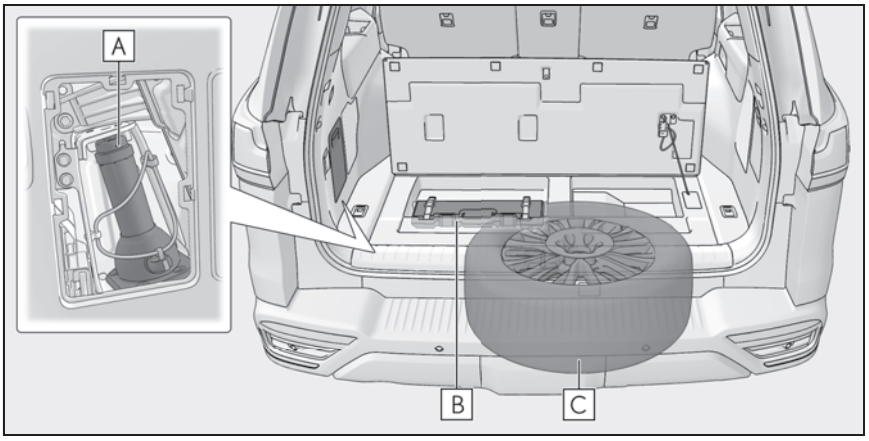


A Jack

B Tool box

C Spare tire

▶ 4-passenger and 5-passenger models

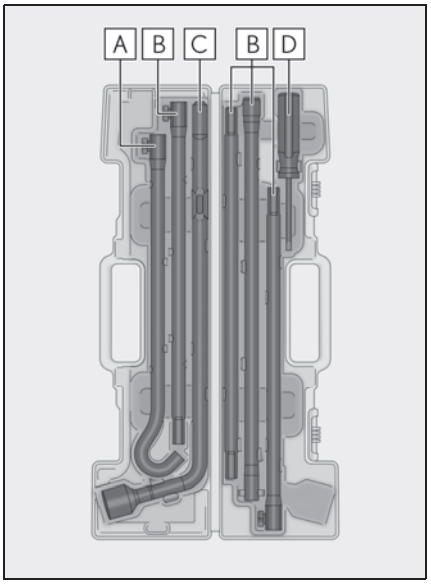


A Jack

B Tool box

C Spare tire

Tools



A Jack handle bar

B Jack handle extension bar

C Wheel nut wrench

D Screwdriver

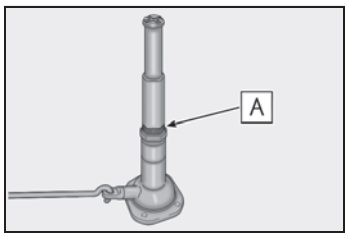
WARNING

■ Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions.

Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Be sure to turn off the AHC and stop the engine. (→P.409)
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Do not continue jacking up once the yellow caution line A has appeared.



- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.

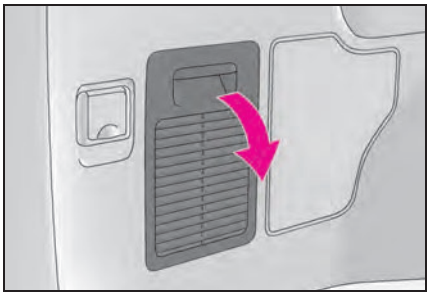
Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle will be injured.

■ Using the jack handle

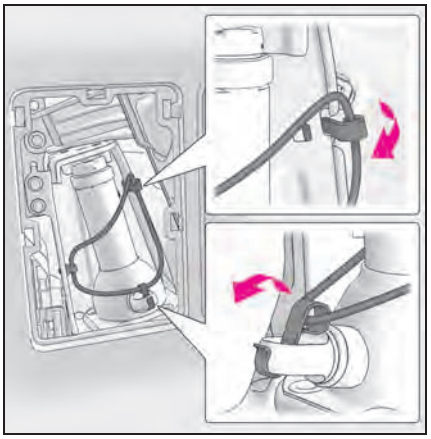
Tighten all the jack handle bolts securely using the wheel nut wrench, to prevent the extension parts from coming apart unexpectedly.

Taking out the jack

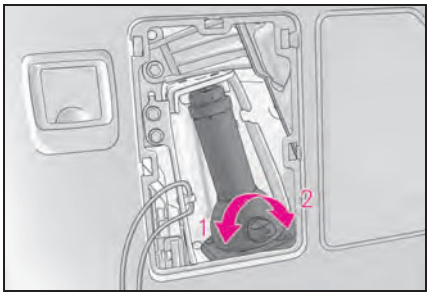
1 Remove the cover.



2 Unhook the rubber strap.



3 Take out the jack.



1 Loosen

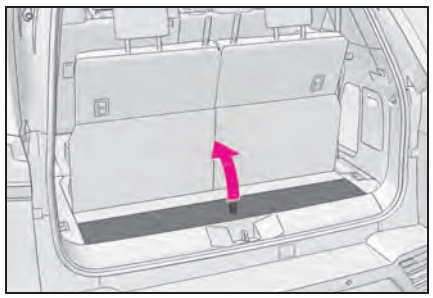
2 Tighten

After using the jack, install the jack in the exact reverse order from which it was removed. Also, the jack should be properly secured using a rubber strap.

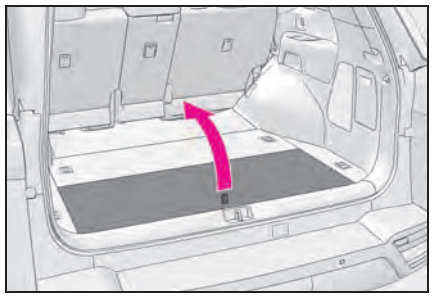
Taking out the tool box

1 Lift the deck board.

▶ 7-passenger models

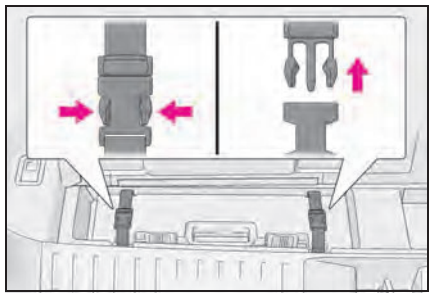


▶ 4-passenger and 5-passenger models

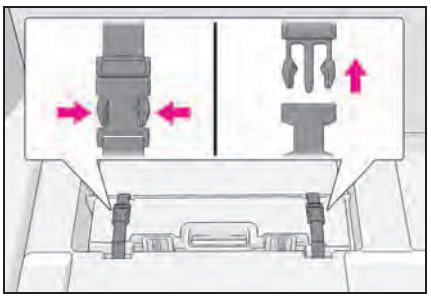


2 Take out the tool box.

▶ 7-passenger models



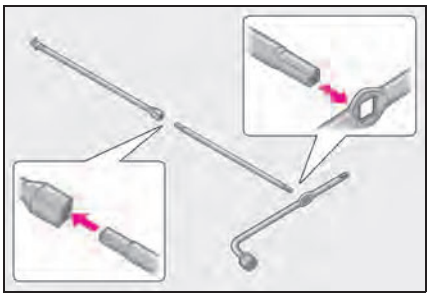
▶ 4-passenger and 5-passenger models



Taking out the spare tire

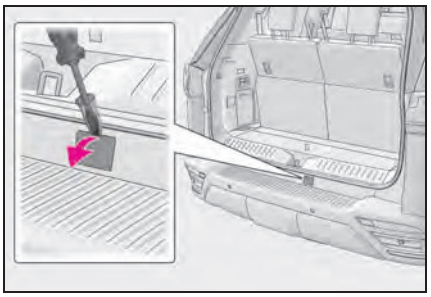
1 Assembling the jack handle.

Remove the jack handle extension bar and wheel nut wrench from the tool box and assemble by following these steps.

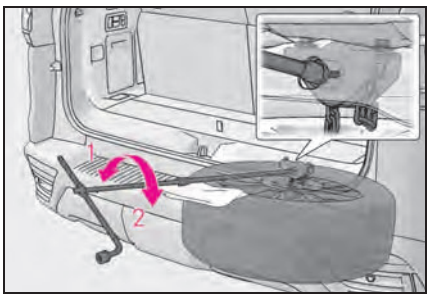


2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



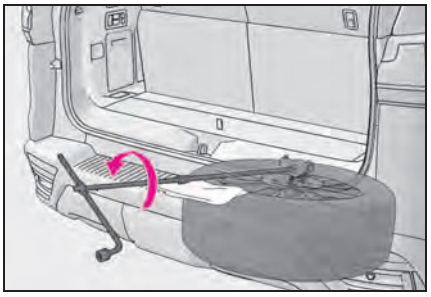
3 Insert the jack handle into the lowering screw.



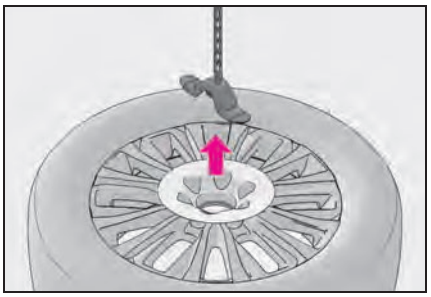
1 Lower
2 Raise

Place a rag under the jack handle to protect the rear bumper.

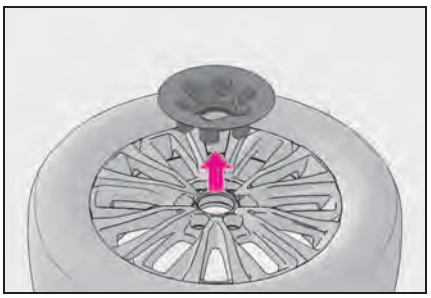
4 Lower the spare tire completely to the ground.



5 Pull out the spare tire and remove the holding bracket.

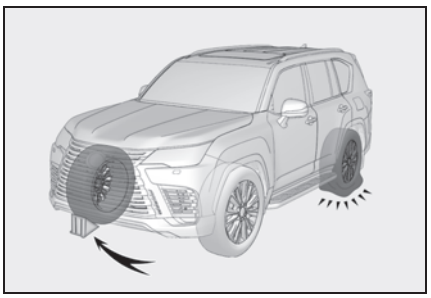


6 Remove the spare wheel cover.



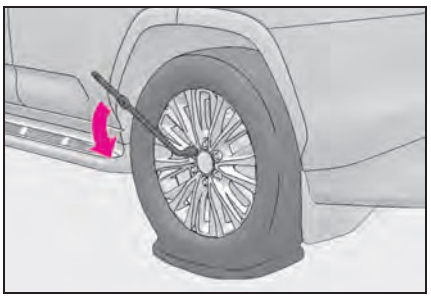
Replacing a flat tire

1 Chock the tires.



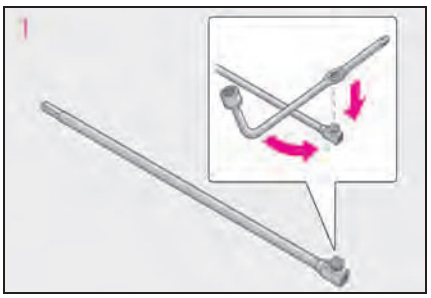
Flat tire	Wheel chock positions
Front left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
Front right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
Rear right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

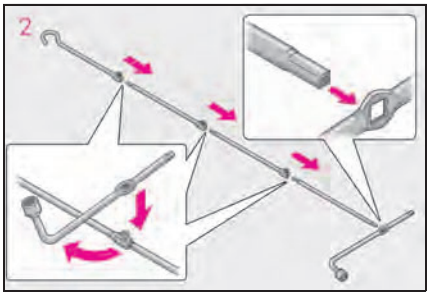


3 Assembling the jack handle.

Remove the jack handle bar, jack handle extension bar and wheel nut wrench from the tool box and assemble by following these steps.



1 Loosen the bolt using a wheel nut wrench.

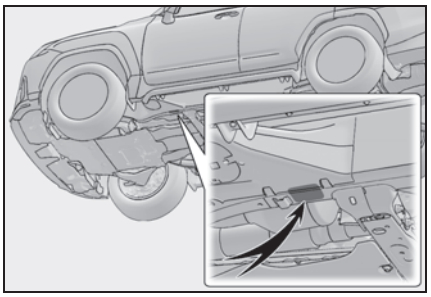


2 Assemble the jack handle bar, jack handle extension bar and wheel nut wrench and tighten the bolts.

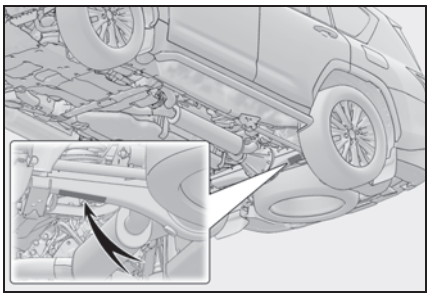
Check that the bolts are firmly tightened.

4 Position the jack at the jack points as shown.

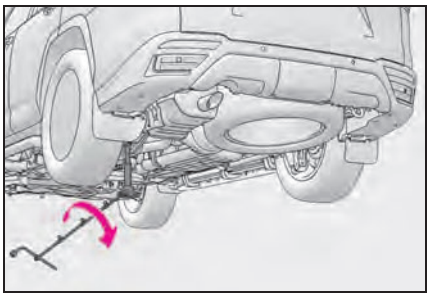
▶ Front



▶ Rear

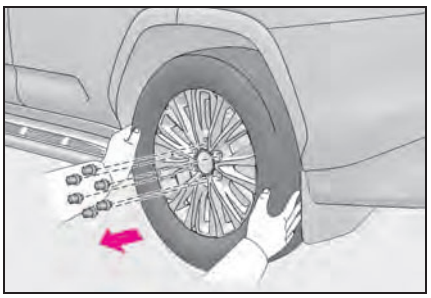


5 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



6 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



WARNING

■ Replacing a flat tire

- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven. After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury:
  - Lower the spare tire completely to the ground before removing it from under the vehicle.
  - Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
  - Turn off the AHC. The vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident. (→P.409)
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

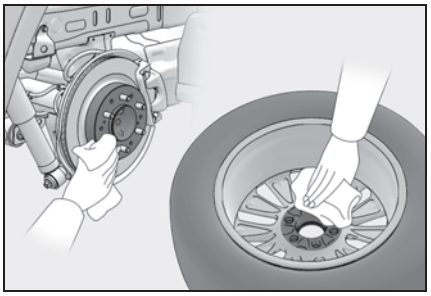
WARNING

- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 131 N•m (13.4 kgf•m, 97 ft•lbf), as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
- In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to cancel the power back door system. (→P.161) Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

Installing the spare tire

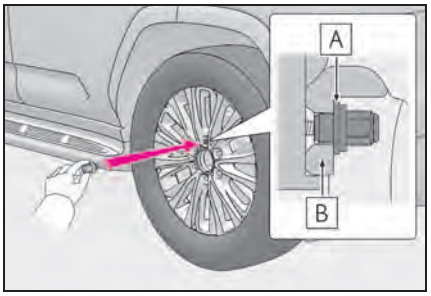
1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

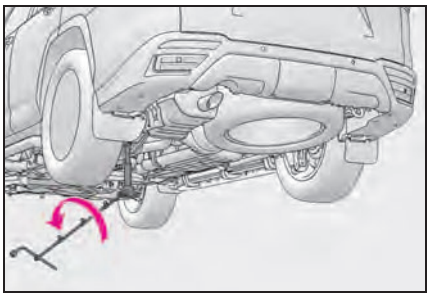


2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

Turn the wheel nuts until the washers **A** come into contact with the disc wheel **B** .

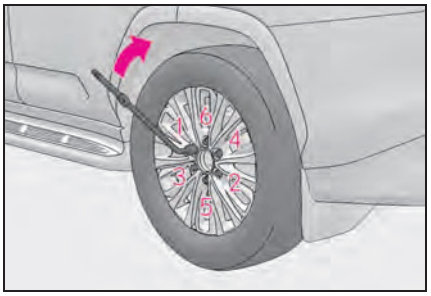


3 Lower the vehicle.



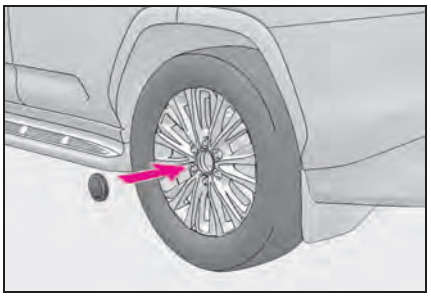
4 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
131 N•m (13.4 kgf•m, 97 ft•lbf)



5 Reinstall the wheel ornament.

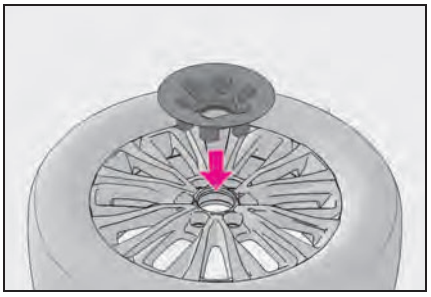
Remove the center wheel ornament from the flat tire by pushing from the reverse side, and reinstall it.



Stowing the flat/spare tire, jack and tools

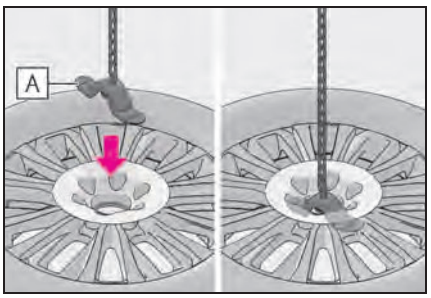
1 Lay down the tire with the valve stem facing up

2 Install the spare wheel cover.



3 Install the holding bracket [A]. Turn the jack handle extension clockwise to take up slack in the chain.

Then, check to ensure the holding bracket is centered in the wheel hub.



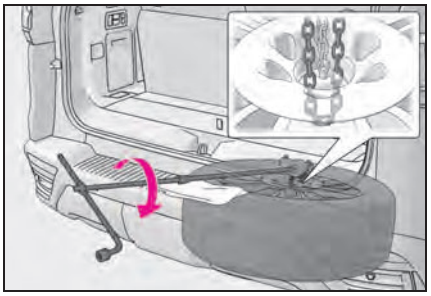
4 Raise the tire.

Place a rag under the jack handle to protect the rear bumper.

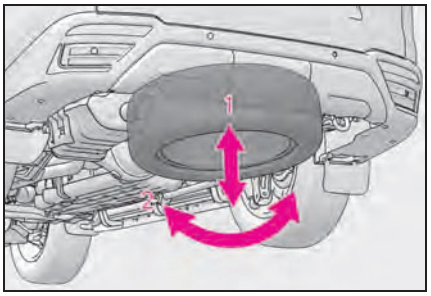
While raising, secure the tire, taking care that the tire goes straight up without catching on any surrounding part, to prevent it from flying forward during a collision or sudden braking.

After the tire goes half way up, check that the suspended chain is able to enter the tire hole, for proper storage.

Tightening torque:
47 N•m (4.8 kgf•m, 34.7 ft•lbf)



5 Confirm that the tire is not loose after tightening:



1 Push and pull the tire

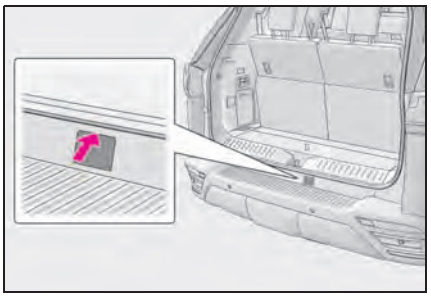
2 Try rotating

Visually check to ensure the tire is not hung on surrounding parts.

If looseness or misassembly exists, repeat step 4 and step 5.

6 Repeat step 5, any time the tire is lowered or disturbed.

7 Install the cover as shown in the illustration.



8 Stow the tools and jack securely.

■ After completing the tire change

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P.552)

WARNING

■ Stowing the flat tire

Failure to follow the proper steps listed under stowing the tire may result in damage to the spare tire carrier and loss of the tire, which could result in death or serious injury.

■ After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ When stowing the flat tire

Ensure that there is no object caught between the tire and the vehicle underbody.

■ When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P.553)

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P.228), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Gasoline engine:
  Refuel the vehicle.
  Diesel engine: →P.618
- The engine may be flooded. (gasoline engine)
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P.228)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P.107)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P.611)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The starter motor does not turn over

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- Vehicles with fingerprint authentication system: When the fingerprint authentication system is on, fingerprint authentication may have failed or the fingerprint sensor may be malfunctioning. (→P.112)
- The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P.608)

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P.611)
- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally:

1 Pull the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.237)

Parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

3 Turn the engine switch to ACC.

4 Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you lose your keys

New genuine keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using the other key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When an electronic key is lost

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key (if equipped) that were provided with your vehicle.

If the electronic key or fingerprint authentication system* does not operate properly

*: If equipped

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P.164) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Vehicles with fingerprint authentication system: When the engine cannot be started without successfully performing fingerprint authentication, or when the fingerprint sensor has malfunctioned, the engine can be started using the following procedure.

When the electronic key does not work properly

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on. (Customizable features: →P.640)
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P.163)

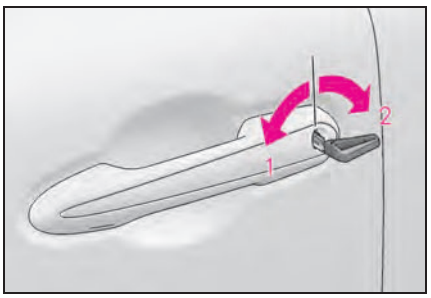
NOTICE

In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction, or other key related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle (including the card key) to your Lexus dealer.

Locking and unlocking the doors

Use the mechanical key (→P.141) in order to perform the following operations.

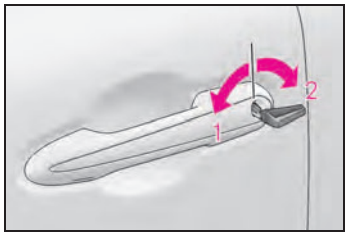


1 Locks all the doors

2 Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again within 5 seconds unlocks the other doors.

Key linked functions



1 Closes the windows and the moon roof*1 (turn and hold)*2

2 Opens the windows and the moon

roof*1 (turn and hold)*2

*1: If equipped

*2: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows or moon roof (if equipped)

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

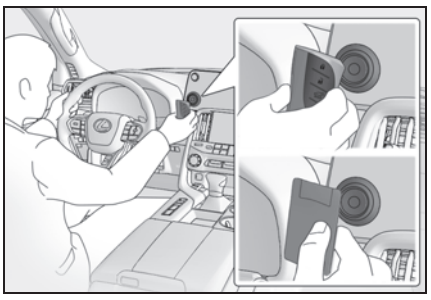
Starting the engine

1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the electronic key or card key (if equipped) to the engine switch as shown in the illustration.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch will turn to ON.

When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch will turn to ACC.



3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that is displayed on the multi-information display.

4 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

Vehicles with fingerprint authentication system: If there is a malfunction in the fingerprint authentication system, use the customization function to turn the fingerprint authentication system off. Even in this case, the engine can be started, if you are holding the electronic key. (→P.653)

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Stopping the engine

Shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ Replacing the key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P.563)

■ Alarm

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.

If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P.108)

■ Changing engine switch modes

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch in step **3** above.
The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P.231)

If the vehicle battery is discharged

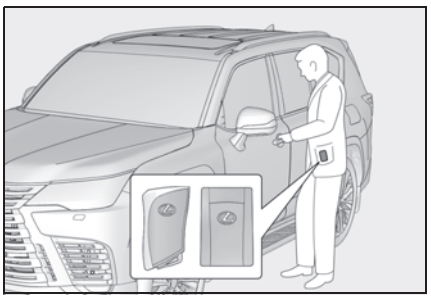
The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can also call your Lexus dealer or a qualified repair shop.

Restarting the engine

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

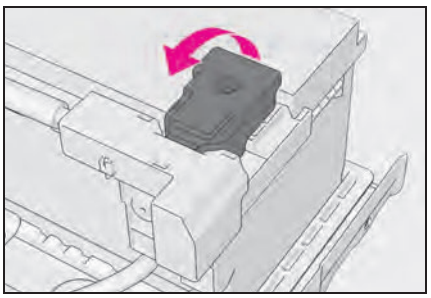
1 Confirm that the electronic key is being carried.

When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and the doors locked. (→P.109)



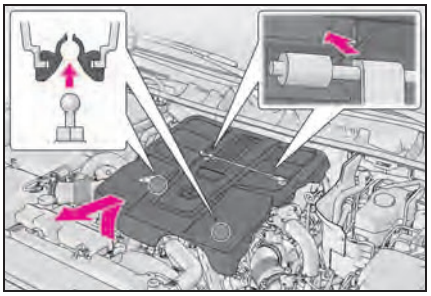
2 Open the hood (→P.532) and keep the engine compartment cover opened or removing the cover. (→P.535)

3 Open the positive (+) battery terminal cover.



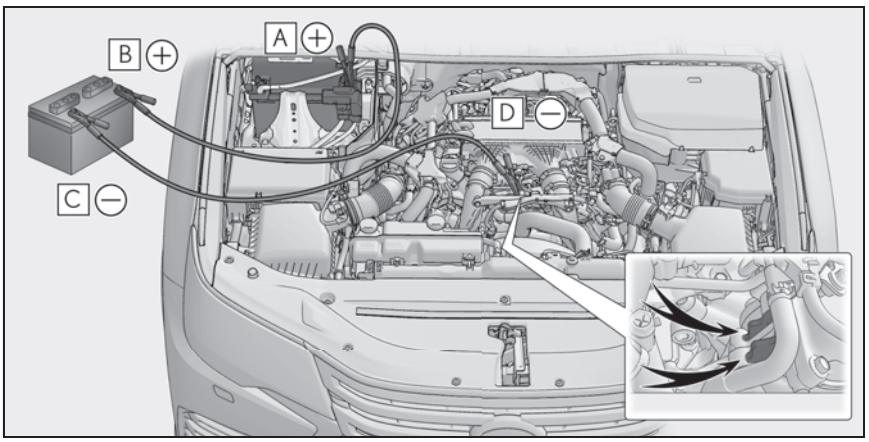
4 Gasoline engine: Remove the engine cover.

Lift the edge of the cover to disengage the fixed pins, and then pull the cover towards you to remove it.



5 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to A on your vehicle and connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to B on the second vehicle. Then, connect a negative cable clamp to C on the second vehicle and connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to D.

▶ Gasoline engine (left-hand drive vehicles)



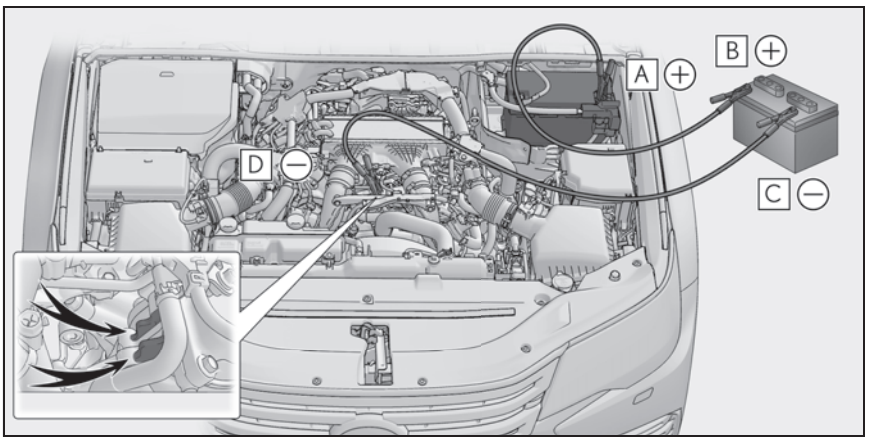
A Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

▶ Gasoline engine (right-hand drive vehicles)



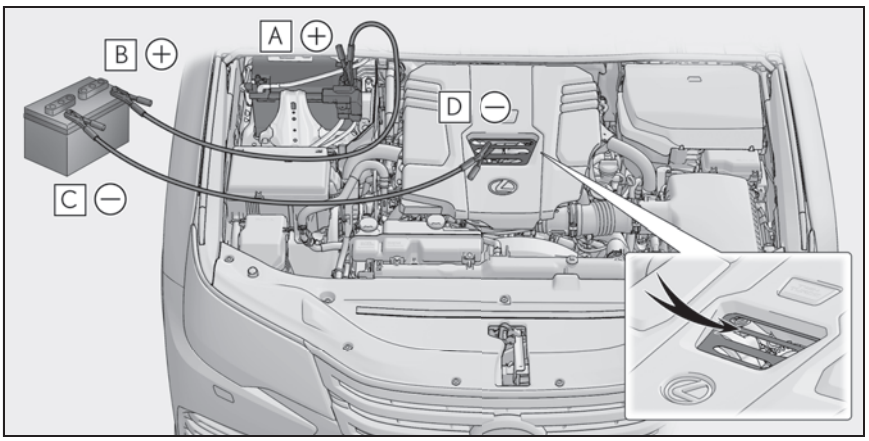
A Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

▶ Diesel engine (left-hand drive vehicles)



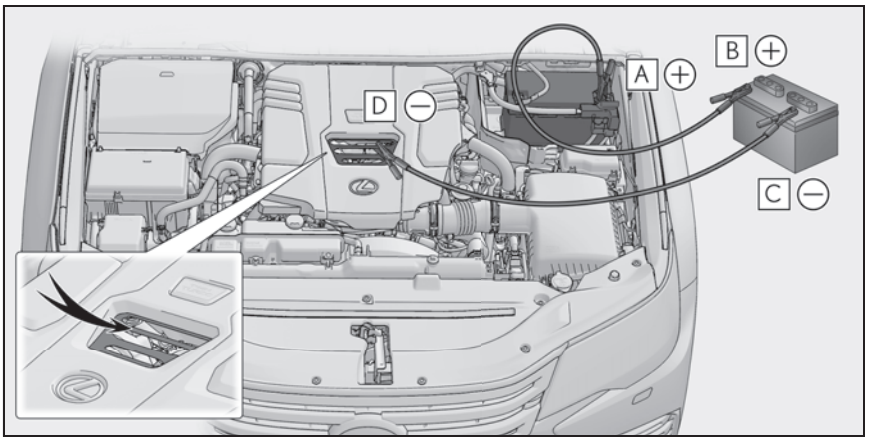
A Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

▶ Diesel engine (right-hand drive vehicles)



A Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

6 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

7 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the engine switch off.

8 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to ON.

9 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Gasoline engine: To install the engine cover, conduct the removal procedure in reverse. After installing, check that the fixed pins are inserted securely.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Turn off the headlights, the air conditioning system, the audio system, etc. while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ When the battery is removed or discharged

- Information stored in the ECU is cleared. When the battery is depleted, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.
- Some systems may require initialization. (→P.654)

■ When removing the battery terminals

When the battery terminals are removed, the information stored in the ECU is cleared. Before removing the battery terminals, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Charging the battery

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ Replacing the battery

- Vehicles with Stop & Start system: Use a genuine battery specifically designed for use with the Stop & Start system or a battery with equivalent specifications to a genuine battery. If an unsupported battery is used, Stop & Start system functions may be restricted to protect the battery. Also, battery performance may decrease and the engine may not be able to restart. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- Use a battery that conforms to European regulations.

Type A: Use a battery that the case size is same as the previous one (LN4), 20 hours rate capacity (20HR) is equivalent (80Ah)

or greater, and performance rating (CCA) is equivalent (689A) or greater.

Type B: Use a battery that the case size is same as the previous one (LN4), 20 hours rate capacity (20HR) is equivalent (75Ah) or greater, and performance rating (CCA) is equivalent (776A) or greater.

- If the sizes differ, the battery cannot be properly secured.
- If the 20 hour rate capacity is low, even if the time period where the vehicle is not used is a short time, the battery may discharge and engine may not be able to start.

● For details, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ When recharging or replacing the battery (vehicles with Stop & Start system)

The Stop & Start system may not automatically stop the engine for up to an hour.

⚠ WARNING

■ When removing the battery terminals

Always remove the negative (-) terminal first. If the positive (+) terminal contacts any metal in the surrounding area when the positive (+) terminal is removed, a spark may occur, leading to a fire in addition to electrical shocks and death or serious injury.

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

● Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.

● Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.

● Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.

● Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

● When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.

● Do not lean over the battery.

● In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.

● Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.

● Do not allow children near the battery.

■ When replacing the battery

For information regarding battery replacement, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fan or engine drive belt.

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

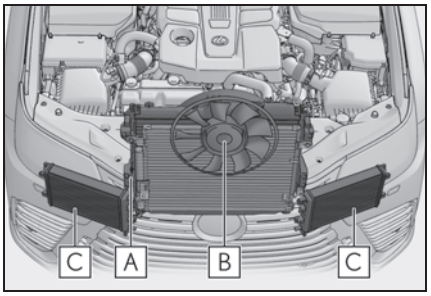
- The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge (→P.121) enters the red zone or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

3 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.



A Engine radiator

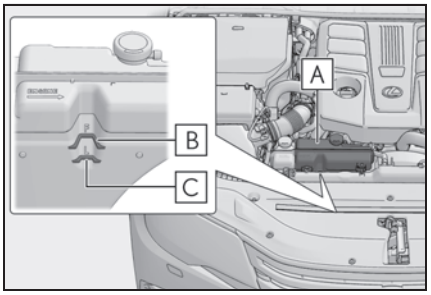
B Cooling fan

C Intercooler radiators

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir.

▶ Engine coolant

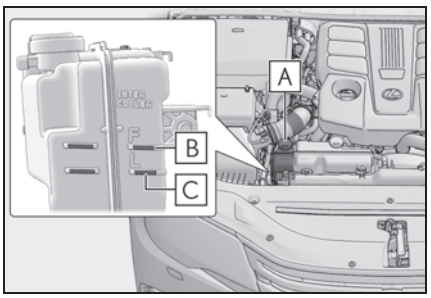


A Reservoir

B "F" line

C "L" line

▶ Intercooler coolant



A Reservoir

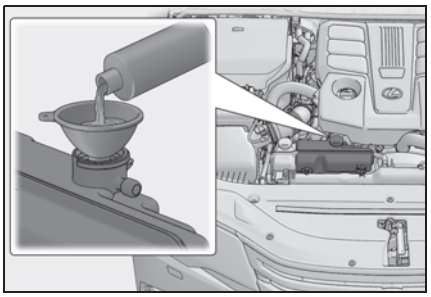
B "F" line

C "L" line

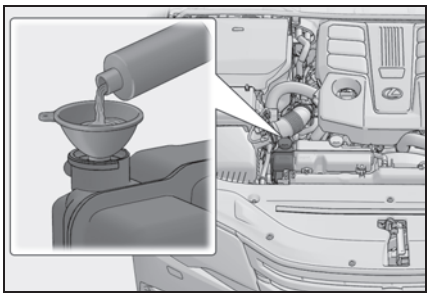
5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.

▶ Engine coolant



▶ Intercooler coolant



6 Start the engine to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiators or hoses.

7 If the fans are not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.
If the fans are operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

8 Check if "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.

If the message does not disappear: Stop the engine and contact your Lexus dealer.

If the message is not displayed: Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fans and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the engine coolant reservoir cap while the engine and engine radiator are hot. High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

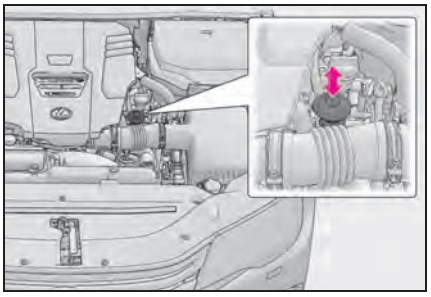
If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls (diesel engine only)

Operating procedure

If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls:

1 Refuel your vehicle.

2 To bleed the fuel system, operate the priming pump until you feel more resistance.



3 Start the engine. (→P.228)

If the engine does not start after the above steps have been performed, wait for 10 seconds and try steps **2** and **3** again. If the engine still does not start, contact your Lexus dealer.

After starting the engine, depress the accelerator pedal lightly until the engine runs smoothly.

NOTICE

■ When restarting the engine

- Do not crank the engine before refueling and operating the priming pump. This may damage the engine and fuel system.
- Do not crank the engine for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring system.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

Recovering procedure

1. Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the rear wheels.
3. Place wood, stones or some other material under the rear wheels to help provide traction.
4. Restart the engine.
5. Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Try the followings.

- Turn off the Active TRC (→P.432)
- Switching the four-wheel drive control switch (→P.416)
- Using the center differential lock (→P.417)
- Using Crawl Control (with Turn Assist function) (→P.419)
- Using Multi-terrain Select (→P.423)

⚠ WARNING

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.

This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.
- When a warning message for the automatic transmission fluid temperature is displayed while attempting to free a stuck vehicle, immediately remove your foot from the accelerator pedal and wait until the warning message disappears. Otherwise, the transmission may become damaged. (→P.592)

Vehicle specifications 8

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 622

Fuel information 635

8-2. Customization

Customizable features 637

8-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 654

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions

Overall length	Vehicles without sports package	5100 mm (200.8 in.)*1 5230 mm (205.9 in.)*2
	Vehicles with sports package	5090 mm (200.4 in.)*1 5220 mm (205.5 in.)*2
Overall width		1990 mm (78.3 in.)
Overall height	Vehicles without roof antenna	1855 mm (73.0 in.)*3 1865 mm (73.4 in.)*4
	Vehicles with roof antenna	1885 mm (74.2 in.)*3 1895 mm (74.6 in.)*4
Wheelbase		2850 mm (112.2 in.)
Tread	Front	1675 mm (66.0 in.)
	Rear	1675 mm (66.0 in.)

*1: Vehicles without pintle hook (→P.224)

*2: Vehicles with pintle hook

*3: Vehicles with 20-inch tires

*4: Vehicles with 22-inch tires

Weights (with towing hitch)

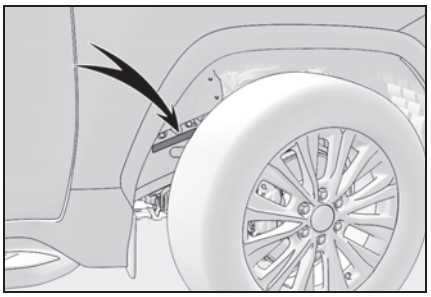
Gross vehicle mass		3280 kg (7231 lb.)
Maximum permissible axle capacity	Front	1630 kg (3594 lb.)
	Rear	1930 kg (4255 lb.)
Drawbar load		350 kg (772 lb.)
Towing capacity	With brake	3500 kg (7716 lb.)
	Without brake	750 kg (1653 lb.)

Vehicle identification

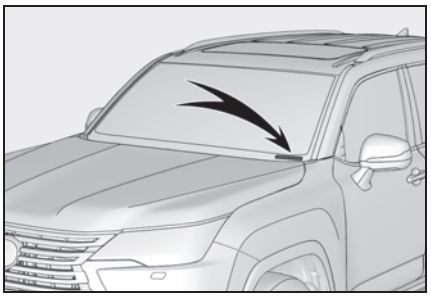
Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

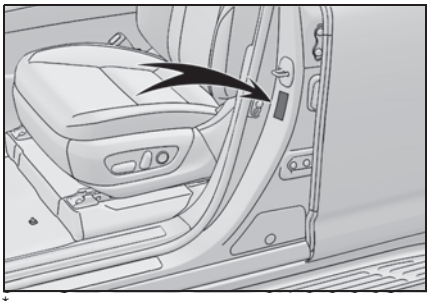
This number is stamped on the front right frame.



On some models, this number is also on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the manufacturer's label (except GCC countries*, Yemen, Iraq, Lebanon and Jordan) or the Certification Regulation label (GCC countries*, Yemen, Iraq, Lebanon and Jordan).



*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

Year of manufacture and country of origin (GCC countries*, Yemen, Iraq, Lebanon and Jordan)

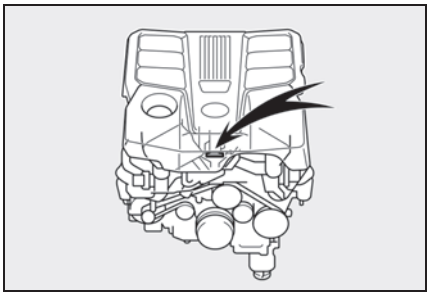
The year of the manufacture and country of origin are shown on the Certification Regulation label.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

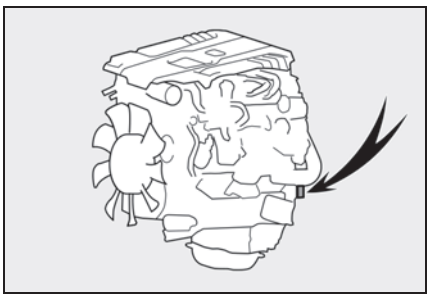
Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

▶ V35A-FTS engine



▶ F33A-FTV engine



Engine

▶ V35A-FTS engine

Model	V35A-FTS
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline (with turbocharger)
Bore and stroke	85.5 × 100.0 mm (3.37 × 3.94 in.)
Displacement	3445 cm^3 (210.2 cu.in.)
Valve clearance	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment
Maximum vehicle speed *1	210 km/h (130 mph)
Maximum torque (NET)*1	650 N•m @ 2000-3600 rpm
Maximum output (NET)*1	305 kW @ 5200 rpm

*1: For vehicles with model code*2 that has "V" as the last letter

*2: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.623)

▶ F33A-FTV engine

Model	F33A-FTV
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, diesel (with turbocharger)
Bore and stroke	86.0 × 96.0 mm (3.39 × 3.78 in.)
Displacement	3346 cm^3 (204.2 cu.in.)

Valve clearance		Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension		Automatic adjustment
Maximum vehicle speed *1		210 km/h (130 mph)
Maximum torque (NET)*1		700 N•m @ 1600 - 2600 rpm
Maximum output (NET)*1	Vehicles without DPF system	225 kW @ 4000 rpm
	Vehicles with DPF system	227 kW @ 4000 rpm

*1: For vehicles with model code*2 that has "V" as the last letter

*2: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.623)

Fuel

▶ Gasoline engine

Fuel type		Unleaded gasoline only
Research Octane Number		95 (octane rating 91) or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	Vehicles without sub fuel tank system	80 L (21.1 gal., 17.6 Imp.gal.)
	Vehicles with sub fuel tank system	110 L (29.1 gal., 24.2 Imp.gal.)

▶ Diesel engine

Fuel type	Vehicles without DPF system	Diesel fuel only
	Vehicles with DPF system	Diesel fuel that contains 10 ppm or less of sulfur
Cetane number	Vehicles without DPF system	44 or higher
	Vehicles with DPF system	48 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	Vehicles without sub fuel tank system	80 L (21.1 gal., 17.6 Imp.gal.)
	Vehicles with sub fuel tank system	110 L (29.1 gal., 24.2 Imp.gal.)

Lubrication system

▶ Gasoline engine

Oil capacity (Drain and refill [Reference*])

With filter	7.3 L (7.7 qt., 6.4 Imp.qt.)
Without filter	7.0 L (7.4 qt., 6.2 Imp.qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

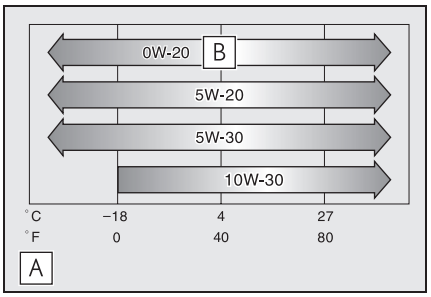
0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:

API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving", SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving" or SP "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC GF-6A multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20, 5W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

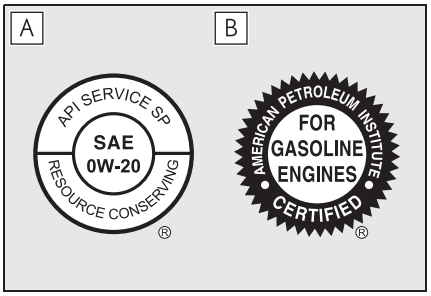
B Preferred

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SP" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).
Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

▶ Diesel engine

■ **Oil capacity (Drain and refill [Reference*])**

With filter	6.6 L (7.0 qt., 5.8 Imp.qt.)
Without filter	6.2 L (6.6 qt., 5.5 Imp.qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ **Engine oil selection (except for EURO V and VI models*)**

*: EURO V and VI are emission standards. If it is not clear that your vehicle meets relevant standards, contact your Lexus dealer

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

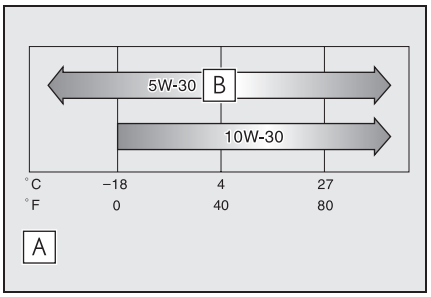
Oil grade:

API CF-4, CF or ACEA B3, B4, B5 or JASO DL-0

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

B Preferred

Oil viscosity (5W-30 is explained here as an example):

- The 5W in 5W-30 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower

value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.

- The 30 in 5W-30 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container label:

The Japanese Automobile Standard Organization (JASO) DL-0 Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.

Engine oil selection (for EURO V and VI models*)

*: EURO V and VI are emission standards. If it is not clear that your vehicle meets relevant standards, contact your Lexus dealer

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Lexus recommends the use of approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil". Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

Oil grade:

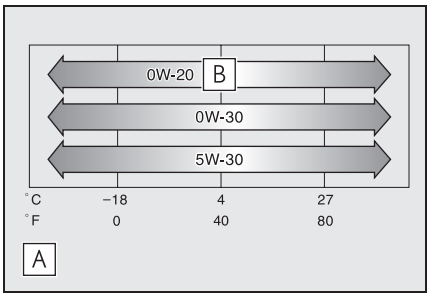
0W-20: ACEA C5

0W-30 and 5W-30: ACEA C2 or JASO DL-1

> **NOTICE**
>
> Using engine oil other than ACEA C5, C2 or JASO DL-1 may damage the catalytic converter.

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

B Preferred

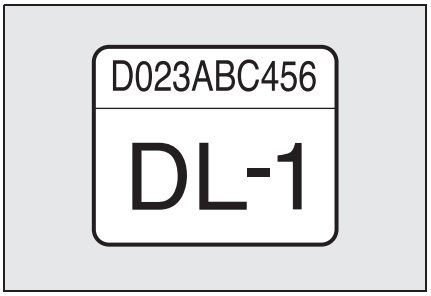
Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if

the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container label:

The Japanese Automobile Standard Organization (JASO) DL-1 Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



Cooling system

▶ V35A-FTS engine

Capacity*1	Intercooler coolant	3.8 L (4.0 qt., 3.3 Imp.qt.)
	Engine coolant	14.6 L (15.4 qt., 12.8 Imp.qt.)*2 14.7 L (15.5 qt., 12.9 Imp.qt.)*3
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

*1: The coolant capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

*2: Vehicles without Stop & Start system

*3: Vehicles with Stop & Start system

▶ F33A-FTV engine

Capacity*1	Intercooler coolant	Except for EURO V and VI models*2 and except for India: 3.8 L (4.0 qt., 3.3 Imp.qt.) For EURO V models*2: 3.9 L (4.1 qt., 3.4 Imp.qt.) For EURO VI models*2 and for India: 4.0 L (4.2 qt., 3.5 Imp.qt.)
	Engine coolant	Left-hand drive vehicles: 15.3 L (16.2 qt., 13.5 Imp.qt.)*3 15.8 L (16.7 qt., 13.9 Imp.qt.)*4, 5 16.0 L (16.9 qt., 14.1 Imp.qt.)*4, 6 Right-hand drive vehicles: 15.8 L (16.7 qt., 13.9 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

*1: The coolant capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

*2: EURO V and VI are emission standards. If it is not clear that your vehicle meets relevant standards, contact your Lexus dealer.

*3: Vehicles without exhaust gas recirculation system

*4: Vehicles with exhaust gas recirculation system

*5: Vehicles without power heater

*6: Vehicles with power heater

Ignition system (gasoline engine only)

Spark plug

Make	DENSO EC22HPR-D7
Gap	0.7 mm (0.028 in.)

NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust gap when tuning engine.

Electrical system

Battery

Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.250 or higher If the specific gravity is lower than the standard value, charge the battery.

Charging rates

Quick charge	15 A max.
Slow charge	5 A max.

Differential

Oil capacity	Front	1.16 L (1.23 qt., 1.02 Imp.qt.)
	Rear	Without rear Limited-slip differential: 5.45 L (5.76 qt., 4.80 Imp.qt.) With rear Limited-slip differential: 5.25 L (5.55 qt., 4.62 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Without Limited-slip differential	Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent
	With Limited-slip differential	Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LX 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” at the factory.

Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of

matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity (Reference)	V35A-FTS engine	Without Stop & Start system: 11.40 L (12.05 qt, 10.03 Imp.qt) With Stop & Start system: 11.48 L (12.13 qt, 10.10 Imp.qt)
	F33A-FTV engine	Without Stop & Start system: 12.50 L (13.21 qt, 11.00 Imp.qt) With Stop & Start system: 12.28 L (12.98 qt, 10.81 Imp.qt)
Fluid type		Toyota Genuine ATF WS

The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ Automatic transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than the above type may cause abnormal noise or vibration, or damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Transfer

Oil capacity	1.79 L (1.89 qt, 1.58 Imp.qt)
Oil type*	Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF or equivalent
Recommended oil viscosity	SAE 75W

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Suspension

Fluid type	Suspension fluid AHC

Brakes

Pedal clearance*	Left-hand drive vehicles: 129 mm (5.08 in.) Min Right-hand drive vehicles: 145 mm (5.71 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	1—6 mm (0.04—0.24 in.)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 SAE J1704 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 4

*: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 300 N (31 kgf, 67 lbf) while the engine is running

Chassis lubrication (propeller shafts)

▶ Front

Spider	Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2
Slide yoke	Molybdenum-disulfide lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 or lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2

▶ Rear

Spider	Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.18 in.)

Tires and wheels

▶ 22-inch tires

Tire size	265/50R22 112V

Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (99 mph)	230 (2.3, 33)	260 (2.6, 38)
	160 km/h (99 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	22 × 8 J		
Wheel nut torque	131 N•m (13.4 kgf•m, 97 ft•lbf)		

▶ 20-inch tires

Tire size	265/55R20 113V		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (99 mph)	230 (2.3, 33)	260 (2.6, 38)
	160 km/h (99 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	20 × 8 J		
Wheel nut torque	131 N•m (13.4 kgf•m, 97 ft•lbf)		

Certification

The tires fitted on this vehicle meet the requirements of Indian Standard IS 15633 and they comply with the requirements of Rule 95 as specified under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989.

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	W	Type
Exterior	Rear fog lights*	21	A

A: Wedge base bulbs

*: If equipped

Fuel information

▶ Gasoline engine

You must only use unleaded gasoline.

Select premium unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 (octane rating 91) or higher for optimum engine performance.

If this premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91 (octane rating 87).

▶ Diesel engine

Vehicles without DPF system:

You must only use diesel fuel with a cetane number of 44 or higher.

Vehicles with DPF system:

You must only use diesel fuel that contains 10 ppm or less of sulfur with a cetane number of 48 or higher.

Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine (except for Paraguay)

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

Use of ethanol blended gasoline in gasoline engine (for Paraguay)

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is complied to Paraguayan fuel standard. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

If you plan to drive in foreign countries (vehicles with DPF system)

Low sulfur diesel fuel may not be available, so please check the availability with your distributor.

If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

NOTICE

Notice on gasoline fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use gasoline with metallic additives, for example manganese, iron or lead, otherwise it may cause damage on your engine or emission control system.
- Do not add aftermarket fuel additives which contain metallic additives.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100. The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.
- For Paraguay: Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E85” or “E100” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. The use of these fuels will damage the vehicle's fuel system. In case of any doubt, ask your Lexus dealer.

Notice on diesel fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Vehicles with DPF system: Do not use a fuel that contains more than 10 ppm of sulfur. Use of such a high sulfur fuel may damage the engine.

NOTICE

- FAME (Fatty Acid Methyl Ester) fuel sold under names such as “B30” or “B100” and fuel containing a large amount of FAME should not be used. Your vehicle can use diesel mixed with 5% max biodiesel FAME (B5). The use of fuel with more than 5% FAME content (B5) will damage the vehicle's fuel system. You must ensure that refueling is carried out only from a source where fuel specification and quality can be guaranteed. In case of any doubt, ask your Lexus dealer.

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed using the multi-information display, Multimedia Display, or at your Lexus dealer.

Some of the customizable features are changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings. (→P.209)

Customizing vehicle features

■ Changing using the Multimedia Display

1 Select on the main menu.

2 Select "Vehicle customize" on the sub menu.

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

■ Changing using the multi-information display

→P.127

■ When customizing using the Multimedia Display or multi-information display

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, apply the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Also, to prevent battery discharge, leave the engine running while customizing the features.

WARNING

■ During customization

As the engine needs to be operating during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Customizable Features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

A Settings that can be changed using the Multimedia Display

B Settings that can be changed using the multi-information display

C Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – =Not available

■ **Alarm (→P.108)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Cancellation when the mechanical key is used to unlock	Off	On	–	–	O

■ **Gauges, meters and multi-information display (→P.121, 124)**

Function*1	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Language*2, 3	English	Except English*4	–	O	–
Units*3	L/100 km	km/L	O	O	–
		miles (MPG)*5			
Speedometer display	Digital	Analog	–	O	–
		Both digital and analog			
Drive information 1*2	Current fuel consumption	Customizable items: →P.125	–	O	–
	Average fuel economy (after reset)				
Drive information 2*2	Distance (driving range)				
	Average vehicle speed (after reset)				
Pop-up display*2	On	Off	–	O	–
Eco Driving Indicator Light*2	On	Off	–	O	–
Suggestion function*2, 6	On	On (when the vehicle is stopped)	O	–	O
		Off			

*1: For details about each function: →P.127

*2: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

*3: The default setting varies according to country.

*4: Available languages may differ depending on the target region.

*5: The customized setting varies according to country.

*6: If equipped

■ Head-up Display*1 (→P.130)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Head-up display*2	On	Off	–	O	–
Gauge information*2	Tachometer	Eco Driving Indicator	–	O	–
		No content			
Route guidance to destination/street name*1, 2	On	Off	–	O	–
Driving support system display*2	On	Off	–	O	–
Compass*1, 2	On	Off	–	O	–
Audio system operation status*2	On	Off	–	O	–

*1: If equipped

*2: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ Door lock (→P.142, 609)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Unlocking using a mechanical key	Driver's door unlocked in first step, all doors unlocked in second step	All doors unlocked in first step	–	–	O
Speed linked door locking function*1	On	Off	O	–	O
Shift position linked door locking function*1	Off	On	O	–	O

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Shift position linked door unlocking function*1	Off	On	O	–	O
Driver's door linked door unlocking function*1, 2	On	Off	O	–	O

*1: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

*2: The default setting varies according to country.

■ **Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P.140, 162)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Operation signal (Emergency flashers)*1	On	Off	O	–	O
Operating signal (Buzzers)*1, 2	Standard	Desired volume	O	–	O
Time elapsed before the automatic door lock function is activated if a door is not opened after being unlocked*1	30 seconds	60 seconds	O	–	O
		120 seconds			
Open door reminder buzzer (When locking the vehicle)	On	Off	–	–	O

*1: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

*2: If equipped

■ **Smart entry & start system (→P.162)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	O	–	O
Smart door unlocking*1	Driver's door	All the doors	O	–	O
Number of consecutive door lock operations	2 times	As many as desired	–	–	O

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before unlocking all the door when gripping and holding the driver's door handle*2	2 seconds	Off	–	–	O
		1.5 seconds			
		2.5 seconds			
Engine switch illumination	On	Off	–	–	O

*1: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

*2: This setting can be changed when the smart door unlocking setting is set to "Driver's door".

■ **Wireless remote control (→P.140)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Unlocking operation*1	Driver's door unlocked in first step, all doors unlocked in second step	All doors unlocked in first step	O	–	O
The function that activates the switch of the wireless remote control when locking the door (→P.149)*2	Off	On (Unlocking all the door)	–	–	O
		On (Unlocking back door only)			
Alarm (panic mode)*3	On	Off	–	–	O

*1: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

*2: The default setting varies according to country.

*3: If equipped

■ **Rear seat reminder (→P.144)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Rear seat reminder function*	On	Off	–	O	–

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Power back door (→P.149)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Power back door operations	On	Off	–	O	–
Power back door switch operations	Press and hold	One short press	–	–	O
switch of the wireless remote control operation	Press and hold	One short press	–	–	O
		Push twice			
		Off			
Operation buzzer volume	Level 3	Level 1	–	O	–
		Level 2			
Operation buzzer while the back door is operating *1, 2	On	Off	–	–	O
Opening angle	5	1 to 4	O	–	–
		User setting *3			
Automatic closing of the back door when lowered	On	Off	–	–	O
Automatic opening of the back door using the back door opener switch	On	Off	–	–	O
Time elapsed before the automatic opening of the back door after the back door opener switch is pressed	0.3 seconds	0.5 seconds	–	–	O
		0.8 seconds			
Door unlocking when the back door opener switch is pressed with the doors locked	On	Off	–	–	O
Close & lock (Walk-Away) function	On	Off	–	–	O
Hands free power back door *4	On	Off	–	O	–
Kick sensor sensitivity *4	+1	+0	–	–	O
		+2			

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Buzzer when the kick sensor*4 detects a foot	On	Off	–	–	O
Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function*4	Off	On	–	–	O

*1: The operation buzzer that sounds when the back door begins to operate cannot be turned off.

*2: The default setting varies according to country.

*3: The open position is set by the power back door switch. (→P.161)

*4: If equipped

■ **Driving position memory (→P.204)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Function to prevent contact between the head restraint and ceiling (while moving to memory location)	On	Off	–	–	O

■ **Enabling easier driver entry and exit (power easy access system) (→P.204)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Driver's seat slide movement when exiting the vehicle*	Full	Off	O	–	O
		Partial			
Steering wheel movement when exiting the vehicle*	Tilt & telescopic	Tilt only	O	–	–
		Telescopic only			
		off			

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ Outside rear view mirrors (→P.196)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Automatic folding and extending operation	Linked to locking/unlocking of the doors	Off	–	–	O
		Linked to operation of engine switch modes			

■ Power windows and moon roof*1 (→P.199, 201)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Mechanical key linked operation*2	Off	On	–	–	O
Wireless remote control linked operation*2	Off	On	–	–	O
Wireless remote control linked operation signal (buzzer)	On	Off	–	–	O

*1: If equipped

*2: The settings of the moon roof are changed in conjunction with the settings of the power windows.

■ Moon roof* (→P.201)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Linked operation of components when mechanical key is used	Slide only	Tilt only	–	–	O
Linked operation of components when wireless remote control is used	Slide only	Tilt only	–	–	O

*: If equipped

■ Lights (→P.243)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Light reminder buzzer	On	Off	–	–	O
Welcome lighting	On	Off	–	–	O

■ **Automatic light control system (→P.243)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Light sensor sensitivity*1	Normal	Brighter	○	–	○
		Bright			
		Dark			
		Darker			
Automatic light off system*2	Linked to operation of the engine switch	Linked to the driver's door	–	–	○
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed*1, 2	30 seconds	Off	○	–	○
		60 seconds			
		90 seconds			
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off (Extended Headlight Lighting)*2	30 seconds	60 seconds	–	–	○
		90 seconds			
		120 seconds			
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn on*2	Standard	Long	–	–	○

*1: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

*2: If equipped

■ **Rear window wiper (→P.253)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Back door opening linked rear window wiper stop function	On	Off	–	–	○
Washer linked rear window wiper operation	On	Off	–	–	○
Reverse-linked rear window wiper function	Once	Off	–	–	○
		Continuous			

■ AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)[*1] (→P.246)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Adaptive High-beam System	On	Off[*2]	–	–	O
Clearance between a vehicle ahead and the shaded high beams	Wide	Narrow	–	–	O
		Standard			
Brightness and illuminated area adjustment of the high beams according to the vehicle speed	Operates at approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or more	Operates at approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more	–	–	O
		Operates at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more[*3], or 60 km/h (37 mph) or more[*4]			
Intensity adjustment of the high beams when driving around a curve (illuminates the area in the direction vehicle is turning more brightly)	On	Off	–	–	O
Projection distance adjustment of the low beams according to the distance to a preceding vehicle	On	Off	–	–	O
High beam light distribution control for rain	On	Off	–	–	O
Light distribution control for urban areas	On	Off	–	–	O

[*1]: If equipped

[*2]: Only high beam will be turned on or off.

[*3]: For vehicles without model code[*5] that has "W" as the last letter

[*4]: For vehicles with model code[*5] that has "W" as the last letter

[*5]: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.623)

■ PCS (Pre-Collision System)*1 (→P.262)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
PCS (Pre-Collision System)*2	On, Off	–	O	–
Adjust alert timing	Late, Middle, Early	–	O	–

*1: If equipped

*2: The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch is turned to ON.

■ LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)* (→P.273)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Lane centering function	On, Off	–	O	–
Alert	Steering wheel vibration, Buzzer	–	O	–
Alert sensitivity	High, Standard	–	O	–
Vehicle sway warning function	On, Off	–	O	–
Vehicle sway warning sensitivity	High, Standard, Low	–	O	–

*: If equipped

■ Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range* (→P.283)/Dynamic radar cruise control* (→P.294)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Curve speed reduction function	High, Low, Off	–	O	–

*: If equipped

■ BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*1 (→P.312)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	On	Off	–	O	–
Outside rear view mirror indicator brightness	Bright	Dim	–	O	–

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Alert timing for presence of approaching vehicle (sensitivity)	Intermediate	Early	–	O	–
		Late			
		Only when vehicle detected in blind spot*2			

*1: If equipped

*2: When "Only when vehicle detected in blind spot" is selected, Blind Spot Monitor is disabled while the vehicle is stopped (if equipped).

■ RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function* (→P.325)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function	On	Off	–	O	–
Buzzer volume	Level 2	Level 1	–	O	–
		Level 3			

*: If equipped

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.319)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Lexus parking assist-sensor	On	Off	–	O	–
Buzzer volume	Level 2	Level 1	–	O	–
		Level 3			

■ PKSB (Parking Support Brake)* (→P.334)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) function	On	Off	–	O	–

*: If equipped

■ RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function (→P.331)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function	On	Off	–	O	–
Buzzer volume	Level 2	Level 1	–	O	–
		Level 3			

■ Multi-terrain Monitor (→P.390)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Cornering View*	On	Off	O	–	–
View Under Vehicle*	On	Off	O	–	–
LEXUS Park Assist 3D Display*	On	Off	O	–	–
Front side of LEXUS Park Assist Distance*	Near	Off	O	–	–
Rear side of LEXUS Park Assist Distance*	Near	Off	O	–	–
Vehicle Body Color*	Color 1	Color 1 to 8	O	–	–

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ Stop & Start system* (→P.307)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Change the Stop & Start system duration when the A/C is on	Standard	Extended	–	O	–

*: If equipped

■ **Automatic air conditioning system (→P.455)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation*1	On	Off	○	–	○
A/C Auto switch operation*1	On	Off	○	–	○
Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity*1, 2	Standard	-3 to 3	○	–	○

*1: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

*2: If equipped

■ **Seat heater/seat ventilators*1 (→P.469)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Driver's seat temperature preference in automatic mode*2	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	–	○
Front passenger's seat temperature preference in automatic mode*2	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	–	○
Left-hand rear seat temperature preference in automatic mode*1	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	–	○
Right-hand rear seat temperature preference in automatic mode*1	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	–	○

*1: If equipped

*2: The default settings of the seat heater is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Heated steering wheel*1 (→P.469)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Steering wheel heating preference in automatic mode*2	Standard	-2 (low) to 2 (high)	○	—	○

*1: If equipped

*2: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Illumination (→P.473)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off*1	15 seconds	Off	○	–	○
		7.5 seconds			
		30 seconds			
Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	–	–	○
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	–	○
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	–	–	○
Color of the door trim ornament lights, inside door handle lights, spot lights, footwell lights, auxiliary box lights, cup holder lights and front console box light*2, etc.*1	Silky white	Set color	○	–	○
		Custom			
All zones: brightness of the door trim ornament lights, inside door handle lights, spot lights, footwell lights, auxiliary box lights, cup holder lights and front console box light*2, etc.*1	Standard	Desired brightness	○	–	○
Front zone: brightness of the front door trim ornament lights, front inside door handle lights and spot lights, etc.*1	Standard	Desired brightness	○	–	○
Rear zone: brightness of the rear door trim ornament lights, rear inside door handle lights and spot lights, etc.*1	Standard	Desired brightness	○	–	○
Brightness of the footwell lights*1	Standard	Desired brightness	○	–	○

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before the outer foot lights and running board lights turn off*1	15 seconds	Off	O	–	O
		7.5 seconds			
		30 seconds			
Operation of the outer foot lights and running board lights when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	–	O
Operation of the outer foot lights and running board lights when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	–	–	O
Operation of the outer foot lights and running board lights when a door is opened	On	Off	–	–	O
Operation when the doors are locked and far away from the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	–	O

*1: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

*2: If equipped

■ **Driving mode select switch (→P.407)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Powertrain control in custom mode	Normal	Power	O	–	–
		Eco			
Steering wheel control in custom mode	Normal	Sport	O	–	–
Suspensions control in custom mode	Normal	Sport	O	–	–
		Comfort			
Air conditioning operation in custom mode	Normal	Eco	O	–	–

■ **Fingerprint authentication system** *1, 2 (→P.112)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Fingerprint authentication system function *3	Off*4	On	○	–	○

*1: If equipped

*2: For information on settings, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

*3: The setting cannot be changed if fingerprint information is not registered.

*4: It will automatically switch to "ON" when fingerprint information is registered.

■ **Vehicle customization**

● When the speed linked door locking function and shift position linked door locking function are both on, the door lock operates as follows.
- If the vehicle is started with all the doors locked, the speed linked door locking function would not operate.
- If the vehicle is started with any door unlocked, the speed linked door locking function will operate.
- When shifting the shift lever to any position other than P, all the doors will be locked.

● When the smart entry & start system is off, the selecting door to unlock cannot be customized.

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

List of the items to initialize

Item	When to initialize	Reference
PKSB (Parking Support Brake)*	• After reconnecting or changing the battery	P.338
Tire pressure warning system	• When rotating the tires • When the tire inflation pressure is changed by changing tire size. (When there are multiple specified pressures) • After registering the ID codes	P.552, 554
Oil maintenance	• After the maintenance is performed	P.537
Crawl Control (with Turn Assist function)	• After reconnecting the battery	P.422
Power back door	• After reconnecting or changing the battery	P.157
Power window	• When functioning abnormally	P.199
Moon roof*		P.202

*: If equipped

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 656
Alphabetical Index 659

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting your Lexus dealer.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed

You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer. (→P.608)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. (→P.608)

The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the key battery weak or depleted? (→P.563)
- Is the engine switch in ON?
  When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P.231)
- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?
  When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.
- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P.164)

The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set?
  The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P.146)

If you think something is wrong

The engine does not start

- Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P.228)
- Is the shift lever in P? (→P.228)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P.163)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P.229)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?
  In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way. (→P.610)
- Is the battery discharged? (→P.611)
- Vehicles with fingerprint authentication system: Have fingerprint authentication been done successfully? (→P.112)

The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

- Is the engine switch in ON? If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the engine switch in ON. (→P.234)

The steering wheel cannot be turned after the engine is stopped

- It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle. (→P.229)

The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed? The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P.201)

The engine switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACC or ON (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P.231)

A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

Are the driver and the passengers wearing the seat belts? (→P.589, 590)

- The parking brake indicator is on

Is the parking brake released? (→P.237)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P.582, 592)

An alarm is activated and the horn sounds

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door during setting the alarm? The sensor detects it and the alarm sounds. (→P.108)

To stop the alarm, turn the engine switch to ON or start the engine.

A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the message displayed on the multi-information display? Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P.592)

A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P.582, 592.

When a problem has occurred

If you have a flat tire

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and

replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P.597)

The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P.619)

Alphabetical Index

A

A/C 455, 465
Air conditioning filter 562
Automatic air conditioning system 455, 465
Eco air conditioning mode 458
Front seat concentrated airflow mode (S-FLOW) 462
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 430
Warning light 584
Active Height Control Suspension (AHC) 409
Active TRC (Traction Control) 431
Adaptive High-beam System (AHS) ... 246
Adaptive Variable Suspension System (AVS) 431
AdBlue™ 546
Capacity 548
Low AdBlue™ level warning light ... 589
Refilling 548
Warning message 547
AHC (Active Height Control Suspension) 409
Disabling the height control 412
Easy access mode 411
Selecting vehicle height 409
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) ... 246
Airbags 48
Airbag operating conditions 52
Airbag precautions for your child 55
Correct driving posture 41
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 52
Curtain shield airbag precautions 55
General airbag precautions 55
Locations of airbags 48
Modification and disposal of airbags . 57
Seat cushion airbag 48
Side airbag operating conditions 52
Side airbag precautions 55
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions 52
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions 55
SRS airbags 48
SRS warning light 583
Air cleaner 543
Air conditioning filter 562
Air conditioning system 455, 465
Air conditioning filter 562
Automatic air conditioning system 455, 465
Eco air conditioning mode 458
Front seat concentrated airflow mode (S-FLOW) 462
Alarm 108
Alarm 108
Warning buzzer 582, 593
Anchor brackets 86, 102
Antenna
Smart entry & start system 162
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 430
Warning light 584
Approach warning 289, 299
Armrest 503
Assist grips 505
Audio system-linked display 127
Automatic air conditioning system 455, 465
Air conditioning filter 562
Eco air conditioning mode 458
Front seat concentrated airflow mode (S-FLOW) 462
Automatic headlight leveling system ... 244
Automatic light control system 244
Automatic transmission 233
M mode 236
Paddle shift switches 235, 236
Auxiliary boxes 483
Average fuel economy 125
Average vehicle speed 125

AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) 431

B

Back door 147
Back door closer 154
Back door opener switch 149
Hands Free Power Back Door 151, 152
Luggage compartment light 154
Power back door opener and closer switch 149
Power back door switch 149
Power back door 149
Wireless remote control 149
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Battery
Checking 540
If the vehicle battery is discharged 611
Preparing and checking before winter 438
Replacing 614
Warning light 582
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) 312
Blind Spot Monitor function 315
Bottle holders 482
Brake
Brake Hold 240
Fluid 633
Parking brake 237
Warning light 582
Brake assist 430
Brake Hold 240
Break-in tips 214
Brightness control
Instrument panel light control 123
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 312
Blind Spot Monitor function 315
Warning message 313

C

Card key 138
Care
Aluminum wheels 514
Exterior 514
Interior 517
Radar sensor 257
Seat belts 517
Cargo hooks 485
Center differential lock system 417
Chains 440
Child-protectors 146
Child restraint system 60, 88
Child restraint system installation method 81, 90
Child seats installation 62, 91
Installing a CRS to the passenger seat 62, 91
Installing a CRS to the rear seat 91
Installing CRS with an ISOFIX lower anchorage 84, 98
Installing CRS with seat belts 82, 94
Installing CRS with top strap 86, 102
Points to remember 61, 88
Riding with children 60
Using a top tether anchorage 86, 102
Child safety 60
Airbag precautions 55
Back door precautions 147
Battery precautions 542, 615
Child restraint system 60, 88
Heated steering wheel and seat heater precautions 469
How your child should wear the seat belt 44
Installing child restraints 60, 88
Moon roof precautions 203
Power window lock switch 201
Power window precautions 200
Rear door child-protectors 146

Removed key battery precautions... 565
Seat belt precautions 42
Seat heater precautions 469
Cleaning 514, 517
Aluminum wheels 514
Exterior 514
Interior 517
Radar sensor 257
Seat belts 517
Clock 121
Coat hooks 504
Condenser 539
Console box 480
Consumption screen 134
Coolant
Capacity 629
Checking 538
Preparing and checking before winter 438
Warning light 583
Cool box 489
Cooling system 629
Engine overheating 616
Cornering lights 245
Crawl Control 419
Cruise control
Cruise control 304
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 283
Dynamic radar cruise control 294
Cup holders 482
Current fuel consumption 125, 134
Curtain shield airbags 48
Customizable features 637

D

DAC
Downhill assist control system 425
Daytime running light system 243
Replacing light bulbs 569
Deck board 485
Defogger
Outside rear view mirrors 458
Rear window 458
Windshield 458
Differential 631
Digital Rear-view Mirror 188
Dimensions 622
Display
Consumption screen 134
Cruise control 304
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 283
Dynamic radar cruise control 294
Front Multi Operation Panel 446
Head-up display 130
Lexus parking assist-sensor 319
LTA (Lane-Tracing Assist) 278
Multi-information display 124
Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) 344
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) 331
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 326
Rear Multi Operation Panel 449
Warning messages 592
Do-it-yourself maintenance 530
Door courtesy lights 473
Door lock
Back door 147
Side doors 142
Smart entry & start system 162
Wireless remote control 140
Doors
Automatic door locking and unlocking system 146
Back door 147
Door closer 145
Door glasses 199
Door lock 142
Open door warning buzzer 143
Outside rear view mirrors 196

Rear door child-protectors 146
Side doors 142
Downhill assist control system 425
DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter) system 427
Warning message 428
Drive distance 125
Drive info 1/Drive info 2 125
Driver's seat belt reminder light 589
Driver's seat position memory 204
Driving position memory 204
Memory recall function 206
Power easy access system 204
Drive-Start Control (DSC)
Sudden start restraint control 219
Driving
Break-in tips 214
Correct posture 41
Driving mode select switch 407
Eco-friendly driving tips 441
Off-road precautions 436
Procedures 213
Winter drive tips 438
Driving information display 125
Driving mode select switch 407
Driving position memory 204
Memory recall function 206
Power easy access system 204
Driving range 125
Driving support system information display 127
DSC (Drive-Start Control)
Sudden start restraint control 219
Dynamic radar cruise control
Function 294
Warning message 592
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range
Function 283
Warning message 592

E

eCall 104
ECB (Electronically Controlled Brake System) 430
Eco drive mode 407
Eco Driving Indicator 126, 133
Eco Driving Indicator Light 126
Eco-friendly driving tips 441
EDR (Event data recorder) 8
Elapsed time 125
Electric Power Steering (EPS)
Function 431
Warning light 584
Electronically Controlled Brake System (ECB) 430
Electronic key 138
Battery-saving function 163
If the electronic key does not operate properly 609
Replacing the battery 563
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds 582
If a warning light turns on 582
If a warning message is displayed 592
If the electronic key or fingerprint authentication system does not operate properly 609
If the engine will not start 607
If the vehicle battery is discharged 611
If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising 575
If you have a flat tire 597
If you lose your keys 608
If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls 618
If you think something is wrong 580
If your vehicle becomes stuck 619
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 574
If your vehicle needs to be towed 577

If your vehicle overheats 616
Emergency brake signal 431
Emergency flashers 574
Engine
ACC 231
Compartment 533
Engine switch 228
Exhaust gas precautions 59
Fuel pump shut off system 581
Hood 532
How to start the engine 228
Identification number 623
Idling time 214
If the engine will not start 607
If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls 618
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 574
Ignition switch (Engine switch) 228
Overheating 616
Tachometer 121
Engine compartment cover 535
Engine coolant
Capacity 629
Checking 538
Preparing and checking before winter 438
Warning light 583
Engine coolant temperature gauge 121
Engine immobilizer system 107
Engine oil
Capacity 626
Checking 536
Preparing and checking before winter 438
Warning light 583
Engine oil pressure gauge 121
Engine switch 228
Auto power off function 231
Changing the engine switch modes 231
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 574
EPS (Electric Power Steering)
Function 431
Warning light 584
Event data recorder (EDR) 8
Extended Headlight Lighting 245

F

Fingerprint Authentication System 112
Flat tire 597
Tire pressure warning system 552
Floor mats 40
Fluid
Automatic transmission 632
Brake 633
Suspension 632
Washer 542
Fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Switch 250
Footwell lights 473
Four-wheel drive system
Center differential lock/unlock 417
Four-wheel drive control switch 416
Warning light 588
Front fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Switch 250
Front Multi Operation Panel 446
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light 589
Front position lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Switch 243
Front seats 167
Adjustment 167
Cleaning 517
Correct driving posture 41
Driving position memory 204
Head restraints 183

Memory recall function 206
Power easy access system 204
Seat heaters 469
Seat position memory 204
Seat ventilators 469
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Turn signal lever 237
Fuel
Capacity 625
Fuel filter 544
Fuel gauge 121
Fuel pump shut off system 581
If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls 618
Information 635
Refueling 255
Warning light 589
Fuel consumption
Average fuel economy 125
Current fuel consumption 125, 134
Fuel consumption information 134
Average fuel consumption 134
Current fuel consumption 125, 134
Fuel filler door 256
Refueling 255
Fuel filter 544
Fuel gauge 121
Fuel pump shut off system 581
Fuses 566

G

Garage door opener 505
Gauges 121
Glove box 480
Glove box light 480
Grocery bag hooks 485

H

Hands Free Power Back Door 151
Headlight cleaners 251
Headlights 243
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 246
Automatic headlight leveling system 244
Light switch 243
Replacing light bulbs 569
Head restraints 183
Head-up display 130
Driving support system display area 132
Eco Driving Indicator 133
Pop-up display 132
Heated steering wheel 469
Heaters
Automatic air conditioning system 455
Heated steering wheel 469
Outside rear view mirrors 458
Seat heaters 469
High mounted stoplight
Replacing light bulbs 569
Hill-start assist control 431
Hood
Hood 532
Open 532
Warning message 145
Hooks
Cargo hooks 485
Coat hooks 504
Grocery bag hooks 485
Retaining hooks (floor mat) 40
Horn 186

I

Identification
Engine 623
Vehicle 623
Idling time 214
Ignition switch (engine switch) 228
Auto power off function 231
Changing the engine switch modes 231

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 574
Starting the engine 228
Illuminated entry system 475
Indicators 116
Initialization
Crawl Control 422
Engine oil maintenance data 537
Items to initialize 654
Moon roof 202
Parking Support Brake 338
Power back door 157
Power windows 199
Tire pressure warning system 554
Inside door handle lights 473
Inside rear view mirror (Digital Rear-view Mirror) 188
Inside rear view mirror 187
Installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat 62, 91
Instrument panel light control 123
Interior lights 473
Switch 475
Intrusion sensor 109
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor 109
ISOFIX rigid anchors 84, 98

J

Jack
Vehicle-equipped jack 598
Jack handle 598
Jam protection function
Front seats 167
Moon roof 202
Power back door 154
Power windows 199

K

Keyless entry
Smart entry & start system 162
Wireless remote control 140
Keys 138
Battery-saving function 163
Electronic key 138
Engine switch 228
If the electronic key does not operate properly 609
If you lose your keys 608
Key number plate 138
Keyless entry 140, 162
Mechanical key 141
Replacing the battery 563
Warning buzzer 163
Wireless remote control key 140
Knee airbags 48

L

Lane Tracing Assist (LTA) 273
Operation 273
Warning messages 282
Language (multi-information display) 127
Lever
Auxiliary catch lever 532
Hood lock release lever 532
Shift lever 233
Turn signal lever 237
Wiper lever 251, 253
Lexus climate concierge 453
Lexus parking assist-sensor 319
Function 319
Lexus Safety System + ... 257
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 246
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 283
Dynamic radar cruise control 294
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 273
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 262
License plate lights
Replacing light bulbs 569

Switch 243
Light
Welcome lighting 245
Light bulbs
Replacing 569
Wattage 634
Welcome lighting 245
Lights
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 246
Cornering lights 245
Extended Headlight Lighting 245
Fog light switch 250
Headlight switch 243
Illuminated entry system 475
Interior light list 473
Interior lights 475
Personal lights 476
Rear reading lights 476
Replacing light bulbs 569
Turn signal lever 237
Vanity lights 490
Lock steering column 229
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 273
Operation 273
Warning messages 282
Luggage compartment light 154
Luggage cover 487, 488

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance 530
Maintenance data 622
Maintenance requirements 520
Scheduled maintenance 522
Malfunction indicator lamp 583
Menu icons 124
Meter
Indicators 116
Instrument panel light control 123
Meter control switches 125
Meters 121
Multi-information display 124
Settings 127, 637
Warning lights 582
Warning messages 592
Mirrors
Digital Rear-view Mirror 188
Inside rear view mirror (Digital Rear-view Mirror) 188
Inside rear view mirror 187
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 458
Outside rear view mirrors 196
Vanity mirrors 490
Moon roof
Door lock linked moon roof operation 202
Jam protection function 202
Operation 201
Warning message 203
Multi-information display
Audio system-linked display 127
Cruise control 304
Drive information 1/Drive information 2 125
Driving information display 125
Driving support system information display 127
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 283
Dynamic radar cruise control 294
Eco Driving Indicator 126
Lexus parking assist-sensor 319
LTA (Lane-Tracing Assist) 278
Menu icons 124
Meter control switches 125
Navigation system-linked display 127
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 262
Pop-up display 124
Settings 127, 637
Suggestion function 128

Tire pressure 552
Warning messages 592
Multi Terrain ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 430
Multi-terrain Monitor 346
How to switch the display 350
If you notice any symptoms 404
Screen display 346
Multi-terrain Select 423
My Settings 209

N

nanoe™ X 459
Navigation system-linked display 127

O

Odometer 121
Odometer and trip meter display
"ODO TRIP" switch 123
"ODO TRIP" switch 123
Off-road precautions 436
Oil
Engine oil 626
Front differential oil 631
Rear differential oil 631
Transfer oil 632
Opener
Back door 149
Fuel filler door 256
Hood 532
Open tray 484
Outer foot lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Outside rear view mirrors 196
Adjusting and folding 196
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 313
Folding and extending 197
Linked mirror function when reversing 197
Mirror position memory 204
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 458
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 325
Outside temperature 121
Overheating 616

P

Paddle shift switches 235, 236
Panic mode 141
Parking assist sensors (Lexus parking assist-sensor) 319
Parking brake
Operation 237
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer 239
Warning light 588
Warning message 239
Parking Support Brake (PKSB) 334
Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle) 342
Parking Support Brake function (Pedestrians Rear of the Vehicle) 344
Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) 339
Warning light 586
Warning message 338
PCS (Pre-Collision System)
Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system 266
Function 262
Warning light 584
Warning message 260, 595
Personal lights 476
Switch 476
Pintle hook 227
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 334
Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle) 342
Parking Support Brake function (Pedes-

trians Rear of the Vehicle) 344
Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) 339
Warning light 586
Warning message 338
Power back door
Jam protection function 154
Power back door switch 149
Power back door switch 149
Power easy access system 204
Power outlet 491
Power steering
Warning light 584
Power windows
Jam protection function 199
Operation 199
Window lock switch 201
Pre-Collision System (PCS)
Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system 266
Function 262
Warning light 584
Warning message 260, 595

R

Radar cruise control
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 283
Dynamic radar cruise control 294
Radiator 539
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) 331
Function 331
Warning message 333
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 325
RCTA Function 325
RCTA
Function 325
Warning message 326
RCTA function 327
Rear automatic air conditioning system 465
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) 325
Rear door/rear quarter sunshades 503
Rear fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Switch 250
Wattage 634
Rear Multi Operation Panel 449
Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light 590
Rear reading lights 476
Rear seat 171, 179
Adjustment 171, 180
Head restraints 183
Position memory 208
Relaxation system 182
Seat heaters 470
Seat ventilators 471
Stowing the third seats 176
Tumbling the second seats 172
Rear seat position memory 208
Rear turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Turn signal lever 237
Rear view mirror
Digital Rear-view Mirror 188
Inside rear view mirror 187
Outside rear view mirrors 196
Rear window defogger 458
Rear window wiper 253
Refueling 255
Capacity 625
Fuel types 625
Opening the fuel tank cap 256
Replacing
Electronic key battery 563
Fuses 566
Light bulbs 569
Tires 597
Wireless remote control battery 563

S

Scheduled maintenance 522
Seat belt reminder light 589, 590
Seat belts 42
- Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height 44
- Child restraint system installation 82, 94
- Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt 517
- Emergency Locking Retractor 44
- How to wear your seat belt 43
- How your child should wear the seat belt 44
- Pregnant women, proper seat belt use 43
- Reminder light and buzzer 589, 590
- Seat belt pretensioners 45
- SRS warning light 583

Seat heaters 469
Seat position memory 204, 208
Seats 179
- Adjustment precautions 168
- Adjustment 167, 171, 180
- Child seats/child restraint system installation 60, 88
- Cleaning 517
- Driving position memory 204
- Head restraint 183
- Power easy access system 204
- Properly sitting in the seat 41
- Rear seat relaxation system 182
- Seat heaters 469
- Seat position memory 204, 208
- Seat ventilators 469

Seat ventilators 469
Secondary Collision Brake 431
Sensor
- Automatic headlight system 244
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 314
- Digital Rear-view Mirror 191
- Hands Free Power Back Door 151, 152
- Inside rear view mirror 187
- Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor 109
- Intrusion sensor 109
- Lexus parking assist-sensor 319
- Lexus Safety System + ... 257
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 273
- Parking Support Brake function (Moving Vehicles Rear of the Vehicle) 314
- Parking Support Brake function (Static Objects Front and Rear of the Vehicle) 319
- Power back door 154
- Rain-sensing windshield wipers 252
- RCTA 314
- Tilt sensor 109

Shift lever 233
- Automatic transmission 233
- If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 234

Shift lock system 234
Side airbags 48
Side doors 142
Side mirrors 196
- Adjustment 196
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 312
- Folding and extending 197
- Heaters 458
- Linked mirror function when reversing 197
- Mirror position memory 205
- RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 325

Side turn signal lights
- Replacing light bulbs 569
- Turn signal lever 237

Side windows 199
Smart entry & start system 162
- Antenna location 162
- Entry functions 142, 148
- Starting the engine 228
- Warning message 592

Snow tires 438
"SOS" button 104
Spare tire
Inflation pressure 633
Storage location 598
Spark plug 631
Specifications 622
Speedometer 121
Sport mode 407
Steering lock 229
Column lock release 229
Steering lock system warning message 229
Steering wheel
Adjustment 186
Auto tilt away 186
Heated steering wheel 469
Meter control switches 125
Power easy access system 204
Steering wheel position memory 205
Stop lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Stop & Start system
Function 307
Storage feature 478
Storage precautions 480
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck 619
Suggestion function 128
Sunshade
Moon roof 202
Rear door/rear quarter sunshades 503
Sun visors 490
Switches
"SOS" button 104
Adaptive High-beam System switch 247
Brake hold switch 240
Center differential lock switch 417
Cruise control switch 304
DAC/CRAWL 407, 425
Door lock switch 144
DPF system switch 428
DRIVE MODE switch 407
Driving position memory switches 205
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 283
Dynamic radar cruise control 294
Emergency flashers switch 574
Engine switch 228
Fog light switch 250
Four-wheel drive control switch 416
Garage door opener switches 505
Headlight switch 243
Heated steering wheel 469
Height select switches 409
Ignition switch 228
Instrument panel light control switches 123
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch 109
Intrusion sensor cancel switch 109
Light switch 243
LTA switch 278
Meter control switches 125
MODE SELECT switch 407, 419, 423, 426
Moon roof switches 201
MTS 423
Outside rear view mirror switches 196
Paddle shift switches 235, 236
Parking brake switch 237
Power back door opener and closer switch 149
Power back door switch 149
Power window switch 199
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch 458
Rear window wiper and washer switch 253
Seat heater switches 469
Tilt and telescopic steering control switch 186

Turn Assist switch 422
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch 283, 294
Ventilators (seat ventilators) 471
VIEW switch 350
VSC OFF switch 432
Window lock switch 201
Windshield defogger switch 458
Windshield wipers and washer switch 251
Wireless charger switch 495

T

Tachometer 121
Tail lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Switch 243
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 108
Engine immobilizer system 107
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor 109
Intrusion sensor 109
Tilt sensor 109
Things you should know
If you notice any symptoms 404
Tilt sensor 109
Tire inflation pressure
Maintenance data 633
Warning light 589
Tire pressure warning system 552
Function 552
Initializing 554
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters 553
Registering ID codes 556
Selecting wheel set 558
Warning light 589
Tires 550
Chains 440
Checking 550
If you have a flat tire 597
Inflation pressure 559
Replacing 597
Rotating tires 551
Size 633
Snow tires 438
Spare tire 597
Tire pressure warning system 552
Warning light 589
Tools 598
Top strap 86, 102
Top tether anchorages 86, 102
Towing
Emergency towing 577
Towing hook 579
Trailer sway control 431
Trailer towing 221
Traction control (TRC) 431
Trailer sway control 431
Trailer towing 221
Transmission
Automatic transmission 233
M mode 236
Paddle shift switches 235, 236
TRC (Traction Control) 431
Trip meters 121
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 569
Turn signal lever 237

U

USB charging ports 493

V

Vanity lights 490
Vanity mirrors 490
VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) 431
Vehicle data recording 7
Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Manage-

ment (VDIM) 431
Vehicle identification number 623
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 431
Ventilators (seat ventilators) 469
Voltmeter 121
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 431

W

Warning buzzers
Approach warning 289, 299
Brake hold 588
Brake Override System 587
Brake system 582
Downshifting 236
Drive-Start Control 587
High coolant temperature 583
Lexus parking assist-sensor 319
Low engine oil pressure 583
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 273, 585
Pre-collision warning 263
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 326
Seat belt reminder 589, 590
Vehicle sway warning 277
Warning lights
ABS 584
Brake hold operated indicator 588
Brake Override System 587
Brake system 582
Center differential lock indicator 588
Charging system 582
Drive-Start Control 587
High coolant temperature 583
Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator 586
Low AdBlue™ level 589
Low engine oil pressure 583
Low fuel level 589
Low speed four-wheel drive indicator light 588
LTA indicator 585
Malfunction indicator lamp 583
Parking brake indicator 588
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 584
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 587
PKSB OFF indicator 586
Power steering 584
RCD OFF indicator 586
RCTA OFF indicator 585
Seat belt reminder light 589, 590
Slip indicator 587
SRS 583
Stop & Start cancel indicator 587
Tire pressure 589
Warning messages 592
Washer
Checking 542
Low washer fluid warning message 542, 592
Preparing and checking before winter 438
Switch 251, 253
Washing and waxing 514
Weights 622
Wheels 560
Replacing wheels 597
Size 633
Window glasses
Power windows 199
Window lock switch 201
Windows
Power windows 199
Rear window defogger 458
Washer 251, 253
Windshield defogger 458
Windshield wipers
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 251
Winter driving tips 438
Wireless charger 495
Wireless remote control 140
Battery-saving function 163
Locking/Unlocking 140

Panic mode.....141
Replacing the battery.....563

For vehicles with navigation system or multimedia system, refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Audio system

Certifications

Smart entry & start system and engine immobilizer system

▶ For vehicles sold in the Dominican Republic

FCC ID: NI4TMLF19D-3
NOTE
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
FCC WARNING
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Argentine

TOYOTA
Model: TMLF19D-1

R! H-25549

▶ For vehicles sold in Paraguay

[Para los vehículos que se venden en Paraguay]
Nombre del proveedor en Paraguay: Toyotoshi S.A.
Dirección: Av. Mariscal López esq. Victor Cáceres, San Lorenzo, Central, Paraguay

Smart entry & start system

▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

- Manufacturer:	TOKAI RIKA CO., LTD.
- Address:	3-260 Toyota, Oguchi-cho, Niwa-gun, Aichi 480-0195, Japan
- Brand:	TOKAI RIKA
- Equipment:	RECEIVER
- Model:	BH2KV

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam

▶ For vehicles sold in the United Arab Emirates

TRA
REGISTERED No: ER93318/21
DEALER No: 0034092/10

▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

- Manufacturer:	TOKAI RIKA CO., LTD.
- Address:	3-260 Toyota, Oguchi-cho, Niwa-gun, Aichi 480-0195, Japan
- Brand:	TOKAI RIKA
- Equipment:	Electronic Key
- Model:	B3T2K2R

▶ For vehicles sold in Paraguay

NR:2020-12-I-0882

TOKAI RIKA B3T2K2R

[Información de empresas de venta de vehículos en Paraguay]
- Nombre de la empresa: Toyotoshi S.A.
- Dirección de la empresa: Av. Mariscal López esq. Victor Cáceres, San Lorenzo,Central, Paraguay

▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam

▶ For vehicles sold in Argentine

▶ For vehicles sold in Paraguay

[Para los vehículos que se venden en Paraguay]
Nombre del proveedor en Paraguay: Toyotoshi S.A.
Dirección: Av. Mariscal López esq. Victor Cáceres, San Lorenzo, Central, Paraguay

▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa

Millimeter wave radar sensor

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam

▶ For vehicles sold in Paraguay

[Para los vehículos que se venden en Paraguay]
Nombre del proveedor en Paraguay: Toyotoshi S.A.
Dirección: Av.Mariscal Lopez 2801/2899 Asuncion, Paraguay

Blind Spot Monitor

▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa

C3-038

▶ For vehicles sold in Bahrain

The Equipment Identified hereon is approved for use under the following rules
1- This equipment must not cause harmful interference to other service.
2- This equipment is subject to harmful interference, and the owner of this equipment must not claim for protection.

C3-042

▶ For vehicles sold in Qatar

C3-043

▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

Name and address of the manufacturer
ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH
Peter-Dornier-Strasse 10, 88131 Lindau, Germany

Brand, Model, Type and Commercial name
Continental, SRR3-A, Short Range Radar

C3-045

▶ For vehicles sold in Lebanon

From the Lebanese Telecommunications Ministry:
Type Approval Number : 12421/O&M/2014

C3-046

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam

C3-049

▶ For vehicles sold in Philippines

C3-050

▶ For vehicles sold in El Salvador

FCC ID : OAYSRR3A

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

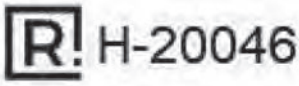
FCC Warning
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

C3-002

▶ For vehicles sold in Paraguay

C3-055

▶ For vehicles sold in Argentina



C3-056

Bluetooth®

Bluetooth®

Wireless charger

▶ For vehicles sold in Paraguay

[Para los vehículos que se venden en Paraguay]
Toyotoshi S.A.
Avda. Mariscal López 2801/99 y Reclus. Asunción – Paraguay.

▶ For vehicles sold in Guatemala

FCC ID : ACJ932AT2001

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 and part 18 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
FCC CAUTION
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a wireless power charger, pursuant to part 18 of the FCC Rules.
This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.
However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.
If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio communications, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following
measures:
-Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
-Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
-Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. This equipment should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 20cm or more away from person s body.

Tire pressure warning system

FCC ID: PAXPMVE000

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC ID: PAXPMVE100

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

70821/SDPPI/2020
10202

68849/SDPPI/2020
10202

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER58534/17
DEALER No:
DA0063612/11

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Transmitter
Model: PMV-E100
Manufacture: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.
Address: 1300-1 Yokoi, Godo-cho, Anpachi-gun, Gifu,
503-2397 Japan

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES
H-22736

Name and Address of local dealer
Toyotoshi S.A.
Av. Mariscal López esq. Victor Cáceres, San Lorenzo,Central, Paraguay

NR: 2019-03-I-000183

Name and Address of local dealer
Toyotoshi S.A.
Av. Mariscal López esq. Victor Cáceres, San Lorenzo,Central, Paraguay

NR: 2019-03-I-000184

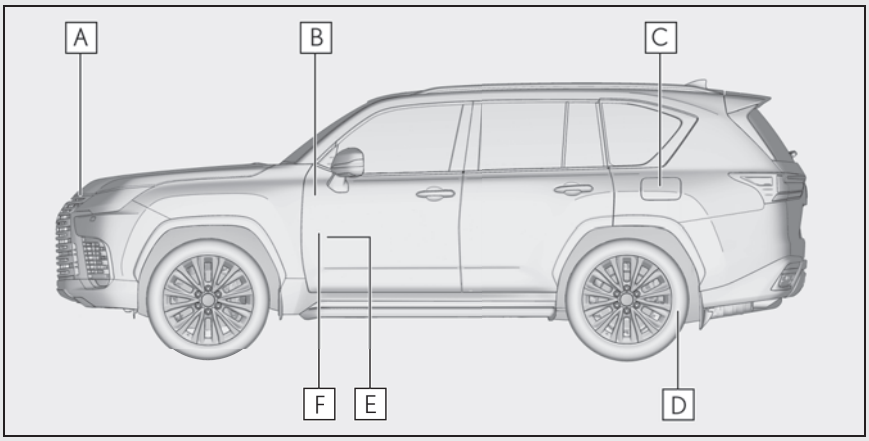
TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) Transmitter conforms to the requirement of ICASA.

Lexus parking assist-sensor

▶ For vehicles sold in the Dominican Republic

Product name : Intuitive parking assist
Compliance statement : This device complies with part 18 of the FCC Rules.
Responsible Party : DENSO International America, Inc.
24777 Denso Drive, P.O. Box 5047, Southfield, Michigan 48033-5244, U.S.A.
https://www.denso.com/us-ca/en/about-us/company-information/diam/

GAS STATION INFORMATION



A Auxiliary catch lever (→P.532)

B Power back door switch (→P.149)

C Fuel filler door (→P.256)

D Tire inflation pressure (→P.633)

E Fuel filler door opener (→P.256)

F Hood lock release lever (→P.532)

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	Vehicles without sub fuel tank system	80 L (21.1 gal., 17.6 Imp.gal.)
	Vehicles with sub fuel tank system	110 L (29.1 gal., 24.2 Imp.gal.)
Fuel type		P.625
Cold tire inflation pressure		P.633
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)		P.626
Engine oil type		P.626

Publication No. OM60S78E
Part No. 01999-60S78
Printed in Japan 01-2112-00 Z
LX600 / LX500d (一般E)